# Advanced Learners' Grammar

A self-study reference & practice book with answers

Mark Foley & Diane Hall



# Advanced Learners' Grammar

A self-study reference & practice book with answers

Mark Foley & Diane Hall



Pearson Education Limited Edinburgh Gate

Harlow Essex

CM20 2JE England

and Associated Companies throughout the world.

www.longman.com

#### © Pearson Education Limited 2003

All rights reserved; no part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior written permission of the Publishers.

The rights of Mark Foley and Diane Hall to be identified as the authors of this work have been asserted by them in accordance with the Copyright, Design and Patents Act 1988.

Eighth impression 2008

Printed in China GCC/08

Development editor: David Lott. Produced for the publishers by Bluestone Press, Charlbury, Oxfordshire, UK. Design by Keith Rigley. Copy-edited by Sue Harmes. Illustrations by Anthony Seldon (pages 55, 72, 74, 109, 111, 125, 137, 161, 188, 195, 203, 208, 213, 215, 232, 278, 298, 303, 324, 327), Anthony Maher (pages 59, 64, 65, 80, 98, 124, 133, 191, 206, 290, 294, 297, 314, 322) and Jean de Lemos (pages 76, 91, 116, 166), all of Graham-Cameron Illustration.

Set in ITC Symbol Medium

ISBN 978-0-582-40383-3

#### **ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS**

We are grateful to the following for permission to reproduce copyright materials

Atlantic Syndication Partners for an extract adapted from "How over-protective parents may harm their children's health" by Beezy Marsh published in The Daily Mail 24th June 1999; Guardian Newspapers Limited for headlines "Police chief admits China visit errors" by Paul Baldwin, "Radio 1 outshines commercial rivals" by Janine Gibson, "Prisons chief urges release of Bulger killers" by Alan Travis, "DiCaprio film-makers face storm over paradise lost" by John Vidal published in The Guardian 29th October 1999 @ The Guardian 1999 and "Judge blocks ban on tobacco adverts" by Sarah Boseley, "India snubs Pope on eve of visit" by Suzanne Goldenberg published in The Guardian 30th October 1999 © The Guardian 1999, and extracts adapted from "Lobster's whiter shade of pale puts fishmonger £20,000 in red® by Luke Harding published in The Guardian 9th December 1997 © The Guardian 1997. "Stephen King's latest thriller - will the minivan get it?" by Julian Borger published in The Guardian 30th October 1999 The Guardian 1999. "A word in your year, from 1900 to now" by John Ezard published in The Guardian 30th October 1999 © The Guardian 1999 and "Why that joke email could get you the sack" by Philip Inman and Jamie Wilson published in The Guardian 2nd December 2000 © The Guardian 2000; the author's agent for an extract adapted from "Dramatic tension" by Mark Lawson published in The Guardian 2nd August 1999; and Michael O'Mara Books Limited for extracts adapted from The One Hundred Stupidest Things Ever Done by Ross and Kathryn Petras. In some instances we have been unable to trace the owners of copyright material and we would appreciate any information that would enable us to do so.

We are grateful to the following for permission to reproduce copyright photographs:

Aviation Images for page 221: Bloomsbury for page 254: Corbis Images for page 343: DK Picture Library for page 79; Image Bank for page 231: The Kobal Collection for pages 69, 94 & 154; Penguin Readers for page 61; Rex Features for pages 288 & 311: Ronald Grant for page 317.

The authors would like to thank David Lott, Kenna Bourke and Christina Ruse for their editorial input into this book. They would like to acknowledge the assistance of staff and students at the following institutions for piloting the materials: Wimbledon School of English, Westminster Kingsway College, and the College of North West London. They would also like to thank the following for reporting on the manuscript: Valeria Arva, Centre for English Training, ELTE University, Budapest, Hungary; Rolf Donald, Eastbourne School of English, UK; Özden Ergül, TC Maltepe Üniversitesi, Istanbul, Turkey. Tatyana Goucher, Diplomatic Academy, Moscow, Russia; Bernie Hayden, UK; Olha Madylus, British Council, Thessaloniki, Greece; Michael Nutt, UK; Ludmilla Pastushenko, National Taras Shevchenko University of Kyiv, Ukraine; Jelena Timotijevic, University of Brighton, UK; Dorina Vant, Liceul de Informatica Brasov, Brasov, Romania; Berrin Yildiz, Doğuş Üniversitesi, Istanbul, Turkey.

# Contents

	Introduction	8
	Diagnostic tests 1–36	10
1	Present tenses (► Diagnostic test 1, page 10)  1.1 Present simple I make  1.2 Present continuous I am making  1.3 Verbs rarely used in the continuous believe; have; like; etc.	46 47 48
2	Past tenses (► Diagnostic test 2, page 11)  2.1 Past simple I made  2.2 Past continuous I was making  2.3 Past perfect I had made  2.4 Past perfect continuous I had been making  2.5 Used to/would I used to make; I would make	54 54 56 56 57
3	Past to present tenses (► Diagnostic test 3, page 12)  3.1 Present perfect simple I have made  3.2 Present perfect and past simple – differences  3.3 Present perfect continuous I have been making  3.4 Present perfect simple and continuous – differences	62 64 64 65
	Round up (Units 1–3): Present and past tenses	70
4	The future (1) (► Diagnostic test 4, page 13)  4.1 Prediction he will make; he is going to make; he will be making; etc.  4.2 Decisions and intentions I will make; I am going to make  4.3 Arrangements I'm meeting; I will be meeting  4.4 Other future meanings timetables; qualifying future forms; etc.	72 73 74 75
5	<ul> <li>The future (2) (► Diagnostic test 5, page 14)</li> <li>5.1 Expressions with future meaning be to + infinitive; be due to + infinitive; etc.</li> <li>5.2 Verbs with future meaning main verbs; modal verbs</li> <li>5.3 Future in the past I was going to make; other forms</li> </ul>	80 81 82
	Round up (Units 4 and 5): The future	86
6	Negation (► Diagnostic test 6, page 15)  6.1 Negative statements not; no; neither; etc.  6.2 Negative questions Haven't you seen?  6.3 Words which carry pagative meaning adverts: quantifiers; verbs: prefixes	88 90

1	Questions (> Diagnostic test 7, page 16)	
	7.1 Closed and open questions Are you busy? Why did she leave?	96
	7.2 Tag questions He knows, doesn't he? He doesn't know, does he? etc.	97
	7.3 Indirect questions Can you tell me how long? I wonder whether	99
	7.4 Echo questions Are you? Has he really?	99
0	Describes something and set an	
8	3	
	8.1 Passive forms it is made; he was said to be; it got broken	104
	8.2 Passive -ing forms and infinitives being made; to have been made; etc.	105
	8.3 have/get + object + past participle   I had/got it made; I had my bag stolen	106
	8.4 Uses of the passive information order; the 'unimportant' agent; etc.	107
9	Reported speech ( Diagnostic test 9, page 18)	
	9.1 Direct and indirect speech 'There's a problem.'; He said there was a problem.	112
	9.2 Indirect statements reporting verbs; changes of pronoun, adverb, tense	112
	9.3 Indirect (reported) questions reporting verbs; she asked when it started	114
	9.4 Indirect commands and requests reporting verbs; he asked them to wait	114
	9.5 Reporting verbs and their patterns advise; offer; threaten; etc.	115
10	Conditionals ( Diagnostic test 10, page 19)	
	10.1 General points on conditionals sentence structures and patterns	120
	10.2 Zero conditional If I work late, he makes the dinner.	120
	10.3 First conditional If I work late tomorrow, he'll make the dinner.	121
	10.4 Second conditional If I worked late, he would make the dinner.	122
	10.5 Third conditional If I'd worked late, he would have made the dinner.	123
	10.6 Mixed conditionals mixed second/third and third/second conditionals	123
	10.7 Alternatives to if unless; provided that; suppose; in case; etc.	123
11	The subjunctive and 'unreal' uses of past forms	
.,	( Diagnostic test 11, page 20)	
	11.1 The subjunctive form and use; informal alternatives; fixed expressions	130
	11.2 The 'unreal' past imaginary past, present and future; was or were; what if; etc.	131
	11.3 wish/if only + past simple; + past perfect; + would/could	132
	Round up (Units 10 and 11): Conditionals, subjunctive and 'unreal' past	138
10		
12	-ing forms and infinitives ( Diagnostic test 12, page 21)	
	12.1 -ing forms subjects and objects; patterns of use	140
	12.2 Infinitives forms and uses	141
	12.3 Verbs followed by -ing forms and infinitives patterns; differences in meaning	142
13	Participle and infinitive phrases (> Diagnostic test 13, page 22)	
	13.1 Participle phrases – form and use active and passive; participle subjects	148
	13.2 Types of participle phrase defining phrases; phrases of reason, result; etc.	149
	13.3 Infinitive phrases form and use active and passive; as subject/complement	150
	13.4 Types of infinitive phrase defining phrases; phrases of purpose and result	151
	13.5 Uses in discourse to tell the truth; generally speaking	151

14	Multi-word verbs (► Diagnostic test 14, page 23)	
	14.1 Form and use the four types; formal/informal use; particles	156
	14.2 Phrasal verbs   get by.   made it up.	157
	14.3 Prepositional verbs I looked for it. I didn't fall for it.	158
	14.4 Phrasal-prepositional verbs I look forward to hearing from you.	158
	14.5 Word list: common multi-word verbs break down; catch on; etc.	159
15	Dependent prepositions ( Diagnostic test 15, page 24)	
	15.1 General rules + object; + -ing form; to + infinitive; that clauses	164
	15.2 Verb + preposition patterns accuse somebody of (doing) something	165
	15.3 Noun + preposition demand for; success in; fear of	166
	15.4 Adjective/participle + preposition grateful for; worried about; scared by	166
	15.5 Word list: dependent preposition patterns belief in; good at; etc.	167
16	Modal verbs (1): can, could, may, might, be able to [Diagnostic test 16, page 25]	
	16.1 Ability She can speak French. I wasn't able to fix it.	174
	16.2 Possibility, deduction and speculation There may be life on Mars.	175
	16.3 Arrangements, suggestions, offers, etc. He can see you at six.	177
	16.4 Asking for and giving/refusing permission May I interrupt?	177
17	Modal verbs (2): must, should, ought to, have to, need to	
	( Diagnostic test 17, page 26)	182
	17.1 Obligation and necessity We must leave early. You need to eat something.	183
	17.2 Prohibition and criticism You mustn't touch it.  17.3 Absence of obligation or necessity You don't havelneed to pay.	184
		184
	17.4 Recommendation and advice You'd better not wait.  17.5 Logical deduction and probability He must have left.	185
		,
18	Modal verbs (3): will, would, shall ( Diagnostic test 18, page 27)	
	18.1 Prediction and certainty He'll be in London now. He'll have arrived.	190
	18.2 Characteristics, habits and routines It will hold two litres.	191
	18.3 Willingness and refusal I'll sign it. They wouldn't change it.	192
	18.4 Other uses of will/shall/would offers; promises; suggestions; requests; etc.	192
	18.5 Hypothetical would it would be nice; it would have been a good idea	193
	Round up (Units 16–18): Modal verbs	198
19	Auxiliaries, have (got), do ( Diagnostic test 19, page 28)	
	19.1 Auxiliary verbs uses; contracted forms	200
	19.2 Emphasis It has been a long time! Did you or didn't you take it?	201
	19.3 Have and do meanings and uses	201
	19.4 Have got for possession; meaning 'has become/obtained'; etc.	202
20	Confusing verbs (► Diagnostic test 20, page 29)	
	20.1 False synonyms makeldo; haveltake; beenlgone; speakltalk; etc.	208
	20.2 Opposite pairs borrowllend; bring/take	211
	alikaana kana	

21	Adjectives (► Diagnostic test 21, page 30)	
	21.1 Adjective patterns responsible parents; the person responsible	216
	21.2 Participle (-ing or -ed) adjectives I feel frightened; a frightening film	218
	21.3 Groups of adjectives adjective order; pairs of adjectives; etc.	219
22	Comparison (► Diagnostic test 22, page 31)	
	22.1 Comparative and superlative adjectives form and use; irregular adjectives	224
	22.2 Adjectives with as, so, too, enough and such not as bad as I'd expected	226
	22.3 Other types of comparison faster and faster; like and as	227
23	Gradable and ungradable adjectives (Diagnostic test 23, page 32)	
	23.1 Modifying gradable adjectives very expensive; slightly dizzy; quite nice	232
	23.2 Modifying ungradable adjectives absolutely fabulous; practically freezing	233
	23.3 Modifying adjectives in informal English really sorry; dead scary	234
	23.4 Common adverb + adjective collocations bitterly cold; deeply moving	235
24	Adverbs (Diagnostic test 24, page 33)	
	24.1 Form formation and types; adverbs with two forms	240
	24.2 Use modifying and adding information; use in comparisons	241
	24.3 Position of adverbs in sentences front, mid and final position	241
	24.4 Sentence adverbs viewpoint and attitude adverbs – use in discourse	243
25	Nouns and noun phrases (Diagnostic test 25, page 34)	
2.0	25.1 Basic points form and meaning; gender	248
	25.2 Singular and plural nouns regular/irregular plurals; plural form nouns	248
	25.3 Countable and uncountable nouns use; different meanings; a piecelbit of	249
	25.4 Agreement plural subjects; plural form and group nouns	250
	25.5 Nominalisation making verbs/verb phrases into nouns/noun phrases	251
26	Possessives and compound nouns (Diagnostic test 26, page 35)	
	26.1 Form and meaning possessive forms; rules	256
	26.2 The genitive ('s) or of structure which form to use	257
	26.3 Specifying or classifying possessives and compound nouns sports shop	259
27		
21	Pronouns (► Diagnostic test 27, page 36)  27.1 Personal pronouns omission of pronouns; subject or object forms; one; etc.	251
	provide provide a provide prov	264
	27.2 Reflexive and reciprocal pronouns <i>-selfl-selves; each otherlone another</i> 27.3 'Impersonal' pronouns use of <i>youlweltheylone</i>	266
	27.4 Indefinite pronouns and adverbs somebody; anything; no one; etc.	267
		267
28	Determiners (► Diagnostic test 28, page 37)	
	28.1 Articles a/the/no article for naming, describing and classifying; etc.	272
	28.2 Demonstratives this/that/these/those as adjectives and pronouns	274
	28.3 Quantifiers no; none; half; both; some; all; etc.	274
29	Prepositions (▶ Diagnostic test 29, page 38)	
	29.1 Introduction basic information; preposition or adverb?	280
	29.2 Meaning and use prepositions of position, movement, time, reason; etc.	280
	29.3 Prepositional phrases formation; stranded prepositions	285

30	Word order and verb patterns (► Diagnostic test 30, page 39)	
	30.1 Word order in English subject-verb-object word order and variations	290
	30.2 Verb patterns verb + complement; verb + prepositional phrase; etc.	290
	30.3 Linking clauses coordination; subordination	293
31	Relative clauses (Diagnostic test 31, page 40)	
	31.1 Relative clauses subject/object relatives; defining/non-defining relatives; etc.	298
	31.2 Relative pronouns and adverbs who, etc; modifying pronouns; whichever, etc.	300
32	Contrast (▶ Diagnostic test 32, page 41)	
	32.1 Conjunctions of contrast but; while; although; yet; etc.	306
	32.2 Prepositions of contrast despite; in spite of	307
	32.3 Adverbs of contrast however; nevertheless; even so; still; etc.	308
33	Introductory there and it (Diagnostic test 33, page 42)	
	33.1 Introductory there as 'empty' subject; there + be	312
	33.2 Introductory/impersonal it as 'empty' subject; introducing certain topics;	717
	describing impersonal/general feelings; using it in discourse	313
34	Emphatic structures and inversion (► Diagnostic test 34, page 43)	
	34.1 Cleft sentences Zack was the guy who told us.	320
	34.2 Fronting that I disagree with; attached to the roof was an aerial	322
	34.3 Inversion little did we realise; never have I seen; so are we	323
35	Aspects of cohesion (Diagnostic test 35, page 44)	
	35.1 Types of text reference substitution; ellipsis; anaphoric and cataphoric reference	328
	35.2 Substitution substituting nouns, verbs, clauses	329
	35.3 Ellipsis omitting nouns, pronouns, verbs, infinitives and wh- clauses	330
36	Features of discourse (Diagnostic test 36, page 45)	
	36.1 Ordering information the information principle; the end-weight principle; etc.	336
	36.2 Discourse devices types of linking; reference; parallelism	338
	Key to diagnostic tests	344
	Key to practice exercises	354

### Introduction

The Advanced Learners' Grammar is a comprehensive advanced level grammar of the English language with cross-referenced practice exercises and a full set of diagnostic tests.

### this book?

What's in The Advanced Learners' Grammar consists of:

- 36 diagnostic tests and a test key
- 36 units of grammar explanation with practice exercises
- · double-page Round ups of key areas of grammar
- an answer key for practice exercises

Who is it The Advanced Learners' Grammar is for students who are at or above the level of the for? Cambridge First Certificate Examination (or equivalent). It can be used by students preparing for the Cambridge Advanced or Proficiency or other similar examinations, or by advanced students who are not preparing for examinations at all.

#### What kind of grammar?

In addition to describing traditional grammar 'rules', the Advanced Learners' Grammar examines the close relationship between grammar and vocabulary in English. The grammar explanations cover areas such as multi-word verbs, prepositions and reporting verbs and many where grammar and vocabulary are closely linked; useful word lists, charts and Round ups are also included. The explanations highlight common errors and areas of potential confusion and explain the differences between British and American usage. The importance of context and levels of formality are fully described, and examples are given which reflect up-to-date, idiomatic speech and writing. Many of the examples have been taken from the BNC/Longman corpus. The Advanced Learners' Grammar also contains units on text structure and discourse, as these areas are essential for the advanced student to develop beyond the confines of simple grammar and sentence structure.

### practice?

What kind of The Advanced Learners' Grammar generally contains four pages of practice exercises for every four pages of grammar explanation. There is a variety of types of exercises. ranging from simple gap-filling, matching and transformation tasks to complex manipulation of text. Each unit contains at least one exercise that is typical of the tasks found in advanced level examinations such as the Cambridge Advanced and Proficiency.

#### How do I use it?

You can use the Advanced Learners' Grammar in a number of different ways. Either:

4.4 Other future meanings timetables; qualifying future forms; etc.

Use the Contents (pages 3–7) to find a unit which interests you.

#### 4 The future (1) (▶ Diagnostic test 4, page 13) 4.1 Prediction he will make; he is going to make; he will be making; etc. 72 4.2 Decisions and intentions. I will make; I am going to make 73 4.3 Arrangements I'm meeting; I will be meeting 74

Read through the explanation sections and do the practice exercises which follow, You can check your answers to the exercises in the key.

#### Or:

Use the index (pages 374–384) to find a particular area in which you need practice.

about the future 4.1A, 4.1C-D, 4.4C, 18.1A be going to + infinitive 4.1B

The explanations are composed of sections which are divided into sub-sections

#### **PREDICTION**

4.1A We use will/won't (the future simple) to talk about predictions which are based on will/won't guesswork, analysis or judgement. We use will/won't with all persons and with personal + infinitive and impersonal subjects:

 Read the sections or sub-sections that are listed in the index and then do the related practice exercises. There is a reference above each exercise which shows which section or sections it is practising.

### 4.1, 4.2

Complete the dialogues according to the cartoons and using the verbs in brackets. Use will/won't, will/won't be + verb -ing, will/won't have + past participle or be going to.

#### Or:

· Use the diagnostic tests (pages 10-45) to identify your areas of weakness. Do the test for a particular area of grammar, for example, the future.

### Diagnostic test 4

#### The future (1)

Write the correct form of the verb in brackets to complete these sentences. Use one of these structures: will/won't, shall, be going to, will/won't be + -ing, will/won't have + past participle, will/won't have + been + -ing, present continuous or present simple.

· Then check your answers in the key to the diagnostic tests (pages 344-353). Each answer contains one or more reference numbers. Circle the reference numbers for the items you answered incorrectly, read those sub-sections in the explanation section and then do the related practice exercises.

#### TEST 4

- 1 will find > 4.1A
- 2 'll probably sell ► 4.1A, 4.4C
- 3 are going to win > 4.1B

Tip: when doing the diagnostic tests, it may be better to write your answers on a separate sheet of paper, so that you can refer to it easily when you check the key.

#### Symbols

The following symbols are used in the grammar explanations:

- particular problem or exception; take note
- = refer to this particular section in another unit
- example = grammatically correct
- **x** example = grammatically incorrect

[example] = non-standard usage

#### **Present tenses**

Write the correct form of the words in brackets to complete the sentences. Use only the present simple (e.g. arrives/doesn't arrive) or the present continuous (e.g. is/are arriving).

or	the present continuous (e.g. is/are arriving).
It	kample 's nearly half past ten Do they always eat hey/always/eat) this late in Spain?
1	Carina (enjoy) hospital dramas so she
	week. (watch) ER every
2	Japanese cooking (not use) a lot of dairy food.
3	the interest rate (usually/change) because of inflation?
4	Graham won't give up cigarettes. He . (smoke) about fifty a day
5	Britney Spears
6	We (take) a two-week winter holiday in Gstaad every year.
7	l (feed) the neighbour's cat this week while she's in hospital.
8	The court (not/usually/send) first-time offenders to prison, but it is possible in exceptional circumstances.
9	Then you (mix) all the ingredients together quickly and (put) the mixture in a hot oveπ for twenty minutes.
10	can see the leaders. The three front runners (turn) the corner into
	the stadium complex now.
11	Julie, listen to this. It's Thursday evening and I

- 12 Hewitt certainly (not/play) his best tennis at the moment
- 13 Hurry up and buy your sandwich! Here (come) the bus!
- 15 The part-time philosophy course (consist of) twenty evening lectures and five full-day seminars.
- 16 \_\_\_\_\_ (you/think) we should allow more than an hour to get to the station?
- 18 Don't ask him! He (be) really difficult at the moment.
- 19 Would you like to try these champagnes? We ... (taste) them to write a review for the wine club newsletter.

#### Past tenses

Underline the correct verb form in italics.

#### Example

The Incas <u>didn't have/weren't having</u> a written script.

- 1 The pool in the hotel was absolutely filthy so we didn't swam/swim in it.
- 2 We stoped/stopped at the first service station we came across.
- 3 The thieves ran out of the bank, jumped/were jumping into their car and sped away up the high street.
- 4 Rameses II was ruling/ruled over ancient Egypt for more than fifty years.
- 5 Intervention was urgently required the starving children *grew/were growing* weaker by the day and there *was/was being* little sign of an end to the drought.
- 6 By the middle of the nineteen sixties many parts of Europe experienced/were experiencing a tremendous economic boom.
- 7 Jim left/was leaving on the early flight the next morning so he made his excuses and left the party before midnight.
- 8 Many of the survivors worked/were working in the fields when the earthquake struck.
- 9 Phil stood at the door soaked from head to toe; he had been running/was running in the rain.
- 10 Denise had to leave school early on Wednesday because she took/was taking her driving test.
- 11 By the third month of the war rebel forces took/had taken most of the province.
- 12 At the time of the trial last summer Hinkley had been/was in prison for eight months.
- 13 We missed the first act of the play because when we arrived at the theatre the performance already started/had already started.
- 14 At midnight Mr Rochester had climbed climbed the stairs and went into his bedchamber

- 15 The early rains were a disappointment as we expected/had expected to reach the coast before the monsoon set in.
- 16 At the time of the take-over the company's shares had declined/had been declining in value for several months.
- 17 Brendan was surprised to find the gas tank empty as he had only been using/had only used the truck twice that week.
- 18 Before the advent of satellite television viewers didn't used to have/use to have a very wide selection of channels.
- 19 The staff were used/used to be paid weekly but now they receive a monthly salary.
- 20 Things have certainly changed there would belused to be loads of small shops around here when I was young.

### Past to present tenses

Underline the best choice of words in italics.

#### Example

Has the package arrived/Did the package arrive safely yesterday?

- 1 We still hold meetings in the old manor house, which stood/has stood on the same spot for over two hundred years.
- 2 Beethoven has written/wrote some of the most accomplished symphonies you will ever listen to.
- 3 I didn't seelhaven't seen Keith at all yesterday morning.
- 4 The nurses' strike *increased/has increased* the current waiting time for minor surgery by two to three weeks.
- 5 Only one British female astronaut *spent/has* spent time on a space station.
- 6 News is coming in of an incident in Parliament. A group of armed men surrounded/has surrounded the building and is holding hostages.
- 7 He's really much more handsome in the flesh than I thought/have thought.
- 8 We eat/have been eating much less beef recently because of the crisis, but we think it's safe to start again now.
- 9 This country has been welcoming/has welcomed the latest influx of political refugees from the Balkans.
- 10 The incidence of street crime has risen/has been rising by five per cent in the last two months.

All of the sentences below contain a grammatical mistake. Find and correct the mistakes.

#### Example

My family is living in this country for over twenty years. has been living/has lived.

- 11 Hurry up! We have been waited for you for twenty minutes! ......
- 12 We have been using this supplier since two years and we've never had problems before.
- 13 There were seven police dramas on TV so far this week and it's only Thursday!
- 14 Only halfway through the financial year and British Aerospace already announced that its pre-tax profits will be down by seventy per cent
- 15 The Indian Government has imposed a ban on tiger hunting five years ago.
- 16 Several drivers have been badly injured during the 1999 racing season.
- 17 This farm is growing organic vegetables for more than ten years now.
- 18 She has been playing with the symphony orchestra three times this season.
- 19 'I haven't seen you for ages.' 'No, I've travelled in South-East Asia.'
- 20 Oasis has been recording a new album. It was a great success on its release last week

### The future (1)

Write the correct form of the verb in brackets to complete the sentences. Use one of these structures: will, shall, be going to, will be + -ing, will have + past participle, will have + been + -ing, present continuous or present simple.

#### Example

- 1 I've taken the 10 40 to Bristol every Friday for three years and it's always half empty. Believe me you . (find) a seat.
- 2 My father's approaching retirement age, so he ............................... (probably/sell) the business next year.
- 3 Going by all of the recent polls, the social democrats ............... (win) next week's election by a huge majority.

- 6 At our next wedding anniversary we ...... (be/married) for twenty-five years.
- 7 'You speak very good Chinese.' 'Thank you. It's not surprising, I (live) in Beijing for eight years next month.'
- 8 Sit down and watch the TV; I ...... (just/finish) this letter quickly before I join you.
- 9 Your driving test is next Tuesday, so . . . (we/have) a two-hour session on Monday?

- 11 I've won the jackpot on the lottery and I ...... (spend) it all straight away!
- 12 I've just been to the council meeting. It looks like they ...... (build) a new shopping centre in town.
- 14 'Have you looked at the new financial report yet?' 'No, but I (stay) at home this evening so I can study it then.'
- 15 The takeover is going ahead, I'm afraid, so we ....................... (make) some redundancies in the New Year.
- 16 Erm, I don't want to be rude, but ........................ (you/stay) with us for long when you come over to Britain?
- 17 The plane ...... (take off) at 10.45, so we had better check in by 8.45.
- 18 Sunrise ...... (be) at 6.40 a.m. tomorrow.
- 19 Mr Fellows ...... (play) golf tomorrow afternoon, as usual, so you can catch him on the golf course.
- 20 The decorator won't finish the work until you ...... (pay) him what you owe

### The future (2)

Choose the correct word or phrase (a-c) to complete the sentences.

#### Example

Shh! You ... b... disturb your mother.

a are due to b are not to c are to

- 1 The Mayor of Paris ...... attend the service tomorrow before leaving the city.
  a is about to b is to
  c is on the point of
- 2 These pills are ...... with any other medicine.
  a not to be taken b not take
  c due to be taken
- 3 The timetable ...... be published on 1st May. a is due to b is about to c is on the point of
- 4 Hurry! Run! The train's just ...... leave without us! a to b due to c about to
- 5 Because of the erosion of their habitats, some species are ...... extinction a about to b on the verge of c likely to
- 6 He's very ...... to accept the position as we can't match his current salary, a unlikely b likely c sure
- 7 We ...... promote trainees within two to three years of qualifying.
  a are about to b expect to c anticipate to
- 8 'I'm sorry about spilling wine on your dress last week.' 'Don't worry. I ....... take it to the cleaner's anyway.'
  a was going to b would c was to
- 9 As he raised his arm she realised that he ...... strike her again.
  a was due to b was to
  c was about to
- 10 I'm really sorry. We ...... to stop at a service station and phone you, but we didn't want to waste any more time.
  - a were due to b were going to
  - c were to

Now choose two correct answers (a-c) to complete the sentences.

#### Example

Everyone was getting impatient. The trial of the century ...... start in two minutes. a would to b was to c was due to

- 11 Crash investigators ...... release their findings to the press later today.

  a are about to b are due to c are to
- 12 The exam starts at three. ...... arrive at the hall at least five minutes before the start. a Be sure to b You are to c Be bound to
- 13 Hurry up. The tour group is ........ If you don't come now, they'll go without us! a to leave b about to leave c on the point of leaving
- 14 Do you believe we are ...... a really exciting breakthrough here?a on the point of b forthcoming c on the verge of
- 15 Standing underneath the stricken building, no one seemed aware of the ...... danger. a impending b imminent c bound
- 16 'Do you think the judges will like my entry?' 'Of course. They're ...... to like it! a sure b bound c unlikely
- 17 We ...... one hundred per cent customer satisfaction with this new vacuum cleaner! a hope b guarantee c anticipate
- 18 The society ...... expand its membership by twenty per cent in the next year.

  a hopes to b may c envisages
- 19 Look, I didn't put the rubbish out this morning because I thought you ...... do it! a were going to b would c were to
- 20 The new department store ...... on 2nd January, but the explosion prevented this.
  - a was to open b would open c was to have opened

### Negation

In each group of sentences below (a-c), two are grammatically correct. Tick ( ) the correct sentences.

#### Example

- a He's no actor! ✓ b He's not an actor! ✓ c He's any actor!
- 1 'Where's Suzy?'
  - a 'She isn't at home.'
  - b 'She's not at home.'
  - c 'She's no at home.'
- 2 Hannah ...... tell the rest of the family.
  - a begged her sister don't
  - b begged her sister not to
  - c didn't beg her sister to
- 3 He found her ......
  - a not attractive, but strangely appealing
  - b inattractive, but strangely appealing
  - c unattractive, but strangely appealing
- 4 a They'll get no help from Janice.
  - b They'll get none help from Janice.
  - c They won't get any help from Janice.
- 5 There were ...... bookings for the restaurant on its opening night.
  - a anv
  - b few
  - c no
- 6 He says he ...... about the robbery.
  - a knows nothing
  - b doesn't know anything
  - c doesn't know nothing
- 7 a We think that the conference won't be a failure.
  - b We don't think the conference to be a
  - c We don't think that the conference will be a failure
- 8 The woman in the photo ...... to be happy. a seems not
  - b doesn't seem
  - c isn't seem
- 9 Hasn't Stella contacted her solicitor yet? a Yes, she has. b Yes, she hasn't.
  - c No, she hasn't.

- 10 ...... come with us to the beach tomorrow?
  - a Don't you
  - b Will you
  - c Won't you
- 11 Many managers ...... prepare for meetings.
  - a don't hardly
  - b hardly ever
  - c hardly
- 12 That kind of crime ...... these days, does it?
  - a rarely happens
  - b doesn't rarely happen
  - c seldom happens

Rewrite the underlined part of each sentence to make it negative. Use not, n't, neither ... nor or a negative prefix.

#### Example

I expect there'll be a movie on the flight.

I don't expect there'll be a movie on the flight.

- 13 The professor ordered him to leave the room.
- 14 Having seen the film, I don't understand the hype.
- 15 Many antique watches of this type are available these days.
- 16 They've booked either to go on a cruise or to visit the Pyramids.
- 17 The followers of this sect believe that there is life after death.
- 18 Have you seen Harrison Ford's new film yet?
- 19 The suspects <u>denied</u> all of the allegations against them.
- 20 The new Financial Director was generally thought to be <u>honest</u>.

#### Questions

Nine of these questions contain mistakes of grammar or formality. Tick [✓] the correct questions, then find and correct the mistakes.

#### Example

What did you buy else at the shops? What else did you buy at the shops?

- 1 What means 'heliotrope'? I can't find it in the dictionary
- 2 How long you had been living there before the war broke out?
- 3 According to the recipe, what time should I turn the oven off?
- 4 'There was an awful explosion in town yesterday.' 'Really? What did happen?'
- 5 Who exactly presents the certificates at the graduation ceremony?
- 6 How on earth will you get there? The buses have all been on strike for a week.
- 7 'I didn't think much of that film, did you?' 'Yes, I thought it was terrible'
- 8 Let's give the evening class a miss tonight and stay in, don't we?
- 9 'I'm going to have to cancel this evening. I'm still at work.' 'Oh, things are still really hectic, are they?'
- 10 Can you let me know what time does the train from Croydon arrive?
- 11 Could you possibly let us know if or not the tree roots will affect the foundations?

- 12 Do you know if the victim had been staying in this hoste immediately prior to the attack?
- 13 Honestly. I can't trust you to do anything right. You can't have lost your passport. Could you tell me where you put it after the holiday?

- 14 'The. compare the concert after all last night Duren' Why not?'
- 15 'I love seeing Robbie Williams live. He's such a good dancer.' 'Yes, isn't he?'

Write an appropriate question tag (e.g. isn't it?) to complete each question.

#### Example

You don't really believe in ghosts, .... do you...?

- 17 Look at the time. We ought to go now to get the ast bus. .....?
- 18 She necon't pay for the whole course in advance. .....?
- my new puppy? He's worth £250 ' He's lovely. He's a pedigree, then,
- tartast c carrot cake, .....?

### Passives, causatives and get

Rewrite these sentences beginning with the word(s) in bold. You will need to use passive or causative forms.

#### Example

My parents let me stay up late yesterday.

. was allowed to stay up late yesterday.......

- 1 The management have offered the workers a pay rise.
  - A pay rise
- 2 The mechanics are overhauling the entire fleet.
  - The entire fleet
- 3 They made the contestants dress in ridiculous outfits.
  - The contestants . . . .
- 4 The organisers should have warned us in advance.
  - We . . ...
- 5 Having taken advice, the committee decided not to proceed.
  - Advice ....
- 6 It was my father's final wish that they would bury him at sea.
- 7 We regret the fact that the landlord didn't inform us of his decision.
  - We regret not .....
- 8 The garage services my car every six months.
- 10 They are going to repair Susy's car free of charge!
- 11 I want you to repair that computer as soon as you possibly can.
- 12 I can see that nobody's cleaned the bathroom for weeks!
  - The bathroom

Choose the correct or best sentence (a or b) in each pair.

- 13 a Twenty per cent of the world's oil is owned by Saudi Arabia.
  - b Twenty per cent of the world's oil gets owned by Saudi Arabia.
- 14 a Some people think *The Tempest* is Shakespeare's final play.
  - b *The Tempest* is thought to be Shakespeare's final play.
- 15 a A famous actress is resembled by my sister.
  - b My sister resembles a famous actress.
- 16 a That political party wants to increase its membership.
  - b Membership wants to be increased by that political party.
- 17 a The Golden Gate Bridge is a marvel of American technology. It was designed by Joseph B Strauss in the 1930s.
  - b The Golden Gate Bridge is a marvel of American technology. In the 1930s Joseph B Strauss designed it.
- 18 a The interviewers will interview the candidates in alphabetical order.
  - b The candidates will be interviewed in alphabetical order.
- 19 a The post has arrived at last.
  - b The post has been arrived at last
- 20 a This programme was recorded in front of a live audience.
  - b We recorded this programme in front of a live audience.

### Reported speech

Ten of these sentences contain mistakes. Tick (✓) the two correct sentences, then find and correct the mistakes.

#### Example

I've already said you a hundred times that you're too late!....told for: said to.

- 1 The surgeon reassured Mr Ellis. 'The operation has been a resounding success,' said she.
- 2 He told that his mobile phone had been out of action all day .
- 3 Mary was fed up about her inability to complete the course. She told the lecturer I felt I couldn't complete it.
- 4 The manager told us last Friday evening that he wanted us in on time tomorrow morning to start the Saturday sale.
- 5 Susie phoned her husband and told him that she would be gone when he got home.
- 6 Janice hates the idea of growing old. She said yesterday that she wished she had still been young . . .
- 7 The negotiator said he's working on the details of a tentative settlement.
- 8 Laura said if anybody had reported a missing person to the police yet. .....
- 9 The nurse asked when exactly had started the pain. .....
- 10 We asked the travel agent if or not there was a swimming pool at the villa.
- 11 Several members of the Royal Family urged Edward VIII don't abdicate
- 12 Even under great pressure O'Brien denied to have taken part in the attack.

Rewrite each quote in indirect speech.

#### Example

- 13 'I will remember 1st March 2000 as a great day for the nation!'

  The President announced ....

- 16 'Intelligent life does not exist in our universe.'
  Many astronomers believe
- 17 'The Ming Dynasty lasted for almost 300 years.'

  The historian explained.
- 18 'When do you want the sofa to be delivered?'
  The shopkeeper asked my wife .. ..
- 20 'You really must do at least four hours' training a day.'

The trainer urged his team .

#### **Conditionals**

Twelve of these conditional sentences contain a mistake, or may be considered incorrect by most English speakers. Tick () the correct sentences, then find and correct the mistakes. (Be careful! Incorrect punctuation counts as a mistake.)

#### Example

I would have called you if I knew you were at

had known

- 1 It may be possible, if both parties desire it, to reduce the time scale.
- 2 If the bill is passed by both parliamentary houses then it becomes law.
- 3 Shall we start the decorating at the weekend if we had no other plans?
- 4 If you spill even something as innocuous as water on this fabric, it stains.
- 5 When you press the 'record' button, the green light comes on.
- 6 If the museum will charge for entry, a lot of people won't be able to use it.

4 4 4 \*\*

- 7 Are you unhappy with any of our operatives, we will replace them immediately.
- 8 If you're taking some flowers to Julie, I'll take some fruit.
- 9 If the form has been correctly completed, the transfer will take only two days
- 10 The organisers would respond positively to proposals if they are submitted by 10th June

- 11 If you were to listen more carefully, you might understand a little more.
- 12 If I was you, I should try to see a consultant as soon as possible.
- 13 If he would have waited a bit longer, we would have given him the result
- 14 The King of Belgium didn't attend the royal wedding. If he hadn't been there, he would have witnessed a marvellous spectacle.
- 15 If the company didn't want to continue sponsoring us in the future, they wouldn't renew our contract last week, would they?
- 16 If the authority had built new homes as planned, we would have fewer homeless people on our streets today.
- 17 Shh! I'd be grateful unless you made comments during the concert.
- 18 Always take a basic medicine kit on holiday in case you fall ill.
- 19 Even they go down with flu after they've had the vaccination, it's likely to be less serious.
- 20 Those concerned by the long-term effects of global warming believe that the damage has been done, whether we take remedial steps now

### The subjunctive and 'unreal' uses of past forms

Five of these sentences contain grammatical mistakes. Tick ( ) the correct sentences, then find and correct the mistakes.

#### Example

If only we-can see the situation through his eves.

- 2 | wish i would have green eyes like Elizabeth Taylor . . .
- 3 The regulations require that each defendant in turn submit a sworn statement to the court
- 4 If you only paid more attention!
- 5 It's high time we didn't act so impulsively
- 6 If only the car would have been going more slowly! .....
- 7 Long lives the President!
- 8 If only that I had known.

#### Circle the best explanation (a or b).

#### Example

I'd sooner you paid me cash.

- a I expect you to pay me soon.
- (b) I prefer to be paid in cash.
- 9 If only I was as tall as my brother.
  - a I used to be as tall as my brother.
  - b I am shorter than my brother.
- 10 Get a move on! It's high time we left for the airport.
  - a We are late.
  - b We have just left.
- 11 Suppose we win the competition.
  - a I think we have a chance of winning.
  - b Winning is extremely unlikely.
- 12 He bosses everyone around as if he owned the place.
  - a He owns the place.
  - b He doesn't own the place.

- 13 She wishes she had a home of her own.
  - a She likes living in her own place.
  - b She would like to live in her own place.
- 14 If only I could wear such bright clothes.
  - a Bright clothes don't suit me.
  - b I'm the only one who can wear bright clothes.

Complete each sentence so that it means the same as the preceding sentence(s).

#### Example

I regret leaving the children with her.

I wish I hadn't left the children with her.

- 15 You ought to start doing your homework. It's high time you .
- 17 I don't want you to bring that smelly dog into this house.

I'd rather you

- 18 I prefer wearing natural fabrics.
  I'd sooner
- 19 He sounds quite convincing. Perhaps he knows what he is talking about.

  He sounds as though
- 20 You are always talking with your mouth full. I want you to stop doing it.
  I wish you

### -ing forms and infinitives

Write suitable forms of the word(s) in brackets, putting verbs into an -ing form (e.g. returning) or infinitive form (e.g. to return). You may need to change or add words.

-l'n	Example I'm looking forward to her returning with good news. (she/return)		
1	I'm afraid you'll have to move your car, sir. There is here. (not/park)		
2	For evil it is only necessary that the good do nothing (succeed)		
3	Sylvia rang her doctor an appointment. (make)		
4	The thing I most enjoy about my job is people with problems. (help)		
5	Pressure from the board led to the company. (he/leave)		
6	The colonel ordered a day's leave in order the morale of the troops. (boost)		
7	We got there only that the concert had been cancelled. (find)		
8	You're welcome yourself to anything from the fridge. (help)		
9	It's strange that she didn't mention him at the party. (meet)		
10	I really can't risk these awful programmes. (the children/see)		
11	Don't disturb me, I've got a report by lunchtime. (write)		
12	l can't stand animals in pain. (see)		
13	I must remember my alarm clock tonight. (set)		
14	Dean's so sorry; he really didn't mean you. (hurt)		
15	You won't find any spare parts; they stopped them ages ago. (make)		

16	We went on even after the music had stopped. (dance)
17	We regret the cancellation of today's service due to ill health. (announce)
18	As the plane flew over we saw the workers the new opera house.
	(build)
(4)	e of these sentences contain mistakes. Tick the correct sentences, then find and rect the mistakes.
	e agreed meeting outside the cinema at nine.  to meet
19	The dispensing medical aid is the main activity of the Red Cross.
20	Everyone in the office was fed up with Brian's moaning.
21	The new manager is sure to looking into ways to cut costs.
22	He got caught when the boss found making personal phone calls.
23	The airline allowed us taking the wheelchair on board.
24	We were furious when the judge ordered to pay compensation.
25	Despite budget constraints the BBC continues to make innovative programmes.
	** * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * *

### Participle and infinitive phrases

Underline the correct alternative in italics.

#### Example

Not to have Not having an invitation, I couldn't get into the party.

- 1 He didn't own/Not owning a watch, Peter was often late.
- 2 Writing in the 'Evening Standard', an article/author complained about the lack of disabled facilities on the underground.
- 3 Objects bought/buying in junk shops can often turn out to be quite valuable
- 4 Neil Armstrong was the first man walking/to walk on the moon.
- 5 'It's only me!' she said, opening/she opened the door.
- 6 Their long-term plan was the company/for the company to expand into Asia.
- 7 Hilary got to the station only finding to find that the train had already left.
- 8 Generally to speak/speaking, our best business comes via our website.

Complete each sentence using the number of words indicated in brackets, so that the sentence means the same as the one(s) before it.

#### Examples

Sally's only regret was that she hadn't had any children.

Not having had any children was Sally's only regret. (3 words)

Brian moved to Manchester so that he could be closer to his ailing parents.

Brian moved to Manchester ..... to be closer to his ailing parents. (2 words)

- 9 They couldn't buy the house owing to the fact that the bank had refused their loan application.
  - Their loan application ...... they weren't able to buy the house. (3 words)
- 10 He is not rich so he won't be able to afford it.
  ... rich, he won't be able to afford it. (2 words)

11 If you service it regularly, the engine should last for 200,000 kilometres.

regularly, the engine should last for 200,000 kilometres. (1 word)

- 13 My proudest possession is this watch. My grandfather left it to me.

  The watch ...... to me by my grandfather is my proudest possession.

  (1 word)
- 14 John felt too ashamed to carry on because he hadn't kept his word.

  his word, John felt too ashamed to carry on. (3 words)
- 15 The children always had plenty to do because they lived near the sports centre.

  . near the sports centre, the children always had plenty to do.

  [1 word]
- 16 As he had already passed his medical, Dean was able to start immediately.

  . his medical, Dean was able to start immediately. (2 words)
- 17 Their worst mistake was that they did not apply sooner.
  Their worst mistake was . . sooner. (4 words)
- 19 David bought a laptop so that he could access his e-mails when he was travelling David bought a laptop . . . his e-mails when he was travelling. (2 words)

#### Multi-word verbs

Rewrite these sentences replacing the underlined words with the words in brackets. Make any necessary changes to word order.

Example

She repaid the debt punctually. (on time/paid/back/it)

she paid it back on time.

- 1 The whole story was invented by Suzy's brother. (by/him/made/was/up)
- 2 Maintain the good work, (up/it/keep)

..............

- 3 Make sure you <u>carefully follow</u> the guidelines. (strictly/to/stick)
- 4 This tie doesn't match that shirt. (it/with/go)
- 5 We met my wife's cousin by chance at the museum. (into/him/ran)
- 6 These are the beliefs <u>our movement upholds</u>. (stands/which/for/our movement)
- 7 The company won't tolerate this kind of behaviour. (with/it/put/up)
- 8 I revealed the secret to Elizabeth. (it/her/.n/let/on)

Eight of the following sentences contain grammatical mistakes or an inappropriate verb or multi-word verb. Tick ( ) the correct sentences and correct the others.

#### **Examples**

- 9 That division was taken by head office over.
- 10 The very first breakout of the disease was reported in Namibia ..
- 11 Steve was left by his ex-girlfriend out from her wedding invitation list.
- 12 It is a condition of receiving this Internet account that you do not give away your confidential PIN number to any third party.
- 13 Could you activate the kettle, darling? I'm dying for a cup of tea.
- 14 He feli down the floor and hurt himself
- 15 Come on! We re going to be late!
- 16 The plane took off the ground at incredible speed
- 17 The government brought recently in some legislation to deal with the problem.
- 18 There are few people for whom he cares so deeply.
- 19 They took Clive up on his invitation.
- 20 We look forward eagerly to your wedding.

### **Dependent prepositions**

Thirteen of these sentences contain mistakes. Tick (✓) the correct sentences, then find and correct the mistakes.

#### Example

The primary purpose of the police is to protect people of criminals. . . from.

- I The supervisor said I shouldn't have shouted at the client so I had to apologise to.
- 2 I never really know whether I should insist on sit at the top table or not. ..........
- 3 The waiter was quite amazed at our eating everything so quickly.
- 4 All my friends agree to the government's new policy on third world debt.
- 5 Sylvia was astonished at that her boyfriend had behaved so atrociously.
- 6 You know I'm really not that interested in if he's coming with us or not. ...........
- 7 David's quarrelled his wife over selling the house
- 8 Please make an effort. The children are really depending on you their party costumes.
- 9 Can you tell us if the minister has stopped the by-pass from going ahead?
- 10 I plame my parents for my bad habits

. . . . . .

- 11 The old persons' home will provide Sam for a room. . . . .
- 12 Don't worry, the guide's going to fully explain me all the details. . . . . .
- 13 He succeeded in winning the first round but I'm afraid he didn't have any success in beating his second opponent.
- 14 The auditors initially issued a demand for full repayment but then changed their minds and simply demanded for a token contribution.

- 15 Lack of nutrients caused serious damage to growing ......
- 16 Wendy's sarcastic comments made me curious about her motives. .....
- 18 I don't mind driving but I'm really scared by
- 19 I'd prefer somewhere else; I'm not too keen on Thai food, .....
- 20 Apparently Donna's angry with her boss; he's given her the late shift yet again.

### Modal verbs (1): can, could, may, might, be able to

Fifteen of the sentences below contain mistakes with modal verbs. Tick (✓) the correct sentences, then find and correct the mistakes.

#### Examples

We took an exam yesterday and I couldn't answer any of the questions.

I could be promoted last year but I preferred to stay on the shop floor. ... could have been

- 1 When I finish the course next year I can speak perfect French.
- 2 You'll have to call a cab. I can't have been able to drive since I broke my arm last June.
- 3 This computer is so simple that it is able to be operated by anyone.

. . . . . .

- 4 The job interview was a disaster; I could only answer half the questions!
- 5 When she was riding in the woods last week, Helen fell off her horse but luckily she could get back on and ride home.
- 6 It's really annoying. Surely you knew they didn't accept traveller's cheques at that hotel. You could warn me before I left!
- 7 These days she is rather slow but as a child she could run like the wind.
- 8 What an excellent choice of restaurant. I can't have chosen better if I'd made the reservation myself!
- 9 There can be life on Saturn.

.... . . .. .. ...

- 10 My father could be a star in the 1980s, it's a pity that he never really tried.

- 12 Jane's late. She can be stuck in a traffic jam.
- 13 A new car! What can she be thinking of!

. . . . . .

- 14 I heard your sales results were excellent May you get a bonus this year?
- 15 Don't get too anxious; there may well be a simple explanation for it.
- 16 Don't bother replying as I may have changed address by the time you read this.
- 17 Steve couldn't steal it. I'm sure he was at home all week.

. . . .

- 18 Elizabeth can get better results if she paid more attention to her homework.
- 19 I'l, be able to meet you after the lesson
- 20 I'm not sure about tomorrow night. I may be on call ..........
- 21 Excuse me. Am I able to use your phone?

. . .

- 22 Well, don't worry. You could always try again tomorrow. .....
- 23 I could leave work early yesterday my boss gave me permission. .....
- 24 You might get me some bin liners if it's not too much trouble.
- 25 People might not smoke on British Airways flights; it's forbidden.

### Modal verbs (2): must, should, ought to, have to, need to

Underline the best choice of word(s) in *italics* in each of these sentences.

#### Example

As they get older, teenagers <u>should</u> I had better be treated more like adults.

- 1 To must/Having to listen to hip-hop music all evening is my idea of torture!
- 2 The landlord ought to lought have taken his responsibilities more seriously.
- 3 This company is awful to work for. We must/have to account for every minute of the day.
- 4 Do you know if we *must/have to* have visas for the Caribbean?
- 5 The newspaper shouldn't have/mustn't have printed the rumour without concrete evidence.
- 6 What a state my shoes are in! They need/must repairing
- 7 We have tolare supposed to put our bags in the lockers, but most people take them into the gym.
- 8 We couldn't go/mustn't have gone into the disco because we were too young.
- 9 Polite notice: children do not have tolare not allowed to play on the grass.
- 10 This offer is not open to current employees. Participants must not have not have been employed by the company in the last four years.
- 11 We needn't/needn't to have booked the tickets in advance; there were plenty left.
- 12 With our new range of hair products, you mustn't/don't have to spend hours caring for your hair.
- 13 There wasn't anyone on the nightclub door so we didn't need to showlneedn't have shown proof of our age.
- 14 As we're getting a lodger, we'd better/better to have some more keys cut.

- 15 Our advice is that even people as young as twenty-five should/must consider a personal pension.
- 16 You won't have to/had better not tell Shirley what you saw it will only upset her and she'll blame you.
- 17 The ground's soaking outside it must raining/be raining quite heavily.
- 18 If you bring your receipt, there shouldn't/mustn't be any difficulty with a refund.
- 19 Lewis *must have/should have* been training very hard to develop muscles like that!
- 20 I walked into the showroom and saw the car, and I knew I had to have/must have had it

### Modal verbs (3): will, would, shall

Complete the sentences with will, 'll, won't, would, wouldn't or shall and the correct form of the words in brackets.

#### Example

The new play on Broadway is really good, but I don't like Sean Penn in it. Kevin Bacon would be...... (be) much better.

- 2 'I wonder where Dad is.' 'He . . . . (drive) to the airport, I should think.'
- 4 At this point in the season, the parents ...... (eat) their young rather than allow a predator to attack them.
- 6 The PA ...... (not/book) my flights. She says it isn't in her job description.
- 7 Dad ...... (always/help) us out financially when we were at university. however difficult it was for him.
- 8 The police interrogated the terrorist for more than four hours, but she . . . (not/reveal) the names of her co-conspirators.
- 9 You look tired. .. (I/make) supper this evening?
- 10 What ...... (we/do) with Tom if he doesn't get into university?
- 11 ...... (you/be) so kind as to help me across the road, young man?

Circle the correct meaning or interpretation (a or b) for each sentence.

#### Example

It would be so nice to live by the sea.

- a The speaker lives by the sea.
- (b) The speaker doesn't live by the sea.
- 13 If anyone rings in the next few minutes, I'll be in the storeroom.
  - a I'm in the storeroom now.
  - b I'm going to the storeroom.
- 14 Ralph isn't here right now, I'm afraid. He'll be at the office.
  - a He is at the office now.
  - b He's on his way to the office.
- 15 I've tried it again and again but the computer just won't accept my disc. I don't understand it.
  - a I'm annoyed with the computer.
  - b I am not concerned about the computer.
- 16 It's a relief that Annie's changed class. She would argue with everything I said.
  - a I didn't mind the arguments.
  - b The arguments annoyed me.
- 17 The secretary shall minute the proceedings of each meeting
  - a The secretary is offering to do it.
  - b The secretary is instructed to do it.
- 18 'It looks as though the fuel crisis is over.'
  'I wouldn't be too sure.'
  - a The second speaker agrees.
  - b The second speaker doesn't agree.
- 19 It would be so nice to have a little cottage in the country.
  - a The speaker doesn't have a cottage.
  - b The speaker has a cottage.
- 20 I would have liked to meet the professor while he was here
  - a The speaker met the professor.
  - b The speaker didn't meet the professor.

### Auxiliaries, have (got), do

Ten of these sentences contain mistakes or errors of style. Tick (✓) the correct sentences, then find and correct the mistakes. Note that some sentences may be correct in spoken English, not in written English.

#### **Example**

- We'ven't been able to access the website since yesterday evening. We haven't
- 1 The builders were certainly working hard; they were plastering the kitchen, were painting the staircase and were tiling the bathroom.
- 2 Kevin's exhausted; its been a hectic day.
- 3 'The battery's flat. You didn't turn the lights off, did you?' 'Yes, I did turn them off, I remember it distinctly.'
- 4 'Miranda's over the moon. She's always wanted to have got a sports car.'
- 5 They won't have anyone smoking in their house
- 6 He's watching television when she arrived at the flat . . .
- 7 'Why didn't you ask Graham about the reorganisation plan?' 'What was the point? He wouldn't've known anything about it.'
- 8 Will you have got a good weekly income from your pension when you retire?
- 9 She's such a naughty child; she could really do some strict discipline!
- 10 Do help yourself to a drink. .....

- 13 Members can have got two cards each.
- 15 We used to have got a house in the country before Jack lost his job. .....

### **Confusing verbs**

Replace the expressions in *italics* in these sentences using a suitable form of *make* or *do*.

#### Example

- I like listening to the radio while washing the dishes. ...doing.
- 1 Sammy earns a lot more than I did at his age .....
- 2 That old curtain fabric has become a marveilous ball gown.
- 3 You can go out after you have completed your homework. .....
- 4 What an awful outfit; you'd think she had sewn it herself!
- 6 She is undertaking research into brand name recognition . . .
- 7 Make sure you brush your teeth before you go to bed. .....
- 8 Stop dithering. You must come up with a decision now.

Underline the best form in *italics* in each of these sentences.

#### Example

Would you mind if I did Imade a suggestion about this?

- 9 Sue's had/taken a real dislike to her new supervisor.
- 10 It's high time the committee had/took action over this flagrant abuse.
- 11 Grace has *gone/been* on holiday in Jamaica and she's come back with a lovely tan.
- 12 I'm a little faint. Could I *liellay* down on the sofa for a minute?
- 13 The men have just lain/laid a brand new carpet in the bedroom.
- 14 I was so tired yesterday that I lay/hed in bed for most of the day.

- 15 Anatoly speaks/talks English with a strong accent.
- 16 The Prime Minister spoke/talked at the international conference in Geneva.
- 17 She's such a chatterbox, we were up half the night speaking/talking!
- 18 What do you think of that plan to riselraise the 'Titanic' from the seabed?
- 19 I'm afraid a rather serious problem has raised/arisen.
- 20 Tax rates always seem to be rising/raising these days.
- 21 They robbed/stole my purse in broad daylight!
- 22 I regret to inform you that the bank will be unable to lend/borrow the sum you have requested.
- 23 Graham and Lucy are coming here for the weekend and I think they are bringing/taking the children with them.
- 24 Sorry I'm home so late, I took/brought the car to work today and I got stuck in a traffic iam.
- 25 Would you mind *bringing/fetching* the children from school next Tuesday?

### **Adjectives**

Fifteen of these sentences have mistakes.
These may be an incorrect word, a spelling mistake or an error in word order. Tick ( ) the five correct sentences, then underline the mistakes in the others and write the corrections.

Examples I'm afraid the only seat available is on the early morning flight.		
Our squad national is one of the best this country has ever producednational squad		
1	London features numerous historics sites such as Westminster Abbey.	
2	I'm writing a report on the political attitudes of the young's.	
3	The health care needs of the old are a major problem for many western countries.	
4	We've won first prize? What amazing!	
5	A plant being built outside the town is chemical.	
6	Try not to disturb the asleep children	
7	They are doing experiments on alive animals	
8	Please don't tell me negative anything	
9	I'm afraid that's the only answer possible	
0	Our latest release is a film suitable for all ages.	
1	The involved people will be caught and severely punished	
	* * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * *	

- 12 We will be supplying an antidote to all those infected by the virus.
- 13 To avoid theft please make use of the provided security boxes.
- 14 The report into the rail crash was rather worried
- 15 I a ways seem to play for the lost team!
- 16 Interest in Latino music is no longer confined to speaking Spanish audiences.
- 17 We've inherited a dining mahogany table from my great aunt.
- 18 They're selling that Victorian wonderful house on the corner.
- 19 The players will be wearing blue and red striped shirts for today's match.
- 20 The interview panel felt the applicant was well-informed and honest, capable.

### Comparison

Nine of these sentences contain mistakes. Tick (1/2) the correct sentences, then find and correct the mistakes.

#### Example

Which of these three houses is the expensivest? ... most expensive . . .

- 1 Come on, you've got to admit she's much slimer than you! .....
- 2 She's always saying she's better looking than I.
- 3 Our cat Whiskers has been much more lively since we added vitamin supplements to her diet
- 4 We felt the male character was realer than the female, who seemed very artificial.
- 5 'Which do you prefer, darling, the brown or the green?'

'Oh, the green is definitely the best.'

- 6 I'm most proudest of this one. I won it against really stiff competition. ......
- 7 The divorce has made him the most unhappy man in the street, don't you think?
- 8 That special diet has worked miracles. He's much less fat than he used to be.
- 9 The eldest piece in the museum is this Egyptian amulet from the Third Dynasty.
- 10 Hasn't their eldest son just landed some sort of job in Seattle? .....
- 11 Our new social security scheme is lots more generous than the previous Government's.
- 12 Windsor Castle is the largest occupied castle of Britain. . . .
- 13 Things are about as worse as they can get.

- 14 Children these days seem to get ruder and ruder and ruder. .....
- 15 I'm angrier than upset. .....

Complete each sentence so that it means exactly the same as the preceding one. You must include the word(s) in brackets.

#### Example

I predicted the weather would be very hot and I was right. (just as)
The weather was just as hot as I predicted.

- 18 Getting a made-to-measure suit was much cheaper than I expected. (not nearly)
  Getting a made-to-measure suit . . . .
- 19 I couldn't open the lock because it was very cold. (that)
  It . . . . . open the lock.
- 20 He gets increasingly angry as he becomes more frustrated. (angrier)

  The more he gets

### Gradable and ungradable adjectives

Five of these sentences contain mistakes with the adverbs and adjectives. Tick (\*) the correct sentences and underline the mistakes.

#### **Examples**

Some of these new laptops are hideously expensive. ✓

As usual he bought me something <u>absolutely</u> cheap

- 1 Iceland is colder than Sweden.
- 2 Casualties during the Crimean War were very enormous.
- 3 Steve's new girlfriend is very attractive.
- 4 Clients are advised that Miami tends to be more boiling than Los Angeles during the winter months.
- 5 Milan cathedral is slightly huge.
- 6 Thank you. That really was a most delicious meal!
- 7 In many areas of Europe the wolf is virtually extinct.
- 8 My friend told me the film was dead exciting.
- 9 Last night's episode was really gripping.
- 10 I can't stand that actor; he's absolutely ugly.
- 11 The club's very empty for a Saturday night.
- 12 It's slightly free to get in; less than one Euro, in fact.

Choose the most appropriate adverb a, b or c, to fill each gap.

- 13 Jim hates speaking in public; he's .....shy.
  - a absolutely b completely c painfully
- 14 The Wimbledon final was .... exciting. a absolutely b utterly c terribly
- 15 Your new bracelet's beautiful. It looks ...... expensive.
  a very b completely c absolutely
- 16 I think I'd better lie down; I feel ......sick.
  a practically b a little bit c virtually
- 17 Yes, sir. You're ...... correct. I'll give you a refund.
  a quite b very c rather
- 18 Since the accident Clive has been ......
  paralysed.
  a totally b absolutely c very
- 19 After a month with no rain the grass is ...... dead.

  a slightly b almost c somewhat
- 20 I wasn't expecting much but, surprisingly, the play was ...... good.
  a nearly b absolutely c quite

#### **Adverbs**

Underline the correct form or phrase in italics.

#### Example

I haven't seen that much of them latellately.

- 1 You're bound to be promoted; the boss thinks very *high/highly* of you.
- 2 The elephant trek took us *deep/deeply* into the rainforest.
- 3 In our school fifty roughly/roughly fifty students have mobile phones.
- 4 As we descended the hill the car began to go more fast/faster.
- 5 I've had a lot of insomnia recently. I only slept yesterday/Yesterday I only slept four hours
- 6 Weekly I get paid! get paid weekly, so I can pay the rent on Saturday.
- 7 Here lies the tomb/The tomb here lies of Sir Jasper Willoughby.
- 8 The train strike won't affect her, she arrives usually/usually arrives by taxi.
- 9 Liz isn't our most punctual member of staff, she is oftenloften is late for work.
- 10 I'm afraid that we still don't/don't still know his name.
- 11 You'll never get your money back because the company isn't trading any longerlany longer trading.
- 12 My parents aren't very sociable, in fact they go out hardly ever/hardly ever go out.
- 13 I'm sorry that the kids badly behaved/ behaved badly while you were babysitting.

Rewrite these sentences, putting the adverb in brackets in the correct position.

#### Example

She has got a place in the shortlist. (definitely)

She has definitely got a place in the shortlist.

- 14 I thought his performance was good. (pretty)
- 15 The patient's body is now entirely free of symptoms. (almost)
- 16 These days I take my health much more seriously. (probably)
- 17 She's my worst enemy and I don't like her. (really)
- 18 Rejected, Harriet turned to food for comfort. (emotionally)
- 19 I bumped into your brother at the supermarket. (incidentally)
- 20 I understood everything because the teacher answered the question. (clearly)

### **Nouns and noun phrases**

In each sentence, either one or both of the forms in *italics* is correct. Tick ( $\checkmark$ ) the sentences where both forms are correct. Underline the correct form in the others.

#### Example

Mumps is/are not too problematic if contracted in childhood, but can be dangerous in later life.

- 1 The chair/chairwoman has just phoned to say she's been delayed in traffic.
- 2 For really good electric pianos/pianoes, have a look in Marston's.
- 3 Corn circles are one of the strangest phenomenons/phenomena of recent times.
- 4 Parliament consists of 653 MP's/MPs, about two-thirds of whom belong to the Government.
- 5 For this dish, you need to weigh the ingredients carefully on the kitchen scale/kitchen scales.
- 6 The Asthma Helpline will be able to give you advice/on advice.
- 7 This checkout is for customers with fewer/less than five items only.
- 8 He was hit on the head by stonela stone and had to go to hospital.
- 9 The supermarket is doing a lot of different fruit/fruits from the Far East at the moment.
- 10 The most exciting event for most British viewers in the Sydney Olympics was/were the rowing finals.
- 11 The Society's President, against the wishes of the other founder members, has/have agreed to the sale.
- 12 Bread and butter *is/are* eaten with meals by most people in the North of England.
- 13 'The Three Kings' was/were a great success for George Clooney.
- 14 Have you thought about doing gymnastics? I think it's/they're very good for you.
- 15 Recent events prove the saying that twentyfour hours *is/are* a long time in politics.

- 16 The Council's team of social workers is/are to be commended for their actions.
- 1 / The United Nations *is/are* sending a special envoy to the conflict zone.
- 18 I'll take you to the station if you give me shout/a shout when you're ready.
- 19 The attack on the Minister was/The people attacked the Minister and it was unprovoked and extremely vicious.
- 20 The first *outbreak/breakout* of the epidemic was in Zaire in the 1980s.

### Possessives and compound nouns

Eighteen of these sentences contain mistakes. Tick (✔) the correct sentences, then find the mistakes and correct them.

#### Example

Have you met the new girlfriend of my stepson vet?

Have you met my stepson's new girlfriend yet?

- 1 Did you notice that greasy stain on a side of our sofa?
- 2 Dave's company has been awarded a contract to repair all the buses' engines.
- 3 People in this street are very proud of their's manicured front lawns. .......
- 4 Isn't she your secretary's brother's boss?
- 5 These gloves look familiar; I think they're Joe's
- 6 The villa we're borrowing belongs to my sister's-in-law's parents.
- 7 I adore Lennon's and McCartney's music, especially the early stuff.
- 8 This is Mario, he's a colleague of Professor Grigson. . .
- 9 I might be able to get you an interview; the owner's a friend of me.
- 10 Is that the new car of Hilary?
- 12 Jem saw a fantastic article in the local paper of today. .....
- 13 Galileo was NASA's biggest project.
- 14 It's in a great location, only five minutes' walk from the supermarket.
- 15 Could you give me a dollar's worth of those bananas, please? .....

- 16 How about all of us going back to the house of my brother for some coffee?
- 17 Did you manage to get an appointment at the doctor s?
- 18 Oh, for the sake of heaven, can't you get a move on?
- 19 He's doing some research for his dissertation on anthropology's history. .....
- 20 The celebrities acknowledged the crowd's cheers who lined the street.
- 21 Astronomers predict an eclipse of the sun on April the thirteenth's morning.
- 22 Inspector Walters achieved fame with the famous serial killer's arrest.
- 23 Commentators have been stunned by the scale of the scandal. .....
- 24 The processor is the computer's main component, wouldn't you agree?
- 25 This term the class will be reading the short stories' collection of Graham Greene.
- 26 Everyone's been admiring my expensive wife's car. ......
- 27 If there's one thing I can't stand it's fussy children's clothes.
- 28 There's a beautiful old house for sale at the local estate's agent's. .. .
- 29 If you want a really unique wedding dress, you need to find a good maker of dresses.
- 30 Great news the college is going to give me a one-year sabbatical. .....

#### **Pronouns**

Ten of these sentences contain mistakes. Tick () the correct sentences, then find and correct the mistakes.

#### Example

Someone he called in the middle of the night – I don't know who it was.

Someone called in the middle of the night

- 1 We always wash up the dog's dishes separately. This cloth is for our dishes and that one is for its.
- 2 It's not their deckchair. It's our! Don't you recognise it?
- 3 E-mails they have become a real nuisance. I receive about thirty a day now.
- 4 Those plastic cakes look good enough to eat them!
- 5 The ski instructor didn't actually ski any better than me.
- 6 Don't tell anyone else about the surprise party. It's between you and I!
- 7 Could all of you people move a few metres to the left, please?
- 8 If you'd like a new tennis racket, I can get you a one very cheaply.
- 9 It's been an excellent course. I've enjoyed very much.
- 10 Some elderly people have difficulty in remembering themselves what happened only a few hours before.

- 11 Myself, I'm really not keen on savoury and sweet flavours together.
- 12 After John had been in captivity for three years, he and his wife had a lot to tell themselves.
- 13 They haven't cleaned the stairwells in our flats for over a month now.
- 14 The refugees have arrived and everybody seem quite happy with the living arrangements.

In the following sentences, one, two or all three of the answers (a-c) may be correct. Tick ( $\checkmark$ ) all of the correct answers.

#### Example

Each interviewee should arrive promptly for interview

- a his ✓ b his/her ✓ c their ✓
- 15 It's ...... who asked for the music to be turned down.
  - a them b them ones c they
- 16 Come on! Own up! Who's left ...... muddy boots in the kitchen again! a their b his/her c her
- 17 We had to take Damon to the vet yesterday.
  ....... 's got ear mites again.
  a It b He c Himself
- 18 I'd like to treat ...... to a night at the opera.
  a you b yourself c myself
- 19 The hostile tribes went to war with a one another b each other c themselves
- 20 In cases like these, ...... can understand the motive behind the attack.
  - a one b you c we

### **Determiners**

Complete each sentence with a/an, the or – (no article).

#### Example

All our towels are made of ...... Egyptian cotton.

- 1 Ruthless poachers hunt ...... elephant for the valuable ivory of its tusks.
- 2 Next week I'll be reviewing a stunning new film. ...... film stars Michael Douglas and is directed by Curtis Hanson.
- 3 Yesterday evening's Nature Scope about ... sun's future worried a large number of viewers.
- 4 Muhammad Ali was voted ...... greatest sports personality of the twentieth century.
- 5 It is commonly accepted today that ....... brown bread is good for you.
- 6 Many research scientists are inspired by ...... hope of curing diseases by genetic engineering
- 7 Fewer people attend ...... church regularly now than twenty years ago.
- 8 Julianne studied for seven years to become ...... criminal lawyer
- 9 Like many people, I learnt to play ...... piano when I was a child, but gave it up in my teens.
- 10 We recommend that children and teenagers are inoculated against ...... meningitis.

Underline the correct determiner or determiners in each sentence (- = no article). In some cases two may be correct.

#### Example

None/Some/Both neighbours rushed to the aid of the elderly woman.

- 11 It costs £10 a/an/- hour to hire the squash court.
- 12 There's a/the/- good wine bar in the town centre, isn't there?
- 13 A/The/— Mr Jones came to see you this afternoon.
- 14 My parents grew up in the 1950s. In the/these/those days there was far less freedom than there is now.
- 15 This/That/A woman I'd never met before came up to me in the bank and asked if she could borrow £10!
- 16 It's freezing! I've never known a winter —/this/that cold before.
- 17 Isn't there any/some/the way that you can ensure delivery tomorrow?
- 18 Every/All/Each the children in the school have to take up at least one sport.
- 19 We have asked our retail outlets to return both/both of/some the new models for further inspection.
- 20 Much/A lot/A few depends on the final outcome of the negotiations.

### **Prepositions**

Tick (✓) the correct answer.

#### Example

The animal spun round suddenly and hissed violently ..... me.

a to b by

- 1 We used to be able to hear the sonic boom of Concorde as it flew ..... the house. a above b over c on top of
- 2 Is the rank of sergeant .... the rank of corporal in the British army? b behind a underneath
- 3 The Grand Bazaar ..... Istanbul is the largest covered market in the world. a at b in c by
- 4 The Council is building a new office .......... the car park of the Multiplex cinema. a at b behind c after
- 5 The zookeeper was amazing he calmly walked ..... the lion and took the bag out of its mouth. c towards a near b up to
- 6 Your appointment with the consultant is at 6.30 .... the evening of the 11th. a in bat con
- 7 The new soap opera on BBC2 is starting ..... tomorrow b a at c on
- 8 The walking tour will be leaving promptly ..... time in order to cover the itinerary. a on b in c at
- 9 Louis was unable to name one person .... all his acquaintances that he could truly call a friend b under c among
- 10 The hotel's bedding is made only ..... the finest cottons and linens. a of b in c with

a between

- 11 Well, .... my opinion, our neighbours could be a lot noisier and more disruptive than they actually are.
  - a from b according to
- 12 Despite .... no rain for weeks, the garden appears to be flourishing. a have b that we have had c having

Six of these sentences contain mistakes with prepositions in italics. Tick (v) the correct sentences, then find and correct the mistakes.

#### Example

The house was undamaged in the floods, except the carpets. except for

- 13 We had to put up with her moaning for the whole journey up to Glasgow! .....
- 14 Harriet advanced to her position in the company by means some strategic friendsh ps
- 15 The post office is behind just the petrol station. You can't miss it.
- 16 Why don't you go towards that police officer and ask him the way? .....
- 17 The divorce became much more expensive and messier because of that solicitors became involved.
- 18 From what they said on the weather forecast yesterday, we're in for a good weekend.
- 19 Apart from to dismantle the lighting, the band took only fifteen minutes to pack up
- 20 I've been offered the job in Helsinki for that I applied

## Word order and verb patterns

For each sentence below, you are given three possible ways of completing it. Only two are correct. Tick () the correct ones.

#### Example

Although the girl was clearly in her teens, she appeared

- a the child's mother.
- b to be the child's mother.
- c fond of the child v
- 1 During an interview the Minister told
  a the nation that she would be resigning.
  b to the nation that she would be resigning.
  c the interviewer a lie about his resignation.
- 2 Passengers stumbled and luggage flew from the racks as the driver suddenly a stopped. b stopped the train. c stopped to the train.
- 3 The low turnout of townspeople at the meeting made the new councillor a to get angry. b angry. c chairman of the committee.
- 4 Surely you don't always want to remain a a shop worker? b to be a shop worker? c in his shadow?
- 5 When Jean-Paul Gaultier arrived on the scene, he appeared
  - a the natural successor to Westwood.
  - b to be the natural successor to Westwood.
  - c refreshingly new and different.
- 6 As part of their launch, the new travel company offered
  - a their first customer a free holiday.
  - b a free holiday to their first customer.
  - c to their first customer a free holiday.
- 7 The girl's passion for the man made her a sign the confession.
  - b to sign the confession.
  - c blind to his faults.
- 8 The never-ending care and devotion of the nurses in the hospital helped
  - a to overcome cancer my father.
  - b my father overcome cancer.
  - c my father to overcome cancer.

The words in brackets are in the wrong order. Rewrite them in the correct order.

#### Example

When we won the lottery last year, [new/we/our/house/parents/bought/a].
...we bought our parents a new house.......

- 9 In the play, [the/Princess/Duke/really/the/loves], but unfortunately his love isn't reciprocated.
- 10 [quote/you/could/provide/a/formal]? If you put it in writing, we'll accept it. .....
- 12 [Bettina/yacht/named/John/the] after his wife, who had recently passed away.
- 13 The arrival of the Shakespearean actor [amount/company/of/the/brought/certain/class/a]
- 14 The Millers are just leaving. [will/show/motorway/them/the/you/way/to/the]? You go past the slip road, don't you?
- 15 The children at the party were delighted when [rabbit/hat/from/a/the/magician/pulled/his].
- 16 The warden told [that/want/see/visitors/ prisoner/the/didn't/them/the/to].
- 17 [machine/me/use/show/can/you/how/to/this]?
  I'm useless with anything mechanical.
- 18 We have to take on the third applicant; [enough/she/well-qualified/had/experience/ and/was/she]
- 19 The new design of the magazine [brighter/is/the/one/previous/much/than].
- 20 The play was a total disaster! [left/first act/we/as soon as/over/the/was].

### Relative clauses

Underline the correct alternative in italics.

### Example

Do you know anyone which/who can repair cigarette burns on clothes?

- 1 It's usually children from deprived backgrounds that/which cause the worst problems.
- 2 Captain Corelli's Mandolin, that/which topped the best-seller lists for weeks on end, was never formally publicised.
- 3 The Council provides bins in that/which waste paper can be deposited for recycling.
- 4 All cows over 30 months who/which may have been exposed to BSE will be destroyed
- 5 Address the reference 'to wholwhom it may concern', as it's very formal.
- 6 The town hall clock played a different tune at twelve every day, which/what amused the locals and attracted tourists.
- 7 'There's a lucky person in this hall who/whose lottery ticket has just won them £2,000!'
- 8 'Why don't you tell the police which/what you told me yesterday?'
- 9 The film is set in the period where/when the divide between rich and poor was much greater than it is now.
- 10 You can put the photo whichever/wherever you think it looks best.

Each sentence below contains a mistake. Find the mistakes and correct them.

#### Example

Orders for that we have received payment will be processed immediately. .... which

- 11 The jackets which this shop makes them are of excellent quality. ......
- 12 Jack has prepared his favourite dish from Delia Smith's recipe book, which he is about to eat
- 13 Can you get me one of those chocolate bars have got toffee in the middle?
- 14 The charity event raised over £1,000 for St Andrew's Hospice which opened last year.
- 15 I'd always wanted to take Graham to the city where I grew up in.
- 16 Have you invited the residents who living here on a temporary basis to the meeting?
- 17 He presented the visiting ambassador with a genuine Ming vase, that was worth over \$10,000
- 18 The bank robbery what I told you about is in the local newspaper. .....
- 19 High taxation is often the main reason which governments fall.
- 20 The new buyer identified a dozen new sources for the material, most of them proved to be reliable.

### Contrast

Fourteen of these sentences contain a mistake. Tick () the correct sentences, then correct the mistakes. (Some of the mistakes are in word order and level of formality.)

#### Example

We didn't have a lot of success with the garden, despite we worked hard on it.

- ...We didn't have a lot of success with the ... garden, although we worked hard on it.
- 1 I'm Gemini even though my mother is Capricorn . . .
- 2 My partner enjoys adventure holidays, whereas I prefer to laze on a beach.
- 3 But they'd travelled round the world, they had little experience of their own country.
- 4 Although the watch looked just like a Rolex, it had cost only \$50 in a market in Hong Kong.
- 5 The girl was released from prison, she had served although only a fraction of her sentence
- 6 Even although there was a Force 9 gale, the ship remained stable.
- 7 Visitors to tropical resorts still stay out in the sun too long, even they have had plenty of warning about the dangers of the sun's rays.
- 8 These exclusive villas are only a five-minute walk from the busy centre of the resort. They are a haven of peace and tranquility yet.
- 9 Her face, although deathly pale, was as stern as ever.
- 10 Ideal the house may appear at first sight, be sure to have a full structural survey.

- 11 In spite of he had a full course of driving lessons, he failed the test four times.
- 12 Despite she was a woman, Marie Curie made a successful career for herself in a maledominated world.
- 13 Despite having to do it in the dark, we managed to pitch the tent without problems.
- 14 Although the fact that the machine was under guarantee, the company refused to replace it
- 15 We had a really horrible flight back it was terrifying. The plane was all over the place and people were throwing up everywhere and screaming. Nonetheless, we got back safely.
- 16 However a dog may be a good companion for the elderly, the need to take it for walks may be a disadvantage.
- 17 Australian wines have long impressed European wine lovers. Australian, by contrast, champagne is a relative newcomer.
- 18 Most people appreciate the damage being done to the environment by cars. They won't stop using their own vehicles, however.
- 19 The new designs are not as innovative as the competition. They will certainly be popular as they are realistically priced, still.
- 20 The plumber charged \$100 for an hour's work. He did a good job, mind you.

## Introductory there and it

Complete the sentences with it or there (and a suitable form of be if necessary).

In to Sh	amples the state of Texas alonethere are, thought be more than thirty prisoners on death row, e foundit strange that he never ked about his childhood.
1	Once upon a time an oid woman who lived in a shoe.
2	During tomorrow's show an interval of fifteen minutes.
3	Luckily, not any difficulty finding the shop yesterday.
4	here
5	'Which street is it?' ' the first one on the left.'
6	seems to be something wrong with my modem.
7	Strange weather for June; freezing today!
8	hardly any fuel left in the car.
9	The army doesn't anticipate much opposition from the rebel forces.
0	looks as though our team's going to win, after all.
1	supposed to be several ticket machines outside the station.
2	Given the right monetary conditions, theoretically possible to achieve zero inflation.
3	From the swirling mist emerged a mysterious cloaked figure.
4	If the reorganisation goes ahead sure to be a lot of opposition from the sales force.
5	I leave to your conscience to decide whether to report the matter.

16 Frankly, ..... not surprising that

they were expelled.

- 17 We would appreciate ...... if you wouldn't say anything about this to the children.
- 18 Well, Mr Green, ...... nothing wrong with the heating element so perhaps we'd better look at the pump.
- 19 Hello, ...... Azco Market Research here; I wonder if you'd have a few minutes to take part in our telephone poll?
- 20 The ministry didn't expect ...... quite such a negative reaction from farmers.

## **Emphatic structures and inversion**

Make the sentences more emphatic by rewriting them, beginning with the word(s) in brackets.

### Example

They are doing something quite unprecedented. (What)

What they are doing is quite unprecedented.

- 1 The shellfish made Jasmine sick. (It was)
- 2 Greg lost the office keys. (lt)

. . . . .

- 3 He's approaching the problem from an entirely new angle. (What)
- 4 They've done something unforgivable. (What)
- 5 I came by bus because my car has broken down. (The reason)
- 6 A second chance is the only thing I want. (All)
- 7 The guy who told me about the new club was Zack. (Zack)
- 8 We have to leave our bags and coats here. (This)
- 9 They told me the same thing. (That's)

+ +

10 He's very unlucky in love! (Lucky)

- 11 The interactive displays were much more interesting. (Much)
- 12 The Lord Chancellor was also at the ceremony (Also)
- 13 The firefighters were unable to enter the building because the heat was so intense.

  (So)
- 14 A parking ticket was stuck to my windscreen. (Stuck)
- 15 Although they were defeated they managed to keep smiling. (Defeated)
- 16 A gnarled old oak tree stands beside the river bank. (Beside)
- 17 The midnight movie is after this. (Next)
- 18 The government has hardly ever suffered such an overwhelming defeat. (Seldom)
- 19 As soon as we arrived they announced that the show was cancelled (No sooner)
- 20 Refunds cannot be given under any circumstances. (Under)

## **Aspects of cohesion**

Rewrite the underlined sections of these sentences to avoid repetition.

#### Example

The dog winced as its owner kicked the dog once again. ......

- The American woman stepped off the train onto the crowded platform. The American woman was so striking that a hush fell over the people waiting to greet their loved ones.
- 2 I really don't like these modern paintings. I much prefer the paintings over there.
- 3 'Would you like some of these jelly beans?'
  'No, thanks. I only like the red jelly beans and there aren't any left.'
- 4 'Have you seen Billy, Martin and Greg today?' 'Yes. Billy, Martin and Greg were at the coffee bar this morning.' .....
- 5 I'm afraid we didn't complete the obstacle course as quickly as the other team completed it
- 6 'This lecture is really useless. I don't want to stay any longer.' 'No, I don't want to stay any longer
- 7 He asked me to give up my day off to help with the stocktaking, and he said he'd pay me extra to give it up.
- 8 My boss gave me a totally unexpected pay rise. I'd better thank her for giving me the pay rise.
- 9 'Do you think that Britain will win the bid to host the next World Cup?' 'I certainly hope they don't win it! It'll be chaos!'
- 10 Ask whether your parents are doing anything this weekend, and <u>if they aren't doing</u> anything, invite them to our party.

Eight of the sentences below either contain a mistake or could be expressed more concisely. Tick () the two correct sentences, then correct the mistakes.

#### Example

Nigel coughed nervously and Laura coughed nervously too.

... Nigel coughed nervously and so did Laura...

- 11 The best pizzas are not to be found in big, city-centre restaurants but they are to be found in small, backstreet restaurants.
- 12 The girls all wanted to watch the video of Romeo and Juliet. The boys weren't so keen because they didn't want to watch a romantic film. They were so enthusiastic because they knew that Romeo was Leonardo diCaprio!
- 13 'Would you like some white wine?' 'No, thanks. I prefer red one.'
- 14 The people opposite us sniffed at the acrid smell of smoke and so we did. .....
- 15 'You wanted me to ring you about the arrangements for the wedding.' 'So did I.'
- 17 Mervyn Jones failed to complete the 400 metres because tore a muscle in his leg
- 18 'Aren't they meeting us here?' 'Well, they must, because they weren't at home when I rang a few minutes ago.' ......
- 19 'Go to the Tate Modern without me. I'm not that interested in it.' 'Well, you should be! It's a great gallery.' ......
- 20 The President was unable to put through all the reforms that he had wanted to put through .

### Features of discourse

Circle the better option (a or b) for each space (1–7) in the text. Both options are grammatically correct; choose the most appropriate in the context.

Jane and Tom had been looking for a new home to buy for ages and they were excited about viewing the empty house in Garfield Road. (1) ...... so it was quite easy to find. Walking up to the front door they noticed that the garden was extremely unkempt and full of rubbish. (2) ....... Unfortunately the inside of the house was little better. From the state of the hallway it was clear that nobody had lived there for many years. Undaunted, Jane made straight for the kitchen. (3) ...... It wasn't a pleasant sight. (4) ..... Jane decided to see if the reception rooms were any better and walked back into the hall. (5) ....... , It was empty of furniture but with growing excitement Jane noticed a large boarded-up fireplace. She shouted for Tom to come and look at it. (6) ....... . So few houses had big fireplaces these days, and there was nothing she loved more than a house with a blazing log fire. (7) .......

- 1 a They knew the old church was opposite it.
  - b They knew it was opposite the old church.
- 2 a There was a burnt-out sofa and an old fridge which was lying on its side.
  - b A burnt-out sofa and an old fridge which was lying on its side were there.
- 3 a In any house it was the kitchen that she always wanted to see first.
  - b She always wanted to see the kitchen first in any house.
- 4 a Hidden under a thick layer of dust and grease were the kitchen walls and units.
  - b The kitchen walls and units were hidden under a thick layer of grease and dust.
- 5 a She stepped into the old dining room, pushing open a creaking mahogany door.
  - b Pushing open a creaking mahogany door, she stepped into the old dining room.
- 6 a This was exactly the kind of thing they had been hoping to find.
  - b They had been hoping to find exactly this kind of thing.

- 7 a Ever since her childhood spent in an old farmhouse in Scotland she had loved it.
  - b It was something she had loved ever since her childhood spent in an old farmhouse in Scotland

Choose the best word or phrase (a-n) from the box below to complete each sentence. Not all the options are needed.

- a At first b Furthermore c Nevertheless
- d Due to e After that f Consequently
- g The Prince h The Prince of Wales
- I To know the right people.
- i Knowing the right people.
- k Cheques should be
- I It would be nice if your cheque was
- m creepy n unnerving
- 8 Proof of status must be included with each application. .......... we require a signed and dated passport-sized photograph, which is non-returnable
- 9 Joseph never went to university. ., he considered himself to be well educated.
- 10 The air traffic controllers have called a strike.
  ........ all flights are cancelled until further
  not ce
- 11 The tour of the Acropolis will take two hours. ...... you will be free to go shopping.
- 12 The Prince of Wales announced his decision to give up playing polo today. ...... has sustained a number of injuries in recent years.
- 13 Being in the right place at the right time.
  ....... These are the ingredients of success in our society.
- 14 Invoices should be paid by cheque. ..........
  marked 'payee only'.
- 15 Many critics find the scene in the attic particularly .......

## Present tenses

The present simple and the present continuous tenses are the most common ways of expressing present time in English. The present's mple describes things that are generally true, while the present continuous describes things that are true at the time of speaking, but which may change. This unit looks at the present time uses of these two tenses. They can also express future time ( Unit 4) and past time ( 1.1E, 1.2E)

### PRESENT SIMPLE

The form of the present simple verb only changes after he she or it when we add -s to Form the base form (-es after o, s, sh, ch and x; -ies when the base form ends in -y)

I read → he reads; we watch → she watches; they carry → it carries

- \* Carina enjoy hospital dramas so she watch 'ER' every week.
- ✓ Carina enjoys hospital dramas so she watches 'ER' every week.

We form the negative and questions with the aux lary do ( 6 1A, 7.1A). In the negative we usually use the contracted forms don't and doesn't in speech and informawriting.

Japanese cooking doesn't use a lot of dairy food.

Do interest rates usually go up in order to reduce inflation?

and facts

1.1B We often use the present simple to state truths and to describe things which we feel General truths—are facts or permanent situations:

- · Things which are generally true: British people drink a lot of tea, while Americans drink more coffee.
- Facts: Broken bones in adults don't heal as fast as they do in children.
- · Permanent situations A colony of Antarctic penguins lives in Marwell Zoo

Repeated events/actions

We use the present simple to describe things that happen on a regular basis As temperatures fall with the approach of winter the soil freezes and contracts

The Blairs take their summer holiday in a quiet part of Tuscany.

We often use the present simple with adverbs of frequency (always, usually, often, sometimes, never) and expressions of frequency (every ..., once a ...):

Share prices usually change on a daily basis - but often by very little. Our two chefs provide an excellent choice of hot meals every day.

events/actions

We use the present simple to describe a series of events or actions (e.g. to give Series of directions or instructions) often with impersonal you:

> From here you cross the road go through an Iron gate and follow the path west This is similar to the imperative, but the imperative can sound more abrupt:

Cross the road, go through an iron gate and follow the path west

We use the present simple when we want to express the immediacy of an event, e.g. in sports commentaries, particularly when the action being described is a quick one and is therefore over before the description finishes:

France kicks off, Zidane passes to Henry, Henry cuts inside

1.1E If we wish to give the events of a past narrative or an anecdote more immediacy, we Other uses can use the present simple, especially in speech (compare ▶ 1.2E).

There's an old woman with thick glasses and a name tag I go up to her and ask

Newspaper head nes often use the present simple to express a past event, which again
gives more immediacy to the event.

Addicted Chaplin star gets three years for new drugs lapse.

We use the present simple in formal speech or writing for certain actions:

I note that you referred to the National Curriculum in your speech

I look forward to receiving a prompt reply to my enquiry.

We can use the present simple to talk about fixed events in the future ( 4.4A) or to express the future after conjunctions of time leight when lafter as soon as ( 4.4D)

## 1.2

### **PRESENT CONTINUOUS**

1 2A We form the present continuous with the present of the verb be and the present Form participle of the main verb:

'What are the children doing?'

We usually contract is or are to 's or 're in speech and informal writing:

'Well, Alan's drawing in his room and Sophie's watching TV with me.'

Note the following spelling rules for forming the present participle:

- Base form + ing draw drawing, watch watching, speak speaking
- · Base form ending in e + ing take · taking receive · receiving, create · creating
- Base form + consonant + -ing: swim → swimming, run → running

(For past future and perfect continuous forms 2 2, 2.4, 3.3, 4.1C, 4.3B, 4.4C)

• We often omit the pronoun and auxiliary (is or are) when we repeat the present continuous in the same sentence:

James and Sally are spending the evening together, watching a new video For information on ellipsis ≥ 35.3A, B

1.28 Things which are true now

The present continuous describes an action in progress at the moment of speaking or around the time of speaking. The action is takely to continue after the time of speaking but is likely to stop at some point, i.e. it is temporary.

I'll be with you in a minute. I'm just finishing something in the kitchen.

We are staying with John to try and find out if his place really is haunted

Common adverbs with this form are now, just, still and at the moment:

We're studying the writings of Günter Grass on the German course now.

We use live, work study and stay in the continuous if the action is temporary

\* She stays in the Waldorf Astoria on this visit to New York doesn't she?

✓ She s staying in the Waldorf Astoria on this visit to New York, isn't she?

Compare She always stays in the Waldorf Astoria on visits to New York { 1.1C}

An exception to the use of the present continuous to describe actions in progress is Here comes and There goes, which are always in the present simple:

\* Here is coming the postman. There is going the last bus

✓ Here comes the postman. There goes the last bus.

Note the inversion of the verb and subject in these phrases

We also use the present continuous to describe things which are changing.

British summers are getting hotter and winters are getting wetter

We do not use the present simple to express this:

\* British summers get hotter and winters get wetter.

The present simple describes a regular event which we see as unchanging: We get a lot of rain during the winter in this part of the world.

1.2C Repeated

events

It is possible to use the present continuous to talk about repeated events or actions, usually if they happen within a temporary period:

I'm feeding the neighbour's cat this week while she's in hospital.

Compare this with the use of the present simple for repeated actions ( 1.1C)

Graham's a confirmed smoker He smokes about fifty cigarettes a day.

(repeated action over a long period of time, possibly most of Graham's life)

Granam's having a tough time at the office at the moment and he's smoking about

fifty cigarettes a day! (repeated action in a temporary period)

We can use the present continuous with an adverb such as always, forever or continually to talk about repeated actions that happen very often, perhaps too often as far as the speaker is concerned:

The baby's always making cute little gurgling noises.

The neignbours are forever slamming doors and snouting during the night

I'm always forgetting people's birthdays. It's so annoying

1.2D You may near the present continuous used in sports commentaries, when the action is Series of in progress throughout the time of speaking

They're now entering the back straight and E. Garrouj is starting to pull away (... and he crosses the line two seconds ahead of his closest rival ... ▶ 1.1D)

1.2E We can use the present continuous with the present's imple to give more immediacy to a past narrative. We use the continuous for actions which form a background lie, they Other uses started before the actions within the narrative.

> There's an old woman with thick alasses who's serving the hot drinks so I go up to her and ask ... (She started serving before the action of the narrative.) The present continuous can also express arrangements in the future ( 4.3A)

having.

continuous

events

### VERBS RARELY USED IN THE CONTINUOUS

There are a number of verbs in English which we rarely use in a continuous tense. They 1.3A often describe states of being, thinking, possessing or feeling. Verbs of X Most people aren't believing in the existence of UFOs. believing.

✓ Most people don't believe in the existence of UFOs.

The most common of these verbs are liking, etc.

> be, consist of, contain, exist verbs of existing or being

belong to, have (= own), include, lack, own, possess verbs of possessing

adore desire despise detest, dislike, envy hate like, verbs of feeling or wanting

love, need, pity, prefer, trust, want, wish

believe doubt expect feel ( trink), forget imagine. verbs of thinking or believing

intend, know, realise, recognise, remember, see (= understand), suppose, think, understand

verbs of appearance appear, resemble, seem

concern, depend, deserve, fit, matter, measure, mean, other verbs

mind, weigh

1.3B It is possible to use many of the verbs in 1.3A in the continuous, but the verb either Using these has a different meaning or expresses a temporary action:

'Is Maria ready yet?' 'No, she's having a shower.' (= is taking) verbs in the

Now that there's electricity in the village Santos is thinking of getting his nouse connected. (= is considering)

This table shows some of the common differences in use:

verb	use in present simple	use in present continuous
be	Your son is a very obedient child, isn't he?	Your son is being very obedient at the moment. (= is behaving obediently)
have	They're very rich. They <b>have</b> three homes and a yacht.	I'm having a really good time, thanks. (= am experiencing)
think	I think that the world's problems are getting worse.	I'm thinking of contributing to Oxfam. (= am considering)
mean	The sign means 'slow down	You're always meaning to call us, but you never do. (= are intending)
appear	It appears the police have not started the investigation.	The Philharmonic are appearing at the Palladium. (= are performing)
weigh	She weighs 70 kilos	I'm weighing the ingredients for the cake (= action of weighing)

② Some verbs of feeing can be used in both the simple and the continuous with no change in meaning:

My wrist hurts/is hurting again - I must go to the physiotherapist
I think those mussels may have been off Do you feel/Are you feeling OK today?

1.3C We do not usually use the continuous form with verbs which describe a sense or a form. Sense verbs of perception, e.g. hear, notice, see, smell, taste.

X I'm noticing that your wife doesn't come to the wine tastings. Doesn't she drink?

VI notice that your wife doesn't come to the wine tastings. Doesn't she drink?
With verbs which describe a sense, we usually use the simple form or can/could + the

verb when we do not deliberately use the sense, i.e. the use is involuntary:

Can you smell the fertiliser? We're really in the countryside now!

With smell and taste, we can use the continuous for a deliberate action:

I (can) taste cream in this (there is cream in the dish; involuntary action)
I'm tasting the cream. (the cream might be off; intentional action)

We usually use the verbs see and near only in the involuntary sense, unless they have a different meaning eight meaning a new man at present (going out with). We use look at, watch or listen to for an intentional action:

Can you keep the noise down? I'm hearing the afternoon play.

✓ Can you keep the noise down? I'm listening to the afternoon play.

1.3D Performative verbs

We use performative verbs in the first person actually to perform an action lie saying lippologise performs the action of apologising:

On behalf of the company, I apologise for any inconvenience caused

When these verbs 'perform the function they express they do not usually take the continuous:

Railtrack apologises for the disruption to services over the last three months. By saying this, the function of apologising is performed. However, if we use the verb to describe the action rather than to do it, we can use the continuous:

The Railtrack chief executive was apologising profusely for the inconvenience Common performative verbs are accept agree, apologise congratulate, declare, deny disagree, forbid forgive guarantee insist invite order predict promise, recommend, refuse, request, suggest, thank, warn.

▶ Pages 70 and 71 for Round up of present and past tenses

## Practice

## 1.1

Write the correct form of the verb in brackets to complete this dialogue. Use the present simple or the present continuous.

SARAH Welcome to the programme This afternoon I (1) (stand) in the middle of the northern Black Forest, Germany, with Rainer Sanger, from Friends of the Forest

RAINER Good afternoon, Sarah.

SARAH Rainer you're very concerned about this area of the forest, aren't you? Can you tell us why?

trees are dead, and more (2) (de) because of the rreversible damage. We at Friends of the Forest (3) (believe) that the authorities (4) (not/do) enoughing fine mow to restore this beautiful forest to its former state.

SARAH But they (5) (clear) the dead trees away aren't they? I saw some men on the way here RAINER Of course, but they (6) . . . (do) that every year. It's the normal procedure. We need more

trees now, but they (7) . . (not/plant) any new trees to replace those that died.

SARAH | I see But you have approached the authorities about this | [8] (understand)

RAINE: We have tried, but each time they (9) (say) that they haven't got enough money to restore the forest as quickly as weld like. They (10) (always use) money as the excuse. It's getting really frustrating!

SARAH But it's not just an excuse is to They cleany in and the hurricane was an unforeseen occurrence

RAINER Of course, we appreciate that, and the point is that actually, we (12). . . (not/ask) for much money. We would just like their guidance we can provide volunteers to work on the forest. Oh, i see. Well, that is somewhat different. Now Rainer, could you tell us.

## 2 1.1, 1.2

## Underline the correct verb form in italics for each sentence.

- 1 The Guggenheim Museum in Bilbao housesiis housing Spain's largest collection of Modern Art
- 2 We try outlare trying out a new paper supplier at the moment. The old one was too expensive
- 3 The children don't eatlaren't eating sweets and chocolate before they go to bed at hight lt's bad for their teeth.
- 4 These animals displaying displaying a great deal of aggression if disturbed
- 5 We currently showlare currently showing the film 'Star Wars' at all Odeon cinemas in the region
- 6 Quick! Get rid of all the mess! Here comelare coming Mum and Dad!
- I The weather forecast says there II be wind from the north west tonight. That a ways brings list bringing snow with it at this time of year.
- 8 The rubbish collectors come/are coming on Fridays in this area. They don't take/aren't taking rubbish not left in black plastic bags.
- 9 You always complainlare always complaining and it really gets on my nerves! Why can't you just accept things and relax?
- 10 Does the orchestra play/Is the orchestra playing at the Town Hall this week? I direally like to see their new concert
- 11 Swimming provides is providing exercise for more muscle groups than any other physical activity
- 12 What do you consider are you considering to be the lowest price they'll sell the house for?

## 3 1.1

Rewrite these sentences from newspaper articles as headlines to the articles. Use the underlined words and phrases to help you.

The <u>chief</u> inspector of <u>prisons</u> last night <u>called</u> for the release of the <u>Bulger killers</u>

## Prisons chief calls for release of Bulger killers

- A High Court judge has blocked the proposed ban on tobacco adverts.
- The private member's bill on <u>fox-hunting did</u> not achieve the support needed last night to become law.
- The chief of police admitted that errors were made during the Chinese President's visit to the UK.
- The government of Ind.a has snubbed the Pope on the eve of his visit to the country, as they have refused his invitation to attend a multi-faith gathering.
- Radio 1, the BBC's pop music station, has outshone all its commercial radio rivals in a recent poll
- Makers of the latest I conardo DiCaprio film are facing a huge protest from locals over their treatment of a beach used for filming.

## 14

Complete this newspaper report. Write the verbs in brackets in the correct form, present simple or present continuous.

It's summer. A man is out for a quiet walk. He's walking along a country road and he (1) ....... (mind) his own business when he (2) ....... (be knocked down) and seriously injured by a minivan. The man, a writer of thrillers and horror fiction, (3) ....... (survive but he (4) ....... (become) obsessed with the vehicle that maimed him. He doesn't bear a grudge against the driver. Instead, he (5) ....... (buv) the minivan and (6) ...... (hide) it.

This sounds like the plot of a Stephen King thriller, but it is in fact the latest chapter in the writer's real life. King has bought the van and he (7) ....... (intend) to take a sledgehammer to it. At present King (8) ....... (recover) from his injuries at home, where he (9) ....... (suffer from) a broken hip, a fractured leg and a collapsed lung. The story is uncannily like the plot of his novel *Thunner* (written several years previously), in which the victim's tamily (10) ....... (put) a curse on the driver. King, however, (11) ....... (demand) only the withdrawal of the driver's licence. As for the minivan, we (12) ....... (not know) if King will actually carry out his revenge or if he is simply hatching the plot for a new novel!

Read each pair of sentences below, A and B. The sentence which follows each pair is related to one of the sentences in the pair. (For example, it could come after the sentence or describe the sentence.) Write the letter of the correct sentence in the box.

		Steven's a difficult child Steven's being difficult.  He isn't usually difficult.	В
1	A B	This salmon weighs more than six kilos  We're weighing the salmon to put a price on it.  This is a characteristic of the salmon.	
2	A B	I invite everyone present to the opening of the new superstore.  I'm inviting everyone to the opening of the new superstore  I'm offering this invitation to you now.	
3	A B	The dance group appears to have arrived at the theatre.  The dance group is appearing at the theatre.  There are performances every evening.	
4	A B	Mmm. I taste cinnamon in this. Lovely.  I'm tasting it to see if there's enough cinnamon in it.  I need to check the quantity of cinnamon.	
5	АВ	I think house prices will rise again next year. I'm thinking of selling my house next year This is my opinion.	
6		My sister has a baby.  My sister's having a baby.  My sister's pregnant.	
7	Æ	1 smell lavender. Is there a bush in the garden? 3 I'm smelling the lavender. It's a very strong variety.  The smell has just come to my attention.	
	8	He's having a shower.  He has a fantastic power shower in the main bathroom.  Why don't you wait in the living room?	
Ç	) <i>A</i>	A We guarantee that your children will be supervised by experienced instructors.  3 My husband and I are guaranteeing the loan for Mrs Knight.  The company takes full responsibility.	
10	) /	A is this an inadequate explanation or am I being stupid?  B I'm sorry, I don't understand. Am I really so stupid?  Is this a permanent characteristic of mine?	

are now thinking



In about half of the lines of the following text there is an error in the use of the present forms. For each numbered line (1-22), underline the error and write the correct form. Some lines are correct. Indicate these with a tick  $(\checkmark)$ . The exercise begins with two examples (0 and 00).



- O Every year more and more tourists are visiting the Ionian Islands, and most are
- 00 enchanted by these lush green islands in a turquoise sea. Many now think
  - 1 about the possibility of owning property in this warm, unspoilt corner of
  - 2 Europe. Appeals the idea to you? If so, read on!
  - 3 Imagine yourself standing on a wide terrace high on a cliff above the
  - 4 clear Ionian Sea, the island of Zakynthos in the distance. The sun is beating
  - 5 down and you are hearing the cicadas and the sound of waves lapping
  - 6 gently against the golden sand below. You can smell the heady scent of
  - 7 jasmine. You walk down a steep, stony path to the beach and there is lying
  - 8 the turquoise sea, right in front of you. We're inviting you to share this
  - 9 experience with us.
- 10 We currently develop a complex of luxury apartments just outside
- 11 Lourdas, in the south of Cephalonia. Cephalonia is the largest and the
- 12 most varied of the Ionian Islands, and Lourdas is a traditional Greek
- 13 village with a variety of shops and tavernas. Behind the village the
- 14 mountains are rising steeply and goats roam freely. From the village a
- 15 road winds down to Lourdas Bay. The wide sweep of the bay shelter a
- 16 long sandy beach which is almost totally uncommercialised, although
- 17 local developers build a range of bars and tavernas on a strip of land
- 18 behind the beach.
- 19 We have completed our show apartment and we now show prospective
- 20 purchasers the apartment, either in person at the site, or at our
- 21 London office, on video. To take part in this once-in-a-lifetime offer,
- 22 phone us now and talk to one of our sales representatives.



## Past tenses

We often use the past's imple tense for single completed events and past states and we use the past continuous for temporary or interrupted actions. We use the past perfect tense for actions which happened before a time in the past. This unit looks at the differences between the past and the past perfect tenses and used tolwould + infinitive (For uses of the present perfect tense for past time 3.1.3.2 For past forms which refer to the future (future in the past) > 5.3.)

## 4

### **PAST SIMPLE**

2 1A Most verbs add ed to the base form to make the past's imple tense. The past simple tense form is the same for all persons (except with the verb be):

watch - Ithelsheittlivelyoutthey watched be tithe shelit was, welyoutthey were Note the following spelling rules with -ed endings:

- Base forms ending in a single stressed vowe, and a consonant (except w. x or y), double the consonant, e.g. hug → hugged.
   In British English, but not US English, we often double final consonant I le g label → labelled
- Base forms ending in a consonal t and y crange y to r e.g. copy · copied
- Irregular verbs do not form the past tense with -ed, e.g. go → went.

We do not use the past form of the combiniquestions and negatives, we use did (not) + infinitive. We usually use the contracted form drift in speech and informal writing

x 'Did you saw anything suspicious?' x 'No, I didn't saw anything.'

✓ 'Did you see anything suspicious?' 
✓ 'No, I didn't see anything.'

## Past actions and states

2.1B We use the past simple to describe single completed actions in the past:

Julius Caesar invaded Britain in 55 BC.

Holland was occupied by the Germans in 1940.

If the context is clear, it is not necessary to give a past time reference:

Caesar's troops failed to defeat the indigenous tribes (in 55 BC).

We use the past simple for actions which happened at the same time and also for repeated actions:

When we got to the junction I **took** the left turn while Micky **took** the right (two actions at the same time)

My brother applied for a visa six times before he got one (repeated actions). We use the past simple for sequences of actions. Sometimes the actions follow immediately after each other, or one action causes a result:

Silverman ran to the car jumped in and raced off into the night (sequence of actions) Wall Street traders lost a fortune when the Asian markets collapsed (= The markets collapsed with the result that the traders lost a fortune.)

We use the past simple to describe states in the past:

We lived just outside Oxford in the nineties, but we didn't have a car. (For a contrast of the past simple and the present perfect > 3.1B, 3.2.)

## 1.2

### PAST CONTINUOUS

2.2A We form the past continuous with was or were and the present participle ( 1.2A) of Form the main verb:

What were the children doing while all this was going on?

There are some verbs which we rarely use in the continuous tenses, including the past continuous. (For more information about this ► 1.3A, B, C.)

progress

2.2B The past continuous describes an action in progress at a point of time in the past e Actions in the action began before this point of time and continued after it.

We didn't hear the intruder because we were sleeping on the top floor that night At the time of our arrival the city was going through a period of rapid expansion We often use the past continuous to show that a past action was temporary, or was changing or developing:

During my training I was earning a lot less than my wife (a temporary situation) His symptoms were becoming more pronounced each day (a changing stuation) We can use the past continuous to describe an ongoing action which forms the background or setting to past events. We often use the past simple for an action that happened against this background:

Darkness was descending over the hushed city as James staggered back to college (darkness was descending = background; James staggered = action)

We can use the past continuous for two actions in progress at the same time. We were watching the sky and listening for the first sounds of the dawn chorus We usually use the past simple for repeated actions in the past ( 2 1B) but we can use the past continuous if we want to emphasise that the repeated actions took place

over a temporary and limited period of finished time:

She received chemotherapy on a weekly basis. (a repeated action) For the first three months she was receiving chemotherapy on a weekly basis (repeated action, but only for three months)

Interrupted actions

2.20 We use the past continuous to contrast an ongoing action with a single event which interrupts it. We use the past simple for the single event:

Elizabeth was hunting when messengers arrived with the news of Mary's plot Seventy cars were crossing the bridge when the pier collapsed into the river

If the background act on finishes just before the event which interrupts it, we prefer to use the past perfect continuous ( 2.4A B) Compare these examples Jane opened the door to let Philip in.

1 He was running in the rain.

2 He had been running in the rain.







2.2D Other uses

We can use the past continuous to describe past arrangements, the arranged event may or may not have taken place. This use is similar to the future in the past' ( 5.3)

Nancy was taking the next flight to Paris so she had to cut snort the interview

(= Nancy had an existing arrangement to take a flight to Paris.)

We can make requests, suggestions and questions more tentative and polite by using the past continuous. We often use the verbs think and wonder:

We were wondering if you would like to join us (- Would you like to join us ?)

Were you planning on going somewhere else later? (\_ Are you planning on ?)

### 2.3 PAST PERFECT

2.3A We form the past perfect with had and a past participle, which is the same for all persons Form By the end of the fourth day we had exhausted most of our rations.

Regular verbs have a past participle form which is the same as the past tense form (i.e. we addled to the base form (2.1A) Irregular verbs eig see, often have a past participle form the past tense form (i.e. participle form) eig seen which is different from the past tense form, eig saw. We often use the contracted form of had ('d) in spoken English:

We were exhausted; we'd been up all night with the baby.

2.3B
Actions and states before a time in the past

We use the past perfect to describe an action which is completed before a time in the past. We can include a specific time reference:

By the time the UN task force arrived the rebel forces had taken the province. We can use the past perfect for repeated actions:

The new owners found that the timbers had been patched up several times.

We also use the form to describe a state which existed before a past event.

At the time of her trial last year Hinkley had been in prison for eight months.

2.3C Sequence in the past We can use the past perfect to make a sequence of events clear. We use the past perfect for the earlier action and the past simple for the later. Compare:

When we got back the babysitter went home.

(sequence: 1 we got back, 2 the babysitter went home)

When we got back the babysitter had gone home.

(sequence: 1 the babysitter went home, 2 we got back)

We can use just or arready with the past perfect to show that the earlier action was recent or earlier than expected:

We wanted to talk to the babysitter but she'd just left.

When we got back we found that the babysitter had already gone nome. We can use the past perfect or the past's mple with time conjunctions, eig after before, as soon as, then:

She ushered me out of the room as soon as I paid/had paid my subscription

With before + past perfect the act on in the past's mple happens first I left university before I'd taken the final exams.

We can use this for a past action which prevented a later action from happening She sacked him before he'd had a chance to explain his behaviour.

We don't usually use the past perfect if the sequence is obvious ( 2.1B) {I had opened the door and let him in } ✓ I opened the door and let him in We often use the past perfect to describe the cause of a past event.
David didn't join the band as he'd signed up with a rival label.

2.3D We use the past perfect with verbs such as hope expect, want plan, think about, wish Unfulfilled to describe past intentions which were unfulfilled:

intentions They had hoped to get to the summit but Travers fell ill at base camp.

## 2.4

### **PAST PERFECT CONTINUOUS**

2.4A We form the past perfect continuous tense with had been and the present participle.

Form The lake was near bursting point as it had been raining heavily for weeks.

The passive form of the past perfect continuous (had been being + past participle) is almost never used. We prefer an active form, using an empty subject if necessary.

[The unemployment figures had been being underestimated for decades ]

They had been underestimating the unemployment figures for decades

There are some verbs which we rarely use in the continuous tenses including the past perfect continuous. (For more information about this ▶ 1.3A, B, C.)

2.4B We use the past perfect continuous to describe an ongoing situation or action which Uses continued up to, or stopped just before, a time in the past (▶ 2.2C)

He had been working for over an hour before the auditors turned up

We often use this tense to explain a past result leig la situation or an appearance The few survivors looked painfully thin They had been living on meagre rations since the accident (= They looked thin because they had been living on meagre rations)

We use this tense when we want to focus on duration:

Kubrick had been trying to get the film made for more than twenty years The eager fans had been waiting in line for over six hours.

other forms

2.4C We do not mention the number of times that we have done an action when we use the Contrast with past perfect continuous:

\* Jill had only been watching TV twice that week.

✓ Jill had only watched TV twice that week (repeated action past perfect simple)

• We don't usually use the past perfect continuous for completed actions, or actions and packground situations still continuing at the same time as the past simple narrative

X Sne found her desk was empty security had been removing everything

She found her desk was empty; security had removed everything.

(completed action = past perfect simple)

[We had been living in New York when John was made redundant.]

✓ We were living in New York when John was made redundant.

(an ongoing situation which forms the background = past continuous)

### USED TO/WOULD

Form and meaning

2.5A Used to is followed by an infinitive. Notice the spelling in questions and negatives It used to take me over an hour to get to work.

Supermarkets didn't use to be open on Sundays in Britain.

Did you use to get free milk at school?

On t confuse used to + nf.nit ve with belget used to (+ verb -ing) which means 'be/become accustomed to':

I used to live alone. (= I lived alone at a time in the past.)

He wasn't used to living on his own. (= He wasn't accustomed to it.)

She's getting used to the new technology ( She is becoming accustomed to t)

Past habits

2.5B Both forms describe actions which happened regularly in the past but no longer happen (or vice versa) or now happen with more or less frequency:

They used to get paid every three months (Now they get paid weekly)

We would get up early every Sunday to go to church. (We don't now.)

To avoid confusion with other uses of would we usually mention the past time or situation:

He would give her a lift to work in the days before she passed her test (For other uses of would 10.4 10.5 10 6, 18.2B, 18.3B, 18.4, 18.5)

Past states

2.5C We use used to to describe past states which have changed:

Lithuania used to be part of the Soviet Union. (It isn't now.)

There didn't use to be any crime around here in the old days (There is now )

- We cannot use would for past states:
  - X France would be a monarchy but now it's a republic.
  - ✓ France used to be a monarchy but now it's a republic.
- ▶ Pages 70 and 71 for Round up of present and past tenses

## Practice

The key to these exercises is on page 354



### 2.1

Match the underlined phrases (1–10) with the explanations (A–E). Each explanation matches two phrases.

- 1 They ran the same test eight times before they found the bug in the software
- 2 Food was in short supply throughout the war.
- 3 It was quite unnerving. The lights fickered while a freezing wind blew through the room
- 4 Caire uniped out of her chair, ran to the balcony and grapped the screaming child
- 5 Lorenzo the Magnificent died in Florence in 1492.
- 6 Diplodocus dinosaurs dominated the Triassic period.
- 7 We had a busy morning Steve answered the phone calls and I deat with the e-mais
- 8 The Court of Appeal rejected his case on technical grounds.
- 9 I'm sick of it, I can't tell you how many times we tried to contact them.
- 10 I threw open the goors and warked out into the bright morning sunshine
- A A single or completed action in the past.
- B A sequence of actions in the past.
- C Two actions which happened at the same time in the past.
- D Repeated actions in the past.
- E A state in the past.

## 2.1, 2.2

Complete the sentences with suitable verbs from the box. Use the past simple or past continuous.

announce blow collapse cook decide feel get up have nit leave live manage mention press run into see set off settle down soar spend stand take

- 1 | .......... at the bus stop when | ....... the speeding car slam into the lamp post.
- 2 The icy wind ...... through the trees as we ...... on our journey into the forest.
- 3 Brad exhausted so he onto the sofa the button on the remote control and .. for an evening vegetating in front of the box.
- 4 The twins the afternoon shopping because they for their flatmates that evening
  - 5 Unfortunately for us we on the wrong side of Miam when Hurricane Andrew the city.
  - 6 Share prices ...... when the government ...... record growth figures.
  - 7 | ...... early the next morning so | ..... to have an early night.
- 8 They say that he her because he found out that she an affair with his best friend
- 9 My younger brother ...... the driving test five times before he ...... to pass.
- 10.1 Care at the supermarket the other day and she that you might be looking for work

## 2.1, 2.1,

### Choose the best sentence (A or B) to illustrate each picture.



- 1 A I felt sick when I ate the pudding.
  - Bitfelt sick when I'd eaten the pudding



- 5 A The show started when we got there.
  - B The show had started when we got there



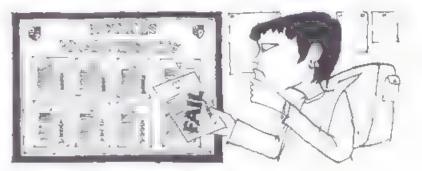
- 2 A When we returned to our note room the maid made the bed.
  - B When we returned to our hotel room, the maid had made the bed.



- 3 A I explained to my host that I'd been repairing the car.
  - B I explained to my host that I was repairing the car



- 4 A By the time we arrived at the zoo the elephants were having their bath.
  - B By the time we arrived at the zoo the elephants had had their bath



- 6 A , noped to get a good result
  - B I had hoped to get a good result.



- 7 A I watched TV when Jane called round
  - B I was watching TV when Jane called round.



- 8 A Carrie was excited because she was travelling to Jamaica.
  - B Carrie was excited because she had travelled to Jamaica.



#### Underline the most suitable verb form in italics.

- 1 So I turned/had turned on my heels and walked out of the shop in disgust.
- 2 When we got to the station the train had just left just left so we missed our connection
- 3 The mechanics had been takinginad taken the engine apart several times before they were able to locate the source of the mysterious rattle
- 4 By 1492 the Spanish had expelledinad been expering the Moors from the main and entirely
- 5 She was surprised to find the fridge empty, the children had eaten had been eating everything!
- 6 Our lead actor turned up and he was word perfect apparently he was practising had been practising his lines all day
- I The children wanted to go to the circus but their father already booked/had aiready booked tickets for the ice-skating spectacular.
- 8 Debbie couldn't understand why her computer crashed it had been working was working perfect vifor as long as she could remember.
- 9 My niece's riding accident was rather a setback because she *nopedinad hoped* to pursue a career as a ballet dancer
- 10 Mrs Lawson arrived at casualty in quite a state she suffered, ndd been suffering from severe stomach pains for hours.

## 5 ALL

In about half of the lines of the following text there is a mistake in the use of past forms, used to or would. For each numbered line (1-18) underline the mistake and write the correct form. Some lines are correct Indicate these with a tick () The exercise begins with two examples (0 and 00)

### **Anne Frank**

- O Anne Frank was a Jewish girl who was living with her family in Amsterdam
- 00 when the Germans were invading Holland in 1940. The German authorities
  - 1 introduced harsh anti-Jewish laws and started to deport. Jews to concentration
  - 2 camps in Eastern Europe. In July 1942 Anne's father did near a rumour that he
  - 3 was going to be arrested by the police and the family resolved to find a hiding
- 4 place. They moved into an attic above Mr Frank's office and build a bookcase
- 5 to disguise the entrance to the secret apartment. Friends would bring food to the
- 6 family each morning and they use to keep up to date a to the news by I stening to
- 7 the BBC on a small radio. Anne would have no friends her own age, so she
- 8 confided her feelings to a diary. In August another Jewish family joined the
- 9 Franks with their sixteen-year-old son Peter. Peter was telling Anne that the
- 10 Germans had been sending Jews to concentration camps and killing them. Anne
- 11 and Peter were becoming very fond of each other in the cramped conditions of
- 12 the secret apartment and had helped each other with their essons. But somebody
- 13 had given away the family's secret. The German police had been watched the
- 14 higing place for several days and on August 14th 1944 they burst in and arrested
- 15 ail the occupants. The Germans were sending Anne to the Beisen concentration
- 16 camp and she was killed in February or March 1945, only a month or six weeks
- 17 before the British army arrived. Anne's father was taken to Auschwitz and
- 18 survived the war. He found Anne's diary and had published it in 1947.

unvaded



Complete the text by writing the verbs in brackets in the correct tense. Read through the whole text before you begin as you may need to use passive forms and used to/would in your answers.

# THE TRUE STORY OF TREASURE ISLAND

Treasure Island is one of the best known and most loved children's adventure stories. It (1) .......... (be) first published in 1883 but remains popular to this day. People (2) ......... (think) that the story was solely the work of Stevenson's imagination, but recent research has uncovered the true origin of this thrilling tale of hidden treasure and bloodthirsty pirates.



whom he (6) ..... meet tive years earlier in France, and his stepchildren from Fanny's tirst marriage. The location of their holiday was Braemar in the rugged Scottish Highlands.

The family soon settled into a relaxing routine. Each morning Stevenson (7 ... ...... (get up) early and take them out for long warks over the hills. They (8) ........ (enjoy this for several days when the weather suddenly took a turn for the worse. Trapped indoors by the heavy rain, Robert's twelve-year old stepson, Hoyd, 9 ....... (become) increasingly bored and restless. Desperate to keep the boy amused, Robert (10) ............ get out) some drawing paper and asked the boy to do some painting.

After he 11)...... paint) for several hours the boy 12 ........ (return) to his steptather with a beautiful coloured map of a tropical island. Robert noticed that his stepson (13) ........ (draw) a large cross in the midule of the island. 'What's that?' he asked. 'That's the buried treasure,' said the boy. The thirty-one-year old author suddenly had a flash of inspiration. He (14 ........................ (recently ask) to contribute stories to a children's magazine published by his friend W.F. Henley and he (15) ................. (begin) to see the germ of an adventure story in the boy's picture. While the rain (16) ........................ (beat down) on the root of his rented holiday cortage the author (17) .................... (sit down) by the fire to write a story. He would make the hero a twelve year old boy, just like his own stepson. But who would be the villain of the piece?

For the last four years Henley (18) ....... (publish) Robert's stories in his magazine, and the two had become good triends. But there was something unusual about Henley; as a young man one of his legs (19) ........... (amputate and he walked around with the aid of an artificial wooden leg. Robert (20) ............. (always want) to include such a character in a story and thus I ong John Silver, the pirate with a wooden leg, was born.

So, thanks to a rainy September in Scotland, a publisher with a wooden leg, and the inventiveness of a twelve-year-old American boy, we have one of the greatest adventure stories in the English language.

## Past to present tenses

English uses the present perfect tenses (simple and continuous) to talk about actions and states which start in the past but which have a link with the present. This unit looks at the present perfect simple and continuous and compares the present perfect and the past simple. (For a detailed explanation of the past simple > 2.1.)



### PRESENT PERFECT SIMPLE

3.1A Form We form the present perfect simple with has/have and a past participle (2.3A)

There has been a serious decline in the number of people qualifying as teachers

Have the printers finished the new brochure yet?

We usually contract has/have in speech and informal writing.

The film's already started - we'd better hurry.

In negative sentences, we usually contract not in speech and informal writing.

I've been to the shops today and they haven't started the summer sales yet.

Remember that a lot of English verbs have irregular past participles, e.g.,

bring \*brought take \*taken meet \*met, seek \*sought, swing \*swung

Be careful not to drop the have with the present perfect:

X I never been to Madame Tussaud's.

✓ I've never been to Madame Tussaud's.

Ongoing states and actions

3.1B We use the present perfect simple to talk about states that started in the past and are Origonal still continuing in the present:

The manor house has stood on this spot for  $v \in t$  two hundred years. (It is still here.) We often use the prepositions for t + per od of t me and since (+ point in time).

- X The centre of the island has not been inhabited since fifty years.
- ✓ The centre of the island has not been inhabited for fifty years.
- ✗ The centre of the island has not been innamited for (the earthquake of) 1952
- ✓ The centre of the island has not been inhabited since (the earthquake of) 1952
- We do not use the present simple or continuous with for and since when we refer to a state that began in the past.
  - ★ My family lives/is living in this country since 1978.
  - \* My family lives/is living in this country for over twenty years.
  - ✓ My family has lived in this country since 1978/for over twenty years.
- In the examples above since is a preposition. When we use it as a conjunction, we usually use the past simple after it:

You've been really moody ever since that letter arrived What's wrong?

① The present continuous + for expresses a present situation continuing in the future We are staying here for another three months. (► 4.3A)

We also use the present perfect to talk about actions which happened in the past but may happen again in the future. The period of time in which the action took place is unfinished, so it may be repeated. The action may have happened only once.

I've only been to Hong Kong once, but I d love to go again (My life is st I continuing, so I may go to Hong Kong again.)

Or it may have happened several times (i.e. a repeated action):

NASA has sent probes to various planets in the solar system (and may send more) Sometimes we know the time is not finished because of the time phrases we use This channel has shown about four wildlife documentaries this week! Compare these two sentences:

John Grisham has written some of the most successful legal thrillers.

Agatha Christie wrote a huge number of thrillers.

In the first example the author is still a ive and is able to write more successful books in the second the author is dead and therefore can't write any more books.

X Agatha Christie has written a huge number of thrillers.

We use the present perfect after super at ves e g the best/worst, the greatest, ordinal numbers, e.g. the first (second, third), the only, often followed by ever:

It's the worst sports programme I have ever seen and the first I have ever written to complain about!

Many people consider Kennedy to be the greatest President the USA has had

3.1C A number of adverbs are commonly used with the present perfect as described in 3.1B Adverbs ever, often, seldom, never, so far, already, yet, still:

often used with the present perfect

The Prime Minister has seldom been put in such a difficult position.

I have never experienced any racism in athletics.

We've received over 20,000 entries for the competition so far.

Only halfway through the financial year and British Aerospace has already announced that its pre-tax profits will be down by seventy per cent.

Have they announced the date yet? No they still haven't made up their minds '

- 1 We use already with the affirmative but yet with the negative and in questions
  - \* We've yet seen the film but they haven't seen it already.
  - ✓ We've already seen the film but they haven't seen it yet.
- It is possible in US English to use the past's mpie with these adverbs. We already saw the film but they didn't see it yet.

3.1D Present relevance We can use the present perfect's mple to talk about an action completed in the past which has some relevance to the present leight there is a present result of the action. The avalanche has devastated the skiing industry in the area (result – the skiing industry is still having big problems).

We often use this form to talk about recent actions:

We can start the interviews now, as all the candidates have arrived

'Has the government put up the minimum rage? Yes it \$ £4 per hour now

Common adverbs with the present perfect in this use are just, recently and lately Has the sports centre increased its membership fees lately?

We use just with very recent actions:

I've just made a nice pot of tea. Would you like a cup?

The wedding of Paul McCartney and Heatner Mills has just taken place in Ireland

- We do not use the present perfect with a definite time in the past (except with since)
- or for 3 1B) We usually use the past's mple ( 2 1B) when we give a time
  - \* Ms Brown has arrived half an hour ago. She's waiting in the staff room
  - ✓ Ms Brown arrived half an hour ago. She's waiting in the staff room.

We can use the present perfect when the time is indefinite, i.e. when no time is stated, especially when the past action has some relevance to the present:

Ms Brown has arrived She's in the staff room and is ready to see you now

3.1E Other uses

As the present perfect's imple expresses relevance to the present, news broadcasts and reports often use it to introduce a story, before moving into past tenses:

Former Tanzanian President Julius Nyerere **has died** at the age of 77 in a London **hospital**. **He came to London in** 

Similarly, we often use it to introduce a new topic of conversation:

I've heard from Maurice - he's been in Australia for the last two months

In time clauses (e.g. after, when) we use the present perfect with future reference We'll make a move as soon as the rain has stopped.

## PRESENT PERFECT AND PAST SIMPLE - DIFFERENCES

#### present perfect

- Unfinished state/action (► 3.1B) 3.2A Spain has governed the enclave of Ceuta since 1580.
- Unfinished time (► 3.1B) 3.2B I haven't seen Keith this morning yet. (It's still morning.)
- Present relevance (► 3.1D) 3.2C The Indian Government has imposed a ban on tiger hunting to prevent the extinction of tigers.
- Indefinite time (► 3.1D) 3.2D I've been to Eurodisney twice.

#### past simple

Finished state/action (► 2.1B) Spain governed the state of Western Sahara from 1958 to 1976.

Finished time (▶ 2.1B) I didn't see Keith at all this morning. (It's now afternoon/evening.)

No present relevance (► 2.1B) The Indian Government imposed a ban on tiger hunting a few years ago.

Definite time (► 2.1B) I went to Eurodisney in 1999 and 2000.

We use the past simple inot the present perfect to correct an incorrect belief or 3.2E Beliefs and expectation, or to confirm a correct one:

- \* The area is far more rugged and wild than I have expected
- ✓ The area is far more rugged and wild than I expected
- \* She is just as beautiful as I have imagined
- ✓ She is just as beautiful as I imagined.

(For a full description of uses of the past simple ▶ 2.1B)

## PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS

We form the present perfect continuous with mas have + been + a present participle 3 3A Form (-ina form):

> Bob Geldof has been doing a lot of work for charities since the mid-

What on earth have you been doing to that child?

Ongoing states and actions

expectations

3.3B We use the present perfect continuous to talk about an ongoing state or action which began in the past and is still continuing or has just finished:

> Women have been speaking out on this issue for some time, with mixed results.

'Where have you been?' 'I've been talking to Jenny.'

It is common to use since or for with this use of the present perfect continuous:

I've been looking into the possibility of early retirement since the reorganisation The simple form of the present perfect often rocuses on the fact that an action is completed, while the continuous focuses on the fact that it is still ongoing

- Simple: I've learnt how to play chess. (= I can play chess now.)
- Continuous: I've been learning how to play chess. (= I'm still learning.)

We use the continuous to focus on the duration of an action so we do not mention the number of times that we have done the action. With repeated actions we use the present perfect simple.

\* I've been calling you five times this morning. Where have you been?

✓ I've called you five times this morning. Where have you been?



The use of the present perfect continuous can suggest that the state or action may change, i.e. it is temporary. Compare this with the present simple:

We subscribe to one of the satellite TV companies. (unlikely to change)
We've been subscribing to one of the satellite TV companies (not a fixed situation we may change)

With the adverbs *ratery* or *recently* we use the present perfect continuous to talk about new developments which may be temporary:

Helen's been spending a lot of time at the club lately. (= She didn't use to.)

- We use the present perfect continuous for not the present continuous, to specify the duration of an activity which started in the past and is still continuing
  - x I am learning how to play chess for three years now.
  - ✓ I have been learning how to play chess for three years now.
- We do not usually use the present perfect continuous in the passive:
  - \* The patient's heart rate has been being monitored continuously
  - ✓ The nurses have been monitoring the patient's heart rate continuously.

Present or an appearance. The focus is on the activity rather than the result in this case, we relevance don't usually use a time adverb:

This test result is much better. It's clear you've been revising I'm sorry the hall is in such a mess. We've been decorating

Compare these examples of the present perfect continuous and simple:

We have been trialling the new software prior to its release on the open market.

We have completed the new software trial and are now ready to release it.

I'm sorry the hall is in such a mess. We've been decorating

(result)



### PRESENT PERFECT SIMPLE AND CONTINUOUS - DIFFERENCES

#### present perfect simple

- 3.4A Completion (> 3.1B)

  This country has welcomed several hundred refugees from Kosovo in the last few weeks.
- 3.4B Repeated action (► 3.1B)

  She has played with the symphony orchestra three times this season.
- 3.4C Permanent situation (► 3.1B)

  People have eaten a lot less meat over the last twenty years or so.
- **3.4D** Focus on present result (▶ **3.1D**)

  I've done the accounts here they are.

#### present perfect continuous

Continuation (> 3.3B)

This country has been welcoming political refugees for many years.

Duration of action (► 3.3B)

She has been playing with the symphony orchestra all season.

Temporary situation (> 3.3B)

People have been eating less meat recently because of the crisis.

Focus on the activity (▶ 3.3C)

I've been doing my accounts all afternoon.

▶ Pages 70 and 71 for Round up of present and past tenses

## Practice

## 3.1.3.2

### Choose the phrase or sentence (A or B), which correctly continues the text or dialogue

- Only halfway through the football season and Manchester United yet again leads the Premier League. The situation could easily change, however, as
  - A ... most teams played only a third of their games so far.
  - (B) most teams have played only a third of their games so far.
- 1 'I must remember to call my parents before I go away on Thursday. I haven't even told them about the trip yet.'
  - A 'Didn't you see much of them lately, then?'
  - B 'Haven't you seen much of them lately, then?'
- 2 'What do you think of our new Finance Director?'
  - A 'He's the most obnoxious person I ever met!'
  - B 'He's the most obnoxious person I have ever met!'
- 3 We won't be able to move back into our house for a while.
  - A Our tenants are living there for six months.
  - B Our tenants have lived there for six months.
- 4 Today we're previewing the new a burn by the top Swedish band The Cardigans, who las I'm sure you all know, are coming to the UK on tour next month.
  - A The group released three albums so far.
  - B The group has released three albums so far.
- 5 Another earthquake has hit the north west of Turkey bringing further devastation to the area east of Istanbul, which is still suffering from the August earthquake.
  - A The latest tremor measured 7.2 on the Richter scale
  - B The latest tremor has measured 7.2 on the Richter scale
- 6 Pipeworks regrets the current inconvenience to residents of Kelvin Close.
  - A We have lowered the water pressure to allow essential repairs.
  - B We lowered the water pressure to allow essential repairs.
- 7 Investigators into the recent air crash have released their findings, which show a fault in the engine cooling system of the aircraft. All major airlines
  - A ... grounded aircraft of the same type for thorough checks
  - B ... have grounded aircraft of the same type for thorough checks.
- 8 The seventeenth century writer Cervantes's often considered the father of the modern novel. Most people only connect the name with *Don Quixote*, though Cervantes
  - A ... was a prolific writer.
  - В ... has been a prolific writer.
- 9 With so much money being poured into medical research every year, you'd think that more breakthroughs would be made."
  - 'But breakthroughs are being made.
  - A Didn't a Colombian scientist discover a cure for malaria last year?'
  - B Hasn't a Colombian scientist discovered a cure for malaria last year?'
- 10 Most visitors to the prison are pleasantly surprised by the environment
  - A It is far more open and greener than they have imagined.
  - B It is far more open and greener than they imagined.

## 2 3.1, 3.4

For each of the sentences below, write another sentence as similar as possible in meaning to the original sentence, using the word given. The word must not be altered in any way.

0	There's	а	саке	in						
	baked				I	30	just	baked	a	cake

- 1 Most of the workers started here in 1996, when the factory opened.
- 2 The guest performers are all here now. arrived
- 3 We visited the new theme park three times last summer and we intend to go this summer too have
- 4 Everyone in my family knows the basics of First Aid. learnt
- 5 The latest novel by the young Indian writer Arandhati Roy is stunning. It's her best to date ever
- 6 There is no decision from the panel yet about the technical irregularities. decided

## 3.3.3.4

Match each sentence (A and B) in the pairs below with its meaning.

0	Α	I've been reading the book you lent me on genetics.
	В	I've read the book you lent me on genetics.
	1	I've finished the book.
	2	I'm still reading the book.
1	Α	The firm gives company cars to junior managers.

- B The firm has been giving company cars to junior managers.

  1. This is the company's usual policy. It's unlikely to change.
  - 1 This is the company's usual policy. It's unlikely to change.

    2 This isn't the company's usual policy. It may change.
- 2 A Something has been killing the rabbits in the woods.
  - B Something has killed the rabbits in the woods.

    There are no rabbits left in the woods.
- 2 There are some rabbits left in the woods.3 A Monsanto has placed some adverts in the national press.
- B Monsanto has been placing adverts in the national press.
  - 1 This was a one-off publicity move.
    2 This is a continuing publicity campaign.
- 4 A 'Hi, Fiona. What a mess! Have you been decorating?'
  B 'Hi, Fiona. This room looks great! Have you decorated it?'
  - Fiona is in the middle of decorating.

    2 Fiona isn't decorating any more.
- 5 A A group of us have learnt how to play bridge.
  - B A group of us have been learning how to play bridge.
  - I We're still learning.
  - 2 We can play it now.

### Complete the text with phrases from the box.

contained existed found has allowed have been digging has produced has been trying has been have been found have unearthed perished has discovered walked were discovered

Palaeo itologists in New Mexico (1) the remains of at least one dinosaur from the late Jurassic period. The palaeontologists from Caliada (2) in a formerly linexplored part of the Morrison Formation, a vist fossilibed, for the last eight months. Early last week one of the group (3) a section of rock which (4) is a number of boiles from one or pussibly more, large herbworous divosaurs. Since then, the group (5) is to release the boiles from the rock and piece them together. The palaeontologists be overtrat the boiles may form a whole dinosaur family. It is possible that the whole family (6) ........ while trying to protect the young from predators.

According to Blyce Laison, the group's leader the pones are from a large brach osaurus. These almost, 71 approximately 150 million years ago and are counter amongst the largest dinosaurs that ever 8) are Earth. Other brach osaurus remains from the algest dinosaurus pone (10) and to date that a long time the Morrison Formation [11] are one of the most productive tossilbeds in the world. Since the first brancs (12) are eight 18. The romes of material. The Morrison more than any other fossilbed. (14) are sures at the period in North America. It seems that the latest first conditional directions on the latest first conditional directions and received even level more, be titled as its of the Japassic period in North America.

## 5 ALL

Read this biography from a movie magazine. Complete the text with the verbs in brackets in the past simple or present perfect (simple or continuous).



Mel Gibson (1) ........ (be) a major film star have to more than twenty veals. In this time he (2) hecome one or the

most respect to a silvey or actors and he a now start a silve esstar alger in time of recting as well

Cibson a he born in the United States in 1956 but his family (5) and (move) to Ascaling in 1968. He is a simplefel as school earlation in Sydney and Toleran his acting a cereber in the National list the of Drama ic A to He appear in several A, stral an IV series but 9 appear in several A, stral an IV series but 9 appear in several A, stral an IV series but 9 appear in several A, stral an IV series but 9 appear in several A, stral an IV series but 9 appear in several A, stral an IV series but 9 appear in several A, stral an IV series but 9 are as a film called Mad Max. He (10) ....... (since/make) two more 'Max' films.

He (11) ...... (go on) to make several other successful films in Australia, for example, (.... po., befor hy 12 move to not yourd

Gibson (13) ...... (make more than thick his minimized by the probability of the last few years. To all the probability of the



You have been asked to prepare a short biography of Bruce Willis for a movie magazine Read the notes below and write one sentence only for each numbered set of notes. Use the past simple and present perfect (simple or continuous) of the verbs in brackets, and appropriate linking words or phrases. You may add words and change the form of the words given in the notes, but do not add any extra information. The first point has been expanded for you as an example (0). (You may also wish to use the biography in Exercise 5 to help you.)

- O Bruce Willis (be) major US film & TV star almost 20 years
- (become) one of most highly paid Hollywood actors, (write) filmscripts
- born Germany 1955 father in US army & mother German
- 3 family (move) back to USA (New Jersey) 1957
- (go) Montclair State College New Jersey (get) role in play 'Heaven and Earth'; (leave) school & (start) acting
- 1st main role = David Addison in `Moonlighting' (hit TV show), (win)
  Emmys and Golden Globe awards for role
- 6 1st hit film = Die Hard, 1988; (make) two sequels since then
- (star) mainly violent action films since `Die Hard', also (make) different types of film 'Twelve Monkeys' (1995), `The Sixth Sense' (1999)
- 8 (make) 40+ films, many (be) commercial success
- 9 (have) severe stutter ever since childhood, acting (help) him subdue it not a problem in front of audience
- 10 (be) married Demi Moore 10 years separation 1998; (have) 3 children together

Bruce Willis has been a major American film and television star for almost twent, years now

## Round up: Units 1–3

## Present and past tenses

	•		
form	use	example	
present	truths and facts	British people drink a lot of tea	1 1B
simple	repeated events/actions	The Blairs take their summer holiday in Tuscany.	1 10
	series of events	You cross the road, go through a gate	1.10
present continuous	actions true at time of speaking	I'll be with you in a minute. I'm just finishing something in the kitchen	1.2B
	temporary actions	She's staying in the Waldorf Astoria this time	1 2B
	states in a process of change	British summers are getting hotter	1.2B
	repeated events/actions within a temporary time	I'm feeding the neighbour's cat this week while she's in hospital	1 2C
	series of events in progress at time of speaking	They're now entering the back straight	1.2D
past simple	completed past actions	Julius Caesar invaded Britain in 55 BC.	2 1B
	past states	The Incas didn't have a written script	2.1B
past continuous	actions in progress at a time in the past	We didn't hear him come in because we were sleeping on the top floor that night	2 2B
	past temporary/ changing situations	His symptoms were becoming more pronounced as time went by	2.2B
	past background situations	Night was falling over the beleaguered city.	2.2B
	past interrupted actions	They were crossing the bridge when the earthquake struck	2.2C
	past arrangements	Nancy was taking the flight	2 2D
past perfect simple	actions/states before a time in the past	By the third month the rebels had taken most of the province	2.3B
	an earlier action in a past sequence	When we got back to babysitter had gone home	2 3C
	unfulfilled intentions	They had hoped to reach the summit but Travers fell ill.	2 3D
past perfect continuous	an ongoing situation up to or just before a time in the past	He had been dreading this meeting for weeks	2.4B
used to + infinitive	past actions which no longer take place	Did you use to get free milk at school?	2 58
	past states which no longer exist	Lithuania used to be part of the Soviet Union	2.5C

form	use	example	
would + Infinitive	past actions which no longer take place	We <b>would get up</b> early every Saturday.	2.5B
present perfect	ongoing states and actions	The manor house has stood on this spot for over two hundred years.	3 1B
simple	ongoing times, or actions which may be repeated in the future	This channel has shown four wildlife documentaries so far this week Grisham has written some of the most successful legal thrillers.	3 1B
	with superlatives	It's the worst sports programme I have ever seen.	3 1B
	with adverbs	I have seldom experienced racism in athletics.	3 1 C
	past action with present relevance (e.g. result)	The power surge has broken my computer.	3 1D
	recent actions	I've just made a cup of tea	3 1 D
	with time clauses	We'll make a move as soon as the rain has stopped.	3 1E
present perfect	ongoing states and actions	Women have been speaking out on this issue for some time	3 3B
continuous	ongoing actions/states which are temporary or may change	She <b>'s been drinking a</b> lot less recently	3 3B
	focus on the duration of a continuing action	I've been learning to play chess for three years now.	3 3B
	recent actions	l've been talking to Jenny	3 3C
	explaining a present result (focus on the activity)	I'm sorry the hall is in such a mess. We've been decorating	3 3C

# The future (1)

English does not have a future tense but uses a variety of forms to talk about the future. The choice of form often depends on whether we are making a prediction, expressing an intention or talking about an arrangement. In sunit, books at the use of will be going to and present tenses to taik and it the future. For other ways of talking about the future > Unit 5.)



### **PREDICTION**

will/won't

We use willfavon t (the future simple) to talk about predictions which are based on guesswork analysis or judgement. We use will with all persons and with personal + infinitive and impersonal subjects:

- Personal: We'll still be here in twenty years
- Impersonal: Will interest rates rise in the next few weeks?

We often use will to predict an event which we tank will happen because similar events have happened in the past:

He'll be in prison for a long time (Similar or ries have attracted long sentences) The laptop buttery will give you about two rears continuous use (This is what previous batteries have done.)

We can use shall/shan't with I and we, although this is becoming dated now: I shall never get the hang of these new WAP phones.

- We do not use shall/shan't with he, she, it, you, they for predictions:
  - X He shall like the idea, I'm sure.
  - ✓ He will like the idea, I'm sure

be going to + infinitive

We also use be going to + infinity of to make a production respectably if there is evidence in the present to justify the prediction-

The Roses are already a popular band and they are going to be massive!

- X Look at those black clouds. It will rain
- ✓ Look at those black clouds. It's going to rain

It is possible to use will with present evidence, but we usually use an adverb Look at the sky. It will probably/ definitely rain later.

With be going to there is often a strong link with the present, and the prediction is often about the near future: Look out! You're going to spill the wine!

Look at those

black clouds It's going to rain

4.1C will/won't be + verb -ing

We use will/won tibe + verb ing (the future continuous) for a temporary action in progress at a particular point in the future.

This time next Tuesday afternoon I'll be lying on the beach!

present future

NOW (this Tuesday afternoon)

(next Tuesday afternoon) ← I'll be lying on the beach →

Compare this with the present continuous for a temporary action in the present It's Tuesday afternoon and I'm lying on the beach.

- Note that we do not usually use the passive with this form:
  - \* The proposal will be being presented at the next meeting.
  - ✓ The chairman will be presenting the proposal at the next meeting.
- We do not use the verb be in the continuous:
  - X Shelley will be being in Morocco this time tomorrow.
  - ✓ Shelley will be in Morocco this time tomorrow.

We can also use will/won't be + verb -ing (and will/won't + infinitive) to make a 'prediction' about something we believe to be the case now ( $\triangleright$  18.1C):

You can't interrupt her now Sne'll be getting ready to go on stage won't sne? 'What's that noise?' 'It'll be Ron next door. He's learning to play the trumpet.'

4.1D

win won't have
+ past
participle;
will/won't have
+ been + verb
-ing

We use williwon thave + past participle (the future perfect) to make predictions about actions which we expect to be completed by a particular time in the future.

He'll have had the operation by May and should be a lot fitter then.

past	present	future		_
-	1	1	1	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
	NOW	(the operation)	MAY	

We usually use altime adverbiblinase such as soon by then within the next week) with this kind of prediction. The times can be very close to 'now', e.g.

You can have my report by the end of the morning. In fact, I'll have finished it within the next hour.

We use williwon that e + been + ve b - ing to talk about an act on which is still ongoing at a point in the future, to focus on the duration of the action:

We'll have been living in this house for twenty years in December.

With verbs such as *live work stall* which contain the idea of continuity, we can also use will/won't have + past participle.

We'll have lived in this house for twenty years in December

- We rarely use this form in the passive:
  - **X** By July the house will have been being built for a year.
  - ✓ By July they will have been building the house for a year.

# 4.2

### **DECISIONS AND INTENTIONS**

4.2A will/won't + infinitive

**4.2A** We often use will/won't + infinitive the future simple) to talk about a decision made at won't the time of speaking:

Oh, our guests are here. I'll go and sort out some drinks for them.

You look tired. I'll cook dinner tonight. (> 18.4A)

In questions asking about decisions, we can use shall (with I and we only):

Shall I see you next week, then?

In speech we stress will won t to indicate determination, especially when the action is decided on or the determination is strengthened at the time of speaking:

I will come with you at the weekend, whatever my parents say!

After what has just happened, I won't believe a word you say again.

① We do not usually contract will to II with this use as we usually stress the auxiliary verb, but we can make the contraction when we stress an adverb:

He'll never agree to that!

4.28 We use be going to + infinitive for intentions (i.e. for actions that have already been be going to decided on).

+ infinitive He is going to study environmental law next year.

We can use be going to for impersonal intention, e.g. of an authority.

The Government is going to increase VAT in the budget.

• We usually avoid be going to with the verbs go and come:

[I'm going to go home now. Are you going to come?]

✓ I'm going home now. Are you coming?

We stress be or not to express determination about something we have a ready decided on

Lam going to leave I'm not going to stay here forever, so don't try to make met

#### **ARRANGEMENTS**

continuous

We use the present continuous ( 1 2) to describe an event in the future which has Present already been arranged by the time of speaking

We're seeing a musical at the theatre next week ( We've got the tickets) Compare this with the use of be going to

We're going to see a musical at the theatre sometime next week (not arranged yet the focus is on our intention)

We usually use the present continuous for future events which involve other people and where we have made some form of commitment in giby buying tickets. However, we can also use this tense for arrangements that don't civolve other people. In this case, we see it as an 'arrangement' the speaker makes with him/herself:

I'm staying in tonight. I've got loads of paperwork to do.

The focus here is on the larrangement in eithere is no suggestion that the speaker wants to stay in, which is the case when we use be going to. Compare:

I'm going to stay in tonight. (focus on intention)

We also use the present continuous for impersonal plans.

Computer City has announced that it is opening four new shops next month

• We cannot use this tense with exents which are beyond human controlleg the weather because these events are predictions not intentions or arrangements ( 4-1)

x It's snowing tomorrow.

✓ It's going to snow tomorrow./It will snow tomorrow.

will/won't be + vetb ing

We can also use williamon't be + verb ingittie fature continuous) to talk about events that are a result of or part of an arrangement made in the past:

How about joining us at the cottage tris Sunga; On we can't We'll be coming back from Edinburgh on Sunday. We're visiting Julianne."

Trains won't be running between East Patricia and Putney Bridge this weekend due to essential track repairs.

With this structure the future event is seen as in riged so we use this as a tactful way of asking about someone's plans or refusing an invitation:

Will you be staying long? I'm sorry, I can't come to your wedding as I'll be working on that dau.

There is, in fact, little difference between this and the use of the present continuous for arrangements. The use of will/won't be + verb -ing acts to distance the arrangement a little, making it more fixed and less open to change.





#### OTHER FUTURE MEANINGS

**Timetables** 

4.4A We can use the present simple to talk about timetabled events:

The tour departs on October 11th for 15 days and costs £495.

The car comes at eleven to collect the guest speakers and they arrive at the hall at eleven thirty.

Routine events in the future

4.4B We use will/won't be + verb ing for future events we see as certain because they are part of a routine, especially when the event continues for a period of time leigilla. festival, a meeting:

Winston will be performing with his steel band every night of the music festival We'll be having our weekly meeting tomorrow so I II present your proposal then The focus in the last example is on the routine nature of the weekly meeting. Compare this with the use of other future forms (all correct English). The present continuous focuses on the arrangement rather than the routine:

We're having our weekly meeting tomorrow instead of Friday this week.

The present simple presents the meeting as part of a timetable:

We have our weekly meeting tomorrow so I'll present your proposal then.

We also often use will/won't be + verb -ing to say that an event is inevitable:

I'll be seeing Mr Kennedy at the court tomorrow—ne's always there on Thursdays so we can discuss your case briefly then.

We use will/won't to express statements of fact about the future:

Next week I'll be 21.

The sun will rise at 5.30 tomorrow morning.

future forms

4.4C We can make predictions, intentions or decisions stronger or weaker by using certain Qualifying adverbs, for example definitely, certainly, probably, possibly (> 24.3C):

She'll definitely make a fool of herself

The lecture probably won't start on time - they rarely do here.

I'm definitely going to look for another job now!

I certainly won't give you a lift to the station – it's only down the road!

We can show our attitude to the future event by using an introductory verb for example think, expect, hope, doubt, suppose, promise, guarantee:

I expect she'll call us from the airport

The Association guarantees that 500 tickets will be available on the day We usually show negative meaning (e.g. I non tiposs the exam) at the beginning of the sentence with the introductory verb:

[I think I won't pass the exam.]

✓ I don't think I'll pass the exam.

Time clauses

4.4D In time clauses (starting with when, after, as soon as, once, until), we do not use will/won't, but we use a present form:

x Won't the park look good once the new trees will reach maturity?

✓ Won't the park look good once the new trees reach/have reached maturity? Effective penal reform will not be achieved until the government takes it seriously

▶ Pages 86 and 87 for Round up of future forms

## 4.1. 4.2

Complete the dialogues according to the cartoons and using the verbs in brackets. Use will/won't, will/won't be + verb -ing, will/won't have + past participle or be going to.



O 'Can you come to a meeting at three this afternoon?'
'Sorry. I ... won't have finished ... (finish) all this work by three.'



1 'What can you tell me about my future? 'You ...... (meet) a handsome young man!'



2 'What's happening up there?'
'He ...... (jump) off the building!'



3 'Is it next week that you're on holiday?'

'Yes. This time next week I .......... (sail) on
the Mediterranean.'

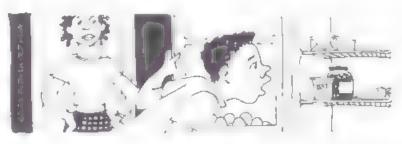


4 'Is that the phone again?'
'It's all right Mum. 1 ........ (answer) it!'



5 'What is it?'

'He's got a gun. He says he ....... (shoot)
someone!'



6 'Where's Mum with the shopping? I'm starving!'

'She'll be back by eight. Wait and have dinner with us.'

'Eight! No way! I ...... (die) of starvation by then!'



In each of the sentences below, one or two of the options (A-C) are appropriate. Circle the letter for the option(s) you choose.

- 1 Your son has been within's girlfriend for a longitime. Any sign of wedding be is? 'Well, I'm not sure, but I think he ... her to marry him on their holiday next week.'
  - A asks B will ask C is going to ask
- 2 'Can I have your report this afternoon? This afternoon? Oh I don't think I by then
  - A 'll have finished B 'm finishing C 'll be finishing
- 3 Look at the waiter He's carrying too much. He ... all those plates.
  - A 's dropping B 's going to drop C 'Il be dropping
- 4 'Do you want to go to the cinema tonight?' 'No, I'm too tired. 1 ... an early night.'
  - A 'm having B will have had C 'm going to have
- 5 Nobody supports my plan to climb Everest. But, believe me, L... it1
  - A 'm going to do B will do C 'll have done
- 6 'I'm really worried about Susan. What do you think has happened?'
  'Don't worry. She's probably just caught in traffic. I'm sure she ... here soon.'
  - A will be B is being C will be being
- 7. Here's a letter from our holiday representative. They a reception in the bar tonight at eight
  - A are holding B will have held C are going to hold
- 8 It ... all day on Sunday, so the party will be in the house, not in the garden.
  - A will be raining B is going to rain C rains

# 61 4.1, 4.3, 4.4

For each of the sentences below, write a new sentence as similar as possible in meaning to the original sentence, but using the word given. This word must not be altered in any way. The sentence must include a future form.

- O The manufacturers are certain of a light evel of customers at shict on with this product guarantee. The manufacturers quarantee that customers who be attisfied with this product.
- 1 Let's stop playing soon local opponents have so many more points than we do **going**
- 2 Our plane's departure time is at 6.30 in the morning leaves
- 3 My great grandmother colebrates her hundredth birthday next year
- 4 It's unlikely that humans will ever be able to live on the moon.
- 5 It's my parents' twenty-fifth wedding anniversary next Saturday. married
- 6 Come alorg next Monday afternoon—the band a ways records on Monday afternoons will
- 7 We are one hundred per cent certain of the success of our proposal.
  certainly
- 8 The government expects another six thousand people to be in work by the end of the summer found
- 9 Do you have any idea of your arrival time on Friday? arriving
- 10 Our daughter has got a role in the school production of Miss Saigon next month appearing

# Complete the dialogue with verbs from the box. Use suitable forms with future meaning.

	arrive	pe (x5)	_COTTE	finish (x2)	nave	have to	meet (x2)	pick up	work
PAM	Can w	e fix a t me	for the n	ext meet ng?	How abo	ut the 12th	<sup>7</sup> That s after	the sales c	onference
ALEX		-		appening on t					
PAM				eople from H					
JOHN PAM							ve the meetin (3) av	-	_
ALFX		et's have tl					conference (4)		Lil.
PAM						-	are they gon	-	
JOHN				*	t I (5)	on ther	n next week.	gather.ng ii	nformation
PAM	-			ly in June?	June nu	t I don't thu	nk they (8)	ready	before the
PAM							two o c ock o	-	
At x				45			ans Could we		
PAM									
TO IN	(11)	leave	here at f	ive thirty. Is t	hat OK?		i usual when t	•	away, so
PAM	1 think	so. Right,	so we (12	) at th	aree o'clo	ck on 17 Ju	une, in the bo	ardroom.	
5	ALL								
	ch the s	entences (	1-9) with	the replies (	A-J), the	n complete	the replies	with the ve	erbs in
0	There's s	omeone at	the door						D
1	Mum Tv	vant to get	away from	n John for a v	vh e Car	I come an	d stay with yo	and Dad	
	_	interesting							
			*	u this evening	-				-
				new TV series	5?				
	_	teak tough			-t	a trad			
				d my train's a plans to revie	*				
		_		out for Satur		5:			
				day off next					
							ady two mon	,	
						the lion tam	er at half pas	st.	
D	n is, inis Don't gel	ume I	ill answer	lain) to the b (answer)	utener. it				
				e football hig		night.			
	_			as usual in th	-	E.P	v		
G	Come on	then. I	(give)	you a lift to	the statio	n.			
				ext Friday afte		_	40*		
	Yes We actors	(fi n	n) a new se	eries next yea	ir Weive	a ready fou	nd the location	ons and boo	oked the
J (	Of course	e, dear. Ho	w long do	you think you	J	(stay)?			

Read the article and decide which word or phrase below best fits each space. Circle the letter of the option you choose. The exercise begins with an example (0)

# Naturewatch

Mark Rawlings and his team are still in the Andes filming Penny, a puma. They have managed to get quite close to the big cat and gain her trust over the last summer. In this instalment of Mark's video diary, he describes how Penny is currently spending a lot of time with a mate, so Mark and his team are sure that she (0) ... cubs in the spring. If that is the case, they (1) ... much of her over the winter. In fact, they are unlikely to see much of her until the winter (2) ... over anyway, as pumas, like most of the large cats, tend to hide away when the weather is bad. If Penny is pregnant, she (3) ... the cubs by early March and they (4) ... the den about three months later. Although Mark doubts whether she (5) ... out to hunt much in the next few months, he (6) ... until she (7) ... . Once the team (8) ... filming Penny, they (9) ... to North America to track down the grizzly bear, but Mark (10) — such a pleasant assignment.



- 0 A has
- 1 A will see
- 2 A is
- 3 A is having
- 4 A are leaving
- 5 A will come
- 6 A stays
- 7 A reappears
- 8 A will finish
- 9 A are going
- 10 A thinks it is

- (B) is going to have
- B aren't seeing
- B will be
- B will have had
- B will leave
- B is coming
- B will have stayed
- B w I reappear
- B have finished
- B are going to go
- B thinks that won't be

- C will have had
- C won't see
- C is being
- C will be having
- C leave
- C will have come
- C is going to stay
- C is going to reappear
- C will have finished
- C go
- C doesn't think that will be

# The future (2)

We commonly use will, be going to and present tense forms to talk about the future ( Unit 4) But we can use a number of other patterns often with an infinitive, as well as verbs and adjectives that contain future meaning these are described in this unit, along with ways of talking about the future when seen from a viewpoint in the past



#### **EXPRESSIONS WITH FUTURE MEANING**

5.1A be to + infinitive We use be to in formal English to talk about official arrangements in the future.

The President is to hold an official reception for the visitors.

+ infinitive This construction is common in writing, especially in news articles:

Crash investigators are to release their findings to the press later today.

① The verb be is often omitted in headlines. President to hold official reception. We often use be to in if clauses ( Unit 10) when we wish to say that the event in the if clause is dependent on the event in the main clause happening first.

If British tennis is to reach world standard again, both more money and more commitment will be necessary. (~ More money and commitment must be given first for British tennis to improve.)

We can also use be (not) to + infinitive for formal commands and instructions:

You are not to disturb the head teacher while the inspectors are here next week.

It is quite common to use the passive for instructions with be to:

These pills are not to be taken with any other form of medicine.

5.1B be due to + infinitive

We can use be due to to talk about an event which forms part of a timetable (> 4.4A present simple). We usually use a time phrase with be due to:

When we use *be due to* to talk about a future event it is possible that the timetable may change, i.e. the event is not totally fixed, as is the case with *be to*:

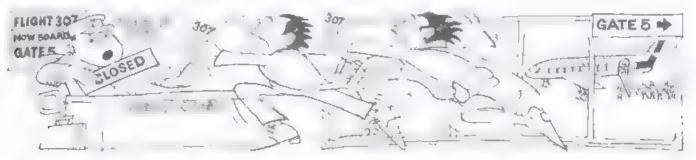
New measures to contain asylum seekers **are due to come** into force on 1st August but a case currently before the European of it may doing this until the autumn

5.1C Expressing the near future

We use *be about to* to talk about an event that we intend or expect to happen in the near future. The event may or may not be placed but we often use *about to* when evidence in the present indicates that it will happen (*be going to* > **4.1B**)

Hurry up the driver says her and wait any crain. He's about to leave without us. We can stress that the future event is very imminent by adding just:

Come on! The check-in desk is just about to close



Two other expressions used for talking about the near fiture are on the point of and on the verge of These both mean that something is about to happen. They can be followed by either an -ing form or a noun:

Don't provoke your little brother You can see he's on the point of losing his temper. Because of the eros on of their habitats, some species are on the verge of extinction.

Some adjectives contain the dea of in the near future leig imminent, forthcoming, impending. We tend to use these adjectives in more formal English:

A decision from the judges is **imminent**. We will return to the law court as soon as we have any further news.

- We use *impending* only in attributive position, i.e. before the noun:
  - X The sensation of doom was impending
  - ✓ No one could shake off the sensation of impending doom
- We do not usually use time adverbials (e.g. in an hour) with the expressions in 5.1C. \*\*Come in. We're on the point of starting dinner in two minutes.

Expressing probability and certainty

5.1D We use be likely to + infinitive to say that something in the future is probable.

The payment is likely to take ten days. Please contact us if it does not arrive within ability.

that time.

Be unlikely to + infinitive means that it is improbable that something will happen. They're unlikely to arrive before six. The traffic is always awful on Fridays. We can use be sure (boundicertain) to + infinitive to say that something is definitely going to happen:

The new timetable is sure to annoy some of the teachers when they see it.

Your application is bound to fail it you don't get the divisional director's approval
In the negative we put not after the adjective:

Don't worry about Dad - he's sure not to find out about the loan.

This can sound quite formal, so in casual speech we sometimes rephrase it: Don't worry about Dad - I'm sure he won't find out about the loan.

- We can use be sure to and be certain to as imperatives, we don't use be bound to in this way:
  - X Be bound to give me a call when you arrive at the hotel.
  - ✓ Be sure/certain to give me a call when you arrive at the hotel.

# 6.2

#### VERBS WITH FUTURE MEANING

5.2A Some verbs contain an implied future in their meaning lie we understand that they Main verbs relate to the future even though we do not use a future form

verbs	structure	examples
decide, hope, intend promise swear	verb + to	I hope to see everyone at the next Open Day.  Do you swear never to reveal any of the secrets of the Magic Circle?
anticipate predict, envisage	verb + noun -ing form	We anticipate congestion on all major routes out of London this weekend.  Do you envisage experiencing any difficulty with this machine?
arrange, expect, guarantee, plan, undertake		We're planning a stay of only three days. We expect to promote trainees within two to three years of qualifying.

5.2B Many modal verbs can refer to the future—usually expressing a degree of possibility or Modal verbs probability (modal verbs ▶ Units 16–18):

Such financing opportunities may not be so readily available in the future.

Rankin's latest biockbuster might win the Golden Dagger award for crime fiction.

Given their expertise and experience the Swiss team should triumph in tomorrow's final.

# **J.**3

#### **FUTURE IN THE PAST**

5.3A
was.were
going to
+ infinitive

Sometimes we need to describe the future from a viewpoint in the past. We often use was/were going to to do this.

I was going to get up early this morning but the alarm didn't go off!

11.30 p.m.	6 a.m	9 a.m.	
yesterday	today	today	
<u> </u>	1	1	
(i)	(2)	(3)	

- (1) I intend to get up early tomorrow this is a future plan
- (2) The alarm doesn't go off.
- (3) I wake up late. My plan to get up early is now in the past.

When we use was/were going to the plan is not usually fulfilled (i.e. it does not nappen). The fitness club was going to increase its annual subscription but so many members protested that it backed down. (It didn't increase the subscription.)

However it is possible to describe a past intention that is fulfilled. This is made clear in the context:

'Thanks for posting my letters That's OK I was going to post mine anyway (= I did post my letters.)

5.3B Other ways of expressing the future in the past While wasiwere going to is a very common way of expressing the future in the past it is possible to transfer any form with future meaning to the past:

present/future form	past form	example
present continuous	past continuous	We thought they were arriving before dinner, but they didn't arrive until midnight.
will/shall	would	The heating wasn't working and we hoped that the repairman wouldn't take long
will be + -ing form	would be + -ing form	Little did we know that we would still be waiting in three hours' time.
will have + past participle	would have + past participle	The Cabinet thought the crisis would have finished before the election.
istare about toldue to	was/were about to/ due to	As he raised his arm she realised that he was about to strike her again
is/are to	was/were to	We were to arrive at the airport at nine, where we were to have been met by the tour guide.

When we transfer present/future forms to the past, they keep the same meaning as they have in the present, that is we use the present continuous to talk about arrangements, so the past continuous also expresses arrangements:

We were meeting them at the concert half but we didn't know which entrance they were waiting at. (unfulfilled arrangement)

With was/were (due) to + present infinitive we don't know if the event happened or not The Professor was to take up his chair in October.

The exam results were (due) to arrive at the school today. We can ring tomorrow to find out whether they have arrived

However, was/were (due) to + perfect infinitive tells us that the event did not occur. The exam results were (due) to have arrived at the school today but apparently the exam board has not posted them yet.

▶ Pages 86 and 87 for Round up of future forms

# Practice

The key to these exercises is on page 355

## 5.1

Complete these two short texts using the most appropriate expressions with future meaning.

follywood's king and queen.

From Cruise and Julia Roberts

(6) . ... star opposite each other in Ridley Scott's new blockbuster.

No interviews or press releases are

No interviews or press releases are (7) ....., but rumour has it that the film will be another Roman epic, following hot on the heels of the

Filming (8) start in September, but because of other commitments the two stars are (9) join the set until next year. One thing is certain with that combination of director and stars, the film is (10) ....... be a success!

# 2 5.1, 5.2

Complete this conversation with phrases from the box. Use each phrase only once.

anticipate are on the point of expect guarantee to hopes to is about to is likely to is sure to plans to should

MARY When do Brian's exams start, then?

ANNA Well, he (1) ...... start them. The first one is tomorrow in fact.

MARY Do you [2] ...... him to do well?

ANNA We think he will He's taking nine subjects, and he's quite optimistic. He (3) pass at least six of them – he's very good at those six subjects. We think that he (4) pass two of the others. French and art in e's studied very hard, but he's not naturally gifted in those subjects. We've got no hopes at all for music. He (5) fail it I don't know why the school entered him for it.

MARY What does he want to do next year?

ANNA That depends. If he does well, he (6) ...... stay on at school for two years and study sciences.

MARY Can he stay at the same school?

We've just neard that they (7) opening the new sixth form college in Fareham We (8) being able to send him there, but we don't know for certain.

MARY And if he doesn't pass enough of the exams?

ANNA Well he might leave and look for a job. Sandy you know myle der sister is says she (9) have a vacancy for a trainee in her business, but obviously she can't (10) ... take him We'll just have to see.



For each of the sentences below, write a new sentence as similar as possible in meaning to the original sentence, but using the word or phrase given This word or phrase must not be altered in any way. The exercise begins with an example (0).

- 1 Do not disturb the chimpanzees during feeding time disturbed
- 2 Turn that music down its so loud that it hidefinitely wake a tielling bound
- 3 Scientists in the human genome project feel that they are at cost to discovering
  - 4 Will you promise that you won't get drunk again tonight? not to
  - 5 It is probable that the road sweeping contract we be within as the Distbugs likely to
  - 6 Everyone in the village lived in fear of the voicanic erupt in its as miniment impending
  - 7 The designer believes that he will be able to finish the strong in sin, tomorrow afternoon envisages.
  - 8 Treaty don't think that the examiner will accept a hard. The se days unlikely to
  - 9 Please make your purchases and proceed to a check reference is going to close in five minutes.

    about
- 10. If we want medical research to provide cures for a resolution is a second sequately funded is

## 5.1

Complete the lines of each dialogue, using was/were going to was were about to or was/were to and an appropriate ending.

- 0 'Look, the shoe shop has closed down.'
- 1 'Hi, Karen, It's Graham here.'
  - 'Graham, I don't believe it! You must be a mind reader! I was .................
- 2 'Where's Dad?'
  - 'He's gone back to work. They had an emergency at the factory
  - 'Oh no! I've got some really tough maths homework and he was
- 4 'Thanks for coming round I'm sorry, but there's a so der in my bath.'
  - 'A spider! Is that all? I don't believe it. And I'm starting! When you called we were a have dinner.'
- 5 'Where's Noel? I thought you'd invited him?'
  - 'We did invite him and he was ....., but he has had to work late '

5

In this letter some of the lines have a word that must be corrected (example 0), some have a word that must be replaced (example 00), and some are correct (example 000). If a line is correct, put a tick (). If a word must be replaced or corrected, underline that word, and write the new, correct word.



Sunnyside Promenade Barton-on-Sea Hampshire

#### Dear Guest

- The Management of Broadbank Hotel wish to inform you that the hotel is too
  close on 5 December this year. It is about to reopen next year as part of the
  Value4U chain of hotels.

  As you know, the Lister family has been involved in Broadbank Hotel for
  over twenty years now and the due closure is a blow to all of us. We realised
  some months ago that we will need to find some kind of financial support for the
  - torthcoming season. We started to look at ways of doing this and we were go to work with an investment company to upgrade the hote, with the addition of a gym, swimming pool and sauna complex. We were on the verge of sign a contract, which was to allowed us to retain control of the hotel, but we were unable to complete the deal on time. We were likely to send Christmas cards as usual to all our regular clients, with information about offers for the spring, but of course, that is now not possible. Unfortunately, we are sure to be able to set up
  - 11 another hotel in the near future.
    12 The Value4U chain envisages reopen the hotel by 1 March, and they
    13 are about to contact you when that happens. It just remains for us to thank you
    14 for your support in the past, and to wish you every success for the future. We
    15 hoped to be able to write to you with news of a new venture at some point

# Round up: Units 4 and 5

## The future

prediction personal	will/won't		
personal	will/won't		
		He'll be in prison for a long time.	4 1A
ımpersonal		The war will be over next month.	4 1A
prediction with present evidence	be going to	Look at those clouds. It's going to snow	4.1B
prediction of an action in progress	will/won't be + verb -ing	This time tomorrow we <b>'ll be sitting</b> in a Tuscan café	4 1C
prediction of an action completed by a point in the future	will/won't have + past participle	I'll have finished this report by 3 30	410
prediction of an action still ongoing at a point in the future	will/won't have been + verb -ing	She'll have been working there for 25 years next month.	4.10
intention			
decision made at the time of speaking	will/won't	I'll get the phone	4 2A
Intention	be going to	They're going to take voluntary redundancy	4 2B
determination	will/won't	I will give up smoking!	4 2A
	be going to	I am going to give up smoking!	4.2B
arrangements			
personal	present continuous	We're taking a month off in the summer.	4 3A
ımpersonal		The bank is laying off 200 staff	4 3A
arrangement made in the past	will/won't be + verb -ing	We' <b>ll be coming back fr</b> om Edinburgh on Sunday	4.3B
tactful queries/reason for rejection		Will you be eating with us? I'll be rehearsing tomorrow night	4 3B
other future meanings			
'timetable' future	present simple	The Royal Train arrives at 5 45 p.m.	4.4A
routine events	will/won't be + verb -ıng	Come for dinner – we'll be cooking for six anyway	4 4B
statement of fact	will/won't	He'll be 25 next week	4.4B
with adverbs to make stronger, etc.	all forms	It' <b>il probably rain tom</b> orrow. She <b>'s</b> definitely <b>going</b> to the party.	4.4C
with verbs of hope, doubt, etc.	all forms	We hope you'll be able to come I expect they're going to increase the rate in the budget.	4.4C
ın time clauses	present simple	He'll stay until you <b>get</b> here. I'll leave as soon as it <b>stops</b> raining	4.4D

use	form	example	
expressions with future meani	ng		
official arrangements	be to	They are to hold a secret meeting	5 1A
timetable	be due to	We're due to collect her at five.	5 18
immediate future	about to	The check-in is about to close	5 1 C
	on the point/ verge of	The building project is on the point of completion.	
	adjectives	The decision is imminent	
probability/certainty	(un)likely to	He's unlikely to recognise me.	5 1 D
	bound/sure to	Your venture is bound to fail if you don't prepare fully.	
verbs with future meaning			
main verbs	decide, hope, promise, predict, etc.	They've decided not to buy the house. They're predicting snow tomorrow.	5.2A
modal verb	may, could, etc.	This move <b>could</b> lead to war	5 2B
future in the past			
	was/were going to	I was going to get up early this morning.	5.3A
	past continuous	We thought they were arriving before dinner	5. <b>3</b> B
	would	I had hoped you' <b>d</b> get here earlier	5.3B
	would be + verb -ing	We knew we would be waiting for ages.	5.3B
	would have + past participle	They thought the crisis would have finished before then	5 3B
	was/were about to	I was about to tell you when you interrupted	5 3B
	was/were to	We were to arrive at nine	5.3B
	was/were due	The concert was due to start at half past seven	5.3B
	was/were to have + past participle	The Queen Mother was to have accompanied the others, but she broke her hip the day before.	5.3B
	was/were due to have + past participle	I was due to have started the treatment yesterday but I couldn't get to the hospital because of the train strike.	5.3B



# Negation

There are many different ways of forming negatives in English. Although the most common way is with not we can also use adverbs, quantifiers and prefixes to make the meaning of a sentence or a word negative.



#### NEGATIVE STATEMENTS

6.1A We use not. n t with verbs to make the meaning of a sentence negative. We add an Using not auxiliary (do does etc.) in the negative present's imple and past simple of all verbs with verbs except be, and the negative imperative of all verbs.

	affirmative	negative
imperative	Talk to me!	Don't talk to me!
be	He's outside. We're waiting for you.	He's not/He isn't outside. We're not/We aren't waiting.
present or past simple	Llike Colombian coffee  They finished early.	l <b>don't like</b> Colombian coffee Th <b>ey didn't finish e</b> arly
perfect tenses	They have arrived. They had seen the film.	They haven't arrived. They hadn't seen the film.
modal verbs	We must leave soon.	You mustn't leave yet
infinitives	I told you to go.	I told you <b>not to go</b> X I told you don't go
	To stop now would be silly.	Not to stop now would be silly.
participles	Having seen the film, I understand the hype.	Not having seen the film, I don't understand the hype.

in short answers with verbs of thinking and believing, e.g. think hope, believe imagine we often put not after the verb (▶ 35.2D).

'Has Susannah decided to call her daughter Brittany after all?'

X 'I don't hope!' 
✓ 'I hope not!'

6.1B before quantifiers and adjectives

We can use not in front of positive quantifiers (e.g. much many a lot of) to make the Using not meaning of a clause or phrase negative:

> Not many people want to be referees - it's a lot of hassie and not much money We can use not (+ adverb) with adjectives to make the meaning negative:

Howard found thought the climb not (too) difficult but not (particularly) easy eitner Putting not before an adjective weakens the adjective, but it does not give it the same strength as an adjective with the opposite meaning leig not difficult does not have exactly the same strength of meaning as easy iparticularly if we add an adverb after not like too or particularly

The maths exam was easy. The maths exam was not too difficult

(The speaker is more confident of passing the exam in the first example )

We can also use not before an adjective with a negative prefix (▶ 6.3C):

Spanish has a tense system not dissimilar to that of English (= a bit similar to) The tap water here is not unpleasant to drink now they've removed the fluoride (= not awful, but not nice)

The descriptions above are much less positive than the following:

Spanish has a tense system similar to that of English.

The tap water here is pleasant to drink now they've removed the fluoride

**6.1C** We use *no* to introduce negative replies:

Uses of no

'Have you been here before?' 'No, I haven't.'

We do not combine no with a verb to make a negative statement

★ I have no been here before. 

✓ I have not been here before.

We usually use not + any with a noun to express an absence or lack of something They won't get any help from Janice.

However, we can use no in front of nouns, instead of not ... any or not ... a/an: They'll get no help from Janice.

We can often use no + noun and not arony + noun interchangeably, although no is usually more emphatic or more emotionally loaded than the neutral not along

There isn't any reason to change policy at this stage. (neutral statement)

There's no reason to change policy at this stage (more emphatic statement)

She's not a dancer. (statement of fact about her job)

She's no dancer! (statement of opinion about her ability to dance)

We can use no with different, good and with comparatives:

Low-impact aerobics is basically no different from the normal type-but it's kinder on the legs and feet. (= very similar to)

Next-day courier is no faster than first class post (= snit (any) faster than) Come on! This cafe is no more expensive than the one down the road. Let's eat! (= This café charges the same prices as the café down the road.)

6.1D Other no/not expressions

There are a number of expressions which we use to give negative meaning to a sentence, e.g. never, neither ... nor, none, not only, not ... for, no sooner ... than: The English village is neither as pleasant nor as an hanging as it is believed to be The German assault would have lasted orger t t hadn't been for the harsh Russian winter.

Penglish rarely uses a double negative life two words with a negative meaning in the same clause, as most people consider this to be incorrect:

X Sorry, but I don't know nothing about that!

✓ Sorry but I don't know anything about that I know nothing about that!

But double negatives are possible if we intend to make an affirmative:

I don't know nothing about Etruscan history - I know a little about it!

(In spoken English, nothing is stressed in this sentence)

We can put not only at the beginning of sentences for emphasis ( 34 3B)

Not only did they monitor the landings the , also recorded all their dates and times Note that we use question word order when we use not only in this way

transfer

6.1E When we use verbs like think suppose and the eve to introduce a negative dea, we Negative prefer to make the introductory verb negative not the verb in the subordinate clause [I think the later train won't be cancelled.]

✓ I don't think the later train will be cancelled

If we make the subordinate verb negative rather than the introductory verb it can express surprise or appear emphatic.

I thought that you didn't smoke! When did you start?

• We do not use *hope* in this way:

X We don't hope that the reunion will be too painful for you

✓ We hope that the reunion won't be too painful for you.

With verbs such as seem expect appear + infinitive we use either of these patterns He doesn't appear to be interested He appears not to be interested

 $\mathbf{Q}$  With introductory verbs such as tell and ask + infinitive we change the meaning when we make the introductory verb negative:

The doctor told me not to take the pills (prohib tion)

The doctor didn't tell me to take the pills. (= The doctor omitted to tell me .. )

# 6.2

#### **NEGATIVE QUESTIONS**

6.2A Form Negative questions are formed by adding nt to a form of be or to the auxiliary ( 7.1) Haven't you seen Harrison Ford's new film yet?

Isn't the mayor opening the new supermarket after all?

To be more formal, we can use not. We put this after the subject:

Is the mayor not opening the new supermarket after all?

We can use question words to introduce negative questions:

Why hasn't Stella contacted her solicitor yet?

6.2B We can use negative questions to check or confirm that something is true or has

Use happened, or to ask for agreement. We expect a positive (yes) answer:

Aren't you a member of a wildlife organisation? (= 1 think that you are.)

We also use negative questions to check or count in that something isn't true or hasn't happened. We expect a negative (no) answer:

You were quick. Wasn't the hairdresser busy? (= I think she wasn't busy.)

Negative questions often express surprise that something isn't true or hasn't happened

Haven't astronomers discovered a tenth pieret' - thought that they had )

We can also use negative questions to expression to smore complaint often with why Didn't you remember to post the letter? Honesty I can't trust you to do anything!

Why didn't you tell me about your new boyfriend?

We can answer negative questions with yes or no. If a full answer would use an affirmative verb, we use yes:

'Hasn't the weather been dreadful recently?' 'Yes (it has been dreadful).'

If a full answer would use a negative verb, we use no

'Wasn't the hairdresser busy?' 'No (she wasn't busy).'

Both of these examples agree with the speaker. We can also contradict the speaker, but we would then soften the response with an explanation.

'Hasn't the weather been dreadful recently?' 'Well, no, I think it's been OK.'

'Wasn't the hairdresser busy?' 'Yes, she was actually, but she's very fast!'

We can use negative questions to try to persiace someone to do something.

Won't you come with us to the beach tomorrow? It'll be fun.

We also use this form of question to express our consistency expect agreement **Don't** you think that the new shopping centre is really ugly?



#### WORDS WHICH CARRY NEGATIVE MEANING

Restrictive adverbs and quantifiers

Many English words such as few little or rate a negative or restrictive meaning (i.e. they reduce the amount, frequency or degree of the word they qualify).

type of word	examples	example sentences
quantifiers	few, little	There are few people who believe you I have little time to watch TV.
adverbs of frequency	rarely seldom hardly ever	The urban fox <b>seldom</b> ventures into gardens during the day
adverbs of degree	hardly, scarcely, barely	It is hardly likely that a thug will wait politely for the police!

The meaning of few and little is restrictive only without alan. Compare:

Water the fruit frequently as little rain falls at this time of year. (= almost none)

You d better take an umbrella with you there's always a little rain at this time of

year. (= a small amount)



As these restrictive words are negative in meaning, we use a positive verb with them

- x Many managers don't hardly prepare for meetings at all.
- ✓ Many managers hardly prepare for meetings at all
- We also use an affirmative question tag with these words (► 7.2A): Higher ranking pouce officers rarely meet the public these days, do they? We can put the adverbs of frequency from the table above before the verb for emphasis (► 34.3B).

Rarely did the church bells in our vivage ring out for something like a wedding

6.38 Some verbs contain a negative meaning, e.g. fail, deny, avoid:

Verbs

I fail to understand your motivation for doing this. (= I don't understand)

Joe denied copying the essay from his best friend. (= said he hadn't copied)

These verbs can be made regative and they can take a negative question tag
 (► 7.2A)

The boy didn't deny copying the homework. (= He admitted it.)
Fran failed her driving test again, didn't she?

6.3C We can make verbs, nouns and adjectives negative, with a negative prefix:

Prefixes Incomplete information is the inpropert of any berefit due (= not complete)

Look at these examples of negative prefixes:

part of speech	prefix	examples
verbs	dis- mıs- un- de-	dislike, disconnect, disappear, disapprove misunderstand, misinform, mislead, misbehave unlock, untie, unpack, uncork, uncover, uncoil deregulate, defrost, decentralise, dethrone, devalue
nouns	anti- non- in- dis- de-	anti-freeze, Antichrist, anti-perspirant, anti-climax nonsense, non-smoker, nonfiction, nonconformist injustice, inconvenience, inattention, inactivity disadvantage, disinformation, dishonesty, disinfectant decentralisation, deforestation, decriminalisation
adjectives	anti- In- (il-, ir-, im-) dis- non- un-	anti-clockwise, anti-smoking, anti-social incomplete, inconvenient, insecure, incredible (illegal, illegible, irrelevant, irregular, impossible) dishonest, disobedient, dissimilar, discourteous non-alcoholic, non-toxic, nonsensical, nonexistent unfair, uncomfortable, unlikely, unavailable, unusual

We can use words with a negative prefix in negative clauses:

- Negative verb: He reached down to the window, but didn't unlock it when he heard the cry from outside. (= didn't open it)
- Negative noun: It isn't anti-freeze, it's anti-perspirant!
- Negative adjective: Salaries here are not unlike those in the United Kingdom.
   (> 6.1B)



# Practice

## 6.1

Rewrite the underlined part of each sentence to make a meaningful negative alternative. There may be more than one way of rewriting some sentences.

- O l'Taccept nterruptions from you or anyone else wn le l'm speaking Ill accept no interruptions
  - Or: I won't accept any interruptions
- 1. We hope that the soid ers experience a lot of resistance when they enter the city
- 2 After the images of the famine, Geldof urged the nation to turn their TVs off
- 3 In English the subjunctive is usually different from the past tense
- 4 My brother's only just started his electronics degree iso he tried to repair the TV himself when it went wrong last week.
- 5. A great number of songbirds are seen these days, owing to the erosion of their natural habitats
- 6 In this modern city you get an impression of life in the pre-Capitalist era
- 7 Lwas willing to help the children last they had to take responsibility for the schoolwork they brought home.
- 8 War crimes should be both commonplace and accepted in times of conflict
- 9 The estimated fee for the project was unreasonable, but I decided to negotiate further
- 10 I think that our company will be offering aid to the disaster zore this time
- 11 Sarah has only had a few lessons on the guitar so she's a good guitar st
- 12 The new twin-turbo engine generates a lot of noise but is especially powerful.

## 2 6.2

Complete the gaps to make negative questions. Use the appropriate form of one of the verbs from the box to form each question. Some of the questions start with Why and you may need to add other words.

ML 209Bles from Preur Hadrig is countil in out the officer of more rise	
'Really? your holiday in that week?'	
'Oh, you're back. I was just about to do the washing-up.'	
yet? I've been out for three hours!'	
'Joe and I are going to the jazz festival on Sunday	157'
'I'm busy on Sunday, I'm afraid, but thanks for asking	
'Sorry, but I can't come to your dinner party tomorrow. I'm double booked	
1 ve already bought at the food!"	
'We need to get some flowers or something to take with us to the hospita.	
'Oh, then? I thought you were going to do that du	ring your lunch
break	
those hair extensions look awful on older women?	)*
'No, actually, I don't. In fact, I'm thinking of having some put in.'	
	Harriet El is may
	'Really?

# 3 6.3

For each of the sentences below, write a new sentence as similar as possible in meaning to the original sentence, but using the word given. This word must not be altered in any way. The exercise begins with an example (0).

- O Sending someone to prison for defending their own property isn't fair.

  injustice ....... Sending someone to prison for defending their own property is an injustice.

  1 Phil claimed that he had no involvement in the pensions scam.
- Phil claimed that he had no involvement in the pensions scam, denied
- 2 If no payment is forthcoming, we will be obliged to remove your connection to the electricity supply

#### disconnect

3 Hardly anyone from the housing cooperative showed any interest in joining the Neighbourhood Watch scheme.

#### few

- 4 The fundamental values of the two religions are fairly similar dissimilar
- 5 It isn't really possible to capture true colours with this type of video film. hardly
- 6 It appears that the director deliberately gave the investigators incorrect information misinformed
- 7 It's best not to talk about topics like politics or religion on a first date avoid
- 8 The fact that a great area of trees in the Brazilian rainforests has been cut down has had a devastating effect on the ecosystem.

#### deforestation

- 9 It isn't often that pop stars make it as actors but Madonna has achieved this rarely
- 10 Applications in which we are unable to read the writing will be automatically rejected illegible.

Complete the text using a negative form of the appropriate words from the box.

advantage available convenience courteous cover credible intelligent legal possible usual

This rather (1) ...... story from yesterday's news may have escaped your attention.

Customs officials last night (2)—an attempt at (3)—entry into Britain by an (4)—group of immigrants if eas. The fleas being to the Cardoso Frea Circus of Alistra aliwho are due to perform this evening at the Edinburgh Festival. The troupe (or the numan part of it at least) feels that this is a highly (5)—way to treat artists. They feel that it is (6)—tor them to cancel the show at this attestage so despite the (7)—of having lost their star performers, the show must go on. The fleatrainer. Wyn an Leung is currently working with an alternative cast of fleas provided by Cambridge and Bristol Universities, although it is a huge (8)—to have to work with ordinary cat fleas, rather than the elite strain of crossed cat and kangaroo fleas that were sent back to Australia. The circus didn't even bother trying to train the somewhat (9) ....... pulex irritans — the human flea.

Home Office spokespeople were all (10) ...... for comment.

# 5 61,63

Complete the text below with a word or phrase from the box.

few may not misleading no no intention not for not only not recognising not unlike not wishing noncommittal unwilling



Only a year ago not many people had heard of theatre director.

Sam Mendes. But since his debut film, American Beauty, won five.

Oscars in March 2000, (1) ....... self-respecting cinema-goer would admit to (2) ...... the name. (3) ...... recent films have received the accolades awarded this film by critics and audiences alike.



(4) ...... is Mendes one of the youngest first-time directors of a successful Hollywood film, he is also one of the youngest directors to run his own theatre, the Donmar Warehouse in I ondon's Covent Garden. The small entrance and warehouse-type interior of this theatre is (5) ...... it is (6) ...... the Royal Court Theatre of a few years ago, a theatre run by actors for actors and audiences, (7) ......

Initially, Mendes had (8) ...... of going to Hollywood to direct a feature film, but when Steven Spielberg sent him the script of American Beauty, he was (9) ...... to turn it down. After his Oscar success, the young director was (10) ...... about his future. While (11) ...... to desert his spiritual home, the Donmar, he (12) ...... be able to resist the temptation of another Hollywood film for long.



Find and underline the mistakes in this dialogue. (The first one is given as an example.) Correct the mistakes.

3 4 5 6 7	LOUISA MARTIN LOUISA MARTIN LOUISA MARTIN LOUISA	Hi, Martin. What's wrong? You look awful. Oh, I've had that horrible flu. It lasted for ages. Didn't you go to the doctor? No, I did. I went last week, but my doctor doesn't know nothing. I asked for that new flu drug – what's it called? Do you mean Relenza? That's it. I asked but he wouldn't give me none. Why?	Yes, I dia
9 10 11 12	MARTIN	He said that the tests haven't hardly proved that it works.  Not for did he refuse to give me Relenza, but he wouldn't give me none other medicine. I think it's because the surgery is over-budget and he doesn't want to spend any more money!	
13 14	LOUISA	If that's the case, it's really unhonest! Have you thought about complaining?	
	MARTIN	No, what's the use? Complaints about doctors rarely have an effect, don't they? Anyway, I suppose there's not much you can do about a virus. He said I should drink plenty of fluids and he didn't tell me to go out until I felt better.	
19 20 21	LOUISA MARTIN	How are you feeling now?  Not too bad, but I can't taste hardly anything. Well, I think that's an effect of the flu and not a problem with my taste buds!	
22 23 24		Oh, I don't hope it is! It would be awful not to taste things.  I've still got a few chest problems, too. I suppose I should stop smoking.	
	LOUISA	What! Have you stopped smoking through this flu, then? You're crazy, Martin!	
27 28 29 30 31	MARTIN LOUISA MARTIN	I know. I guess I'll never be a no-smoker  Perhaps not. Anyway, it lasts a long time, this flu. Not many people don't appreciate that. You think it's gone and you try to get back to normal, then it hits you again.  Yes, you're right.	
32		Look, I must be going. I don't hope it lasts much longer. 'Bye!	

# Questions

There is a range of issues to take account of in the use of questions in English these include word order word choice and intonation. This unit looks at these issues in relation to closed and open questions tag questions in direct questions and echo questions. (For negative questions ▶ 6.2; for indirect questions ▶ 9.3.)

# J.1

### **CLOSED AND OPEN QUESTIONS**

7.1A Questions are either closed or open. Closed questions start with a form of main verb. Form be an aux hary verb (be do have) or a modal aux lary verb (e.g. can may will).

Is your brother staying with his friends in Oxford?

Will you be away for long?

Should your team really have spent £500.000 on one player?

Open questions start with a question word (e.g. who, what, where, how):

What time is Alison arriving this evening?

With the simple tenses, doldoes/did is used as an auxiliary:

Does this box enable me to receive satellite TV as well as digital?

When exactly did the Guggenheim Museum in Bilbao open?

Main verb be or an auxiliary verb usual viprecedes the subject (but 7.1C)

Have you registered the birth with the authorities yet?

With more than one auxiliary verb, only the first one precedes the subject:

X How long had been you living there before the war broke out?

✔ How long had you been living there before the war broke out?

Will you have finished compiling the figures by the next meeting?

With negative questions, we attach n't to the auxiliary verb (> 6.2A).

Doesn't time fly quickly when you're having fun?

7.1B We use closed questions when we want a simple yes/no answer:

Use 'Does your sister still live in Canada?' 'Yes, she does./No, not any more.'

We use open questions when we want to find out more information:

Why did she leave Canada then? She couldn't stand the cold winters. In conversation, we can use statement word order with closed questions, but not with open questions, to check something we talk we know or to express surprise. We usually give them a rising intonation:

You've sent the tickets?

You haven't sent the tickets? / Why not?

\* Why you haven't sent the tickets?

✓ Why haven't you sent the tickets?

When we ask questions about opinions and feelings, we often omit that:

Do you think (that) the nursery will give me a refund for when Elly was ill?

We usually use the question word which when the answer will be one of a limited number of alternatives usually known to both speaker and listener. We use what when there is no limit to the choice:

Which cake do you want to try first? (limited choice of cakes)

What cakes do you like best? (of all cakes; unlimited choice)

When we use a preposition with a question word, we can either put the preposition before the question word (formal use) or at the end of the question (informal use).

From whom did the defendant accept the payment?

Who are you buying the bracelet for?

When we precede who with a preposition, we change it to whom.

Who, what and which can be the subject of a verb, as well as the object:

Subject question words

subject object object subject

Who invited Jack? (Meryl did ) Who did Meryl invite? (She invited Jack )

If the question word is the subject, the word order is the same as in a statement, i e the subject comes before the verb:

Who has been drinking my wine? (who = subject)

**What** happened at the end of the film? (what = subject)

We use question word order with a subject question word when we are keen to return to a topic earlier in the conversation and want to get an answer-

Well, what did happen at the end of the film? You still haven't told me.

• When we use who, what and which as subjects, we use a singular verb, even if they refer to a plural subject:

'Who lives in that amazing chateau?' 'The old Count and Countess live there '

7.1D Expressing emotion with questions We can add -ever to question words (except whose) to add a tone of annoyance or surprise to a question:

Whatever have you done to your hair? It looks terrible!

However did they manage to get that ship in the bottle?

Another, more informal, way of adding surprise or annoyance is with idiomatic phrases such as on earth, the hell, in heaven:

Why on earth did John decide to study Chinese?

Who the hell told you that you could take the day off?

We use else with question words when we have some information but would like more 'I saw Elena yesterday She said she'd retired last month.' 'Yes, I'd heard that What else did she sau?'

It is quite common to use a question form when we don't really want an answer. We call this a 'rnetorical question' and we use this kind of question when we want to express amazement or irritation with something:

Have you seen the price of fish at that supermarket? It's outrageous.

We use What's the point infuse of 2 to suggest that a course of action is worthless

What's the point in writing to your MP? It won't make any difference

What's the use of explaining it all to you if you're not listening?



### TAG QUESTIONS

Form (basic patterns)

Tag questions are the short questions which we often attach to the end of a sentence We form tag questions with doldoes/did (in simple tenses), or the auxiliary verb. There are three main types of sentence + tag question:

	type	sentence	tag question
mixed tag questions	affirmative + negative tag negative + affirmative tag	You already <b>know</b> Harriet, She <b>hasn't had</b> the baby yet,	don't you? has she?
uniform tag questions	affirmative + affirmative tag	He arrived last night then,	did he?

If an affirmative sentence contains a negative or 'restrictive' adverb (e.g. scarcely, hardly > 6.3A), it takes an affirmative tag-

There was hardly enough food for everyone at the wedding, was there? Most modal verbs, like auxiliary verbs, are repeated in the tag question:

Tax returns can be submitted on-line now, can't they?

Parents shouldn't expect their children to agree with their opinions, should they?

7.2B

There are a number of exceptions and variations in the form of the verb in tag questions

Form (exceptions

and

variations)

and I al

tag questions after ... example

I am I'm still part of the team, aren't !?

need He doesn't need to repeat the year, does he? (negative) (or: He needn't repeat the year, need he?)

may/might It may/might be fine tomorrow, mightn't it?

ought to We really ought to leave now, oughtn't we?/shouldn't we?

Let's Let's try that new restaurant, shall we?

Note the following contrasts:

have (British English)

Oliver has a lot of friends hasn't he?/doesn't he?

Oliver has a lot of friends, doesn't he?

had (past simple)

Ali and Stefan had another baby last year, didn't they?

You had met him before this evening, hadn't you?

Generally the pronoun in the tag question matches the subject of the sentence

This is a good example, isn't it? (This and it are both singular.)

Those are the flowers for Mum, aren't they? (Those and they are both plural)

Nothing ever happens when I'm away, does it?

But notice these exceptions:

Someone's been taking my food again, haven't they?

Nobody has phoned, have they?

7.2C We use mixed tag questions with a falling intonation to ask for confirmation.

Use It's the first of May today, isn't it? . (The speaker believes that this is true and uses a tag question to check.)

With a rising intonation mixed tag questions are a genuine request for information.

You haven't talked to Jim yet, have you?

We use uniform question tags (affirmative sentence + affirmative tag) to respond to something we have heard/seen, as in echo questions (▶ 7.4B):

'I'm sorry, but I'm going to have to cancel this evening. I'm still at work.'
'On, things are still really hectic, are they? (express ng sympathy)

Be careful with this type of tag, as with a rising intonation it can express sarcasm 'Look I only paid \$120 for this dress—it was so cheap!' 'Oh, \$120 is cheap is it?'
We answer mixed tag questions in the following way:

- Affirmative tag: 'John isn't experienced enough to do this job, is he?'
   'No, I don't think he is.' (agreement)/'Actually, yes, he is.' (contradiction)
- Negative tag: 'You're staying away for two weeks, aren't you?'
   'Yes, that's right.' (agreement)/'No, it's three weeks.' (contradiction)

7 2D We can also use tag questions for requests:

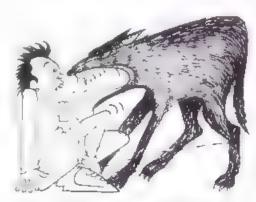
Other functions of tag questions

You'll bring me back some of those lovely sausages, won't you?

You couldn't bring me back some of those lovely sausages, could you?

The choice of tag question after imperatives depends on the function of the sentence

- · Requests: Pick me up at eight, could you?
- · Invitations: Stay another night with us, won't you?
- Commands: Turn the TV off, will you? Don't annoy Rufus, will you?



Don't annoy Rulus Willyou?

### INDIRECT QUESTIONS

An indirect question is one question within another question or a statement: Form

Can you tell me how long I'll have to wait to see the doctor?

indirect question introductory phrase

(How long will I have to wait to see the doctor?)

Common introductory phrases are CanlCould you tell me I'd like to know , Do you know .... I wonder

I'd like to know if that car is abandoned or not.

Do you know which seats give the best leg room on this type of plane?

- In indirect questions we use a statement word order where the subject always. precedes the verb or verb phrase:
  - X Do you know where is the nearest bus stop?
  - ✓ Do you know where the nearest bus stop is?
  - X Could you tell me when did he leave?
  - ✓ Could you tell me when he left?

In indirect questions we can use whether instead of if. If we use or not to imply a choice, we can put it at the end of the clause containing the question or after whether (but not after if):

Do you know whether the date has been confirmed or not?

I wonder whether or not Mum and Dad have got back from the Bahamas yet?

- X Could you let me know if or not the gym is open on Sunday?
- ✓ Could you let me know if the gym is open on Sunday or not?

We use the same indirect question patterns to report questions ( 9.3)

The police officer asked the child whether she could remember her address

7.3B We usually use indirect questions to make a question more polite or more tentative Do you know where I can find the Impressionist gallery? Use

This is less abrupt than a direct question:

Where can I find the Impressionist gallery?

#### **ECHO QUESTIONS**

We form echo questions with be, the auxiliary verb or a modal verb: 7 4A

'I'm going to Malaysia on business next week.' 'Are you (really)?' Form

They didn't give the concert after all last night 'Didn't they? Why not?'

We don't form echo questions with question words (what, how, why, etc.) It is also possible to form echo questions by repeating the question but replacing part of it with a stressed question word:

'Have you been to the Earth Centre?'

'Have I been to what?' I'Have I been where?'

7.4B One of the main uses of echo questions is to show interest and to make a conversation 'flow'. We use a rising intonation: Use

'We went to a really interesting play last night.' 'Did you?'

They can often express surprise, especially with the word really or an exclamation 'We've had wonderful news. Jim's just been promoted.'

'Has he really?'/'Has he? How fantastic!'

We use negative echo questions to show emphatic agreement with the speaker. Here we use a falling intonation.

'That was the best holiday we've ever had!' 'Yes, wasn't it?'

# Practice

Write each question.	Use the	prompts	in	brackets	and	the	replies	to	help	you
----------------------	---------	---------	----	----------	-----	-----	---------	----	------	-----

0	(own/white Cadillac/driveraround here). Who owns the white Cadillac that drives around here?
	'Oh, I think the Americans from Harding Road own it.'
1	(applicant/think/be/suitable?) '
	'Well, I think both applicants are reasonable, but Stephen Wrigiey appears the best for this
	particular post to me.'
2	(give/pigs/that type of feed?) '
	We donly been giving them that particular type of pig feed for about two months '
3	(tell/you/divorce?) '
	I think it was Susan who told me about it, but most people at college seem to know '

4 [else/do/holiday?] ' ..... 'We didn't really do much else on the holiday - it was a really small resort

5 (persuade/David/stay/team?) '..... 'No, I don't think we could have persuaded him to stay any longer. The counter-offer was far too attractive."

6 (be/point/complain/faulty goods?) '..... There's every point in complaining! How else will shops know that their goods are faulty if people don't complain?'

7 (watch/work/l/be/scuba-diving?) '..... Both of the watches are suitable for scuba-diving, but I think you. I find that the Timepiece is more reliable at greater depths."

8 (accused/steal/getaway car?) \* Your honour, we believe that he stole the getaway car on behalf of the Presley gang, for the robbery of the computer warehouse.'

12 'Ryan didn't go to work yesterday because he was ill.' 'Oh, he was ill, ...

he was watching the football.'

Cor	nplete each question with an appropriate question tag.			
1	You'll be able to watch the children for half an hour while I fetch John from work,			
2 'I hope you're not doing anything tonight. I've just booked tickets for the circus' 'Oh, there w				
	tickets left,? I thought it would have sold out.'			
- 5	The Consul had been quite cooperative up to this point, 7			
	We needn't register before the first talk,?			
	Be a good girl and pop to the shops for me. <sup>2</sup> We're completely out of cheese			
	How can you think of marrying her? You've hard y known her five minutes?			
7	No one was staffing the west turnstile at the time of the accident, ?			
8	8 Put some decent trousers on, ? They won't let you into the restaurant in those			
	jeans.			
9	9 It seems to me, Minister, that the Government has broken all its pre-election promises regarding			
	the Health Service,?			
	'I ll nelp you with your homework if you want Oh, you can do calculus,, Dad?'			
11	Mrs Allison did say that we could take dictionaries into the exam with us,			

? I thought



Rewrite each question to make it less direct, but so that it is as similar in meaning as possible to the original question. Begin with the phrases given.

- O Who is responsible for street cleaning in this area?

  Could you tell me who is responsible for street cleaning in this area?
- 1 Why did it take you so long to deliver this parcel?
  I'd like to know
- 2 Has Harriet finished the minutes of the meeting yet or not? Can you tell me if
- 3 Why do you keep so many old cars outside your house? Could I possibly ask you
- 4 When will the new curtains for the hotel suites be ready? Please let me know
- 5 Will Jonathan be staying for dinner tomorrow evening? I'd like to know whether .
- 6 How often is the bedlinen in the villas changed?

  Does the brochure say
- 7 Which metro station should we go to for the Eiffel Tower?

  Do you know \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 Did Schumacher win yesterday's race or not?
  I wonder whether

# 7.1.7.4

Complete B's questions with appropriate verbs and/or question words as necessary. The questions should ask about the underlined parts of A's sentences.

- O A. Come on! I've been waiting out in the cold for ages!
  - B. Oh, really? ..... How long exactly have you been waiting?
- 1 A Someone told me that you've decided to give up the course.
  - B On, . that?
- 2 A. Do you like tabbou en? I've got some here
  - B. Do I .....? I've never even heard of it!
- 3 A The new Mayor of London has decided to charge cars to go into the city
- B . . . Good I thought he'd never do anything about the congestion
- 4 A I've just been offered two jobs!
  - B That's great! . . . to take?
- 5 A. We went to a comedy night at the local pub yesterday, and saw some really good comedians
  - B Oh, ..... see?
- 6 A. It seems that I can't apply for a course at the management college after al.
  - B But why ? I thought anyone could apply, regardless of experience
- 7 A: I've just had a letter from Ana.
  - B. Oh, what does she say?
  - A. Well, everything's going OK. She's got a job and her mother's recovering well from the operation.
  - B: That's good. What . does she say about her family?
- 8 A: Have you seen my new toy? Look.
  - B: What ...... is it? I've never seen anything like that before!

# 5 1.2, 1.4

### Complete the dialogue with appropriate tag questions or echo questions.

LANDLORD	Ms March Come in You're the lady who's interested in renting this flat, (1)
MS MARCH	That's right.
LANDLORD	Well, here it is. This is the living room. It's not looking at its best right now, I'm afraid
MS MARCH	(2) ? Why not? It looks fine to me.
JANDLORD	It's a bit untity. One of the reasons I'll be pleased to see the back of the current tenants
MS MARCH	On the phone you said that there were two bedrooms, (3)?
LANDLORD	That's right. Come through. This is the master bedroom.
MS MARCH	Mmm, it's nice. But there's no radiator in here, (4)?
LANDLORD	Er, no, but the electric heater is very efficient.
MS MARCH	But expensive? I've heard that electric heaters are very expensive
.AND.ORD	(5) 2 I don't think they re that bad. Through here is the second bedroom. It's very
	large for a second bedroom in a flat of this type.
MS MARCH	Yes, (6) . ? It's an excellent size. Oh dear, someone's broken the window in here,
	(7) ?
IAND, ORD	Oh, don't worry about that I il get that fixed. This is the bathroom
MS MARCH	Mmm. It's a bit dingy. I don't suppose you could paint it. (8)
LANDLORD	Well, we can discuss that later. This is the kitchen. I built it myself.
MS MARCH	(9) really? It's great!
LANDLORD	Yes though it is in a bit of a mess. Now, let's go back to the living room (10)
MS MARCH	Yes, I think you said the rent was £550 a month, (11)?
LANDLORD	That's right. Have a look around again by yourself, (12) . Ms March? Then we can
	discuss the details.
MS MARCH	OK, I'd like that
DATE:	

# 6 7.1,7.2, 7.3

ever/find out/true identity

how long/exactly/be married

what/nis childhood/be like (indirect)

For 62 years - quite amazing really.

Read this radio interview and then write the questions the interviewer asks. Use the prompts in the box to help you. Use tags and indirect questions as directed.

what/interrupt/it

when/start/acting in films (indirect)

enter chosen career/quite late (tag)

- which film/consider/best ever/find out/who/father was Sir Alec/86 (tag) t/unusual/famous actors/have lasting marriages (tag) win/else younger people/remember him/very different role (tag) win/Oscar/for that (tag) - when/pick up/career again You'll have heard the news this morning of the death last Sunday of Sir Alec Guinness, one of the greatest British stars of stage and screen. In the studio now is Clare Sands, film critic and biographer of many of the stars. Good morning, John. CLARE Morning, Clare (1) .....? JOHN Yes. He was 86 in April, but he had been ill for quite a long time. CLARE He's survived by a wife and son, I believe. (2) JOHN It is unusual. Many showbiz marriages are short I ved but Sir Alec had been married to Meru a CLARE for a very long time. (3) JOHN

CLARE

POHV	It is, isn't it' I understand that Sir Alec came from rather undistinguished roots				
	(4)				
CLARE	We I, he was poor, and illegitimate – there's no record of a father on his birth certificate				
JOHN	(5)				
CLARE	Not really but when he was fourteen, his mother told him that his real name was Guinness, she took it.				
JOHN	But (6)?				
CLARE	No. Of course, the name prompted speculation of links with the Guinness brewing family, but no, he never knew who his father was.				
JOHN	Mmm. Now, on to his acting (7)				
( JARE	Well, he started acting on the stage when he was 20 but his career was interrupted for a few years in 1938.				
JOHN	(8).				
CLARE	World War II. He joined the Navy.				
JOHN	(9) After the war?				
CLARE	Actually, he appeared in a play in New York before the end of the war.				
JOHN	We've talked about his stage career. (10)				
C_ARE	Yes. His first film role was in Great Expectations in 1946, and he worked a lot in films from				
	then on.				
JOHN	(11) do you think?				
CLARE	Oh, I'd say that was Bridge over the River Kwai.				
JOHN:	(12)				
CLARE	Yes, for best actor.				
JOHN	(13)				
C. ARE	Wel, he was given a special Oscar in 1980, for memorable film performances				
JOHN	I'm sure that (14)?				
CLARE	Yes, you mean Ob Wan Kinobi in the original Star Wars. He hated the role, but it gave him the money to live well for the rest of his life.				
JOHN	Thank you, Clare. That's all we've got time for, but thanks for				
70					
in eac	th space write a suitable word or phrase. There is an example (0) given at the beginning.				
0 W	hat's the point in arguing with people who hold very strong opin ons?				
	id you see Ladysmith Black Mambazo at the charity concert? Did I see ? Never heard them.'				
2 Cc	ould you tell us or not the service has been disrupted?				
	did you manage to get home last night? You were so drunk!				
	Imm, what your pastry so tasty?' 'I use different herbs in it, that's all.'				
	ne police details of the victim last night, didn't they?				
	ve got a couple of paint samples here colour do you prefer?				
7 W	hat's of buying all this expensive equipment when you don't know if you'll enjoy the port?				
,	nese sitcoms are so formulaic. This one is any different from that one we watched				

is that, in the corner? She looks as though she's just crawled out from under a bush!

, of the available methods did your client pay for her purchases?

yesterday, is it?

9

10

# Passives, causatives and get

We use passive forms for reasons of style and of clarity, as well as of meaning. Most y the rules of passive formation are straightforward, but it needs to be noted that certar words and structures cannot be used in the passive. Related to the use of forms of be the passive are the causative uses of have and get and the informal passive use of get.



#### **PASSIVE FORMS**

8.1A Basic patterns The subject of an active verb (e.g. the judge) can be the agent of a pass ve verb. We often don't mention the agent in the pass ve, but if we do it is introduced with by

The judge will read out the names of the winners in alphabetical order

The names of the winners will be read out in alphabetical order (by the judge)

Notice that the object of the active verb (e.g. the names of the winners) is the subject of the passive verb.

• Verbs with no direct object (intrans tive verbs) cannot be used in the passive
★ The post has been arrived. (passive)
✓ The post has arrived. (active)
Some verbs have two objects e.g. The manager offered the customer a refund. Either object can be the subject of the passive verb:

The customer was offered a refund or A refund was offered to the customer.

Note that if the object of the passive verb is the indirect object of the active verb (the customer) it is usually introduced with a preposition (e.g. to the customer).

8.1B Passive verb forms We make the passive form of verbs in all tenses by using be in the appropriate tense plus the past participle of the main verb:

My bag was stolen (= A thief stole my bag.)

The murder is being investigated ( The police are investigating the murder ) Note these comparisons of active and passive forms:

	active	passive
modal verbs: verb + be + past participle	Candidates must answer all the questions. They have to take a test.	All the questions must be answered A test has to be taken
modal perfects: verb + have been + past participle	Someone might have stolen it	It might have been stolen
	The jury ought to have convicted him.	He ought to have been convicted
multi-word verbs. We never separate the verb and particle(s) in the passive.	They took the company over in 2001.	<ul> <li>★ The company was taken by them over in 2001.</li> <li>✓ The company was taken over (by them) in 2001.</li> </ul>
make (= force)/see/hear/ help + infinitive: be + past	The boss made me work late.	I was made to work late.
participle + to + infinitive	I saw her take it.	She was seen to take it
let: Let has no passive form so we use a passive form of allow/permit/give permission.	The teacher <b>let</b> us leave early	We were allowed/permitted/ given permission to leave early

- We avoid using the passive of the perfect continuous tenses. We prefer to use an active form and an impersonal subject, e.g. theylone (► 27.3).
  - X By next month the murder will have been being investigated for over a year.
  - ✓ By next month they will have been investigating the murder for over a year

We usually avoid repeating the same passive auxiliary forms (-19.1A) in a sentence [The contracts have been signed and have been dated in front of two witnesses] ✓ The contracts have been signed and dated in front of two witnesses.

Hellt was said

8 1C When we are reporting speech (e.g. The press said he was innocent) and we don't want to mention the person whose words are being reported, or we want to describe an impersonal or general feeling, we can use a passive form of the reporting verb. There are two patterns

 Subject + passive verb + to + infinitive. He was said to be innocent. He was asked to leave

 It + passive verb + that clause: It was said that he was innocent.

We use the same pattern with it when reporting decisions and general feeings It was decided/agreed/felt that it would be too costly to take the case to trial We use these passive patterns as an a ternative to using an 'empty' subject like they **They said** he was innocent. ( $\triangleright$  27.1F)

(For more information on impersonal it > 33.2C.)

used in the passive

8.1D Certain verbs describing states, such as have (- own) be, belong, lack, resemble and Verbs not seem, cannot be made passive:

X A Ferrari is had by John. ✓ John has a Ferrari. (state)

These verbs cannot be used in the passive even when they describe an action

X Lunch is being had by John: 
✓ John's having lunch.

But the passive can describe a state which is the result of an action. The meaning is similar to an -ed participle adjective (► 21.2A)

He went to the payphone to make a call but the phone was broken.

[Somebody had already broken the phone: it was a 'broken' phone.]

Verbs followed by to + infinitive usually cannot be made passive:

✗ Your questions are refused to answer ✓ I refuse to answer your questions Verbs of wanting and liking, e.g. want love hate + object + infinitive cannot be made passive:

X He was wanted to leave. V She wanted him to leave.

Passives with get

8.1E In informal English, get can be used as an alternative to be in passive forms which describe actions. We often use get to describe an unusual or unexpected action-

'How did he get hurt?' (= How was he hurt?) 'His hand got trapped in the car door.' (= His hand was trapped ...)

We cannot use get to describe states:

✗ That house gets owned by my uncle 
✓ That nouse is owned by my uncle. (state)



8.2A

### PASSIVE -ING FORMS AND INFINITIVES

We can use -ing forms in the passive, as shown here:

Passive -ing forms

active

-ing form:

I don't like people lying to me. He enjoys his parents spoiling him.

perfect -ing form:

Having signed the deal, we went out to celebrate.

Not having finalised the quarterly accounts, the auditors were unable to present their report.

passive

being + past participle:

I don't like being lied to. He enjoys being spoiled.

having been + past participle:

The deal having been signed, we went out to celebrate.

The quarterly accounts not having been finalised, the auditors were unable to present their report.

We can use having been + past participle and being + past participle to refer to the past after certain verbs which are followed by an -ing form, e.g. regret, remember

We regret not having been shown/not being shown the Acropolis (- We regret the fact that the tour guide didn't show us the Acropolis.)

I remember having been informed/being informed about the assault (= I remember that I was informed about the assault.)

8.2B Infinitives can be passive (► 13.3A)

Passive infinitives

to be + past participle:

His dog loves to be patted and made a fuss of.

To be given the role of Titania was Elizabeth's greatest ambition.

James was hoping to be accepted on the engineering course.

There is a perfect form:

to have been + past participle:

This ascent is the first to have been achieved without the aid of oxygen

We use the passive infinitive in reported speech with ask for + object ( 9.4B)

Inspector Pascoe asked for the prisoners to be held in the cells overnight

We can use the passive infinitive (or an active ing form) after need ( 17 1C) That cage really needs to be cleaned (= That cage really needs cleaning)

use

## HAVE/GET + OBJECT + PAST PARTICIPLE

8.3A We use this pattern to describe something which is done for the subject by someone Causative else. We can use it in all tenses. Get is usually more informal than have:

I had the washing machine repaired yesterday (- The washing machine was repaired by an engineer.)

Do you get your hair done at Ebony 5? (- Is your nair done at Ebony 5?) There is an 'active' version of this pattern with have and get which means 'cause someone to do something'. The form with have is more common in US English. Have + object + infinitive:

I had the mechanic repair my washing machine.

Get + object + to + infinitive.

I will get the hairdresser to do my hair this afternoon.

In British English we can use the get + object + to + infinitive pattern with a stronger meaning of 'make someone do something':

After numerous letters from our solicitor we finally got them to give us a refund

8.3B We can also use the pattern of havelget + object + past participle like a passive to describe something which is done to the subject by someone else often something Passive use unpleasant or unexpected:

Liz had her passport stolen. (= Her passport was stolen.)

John got his tyres slashed by some hooligans.

Out of the blue, Mark had his plan approved by the board yesterday

Commands and promises

8.3C We can use the causative in imperatives. Here it can be the person spoken to or someone else who will do the action:

Have/Get that mess cleaned up at once!

We can use the causative in future statements as commands or promises. Here it can be the subject of the sentence or someone else who will do the action:

Don't worry I'll have the report finished before the board meeting (- I will do it or I will get it done.)

### USES OF THE PASSIVE

8.4A If the subject of a verb is new information, we often make the verb passive so that the Information new information comes at the end (the information principle - 36.1A). For example, in order the second sentence below, the new information is Picasso and 1937.

> ['Guernica is a wonderful example of cubist art. In 1937 Picasso painted it.] In order to put this new information at the end we make the verb painted passive.

'Guernica' is a wonderful example of cubist art. It was painted by Picasso in 1937 If the subject of a verb is a long phrase or clause, we often make the sentence passive so that the long clause comes at the end:

[The huge orange sun sinking slowly below the horizon delighted her.] She was delighted by the huge orange sun sinking slowly below the horizon

8.4B We often use the passive

'unimportant'

- The when the agent (the person or thing which causes an action) is not known She was murdered. (We don't know who did it.)
- agent . when the agent is obvious from the context or from general knowledge She has been sacked. (obviously by her employer)
  - when the agent is not important or relevant: Wars have been fought throughout history (Who fought them is not important here)
- We use the passive when we wish to avoid mentioning the agent (for example, when we 8.4C Not don't want to directly blame any specific person, or we want to avoid personal mentioning responsibility):

I see the washing-up hasn't been done.

Oh dear, look, the vase has been broken.

Don't blame me. Nothing can be done about it.

By omitting the agent we can describe general feelings, opinions or beliefs rather than those of a particular person or group:

São Paulo is said to be the fastest-growing city in South America.

Rio de Janeiro has been described as the most beautiful city in the Americas

8.4D The passive is often used in formal English to:

issues

the agent

Focusing on . focus on the issues rather than on the people involved (this is very common in academic and scientific English):

The research was carried out over a period of six months.

describe rules and procedures:

Answers must be written in ink.

Candidates will be interviewed in alphabetical order.

describe commercial, industrial and scientific processes:

Minutes are taken and then submitted to the chair for approval.

Components are electronically tagged and transported to the production line

describe historical, economic and social processes:

Tribal lands were sold over a period of fifty years.

The currency has been devalued twice since the war.

# Practice

#### 8.1

1101	title titede dettetteed ading passive termini	
0 1 2 3 4 5 6	Someone might have stolen it.  We will provide refreshments during the interval.  You should complete the form in black ink  We have not tested this product on animals.  We supply this appliance with a plug  Someone has fitted this car with an alarm.  We arrange our displays in chronological sequence.  You must wear hard hats while we are carrying out construction work. (two passives)	It might have been stolen
8	We will prosecute all shoplifters.	
9	Closed circuit cameras are monitoring this area.	•
10	You may find toilet facilities at the rear of block B.	
11	We will take care of all the formalities.	***
	The customs officer made me open my suitcases.	4+471++954+44++4444+4414141414141414141414141414
13	A lot of people say the government is out of touch with public	
	opinion.	
	The judge ought to have sent him to prison for life.	
	The check-in clerk gave Stephen an upgrade to first class	
	A farmer let us park the caravan in his field overnight.	
	They saw him enter the building carrying a shotgun.	
	Some people think the proposed legislation is unworkable	
19	Someone broke a pane of glass while the boys were playing in the street.	
20	Their parents have given the twins a puppy for their birthday.	> = = = = = = = = = = = = = = = = = = =
2.0	Titeli parenta nave Biven the titina a pappy for their animaey.	
2	8.2, 8.3	
Ch	oose the word or phrase (A, B, C or D) which best completes ea	ch sentence.
0	I don't like	
1	been banned from driving, I was unable to rent a car on A Getting B Having C Being D To	holiday.
2	John enjoys being around.	
	A bossing B boss C to boss D bossed	
3	They hated not having selected for the shortlist	
	A been B be C being D get	
4	! my secretary re-type the memo.	
	A got B get C had D having	
	She . her husband to put up some shelves in the kitchen.	
	A got B had C have D is having	

6 They are getting their uncle ..... them his cottage in the country.

A lend B lending C to be lending D to lend

- 7 The minister will have his press officer ..... the news tomorrow. A announce B announced C to announce D being announced 8 Michael deeply regretted not ...... selected for the Olympic squad. A to be B having been C to get D been 9 The Opposition have asked for fuel taxes ..... A be reduced B to get reduced C being reduced D to be reduced 10 We'll ..... the builders to move the skip tomorrow morning A get B have C be having D getting 11 No problem. I'll ...... the figures printed out and on your desk by lunchtime A having B be having C have D to get 12 I really didn't expect this project ...... completed on schedule. B to be C being D have A having been 13 The cats love ...... cuddled and stroked. A have B having C to have been D to be 14 Theirs was probably the most glamorous wedding . featured in the pages of 'Hello'
- 3 8.3 卷

magazine to date

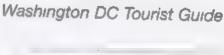
Choose the most appropriate phrase (A-J) to complete this extract from a guidebook. Five of the phrases will not be needed.

## The White House

A getting B to have been C having D have

The official residence of the President of the United States, (1) ....... each year. It is the only residence of a head of state which is open to the public, free of charge, on a regular basis.

The original building dates from 1792 and (2) ............ Much of Hoban's original design survives, although the mansion had to be rebuilt after (3) ........... in the war of 1814.





- A the British burned the house and many of its valuable contents
- B they added in 1942.
- C. These include the East Room, the Lincoln Bedroom and the State Dining Room
- D the White House, is visited by more than one and a half million tourists
- E it and many of its valuable contents were burned by the British
- F an Irish-born architect, James Hoban, designed it.
- G The East Room, the Lincoln Bedroom and the State Dining Room are included
- H was added in 1942.
- I more than one and a half million tourists visit the White House
- J was designed by an Irish-born architect, James Hoban.



#### Match parts 1-3 with A-C in each set.

#### Set a

- 1 Have him report to me
- 2 I had him reported
- 3 I had him report to me

#### Set b

- 1 We got the computer repaired
- 2 Get the computer repaired
- 3 We got the engineer to repair the computer

- A because I was his line manager.
- B when you see him later.
- C to his commanding officer.
- A or you'll be in trouble.
- B after he had fixed the printer.
- C because it had broken down

#### 8.1.8.4

A passive verb form would be more appropriate for ten of the sentences (1-15). Tick  $(\checkmark)$  the five sentences which should not be changed. If you think a sentence should be changed, choose the correct reason(s) (A-D) from the list in the box then rewrite the sentence. The first two have been done as examples (0 and 00).

The passive form is more appropriate because:

- A the agent is unknown or unimportant
- B the agent is obvious from the context or general knowledge
- C we are describing rules, processes or procedures
- D we prefer to put new information or a long subject clause at the end of a sentence
- O You must dry clean this garment A/B Thus garment must be dry cleaned.
- 00 That baby really resembles her mother.
  - 1 The stunning vista of long white beaches backed by verdant hi is entranced her
  - 2 Our area sales manager has decided to leave.
  - 3 The executioner executed the prisoner at dawn.
  - 4. A man who had never known that he had rich relations inner ted the estate
  - 5 My parents are staying with us over the weekend.
  - 6 The New York flight leaves at six thirty.
  - 7 They collect the information from various retail outlets and they enter it onto the database
  - 8 An unknown person has vandalised the lift in our block
  - 9 The ancient Egyptians were superb stonemasons
- 10 People hardly ever see foxes in daylight, ........
- 11 People must complete this form in black ink and they must sign it
- 12 Several members of the international press corps interviewed the terrorists
- 13 This house used to belong to my aunt. .....
- 14 The jury convicted the man and the judge sentenced him to fifteen years in jail
- 15 They heat milk to 110°C and then they rapidly cool it to produce the final pasteurised product



For each of the sentences below, write a new sentence as similar as possible in meaning to the original sentence, but using the word given. This word must not be altered in any way.

- O The accountants are looking into the matter being The matter is being looked into.
- 1 They are delivering Daphne's new car this afternoon. having
- 2 The athletes will have to pass a series of rigorous drug tests.
  be
- 3 The parish council et us use the village hall for our meeting allowed
- 4 Having completed the project, we were able to leave early.

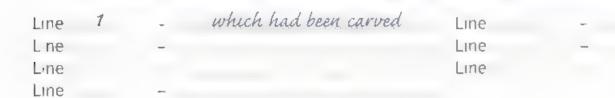
  been
- 5 We resented the fact that the new manager didn't consult us over the expansion plans not having . . . .
- 6 I'll instruct the caretaker to open the gates early for you.
- 7 They believe the suspect is in hiding somewhere across the border believed
- 8 They sacked her for being late so often. got

#### ALL

This text would be improved if at least seven of the verbs were passive. Underline the phrases that should go into the passive and rewrite those sections of the text below.

## Solving the Mystery of Hieroglyphics

- For almost two thousand years the symbols and inscriptions which people had carved
- onto the great monuments of ancient Egypt were a complete mystery. They were
- 3 obviously a kind of writing, but nobody knew what they meant.
- 4 Then, in 1799, a French officer discovered a strange stone in the small Egyptian town of
- 5 Rosetta. It had three types of writing carved into its surface. One of the languages was
- 6 Greek but the other two were unknown. A year later the British captured the stone and
- 7 the British moved it to the British Museum in London.
- 8 For twenty years the stone lay gathering dust in the museum. Then in 1822 somebody
- 9 asked a French scientist named Jean François Champollion to look at the stone. He
- immediately recognised that some of the symbols matched those he had seen on
- 11 monuments in Egypt. By comparing the Greek words with the Egyptian symbols he was
- able to work out their meaning. The Egyptian symbols were hieroglyphs, a type of
- writing in which pictures represent sounds and meanings.
- Once somebody had solved the puzzle of their written language it became possible for
- scholars to decipher the inscriptions on all the great monuments. Thus people finally
- 16 unlocked the mysteries of Egypt's fabulous history and culture.







## Reported speech

When we report what we or other people have said or thought, we can use direct speech (reporting the exact words), but we usually use indirect speech. This unit looks at how we report statements, questions and commands, the variety of reporting verbs and how they are used.



#### **DIRECT AND INDIRECT SPEECH**

9.1A Reporting speech in writing When reporting speech in literature, authors often use direct speech — the exact words are between inverted commas. We do not use that to introduce direct speech

He leaned towards her and whispered, 'Be sure to lock your door tonight.'

The reporting verb (said, replied, etc.) can go before the speech in inverted commas, after the speech, or in the middle of it:

Lovett said, 'Houston, we have a problem.'

'Houston, we have a problem,' Lovett said

'Houston,' said Lovett/Lovett said, 'we have a problem.'

When we put the reporting verb after direct speech it can go before the subject, unless the subject is a pronoun:

- \* 'The operation has been a resounding success,' said she.
- √ 'The operation has been a resounding success,' she said
- ✓ 'The operation has been a resounding success,' said the surgeon.

In most other forms of writing, such as letters and reports, we prefer indirect speech. She said the operation had been a resounding success.

9.1B Reporting speech orally When we are speaking, it is possible though rare to quote words directly. We may do this if we want to focus on the exact words spoken. But did he actually say 'I love you'? We usually report words using indirect speech in conversations as we do not have punctuation to clearly signal what is the reported speech:

But did he actually tell you that he loved you?

We use indirect speech for statements ( 9.2) questions ( 9.3) and commands ( 9.4)



#### INDIRECT STATEMENTS

9.2A Common reporting verbs

9.2A There are a number of common introductory verbs used to report statements, which are often followed by that (e.g. say, tell add continue, answer, reply, mention, remark)

For the third time that day, the minister replied that it was out of the question. We can omit that after an introductory verb, and often do in conversation, except after reply, continue, answer and shout:

I told them they were barred from the club from now on.

- There are differences in use between say and tell. We can omit the object or use an indirect object (e.g. to us) after say, but we use a direct object (e.g. us) after tell.
  - \* He said us that his mobile phone had been out of action all day.
  - ✓ He said (to us) that his mobile phone had been out of action all day.
  - \* He told that his mobile phone had been out of action all day.
  - ✓ He told us that his mobile phone had been out of action all day.

When we are reporting more than one sentence, it is not necessary to repeat the reporting verb to introduce every new sentence:

Tom insisted that he hadn't been there He had worked late, and had then gone We can report our thoughts using reporting verbs such as think decide or imagine. She never imagined that it would be so difficult to run for the Senate.

pronoun and adverb

9 2B When we report another person's words in indirect speech, we often have to change Changes of the pronouns used in the direct speech.

James added, 'I really don't understand the problem.'

James added that **he** really didn't understand the problem.

When another person reports James's words, then the pronoun I changes to he Similarly, if the place or time of reporting is significantly different from that in the original speech, we often need to make changes to adverbs of place and time (e.g. now \* then, here \* there today \* that day, tomorrow \* the next day, yesterday \* the day before; last Monday → the last/previous Monday):

Alex said, 'I'll meet you here again tomorrow at 3.30.'

Alex said she would meet us there again the next day at 3.30.

But if the statement is reported on the same day and in the same place, we would say Alex said she would meet us here again tomorrow at 3.30.

tense

9 2C When we use indirect speech after a past tense reporting verb (e.g. said, had Changes of confirmed), we usually change the tense in the sentences we are reporting ( 9 2D) We use a tense one step further in the past (backshift), so present forms become past forms (e.g. present simple + past simple present continuous + past continuous)

'I'm leaving in ten minutes.' → She decided she was leaving in ten minutes.

'We ve been living here for years • He revealed they'd been living there for years Past forms become past perfect forms (e.g. past simple + past perfect simple)

'It rained really heavily today -- Saran mentioned that it had rained really heavily that day.

The past perfect simple and continuous do not change: 'They'd arrived an hour early.'  $\rightarrow$  I said they'd arrived an hour early.

change the tense

9.2D We do not change the tense of the original words in reported speech when When to • the reporting verb is in a present tense.

He says that intelligent life in the universe does not exist.

 the direct speech includes an 'unreal past' ( Unit 11): 'I wish I were younger.' → Janice said that she wished she were younger.

X Janice said that she wished she had been younger.

In some cases we can choose to change the tense or not. This often depends on the relationship of the reported event to the time of reporting it. For example, if we report I'm going on holiday tomorrow morning on the day it's said, we are likely to say

Susanna said she's going on holiday tomorrow morning. But reported a few days later, we are more likely to say.

Susanna said she was going on holiday the next morning.

We don't usually change the tense when.

 the action in the indirect speech is still happening or going to happen: I am working on the details of a tentative settlement . The negotiator said he is working on the details of a tentative settlement (- He is still working on the details)

 the reported verb expresses a fact or situation that cannot or is unlikely to change. He explained that these animals roamed the earth millions of years ago. He told us that counselling is not the answer for everyone.

the verb comes after a time conjunction, e.g. when, after:

Martin replied that he had started the job immediately after he left school

Note that in all of these cases, it is also possible to change the tense:

The negotiator said **he was working** on details of a tentative settlement. He explained that these animals had roamed the earth millions of years ago He told us that counselling was not the answer for everyone. Martin replied that he had started the job immediately after he had left school

- We make the tense change if we no longer believe the direct speech statement. 'Where's Tom this evening?'
  - \* 'He said he's going to join us, but I don't think he will.'
  - ✓ 'He said he was going to join us, but I don't think he will.'
- 9.2E We often need to make changes to modal verbs. Where possible, the present form of the modal verb changes to its past form (e.g. will  $\rightarrow$  would, may  $\rightarrow$  might): Modal verbs

The new law will be in place soon - She said the new law would be in place soon 'Publication may be delayed - • The editor said that publication might be delayed

Shall becomes would when it refers to the future, but should when it is a suggestion 'I shall tell them everything.' -> I decided I would tell them everything.

'Shall we tell the manager? • She suggested that they should tell the manager We can use both must and had to in reported speech

You must lose twenty kilos! • The doctor said that I must/had to lose twenty kilos In the negative we can use mustn't or wasn't/weren't to:

'You mustn't think badly of me ... She said we mustn't/weren't to think badly of her Ought to used to could might would and should do not change when reported

#### INDIRECT (REPORTED) QUESTIONS

The most common verbs for reporting questions are ask and want to know 9.3A The assistant asked what type of printer we had, but I don't know. Common Laura wanted to know if anybody had reported the missing person. reporting We also use enquire for formal questions and wonder for 'ask ourselves': verbs

The reception was boring and Andrzej wondered when he could leave.

9.3B We introduce indirect closed questions with if or whether: Patterns

Lester wondered if/whether there was anything better in life.

We can present alternatives in indirect questions with whether or not but we do not use if or not, except by putting or not at the end of the question:

- \* Deborah asked if or not there was a lift in the apartment block.
- ✓ Deborah asked whether or not there was a lift in the apartment block.
- ✓ Deborah asked whether/if there was a lift in the apartment block or not In indirect open questions we use a question word:

The nurse asked when exactly the pain had started.

• We report negative questions which express surprise or criticism with a functional? verb ( 9.5A) like complain:

'Isn't that stupid?' → X He asked if that wasn't stupid

→ W He complained that it was stupid.



#### INDIRECT COMMANDS AND REQUESTS

Verbs used to report commands are tell order command and forbid (negative) 9.4A When the vet had finished, he told them to let the animal sleep. Common He forbade us to pass on any of the information to the authorities reporting verbs. We use ask for reporting requests, and beg or urge with urgent requests: His secretary **asked** me to come back later.

In indirect commands we use a reporting verb and (not) to + infinitive 9.4B Several members of the Royal Family urged Edward VIII not to abdicate Patterns We can use ask for + passive infinitive if we don't ment on the person to whom the command was given:

The cinema manager asked for the culprit to be brought to his office



#### REPORTING VERBS AND THEIR PATTERNS

9.5A Using different reporting verbs A large number of reporting verbs indicate the function of the original speech, e.g. 'You should stop smoking.' → He **advised** her to stop smoking. (advice)

If you do that again. I'll call the police. • He threatened to call the police (warning) In informal conversation we usually report speech using the introductory verbs say and tell. In more formal speech and writing, we use a greater variety of introductory verbs

'I think you should inform the judge.'

Dad told me he thought I should inform the judge.

The lawyer advised me to inform the judge.

9.5B Patterns There are several different patterns used after reporting verbs:

'I'm really sorry.' -> She apologised.

verb only

verb + (that) clause 'I hacked into the company's accounts sustem.' → He admitted (that) he had hacked into the company's accounts system.

agree, apologise, refuse

accept, acknowledge, add, admit, advise, agree, announce, answer\*, argue, assert, assume, believe, boast, comment, complain, concede, conclude, confess, continue\*, decide, declare, deny, doubt, exclaim, expect, explain, foresee, imagine, imply, insist, know, mention, notice, observe, point out, predict, promise, protest, recommend, remark, repeat, reply\*, report, respond, reveal, say, shout\*, state, suggest, vow, whisper

(\* = that is obligatory)

warn

verb + object + that clause

'Don't worry. You'll arrive on time.' . She reassured me that I would arrive on time

agree, demand, guarantee, offer, propose,

refuse, swear, threaten, volunteer, vow

advise, assure, inform, reassure, remind, tell,

verb + to infinitive

to let her stay.

'We'll pick up the children, if you like." They offered to pick up the children

verb (+ optional object) + to infinitive 'Please can I use the car?' → She asked to use the car 'Please let me stay.' → She begged us

ask (sb), beg (sb), expect (sb), promise (sb)

advise, allow, challenge, command, compel,

encourage, expect, forbid, force, implore,

instruct, invite, order, permit, persuade,

acknowledge, assume, believe, claim,

presume, suppose, think, understand

consider, declare, expect, feel, find,

remind, request, tell, urge, warn

verb + object + to + infinitive 'You shouldn't say anything.' → I advised

him not to say anything

verb + object + to + infinitive + complement

'Muhammad Ali was the greatest boxer ever.' → She considers Muhammad Ali to have been the greatest boxer ever

verb + -ing form 'I didn't do it.' . He denied doing it.

verb + object + preposition + -ing form 'You forged the cheques, didn't you?' \* They accused me of forging the cheques.

admit, apologise for, decide on, deny, mention, recommend, regret, report, suggest accuse sb of, blame sb for, congratulate sb on, thank sb for

(Note. sb = somebody)

115

## Practice

The key to these exercises is on page 357

#### 9.1,

Four of these six sentences contain mistakes in grammar or punctuation. Tick ( $\checkmark$ ) the correct sentences, then find and correct the mistakes.

O 'These traffic-calming measures have been put into place for a very good reason,' said he.

he said

- 1 The doctor said me that I should really do more exercise.
- 2 Alison decided that she'd have the whole kitchen floor replaced.
- 3 Delia commented that fresh corrander could be found in any good supermarket now.
- 4 The child shouted he wanted to go home to his mother.
- 5 And then the interviewer actually said that's a lie, Minister.
- 6 The new Honda Civic, the salesman added, is one of the most popular small family saloons now.

9:4

Report these telephone messages. Make sure that you change the tenses, pronouns and adverbs as necessary.

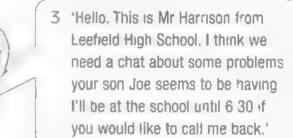
O 'Hi, Mum. It's Lucy here, just phoning to say Happy Birthday. I'm going to be out all afternoon but I'll try you again later.' 2 'Oh, er, hello. This is Christine Reynolds. I'm phoning to find out the results of my blood test. I'm going on holiday tomorrow morning so I'd be grateful if you could ring me back later.'

the said he wong to be out an afternoon but shell try you again later

Doctor, Christine Reynolds left a message earlier today. She said

1 'Elaine, hi. It's Rosemary
here. I didn't get to Spanish
last night as I'd been out all
day and I got home late. I'll
ring again to find out what
the homework is.'

Rosemary called a couple of days ago She said



Mr Harrison from Leefield High phoned earlier. He said

4 'Good afternoon This is Tim at Barrett's Wine Delivery Service I'm afraid that we can't fulfil your order, as you didn't include credit card details on your order form. We have to have these details, or payment in advance, to fulfil an order. I'll await your instructions.'

Someone called from Barrett's a few days ago. He said

#### 5 9.2

## Rewrite these sentences in reported speech. Decide whether to change the tenses and adverbs of time and place.

- O 'The London Eye is now the most popular tourist destination in London.'

  The gu debook states that the London Eye is now the most popular tourist destination in London
- 1 'I've decided to stay another week as the research is going so well here.'
  Professor Jones rang from Vancouver. He said
- 2 'We've got tickets for the opera in New York this weekend.'
  Gerry and Louisa told me last week that
- 3 'The smaller islands of the arch pelago are mostly uninhabited and very peaceful.' There are so many people here! But that TV programme a few weeks ago said.
- 4 'Mum's really ill. I wish we didn't live so far away from her.' Sharon was really depressed last night. She told me that ...
- 5 'The house is in a very pleasant cul-de-sac and there aren't many children or animals there' Here's the road. Oh no it's awful! But the estate agent insisted that
- 6 'The accused first met the Wilsons when he decorated their living room.' In court, the lawyer claimed that
- 7 'Shall we switch to an online banking system for the household accounts? My husband suggested that
- 8 'They had been I ving together secretly for years before they revealed their relationship.

  The newsreader said that the two politicians
- 9 'You mustn't eave your car in these parking bays for more than twenty minutes at a time.'
  The traffic warden explained.
- 10 'Oh really! There is no such thing as reincarnation!'
  The scientist maintained that

#### 9.1

## Each of these reported questions and commands contains a mistake. Find the mistakes and correct them.

- 1 Andy was really excited about the new job and asked if could be start straight away.
- 2 Miriam was running as fast as she was able to, wondering how possibly could she get away from this maniac.
- 3 The Prime Minister asked for the new crime bill to draft as soon as possible
- 4 The builder told us let the plaster dry completely before we paint it.
- 5 The neighbours asked if or not we had heard anything during the night
- 6 They informed us where buy the books of tickets for the buses and trains.
- 7 Dad asked me where I'd been all night?
- 8 The salesperson wanted to know what is the problem with the new fax machine.
- 9 Sandra begged to her landlord not to evict her before she had found somewhere else to live.
- 10 Standing in the dank, dark cell, Leyton wondered if he can make contact with the prisoners on either side of him.



#### Report each of these statements, using an appropriate verb from the box.

accuse apologise blame consider encourage reassure recommend refuse regret remind suggest warn volunteer

- O My wife 'Don't worry about the arrangements for the reception. They re all under control' Aly wrife reassured we that the arrangement, for the reception were all under control.
- 1 Geraldine I w I not take part in the new play
- 2. My best friend 'Don't you ever discuss my problems benind my back again!"
- 3 Pete You should think about going to the new Tha restaurant. It's excellent '
- 4 The departmental manager. It was your fault that we lost the Siemens contract."
- 5 The disc jockey 'Oasis were definitely the best band of the nineties
- 6 The fan 'I m terr biy sorry about confusing you with George Michae."
- 7 The police officer. 'We believe that you have been making obscene phone calls to this office
- 8 My friends 'Come on = you can do the Swimathon with us You're just as good as we are '
- 9 Mike's brother 'I don't mind organising the collection for Mike and Sarah's wedding
- 10 The team manager. If feel terrible now about contradicting Julie in front of her whole team
- 11 The director 'Letis try this scene aid fferent way is tall we?
- 12 My mother. You had your tonsils taken out when you were about nine, remember?



Read the article at the top of the next page and then decide which word or phrase below best fits each space. Circle the letter you choose for each option. The exercise begins with an example (0).

- O A answer
- 1 A did they spend
- 2 A whether
- 3 A had increased
- 4 A they still spending
- 5 A changed
- 6 A increased
- 7 A tells
- 8 A takes
- 9 A or not
- 10 A is turning

- (B) to answer
- B they did spend
- B what
- B was increased
- B 'I still spend
- B had changed
- B had increased
- B says us
- B had taken
- B could we get
- B was turning

- C that answer
- C they spent
- C if or not
- C have increased
- C they still spent
- C has changed
- C increases
- C tells us
- C take
- C we could get
- C had turned

## Worries about Internet use

A recent survey into Internet use has thrown up some worrying results. The Stanford University survey asked respondents (0) ... a number of questions about their Internet use. It asked how much time (1) ... on the Internet and (2) ... Internet use had affected the amount of time they spent with family and friends. It also enquired whether their Internet use (3)—the time respondents spent working, either at home or in the office. The answers were interesting, but not unexpected. Two-thirds of the people surveyed responded that (4)—tewer than five hours a week on the Internet. The survey concludes that the behaviour of these people (5)—little. However, a quarter of those people who do use the Internet for more than five hours a week claimed that they spend less time with their family and friends. One in four of the total respondents also said that the time they spent working at home (6)—, benefiting their employers.

Professor of Political Science at Stanford, Norman Nie, (7) ... that we are moving from a world where we know and see neighbours and friends to one where interaction (8) ... place at a distance. He asked thetorically whether (9) ... a hug or heat a warm voice over the Internet. It seems that the results of the survey prove that the Internet (10) — people into solitary beings who can't be bothered to call their mother on her birthday.



What did these people say? Rewrite the reported versions of some quotations by famous people in direct speech.

- 1 A. Capone once complained that he had been accused of every death except the casualty list of the World War
- 2 President Woodrow Wilson once remarked that he would never read a book if it were possible for him to talk for half an hour with the person who wrote it.
- 3 Paplo Picasso once claimed that age only mattered when one was ageing. He said that as he had arrived at a great age, he might just as well be twenty.
- 4 Jean-Paul Sartre once commented that the world could get along very well without iterature and it could get along even better without man
- 5 A spokesperson from UNESCO stated that since wars had begun in the minds of men. it was in the minds of men that the defence of peace had to be constructed.
- 6 Groucho Marx once asked a club to accept his resignation because he didn't want to belong to any club that would accept him as a member.
- President John F Kennedy once told the American people to ask not what their country could do for them, but to ask what they could do for their country.
- 8 A bert Einstein once said that he knew why there were so many people who loved chopping wood. He explained that in that activity one immediately saw the results

## Conditionals

Conditional sentences usually consist of two clauses in a conditional clause (or if clause) and a main clause (or result clause). The result in the main clause is dependent on the condition in the conditional clause. This unit looks at the basic types of conditional sentence, and some variations on these, and introduces a number of words and phrases used to express conditions.



#### **GENERAL POINTS ON CONDITIONALS**

Sentence structures

10.1A We usually form conditional sentences in one of these basic structures:

if clause main clause OR main clause if clause  $\downarrow$   $\downarrow$   $\downarrow$   $\downarrow$  If I had a car, I would take you. I would take you if I had a car.

If we put the *if* clause first, we usually separate the clauses with a commal especially if one clause is quite long.

If the bill is passed by both parliamentary houses, it becomes law. We can use then in the main clause to emphasise that the result depends on the condition being achieved:

If the bill is passed by both parliamentary houses, then it becomes law. We can put the if clause in the middle of the main clause, but this is rare. It may be possible, if both parties desire it, to reduce the time scale. In conversation we often use only the main clause; the if clause is implied Actually, it would be pretty difficult. (if we did as you asked)

10.1B Sentence There are four basic conditional sentence patterns where our choice of tense depends on the time of the condition (past, present or future) and how possible or impossible we think the event is:

zero conditional Possible at any time, but most commonly in the present:

If your dog is depressed, he probably needs more exercise

first conditional Possible in the future:

If the single flops, they'll sack their manager.

second conditional | Impossible in the present/possible (but improbable) in the future

If you were a bit nicer, he wouldn't get so cross.

third conditional Impossible in the past:

If you had answered the door, she wouldn't have gone away again



#### ZERO CONDITIONAL

10.2A Patterns This is also known as the general conditional

if + present simple present simple

If you don't look after tomato plants, they die very quickly.

We can use other present tenses in both clauses, eig present perfect or present continuous:

Prawns are very risky to eat if they haven't been kept at the right temperature if she's travelling abroad on business she always phones me every evening

We can use modal verbs in either clause, especially can and may:

Prawns can be very risky to eat if they haven t been kept at the right temperature If you can read this, you're driving too close to me!

10.2B We use the zero conditional to talk about events or situations that can occur at any Use time, and often occur more than once, and their results:

If I eat dairy products, I get red spots on my skin.

If can be replaced by when in this type of conditional sentence:

If/When you press this key, the game starts, and when you click here, it stops We also use the zero conditional to talk about actions which a ways have the same result.

If you use a very hot iron on nylon, it melts.

10 2C We can use an imperative instead of a present tense in the result clause to give a Related uses general instruction:

If a chip pan sets alight, throw a fire blanket, not water, on it.

#### FIRST CONDITIONAL

Patterns

10.3A This is also known as the likely or possible conditional

If + present simple will/won't + infinitive

If the museum charges for entry a lot of people won't be able to visit it

We can use other present tenses in the if clause:

If you're coming on the motorway, you'll need change for the tolls.

We can also use other future forms in the main clause:

If the results of the customer survey are favourable, the supermarket is going to introduce a new range.

We can use modal verbs in either clause, especially can, may and should:

If the regime can keep the loyalty of the army, they may retain power.

If the Spanish team continues to do so well they should win the World Cup.

It is usually incorrect to use a future form in the if clause:

✗ If the weather will be good tomorrow, we'll have a picnic.

✓ If the weather is good tomorrow, we'll have a picnic.

However, it is appropriate if will/won t refers to w linguess or refusa ( 18.3A) The company will impose sanctions if the workers won't abandon the strike

10.3B We use the first conditional to describe possible future events or situations and their Use results.

> If the result of the test is negative, you if receive notification through the post The bank will be starting a recruitment drive if it receives head office approval

10.3C We can use the first conditional to express a variety of functions:

- Related uses Commands: If you get home late, don't wake us up!
  - Don't forget to close the windows if you go out, will you?
  - Offers: I'll call the hotel if you don't have time
  - Suggestions: Shall we go out tomorrow if the weather's good?
  - Warnings: I'll call the police if you don't leave right now!

Note that we use an imperative in the main clause for commands.

To make this conditional pattern more formal, we can omit if and use should before the subject

Should you be less than delighted with our product, we will refund your money immediately

#### SECOND CONDITIONAL

**Patterns** 

10.4A This is also known as the unlikely or improbable conditional.

if + past simple would/wouldn't + infinitive If they wanted to make an offer, she would listen and think it over.

We can also use the past continuous or was going to in the if clause:

If a celebrity were staying in the hotel, security arrangements would be tightened We often use a modal in the main clause, especially might or could:

More funding for AIDS research could be secured if people were more aware of the dire situation in Africa.

(1) With be in the if clause, we usually use the sub-unctive were for all persons. You may hear English speakers using was as in the first example above. It is becoming accepted today, but you should not use it in formal situations.

[If the programmer was familiar with this language it would be an easy job.] ✓ If the programmer were familiar with this language it would be an easy job.

- It is possible to use would in both clauses in US English but not in British English.
  - US The blockades wouldn't happen if the police would be firmer with the strikers Br The blockades wouldn't happen if the police were firmer with the strikers
- 10.4B The second conditional has two main meanings.
  - 1 It can describe an improbable future event or situation. The condition is unlikely to be fulfilled because the future event is unlikely to happen: If the result of the test were positive, we would call you within two days.
    - 2. It can also describe a hypothetical current situation or event inelline which is contrary to known facts. It is therefore impossible to fulfil the condition: If the police were confident of their case against Sykes, surely they wouldn't hesitate to take him into custody? (= The police aren't confident of their case.)

The choice between the first conditional and Use 1 of the second conditional often depends on how possible the speaker believes an event to be:

If Mike **rings** the travel agent tomorrow he might get a cancellation. (The speaker thinks that it is likely that Mike will ring the travel agent ) If Mike rang the travel agent tomorrow ne might get a cancellation. [The speaker thinks it is unlikely that Mike will ring the travel agent.)

Related uses

10.4C We use the second conditional to express a variety of functions:

- · Giving advice (with were): If I were you, I would take her out of that school.
- If you could deal with this matter, I'd be very grateful. Polite requests:
- If we didn't have to work so hard we could spend more Des res regrets time together

We can use should + infinitive or were to + infinitive in the second conditional to emphasise that the condition is unlikely to happen.

If the printer **should break down** within the first year, we would repair it at our expense.

If you were to listen more carefully, you might understand a little more.

We can put was/were (to) before the subject in order to sound more formal:

Were you to accept our offer, we could avoid the costs of a court case.

We do not put do or the main verb in front of the subject:

- \* Did the builders finish the work to schedule, they would receive a bonus
- ✓ If the builders finished the work to schedule, they would receive a bonus.
- ✓ Were the builders to finish the work to schedule, they would receive a bonus

We can make this condition more formal by placing should before the subject ( 10 3C) Should the tickets fail to arrive before the departure date, we would arrange to have duplicates waiting at the airport.



#### THIRD CONDITIONAL

Patterns

This is also known as the past or impossible conditional.

would/wouldn't have + past participle if + past perfect If we had paid our cleaner more, she wouldn't have left us.

We can use continuous forms in either or both clauses of this conditional If someone had been teasing your child so nastily, you would have behaved in the

We can use a modal in the main clause, usually might or could:

It might have been easier to break the news if I had known her a bit better If the spy had intercepted the message, he could have averted the crisis

In US English, it is possible to use would have in the if clause. This is becoming more common in British English, although many people consider it incorrect

US If the play would have finished on time we wouldn't have missed the train Br: If the play had finished on time, we wouldn't have missed the train.

10.5B The third conditional describes a hypothetical situation or event in the past. The past Use situation or event is contrary to known facts lie it is an unreal or impossible situation I would have used your builder if I had managed to contact him (but I alan t manage to contact him)

10.5C We can use the third conditional to express criticism.

Related uses

If you'd been driving more slowly, you could have stopped in time.

We can put the auxiliary had before the subject to create a more I terary style Had the film been released in the summer it would not have been so successful



#### MIXED CONDITIONALS

Mixed conditionals include the verb forms from two different conditional patterns These are the two most common mixed patterns

second/third conditional

10.6A This conditional describes a hypothetical situation or event in the present, which is Mixed contrary to known facts. The result in the main clause refers to the past:

If the island were still a tourist attraction, last week's earthquake would have caused far more deaths (= The island is no longer a tour st attraction so the earthquake didn't cause a huge number of deaths.)

10.6B Mixed tnird/second conditional

This conditional describes a hypothetical situation or event in the past, which is contrary to known facts. The result in the main clause refers to the present-

If Freming hadn't discovered peniciliin there would be far more fatalities every year than there actually are (= Fleming did discover penic llin so there are fewer fatalities



#### ALTERNATIVES TO IF

Negative conditions

10.7A We often use unless to express a negative condition. It is similar to if not or only if Unless you ve got a doctor's note to say you've passed the medical, they won't allow you to go on the activity honday (- If you don't have a doctor's note - , they won't allow you ...)

> Unless they all retreat the casualty count could be norrendous ( The casualty count could be horrendous if they don't all retreat )

> I wouldn't be willing to help you out again unless you paid me (- I would nelp again only if you paid me.)

• Unless is not always an alternative to if not especially when the negative condition after if is contrary to known facts, and in most questions:

- ✗ You'd be happier unless you had such high expectations.
- ✓ You'd be happier if you didn't have such high expectations
- \* What time shall we leave for the theatre unless he turns up?
- ✓ What time shall we leave for the theatre if he doesn't turn up?

We can use unless with not:

The college will offer you a place on next year's course, unless your school leaving grade is not as predicted. (= if your school grade is as predicted)

'Are they going to sell?' 'Not unless they receive an exceptional offer' (= They won t if they don't receive ...)

10.7B Necessary conditions We use the conjunctions provided/providing (that), so/as long as and on (the) condition (that) to emphasise that the condition is necessary to the result. They all mean only if The system will not have to be drained provided that antifreeze has been added Expenses will be reimbursed on the condition that all receipts are submitted.

• We do not use these conjunctions with the third conditional, as they can only refer to present or future conditions:

- \* We would have had the party there so long as they had arranged the catering
- ✓ We'll have the party here, so long as you also arrange the catering.

To express a necessary condition for something to have happened in the past, we use but for + noun phrase:

They would have all perished but for the quick thinking of the driver (- if t had not been for the quick thinking of the driver)

10.7C Imaginary conditions

We use Suppose/Supposing (that)—and What if—to talk about imaginary conditions

Suppose he asked you to go to the cinema with him, would you go?

We often omit the result clause with these conjunctions ( 11.2D)

What if the money doesn't arrive on time?

We use *in case* to imagine a future situation. It is not the same as *if*:

I'll pop round later in case you're there.

(= I don't know if you'll be there.)

I'll pop round later if you're there.

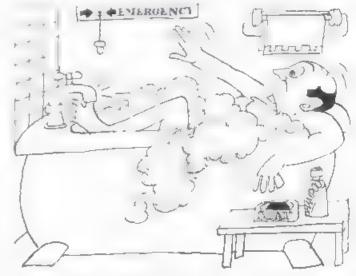
(= I'll only come if you're there.)

We often use in case to imagine a precaution necessary for a situation:

She gave me the key to get in the house in case you were out.

In case of (+ noun) is more formal, and is often used in instructions:

**In case of** (an) emergency, pull the cord above the bath.



In case of (an) emergency, pull the cord above the bath

10.7D Unexpected conditions

10.7D We use even if to express a condition that is unexpected in the circumstances:

**Even if** they do go down with flu after they've had the vaccination, it's likely to be less serious

10.7E Arternative conditions

10.7E We use whether or not to express alternative conditions (for all conditional patterns native They'll deliver the furniture whether there's someone to receive it or not

Pages 138 and 139 for Round up of conditionals, subjunctive and 'unreal' past

## Practice

#### 10 1-10.4

Write the correct form of the verbs in brackets to complete the conditional sentences in this article. Use modal verbs if you think they are appropriate.

## No pain, no gain?

It's January 1st. You're on the bathroom scales, groaning. If you (1) ....... (eat) that last piece of Christmas pud, perhaps you wouldn't have put on that extra kilo.

Never mind, you can lose it and get fit at the gym!

Or is that the right thing to do? If you're unfit, you (2) ...... (stand) a huge chance of injuring yourself in the gym or on the squash court. You must take care before launching yourself into a vigorous exercise routine: if you don't treat your body with respect, it (3) .. ..... (not/function) as you want it to. The knee, in particular, can cause untold problems. We (4) ...... (not/have) problems with our knees if we still (5) ...... (walk) on all fours, but they're not up to a vertical pounding on the treadmill for an hour a day. All of our joints can cause problems; if you (6) ...... (want) to play football safely, make sure you wear the right boots to protect your ankles. Decent coaching (7) ..... (be) essential if you're going to take up a racket sport: something as simple as a wrong-size grip can cause tennis elbow.

Many sports injuries are caused by insufficient warm-ups. If everyone spent a few minutes stretching their muscles before exercising, they (8) ....... (experience) much less pain during exercise itself. But people can be stubborn



about pain when exercising. The phrase 'no pain, no gain' is rubbish. Should you feel pain when you're exercising, you (9) ...... (stop) at once!

Sport has so many other hazards, though. Golf, you would think, is relatively harmless. Not so for Anthony Phua, a Malaysian golfer who was killed by getting in the way of his partner's swing. Now, if he hadn't taken up that particular form of exercise in the first place, it (10) ...... (happen).

Rephrase the information in each paragraph to use a conditional sentence. The first words are given to you in each case, and the first one has been done as an example (0).

# South-East Asia faces new smog crisis

- O Forest fires are breaking out all over South-East Asia. Something has to be done to control these fires or the smog crisis of two years ago will be repeated.
  - There will be a repeat of the smog. crisis of two years ago if nothing is done to control the fires.
  - 1 The forecast is that the weather will stay dry, but only heavy rain can avert the crisis.

    If it doesn't rain, ....
  - 2 The government stopped releasing pollution levels in June because it didn't want to frighten off tourists. The tourist industry has not yet suffered.
    - The tourist industry might. . .

- 3 Government officials are advising people with respiratory problems to wear face masks.
  - The Government says: 'You should wear ....
- 5 One of the problems is that few of the countries affected have a Ministry of the Environment, so there is no serious environmental protection.

  There might be more

#### 6 10.2-10.4

Here are some lines from songs. Each line is a conditional Match the two halves of the conditional sentence to make the complete line. Be careful – one of the conditionals is incorrect Can you identify which one?

- 1 If I could read your mind, love, ..
- 2 If I had a hammer,
- 3 If I need love,
- 4 If I ruled the world,
- 5 If I were a carpenter, and you were a lady,
- 6 If I were a rich man,
- 7 If looks could kill,
- 8 If you're going to San Francisco,
- 9 If I can't have you,
- 10 If we don't try to save the love we got,

- A would you marry me anyway?
- B they probably will, in games without frontiers.
- C we're gonna lose it
- D be sure to wear some flowers in your hair.
- E every day would be the first day of spring.
- F what a tale your thoughts would tell.
- G I hold out my hand and I touch love.
- H I'd hammer out reason.
- I I wouldn't have to work hard.
- J I don't want nobody, baby.



Match each if clause (1-5) with two possible main clauses (A-L). Then complete the main clauses using the words in brackets. Use modal verbs if appropriate.

1 2 3 4	If athletes today didn't take their training so seriously.  If John Lennon and Paul McCartney hadn't met,  If Oppenheimer hadn't discovered how to build an atomic bomb.  If it weren't possible for scientists to isolate individual genes,	, Ę
5	If the printing press had not been invented,	
B C	a cure for cancer	e)
	Microsoft . woulant have become a household name. (not/become)	- 4
	much of our history unknown to us. (be)	
G	sport so exciting to watch. (not/be)	
Н	the Beatles (never/be/formed)	
}	the ethical debate around cloning an issue. (not/be)	
J	the pop music of today very different. (be)	
K	the world a more secure and peaceful place. (be)	
	they so many records in recent years. (not/break)	

#### 10.3-10

Read each short text and the conditional sentences that follow it Tick ( $\checkmark$ ) the correct conditional sentences. (One or two may be correct in each case.) Put a cross ( $\times$ ) by the incorrect ones. Think about the meaning as well as the grammar.

- O Thanks for looking after the house while I m away. The only difficulty might be the burglar alarm, which occasionally goes off for no reason. The police a ways follow up an alarm, but just tell them that it's a bit temperamental.
  - A If the alarm goes off, the police will come.
  - B If the alarm were to go off, the police can come.
  - C If the alarm should sound, the police will come.
- 1 The crash of the Air France Concorde has now been attributed to a piece of metal on the runway apparently from a Continental Airlines DC10 which had taken off minutes before. The metal caused one of Concorde's tyres to burst, which in turn ruptured the fuel tank on the left-hand side of the plane.
  - A If the runway were swept after each take off the disaster might have been averted
  - B If the runway had been swept after the DC10 take-off the disaster could have been averted
  - C. If the runway hadn't been swept after the DC10 take off, the disaster might have been averted.
- 2 The government urges that a lichi dren and teenagers are vaccinated against mening tis C
  - A If your child had not yet been vaccinated please make an appointment with the nurse
  - B. If your child has not yet been vaccinated, please make an appointment with the nurse
  - C. If your child was not yet vaccinated please make an appointment with the nurse
- 3 I naven't seen the result, but Rusedsk must have finished his second round match against Pioline by now
  - A If he gets through this one, he'll be delighted.
  - B If he's got through this one, he'll be delighted.
  - C If he got through this one, he'd be delighted

- 4 Try to engage the potential client in conversation as soon as possible to make it more difficult for him to put the phone down.
  - A If the client won tiengage, politely thank nim for listening and hang up
  - B If the client doesn't engage, politely thank him for listening and hang up
  - C. If the client wouldn't engage, you should thank him for listening and hang up
- 5 Over ninety-five per cent of people who successfully complete our course find that they recover the course fees within a few months through income from having their work published
  - A Should you not recover the fees within a year of completing the course, we will give you a full refund.
  - B Did you not recover the fees within a year of completing the course, we would give you a full refund
  - C If you hadn't recovered the fees within a year of completing the course, we would give you a full refund.
- 6 In last week's peaceful demonstrations in Burma, one demonstrator was seriously injured when she fell and was trampled by the crowd trying to flee from the water cannons. She is still in hospital in a critical condition.
  - A If the demonstrator didn't fall, she might not be in hospital now.
  - B If the demonstrator hadn't fallen, she might not be in hospital now.
  - C If the demonstrator hadn't fallen, she might not have been seriously injured

## 5 10.7

For each of the sentences below, write a new sentence as similar as possible in meaning to the original sentence, but using the words given. These words must not be altered in any way.

- O It would be nice to go to the beach tomorrow.

  suppose we went to the center tomorrow. That would be ruce.
- 1 Perhaps Sophie doesn't like her parents in- aw but she keeps it to herself even if
- 2 After her husband's death, Mrs Jenkins so dithe nouse to her son but insisted that he lived in it himself.

on the condition that.

- 3 If you don't request next day delivery, we will send the goods by normal first-class post unless
- 4 Use a power breaker when you mow the lawn as you might cut the electric lead in case.
- 5 The library computer can tell you about the books you have out on loan, if any whether ... or not
- 6 I can't imagine the consequences if the police found out! what if
- 7 We will only achieve the deadline if you provide all the resources we have requested not ... unless ......
- 8 You will be awarded marks for trying to answer all the questions; not all the answers have to be correct.

whether ... or not

- 9 You're welcome to bring Lucinda, but I don't want her to moan about her work all day as long as. . .
- 10 If you hadn't been so stupid in the TV studio, our team would have won the quizi but for

Read this article and decide which word or words below best fits each space. Circle the letter you choose for each question. The exercise begins with an example (0).

## Good news for dog owners!

If you often travel abroad for your holidays, what (0) ... with your beloved pet dog?

Do you put him in a kennel or leave him with friends? One thing is certain, you're extremely unlikely to take him with you, because if you (1) ... he (2) ... six months in quarantine when you return.

A bit of a stiff penalty for two weeks' romping in the Dordogne! But this is set to change soon. From April your dog will be able to travel with

you (3) ... he (4) ... a rabies vaccination and is wearing an identification chip. Cara Lewis, spokesperson for the Animal Welfare Society, said, 'This is very good news for all British animal lovers. I know many people who (5) .... take their dogs on holiday with them if only they (6) .... Indeed, I used to travel to northern France regularly and I (7) ... my dog Wolfie with me every time (8) ... the quarantine regulations.' But

Cara also has words of warning: 'Pet owners should remember that there are other considerations when taking animals abroad. (9) ... your animal become disorientated, he (10) ..., so ensure that he is wearing a collar with your holiday address at all times.'

It isn't all good news, however. If you (11) ... to a country outside Western Europe this year, you (12) your pet with you – it will be some time before regulations for other destinations are relaxed, if ever.

- O A will you do
- 1 A had done
- 2 A will spend
- 3 A providing
- 4 A had
- 5 A could
- ь A can
- / A have taken
- 8 A unless
- 9 A Should
- 10 A runs away
- 11 A will travel
- 12 A don't take

- 3 would you do
- B did
- B has to spend
- B unless
- B had had
- B will
- B could
- B will have taken
- B but for
- B Did
- B should run away
- B are travelling
- B can't have taken

- C) do you do
- ( do
- would have to spend
- C in case
- ( has had
- C would
- ( should be able to
- C would have taken
- C so long as
- ( Had
- C might run away
- C would travel
- C won't be able to take



# The subjunctive and 'unreal' uses of past forms

We use the subjunctive form in certain fixed expressions and after some verbs and adjectives which express the idea of necessity importance, etc. The subjunctive form can be used to refer to events and situations in the past, present or future. We use it mostly in formal and literary language.

After certain expressions we can also use past tenses to refer to the past, present or future, to describe things which are seen as unreal or unlikely. This is similar to the use of past tenses in conditionals ( Unit 10). In this unit we look at the way we use past tenses after particular expressions and to express preference and necessity.



#### THE SUBJUNCTIVE

11.1A Form and use The subjunctive form is the same as the infinitive (without to). It does not show any marking for tense and can be used to refer to events in the past, present or future. We use it most often in that clauses after certain verbs (e.g. advise, ask, demand insist, propose, recommend request suggest), and after adjectives (e.g. advisable, anxious desirable, eager, essential important necessary preferable vital willing), to express the idea that something is necessary or important:

At yesterday's hearing the judge **insisted** (that, Mr Crant **give** evidence despite his relationship to the accused

In future cases it will be vital that each party give full disclosure prior to trial. We can use passive and negative forms of the subjunctive:

Members of the committee suggested England **be excluded** from future international **tournaments**.

Requiations require that officers not enter the crime scene without protective clothing. The verb be has an alternative subjurctive for niwere with its sometimes called the past subjunctive and is used to talk about the imagined present or future ( 11.2B) and in conditionals (> 10.4A)

11.1B Informal alternatives The subjunctive is used in reported speech ivery formal language (e.g. regulations, legal documents) and in poetry:

She insisted that she pay her own way.

We require that all receipts be submitted to the committee for approval

I know not whether laws be right.

Or whether laws be wrong. (Oscar Wilde)

As the use of the subjunctive is rather formal or literary in British English (it is less formal and more common in US English). British English speakers prefer to use should + infinitive or the forms listed below in most situations.

It is vital that every applicant complete the form in triplicate (subjunctive)
It is vital that every applicant should complete the form in triplicate (should + infinitive)

It is vital that every applicant completes the form in triplicate (present simple). It is vital for every applicant to complete the form in triplicate (for + subject + to + infinitive).

11.1C There are some fixed expressions which use subjunctive forms:

Fixed

If he doesn't want to see us, then so be it. (= then let it happen)

expressions

Bless you!

Long live the republic!

There's very little chance of winning this case. Be that as it may I'm not going to give up fighting.' (= Whether that is true or not, I'm not ...)

I'll take it all the way to the Supreme Court if need be. (= if this is necessary)

#### THE 'UNREAL' PAST

11.2A After a number of expressions. The if only we use past tenses (active and passive) to Form and describe things in the present past or future which are imagined or unreal. We use sometimes refer to this use of past tenses as the 'unreal' past

> If only I was thin. (= I am not thin but I would like to be thin.) Other introducing expressions like if only are: It's time ..., What if Suppose/Supposing ..., would rather, would sooner, as if, as though, wish.

We can use the past's imple or the past continuous after these expressions to talk about the imaginary present and future.

 Present It's time they were forced to ear up the mess (They aren't being forced) to clear up at the moment.) These kids act as if they owned the place. (They don't own it.)

 Future: I wish I were coming with you tomorrow. (I am not coming with you tomorrow.)

We use the past perfect to refer to something unreal in the past Suppose the gun had been fired at me? (The gun wasn't fired at me.) I wish I'd never started this course (I have started it )

was or were?

11.2B Many speakers prefer to use were for all persons when taking about the imagined present or future lespecially in more formal sitilations and in US English. This form is sometimes called the past subjunctive ( 11.1A above) and is also used in second conditional sentences (► 10.4).

Suppose I were to announce my candidacy at the next council meeting.

If only he were a little more convincing on the economic issues.

If I were you, I'd think twice before refusing that offer.

In the above examples we can also use was but this is more informal.

11.2C We use it's time ... to say that something is not happening and it should be:

It's time we left. (= We aren't leaving and we should.) It's

(high/about) time (that) It's about time you paid a visit to your grandparents ,- You should visit them ) It's high time that the voice of the people was heard in this House (- Their voice isn't being heard and it should be.)

We cannot use a negative after it's time

X It's time we didn't stay.

Note that we can also use it's time to + infinitive or it's time for + object + to + infinitive:

I'm afraid it's time to put your books away now, children Come on everybody. It's time for us to get on the coach.

11.2D what if. suppose/ supposing (that)

We use what if suppose/supposing (that) with the past simple or continuous to ask questions about an imaginary situation in the present or future and its possible consequences. These questions have similar form and meaning to those in second conditional sentences (> 10.4, 10.7C):

Suppose he asked you to marry him what would you say? [ If he asked you to marry him, what would you say?]

Sentences with these expressions describing an imaginary situation in the past have a similar meaning to third conditional sentences (► 10.5):

Supposing your parents had refused how would you have felt? ( - If your parents had refused, how would you have felt?)

And what if he had been thrown out by the landlord? Where would he have gone? We often use what if, suppose and supposing to make suggestions:

Suppose you paid the bill for once?

We use a present tense after these expressions to ask about an imaginary situation in the future that we think is likely or probable or if we want to suggest that it is

What if the plan doesn't work?

Supposing he gets caught at customs? You know how vigi ant they can be

would rather/would sooner

11.2E We use would rather standard with the past simple to describe preferences

I'd sooner you gave me a cash refund. A credit note's no use to me. [ 1 would prefer a refund/I wish you would give me a refund.)

They are often used as a polite way to give refuse permission for make suggestions. I'd rather you didn't smoke in here

I'm not seen on the delet stoot qui i'd sooner we went out clubbing or something • If the person expressing a preference and the subject of the preference are the same. we use an infinitive instead of the past tense. Compare:

We also or er you spent your numus on something useful (past tense, speaker and subject are not the same)

I direther spend it on something frivolous (iffiltive speaker and subject are the same}

as iff as though

11.2F. We use the past simple after as it or as though to say that how something appears now does not match with reality. He talks to the endaren as though they were imbecdes. (The speaker knows they

aren't imbeciles.) They are acting as if nothing had happened. (The speaker knows something has

happened) But we use a present tense (including the present perfect) after as if or as though to

describe how things seem or appear when the eils a possibility that the appearance reflects something real-

He sounds as if he knows what he's talk ha about ( Perhaps he does know) You look as though you haven't eaten for all is ( . You may not have eaten )

We can use these expressions to be critical, ironic or sarcastic

It isn't as if he's in any posit in to pass addemental. He probably shit in a position to do this.)



#### WISH/IF ONLY

wishlif only + past simple

11.3A We use it stiff only - past simple to express a desire for something to be different in

I wish I had more free time. (= I don't have much free time, but I would like some.) The desire can be for something which is actually impossible.

If only I were young again

wishlif only + past perfect

11.3B We use wishlif only + past perfect to express a regret about the past, a wish that something different had happened:

I wish that you'd told me about this before I booked the tickets (- I regret the fact that you didn't tell me about this.)

If only he hadn't been driving so fast' (- Unfortunate , he was driving very fast )

11.3C wishlif only + would

11.3C Wish if only + would usually expresses a desire for someone to change their deliberate

behaviour in the present or future.

I wish you'd stop looking at me
like that. It's terribly distracting.

(= You keep looking at me and I
want you to stop)

We often use this form to criticise or complain about something

I wish you'd stop shouting. I'm not deaf you know

We can also use the form with inanimate subjects because although we know they have no conscious control over their actions



(they are not human), we give them human characteristics for emphatic effect

If only the sun would come out so we could get on with the filming (= The sun 'refuses' to come out. I want it to come out.)

The charge we desire must be possible, even if call key. We cannot use would for an impossible change leight one writing subject has no control over or a change to the past.

- \* I wish sports cars wouldn't be so expensive (Cars have no control over their price)
- ✓ I wish sports cars weren't so expensive. (+ past simple ► 11.3A)
- x If only nuclear bombs wouldn't have been invented (a change to the past)
- ✓ If only nuclear bombs hadn't been invented (+ past perfect 11.3B).

We can't use would when the subject of the wish and the subject of the change are the same. Instead we use a past tense, or could (> 11.3D).

- x I wish I would be more energetic. (Subject of wish and would are the same.)
- ✓ If only I were more energetic. ✓ I wish I could be more energetic.

11.3D wishlif only + could (have)

11.3D We use wish if only + could have to describe a desire we know is impossible to achieve only + If only we could see the situation through his eyes. (We can't.)

We often use the form when we are expressing an impossible desire about ourselves. I wish I could dance but I'm afraid I've got two left feet.

We can use could have ( 16.2B) for a regret about the past. It means. It would have been nice if

I wish your lather could have been there to see it all ( Unfortunately he wash t able to be there )

Differences between wish and if only

11.3E If only is often more emphatic than wish Compare these examples:

If only we'd seen you coming. We might have braked in time. (a regret)

I wish we'd seen you coming. We would have put out the red carpet! (a wish)

For greater emphasis we can put a subject between f and only in informal English

If you only knew how much trouble you've caused.

- (1) Wish can be followed by that, but if only cannot:
  - x If only that you'd told me about it earlier.
  - ✓ I wish that you'd told me about it earlier.

Pages 138 and 139 for Round up of conditionals, subjunctive and 'unreal' past

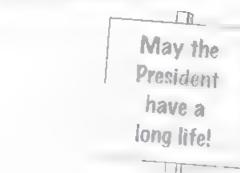
## Practice

The key to these exercises is on page 359

#### 11.1

Study the following extracts. Two of them use appropriate language but four of them use forms which have an incorrect degree of formality Tick () the two correct extracts and rewrite the remaining four using subjunctives (note you may need to use passive forms).

- It is vital that claims are submitted to the committee with full supporting documentation.
- and then, can you imagine, the boss insisted that I took little James to lunch. I mean, it's not my job to look after the boss's children, is it?
- Clause 25.6 of the Treatment of Offenders Act suggests that each oftender receives a monthly visit from a probation officer.



7.30 BBC1 Trudy Trouble In tonight's hitarious episode Sam suggests that Trudy visits the doctor, with predictably comical results!

Id sooner take the later flight

It is imperative that ear protectors are worn at all times when operating the machine lathes.

#### 2 11.2

Rewrite these sentences using a suitable phrase from the box. Use each phrase only once.

as if she as though I'd rather it's time it's about time you suppose I I'd sooner they'd rather what if

- O Taking the later flight would be preferable for me
- 1 You look awful. Have you been unwell?
- 2 Please don't wipe your feet on the carpets
- 3 What on earth will happen if they don't accept your explanation?
- 4 We really ought to pay the bill now.
- 5 If I complained to the police, how would they react?
- 6 If they had the choice, I think they'd prefer us to go with them.
- 1 She isn't a member of the club, but she acts like someone who is.
- 8 You should give your parents a call, they must be getting worried by now.



Read the information in the box then match each statement (1-15) below with one of the speakers Alan (A), Mary (M) or Teresa (T). You can match five statements to each speaker.

- A Alan loves swimming but he doesn't have a pool in his house.
- M Mary has a swimming pool in her house.
- T Teresa used to own a house with a swimming pool
- 1. I wish we had a house with a pool.
- 2 Supposing we got rid of the pool?
- 3 It's high time we changed the water in the pool.
- 4 If only the pool hadn't been so expensive to maintain.
- 5 Suppose we hadn't had a pool for all those years?
- 6 I'd rather we had our own pool
- 7 People say I sometimes talk as if I had my own swimming pool.
- 8 What if we'd never had a pool?
- 9 If only the children would use our pool more often.
- 10 I wish I could go back to the days when we had our own pool
- 11 If only we didn't have that great big pool in the back garden.
- 12 I'd sooner we used solar power to heat our pool
- 13.1 wish we could have used our pool more.
- 14 It's about time we built a pool.
- 15 What if we installed a pool in the basement?

### 11.2, 11.3

For each of the sentences below, write a new sentence as similar as possible in meaning to the original sentence. Use the words given in bold letters. The words must not be altered in any way. There is an example (0) at the beginning.

- O I regret the fact that we didn't see the band play.

  could ......I.wish we could have seen the could be a
- 1 It's a pity that you didn't tell us that you were leaving. wish
- 2 What would have happened if they hadn't got a receipt? suppose
- 3 We really should go now.
  - went
- 4 Unfortunately, I'm not as agile as I used to be.
- 5 I'd love to be able to play the piano.
  - could
- 6 Her constant criticism of me really gets on my nerves.
  - stop
- 7 Treat my home in the same way that you would treat your own.
- 8 I regret not going to university when I was younger.
- 9 She would love to have more friends had
- 10 Please don't let the dog sit in the front of the car.

## 5 11.2, 11.3

Some of these sentences contain mistakes. Tick (✔) the correct sentences: then underline and correct the mistakes

- I I had rather you didn't take the car; it's just been cleaned.
- 2 It's high time our employer listens to our grievances.
- 3 Supposing I took out my own insurance cover, what did you do about it?
- 4. If we only knew where he was getting the information from a
- 5 I wish I would be a child again
- 6 He's only a student but sometimes he acts as if he is the teacher
- 7 I'd sooner die than go out with that creep.
- 8 What if you'll see him at the party?
- 9 It's about time I didn't stay at home; I am twenty five after all
- 10 What a mess; you look as though you've been in a fight!



Complete the letter with appropriate forms of the words in brackets

Dear Mrs Grenfell,

I am writing to you in your position as secretary of Cliveren Marsions Residents' Association in connection with the problem of residents leaving by yoles in the common entrance hallway.

My wife and I have yet again been having a . \* if the rich with Steve and David Brown, the tenants of flat 16 on the first flor and the feet of singh time this persistent finally resolve. These tellants own two beckes which they source of dispute 1 insist on leaving in the entrance corridor No 1, at you are aware that the leases of all the flats in our building require that the entra " 2 Leep lear of obstruction at all times. The local fire officer has also pointed if the first under the building regulations the common entrance corridors to flats months to the treated as if they 3 be exits of a public building, and are therefore support the same restrictions as those in force in theatres, cinemas, etc. Supposing the wirning 4 block) with bicycles and there was a serious fire? We might all be trapped in thats

Apparently last month you told the Browns that they could keep their bicycles there for a temporary period Well. I certainly wish you E not agree to that, because they continually use this as an excuse when we ask them to remove the bikes. I have pointed out to them that there is space to store by . .- s if the back yard, although I would sooner they 6 keet the takes in their car, flat as the presence of two mountain bikes might attract thieves. They say that their sit any space in their flat able to offer them somewhere else But, as you know, all the space in the bloycle shed is now allocated. United inately they still seem unwilling to move their bikes, and their intransigence is beginning to seem deliberate. It isn't as though we not tel. them about this on numero is masions. In fact it has now reached a stage where I fee. I must insist that the chairman of the residents' association (9) (demand) they remove the bicycles forthwith.

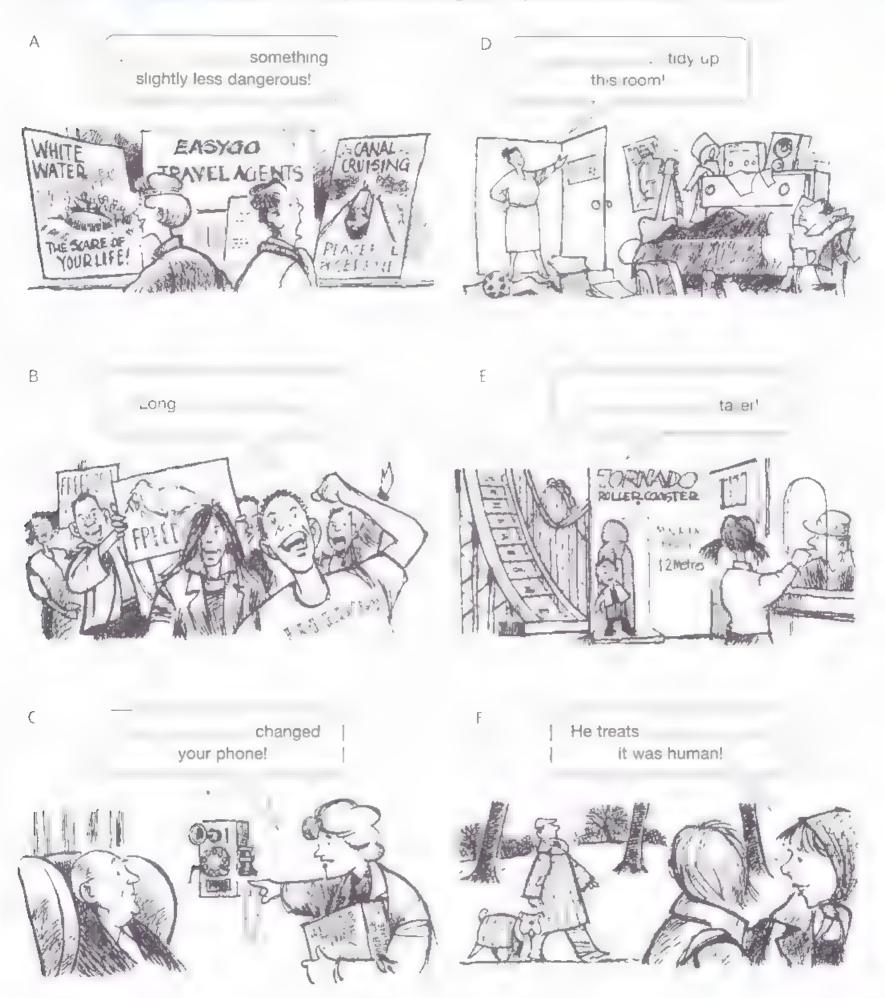
not have to reter this matter to our solicitors but we We would rather 10 feel that if the residents' association is unable to resolve the matter, we will have no alternative.

Yours sincerely.

Howard Blenkinsop



Complete the speech bubbles for the pictures, using the expressions described in this unit.



# Round up: Units 10 and 11

## Conditionals, subjunctive and 'unreal' past

form	use	example	
conditionals			
zero conditional	events that occur at any time or more than once	If she's travelling abroad on business, she always phones me every evening.	10.2B
	actions that always have the same result	If you don't look after tomato plants, they die very quickly	10.2B
	general instructions	If a chip pan sets alight, throw a fire blanket on it.	10.2C
first conditional	possible future events or situations and their results	If the result of the test is negative, you'll receive notification through the post.  The beach party will go ahead if the weather is fine tomorrow.	10.3B
	commands, offers, suggestions and warnings	Shall we go out tomorrow if the weather's good?	10.3C
second conditional	improbable future events or situations and their results	If the result of the test were positive, we would call you within two days	10.4B
	hypothetical current situations or events (a condition which is impossible to fulfil)	If the police were confident of their case against Sykes, they wouldn't hesitate to take him into custody	10 4B
	advice, requests, desires	If I were you. I would take her out of that school	10.4C
third conditional	hypothetical situations or events in the past (an unreal past situation)	I would have used your builder if I had managed to contact him.	10.5B
	criticism	If you'd been driving more slowly, you could have stopped in time	10.5C
mixed (second/third) conditional	hypothetical situations or events in the present with a result in the past	If the island were still a tourist attraction, last week's earthquake would have caused far more deaths	10.6A
mixed (third/second) conditional	hypothetical situations or events in the past with a result in the present	If Fleming hadn't discovered penicillin, there would be far more fatalities every year than there actually are	10.6B
subjunctive			
the same as the infinitive without <i>to</i>	used in formal English to express the idea that something is necessary or important	At yesterday's hearing the judge insisted Mr Grant <b>give</b> evidence despite his relationship to the accused.	11 1A

form	use	example	
'unreal' past			
it's (high/ about) time	to say that something is not happening and it should be	It's time we left	11.2C
what if, suppose/ supposing	to ask questions about an imaginary situation and its possible consequences	Suppose I asked you to marry me, what would you say?	11.2D
would rather/ would sooner	to describe preferences (often a polite way to give/ refuse permission, or make suggestions)	I'd sooner you gave me a refund. A credit note's no use to me I'd rather you didn't smoke in here	11.2E
as if/as though	to say that how something appears does not match with reality (For as if/as though with present tenses > 11.2F)	He talks to the children as though they were imbeciles (He sounds as if he knows what he's talking about )	11 2F
wish/if only + past simple	desire for something to be different in the present	I wish I had more free time If only I were young again	11.3A
wish/if only + past perfect	a regret about the past, a wish that something different had happened	I wish that you'd told me about this before I booked the tickets If only you hadn't been driving so fast!	11.3B
wish/if only + would	desire for someone to change their deliberate behaviour in the present and future (often used to criticise or complain)	I wish you'd stop looking at me like that. It's terribly distracting. I wish you'd stop shouting. I'm not deaf you know	11 3C
wish/if only + could (have)	desire which we know is impossible to achieve (including impossible desires about ourselves)	If only we could see the situation through his eyes I wish I could dance but I'm afraid I've got two left feet	11.3D

# -ing forms and infinitives

The -ing and infinitive forms of verbs are very common in English and can act as subjects, objects and complements of verbs. When used like hours, ling forms are often referred to as 'gerunds'. This unit looks at the use of -ing forms and infinitives after certain verbs, determiners, adjectives and noons, and at the special use of infinitives to describe purpose and result. (For the use of - ng and infinitive forms in clauses and phrases and in the passive and perfect forms of participles and infinitives. Unit 13)



#### -ING FORMS

and objects

12.1A We can use -ing forms of verbs in the same way that we use nouns - as the subject. As subjects object or complement of a verb. We often refer to -ing forms used in this way as gerunds:

Swimming makes you fit

The whole family has taken up cycling

Her worst habit is lying

Sometimes -ing forms can have their own subjects and objects:

I'm looking forward to my wife returning (subject + -ing form)

Meeting new people is one benefit of taking evening classes (ing form + object) We can make a negative with not + -ing

Not getting a refund on faulty goods is what really annoys me.

- B it we use no + ing to explain that something is impossible or not allowed.
  - X There's not smoking in this office/There isn't smoking in this office.
  - ✓ Could you go outside? There's no smoking in this office

There's no skiing here in the summer season. (= Skiing is impossible.)

(= Parking is not allowed here.) No Parking

patterns

12.1B We can use determiners leighthe this possessives leighthe possessive adjectives. -ing form e.g. his; or object pronouns, e.g. him, before -ing forms. Object pronouns are more common in informal English

All this complaining won't get you anywhere, you know.

Peter's complaining didn't do him any good

Exorbitant tax rates led to his leaving the country.

Exorbitant tax rates led to him leaving the country. (informal)

We often use an object + -ing form after verbs of the senses (► 12.3A, 12.3E):

I heard Alagna giving a marvellous rendition of 'Nessun Dorma'.

- We always use the object pronoun after sense verbs:
  - X Have you seen our performing yet?
  - ✓ Have you seen us performing yet?
- When we use the + -ing form and we want to like t with an object, we use of
  - \* The giving presents is a traditional part of the Christmas festivities
  - ✓ The giving of presents is a traditional part of the Christmas festivities

We also use *-ing* forms as adjectives (▶ 21.2)·

The **remaining** items will be sold in our January sale.

Many adjectives and nouns are followed by a preposition + ing form ( Unit 15) Lara isn't capable of lying and she has no reason for not telling the truth

Form

12.2A Infinitives with to can be the subject, object or complement of a verb.

To give is better than to receive. Everyone loves to win

We make a negative with not + infinitive:

I tried not to look at the accident

An infinitive can have its own subject, introduced with for:

For evil to succeed it is only necessary for the good to do nothing.

In informal Engish we sometimes put an adverb between to and the infinitive. This is known as a spirt infinitive, and we usually avoid it informal Engish by putting the adverb in another position:

[The doctor started to carefully remove the bandages.]

✓ The doctor started to remove the bandages carefully.

There are also perfect continuous and passive forms of the infinitive ( 13.3A) If for example, the person who is doing the action described by the infinitive is not the subject of the sentence, we usually use the passive infinitive:

- X The report is to hand in first thing tomorrow morning
- ✓ The report is to be handed in first thing tomorrow morning.

12.28 We can use an infinitive to describe the purpose or reason for an action:

Infinitives of purpose and result

Cover the turkey in silver foil to keep the meat moist.

To stop the train, pull the lever downwards.

We use for before the infinitive when the subject of the infinitive is different from the subject of the sentence:

- X She went to WalMart for to get some groceries.
- ✓ She went to WalMart to get some groceries.
- ✓ We bought a cage for John to keep his hamster in.

In more formal English we can use in order or so as + infinitive of purpose:

Interest rates have been raised in order to reduce inflationary pressures.

We have removed the warrang's ghs so as not to alarm members of the public. The infinitive can also describe a result or something surprising lespecially with only and verbs such as find, discover, realise, etc.:

They queued for hours at the box office only to discover that the show was sold out. We also use infinitives after too and enough (> 22.2C) to talk about results:

That blue outfit was too informal to wear to the reception.

There isn't enough (food) to go around, I'm afraid.

Infinitives after adjectives

and nouns

12.2C Many adjectives respect ally those describing feerings, can be followed by to + infinitive nitives (some common examples are in the box below):

We're thrilled to welcome this year's prizewinner onto the podium.

The Bensons are lucky to be having such good weather.

adjective + to + infinitive ablerunable alra d unxious asnamed, bound careful certain, crazy curious due eager fit happy impossible likely, ucky pleased right shocked stupid, sure, surprised, thrilled, welcome, wrong

Many nouns can be followed by to + infinite (some common examples are in the box below):

She's finally made a decision to leave Clare would be a fool to marry him

noun + to + infinitive attempt bid decision desire incentive need nuisance opportunity, place, pleasure, reason, time, wish

• We can use a noun + to + infinitive after there is are and nave (got) to express an obligation:

Don't disturb me, I've got a report to write this evening.



#### VERBS FOLLOWED BY -ING FORMS AND INFINITIVES

12.3A Verb + -ing form

12.3A Certain verbs (see box below) can be followed by an -ing form (but not by an infinitive

- X I avoid to travel in the rush hour whenever possible.
  - ✓ I avoid travelling in the rush hour whenever possible.

With some of these verbs (marked \* in the box below) we can also put an object before the -ing form. Compare:

Can you imagine wearing that dress! (verb + -ing form)
Can you imagine Jemima wearing that dress! (verb + object + -ing form)

verb + ing form admit appreciate\* avoid\* burst out can't nelp\* consider contemplate, defer, delay, deny, detest\*, dislike\*, endure\*, enjoy\*, escape, excuse\*, face\*, fancy\*, feel like linish, give up imagine\* involve\* justify\* keep (on) leave off mention\*, mind\*, miss\* postpone practise prevent\* put off put so off recail\* recommend resent\*, resist\*, risk\*, save, suggest, tolerate\*, understand\*

① Certain verbs, particularly sense verbs (see box below) are only followed by an -ing form when they have an object (► 12.1B)

- X In 'Hamlet' the prince discovers hiding behind the curtains
- ✓ In 'Hamlet' the prince discovers Polonius hiding behind the curtains

**verb** + **object** + **-ing form** catch, discover, feel, find, hear, leave, notice, observe, see, spot, watch

- The verbs advise allow forbid and permit are followed by an ing form when they have no object, but an infinitive when they have an object (► 12.3B)
  - ✓ The doctor advised taking a course of antibiotics.
  - \* The doctor advised him taking a course of antibiotics
  - ✓ The doctor advised him to take a course of antibiotics.

12.3B Verb +

- 12.3B Certain verbs can be followed by an infinitive lb it not by an ing form (see box below).
  - X She's decided applying for the job.
    - ✓ She's decided to apply for the job.

Some of these verbs can also have an object before the infinitive (marked \* below). He doesn't really expect her to pass the exam

verb + infinitive afford agree, aim appear arrange ask\* attempt beg\* campaign¹ care choose\*, consent dare\* decide demand deserve- expect\* fair fight, forget guarantee happen, help\* hesitate hope intend\* long manage need\* neglect, offer, pause, pian, prepare pretend, promise propose, prove refuse seem swear tend threaten, trouble\* try, undertake, vow, wait¹, want\*, wish\*, yearn

With these verbs we use for before the object + infinitive

- \* We spent ages waiting them to arrive
- ✓ We spent ages waiting for them to arrive.
- In British English, we can use deserve + -ing when it has a passive meaning. That naughty child deserves smacking. (= deserves to be smacked)

Some verbs are followed by an infinitive only when they have an object (see box below).

✗ They forced to open our suitcases
✔ They forced us to open our suitcases

verb + object + to + infinitive advise allow cause command, compel encourage forbid, force, get, instruct, invite, leave, oblige, order, permit, persuade, recommend, remind, request, teach, tell, tempt, urge, warn

Note the special rules about infinitives after let make, see hear, know and help (> 8.1B).

Many of the verbs followed by infinitives are used in reported speech ( Unit 9)

12.3C Some verbs can be followed by an ing form or an infinitive with no difference in Verb ±

-ing form/ infinitive

I can't stand to see/seeing animals in pain.

verb + -ing form or infinitive attempt begin bother, can't bear can't stand cease continue, deserve, fear, hate, intend, like (= enjoy), love, prefer, start

• We usually avoid putting two infinitives or two -ing forms together. [He wanted to start to take lessons] \( \nabla \) He wanted to start taking lessons We use to + infinitive after would like, would love and would hate.

\* When we get there I would like taking a nap.

✓ When we get there I would like to take a nap.

When like means it in it something is a good idea, we only use the infinitive. Compare I like going/to go to the gym. It's so relaxing. (= I enjoy visiting it.) Because of my weight problem I like to go to the gym at least twice a week (= I think this is a good idea.)

Some verbs can be followed by an -ing form or by to + infinitive, but there is a difference in meaning

12.30
Verb +
-ing form or
infinitive

verb	+ -ing form	+ to + infinitive
forget! remember	= forget/remember an earlier action: Do you remember going to school for the first time? I'll never forget meeting him	= forget/remember to do a future action: I must remember to set my alarm clock tonight. Don't forget to lock the back door.
go on	= continue They went on playing despite the bad weather	= change to another action: After opening the hospital the Prince went on to meet the staff
mean	= involves or will result in: This new job means living abroad	= intend to do something The builders mean to finish by Friday
regret	= feel sorrow about the past: I really regret getting that tattoo when I was eighteen.	= announce bad news We regret to inform you of delays in today's service
stop	= finish an action They stopped making fax machines about ten years ago	= finish one action in order to do another one We stopped to get petrol
try	<ul> <li>do something to see what will happen:</li> <li>Try using a screwdriver to get the lid off</li> </ul>	= make an effort to do something difficult  We tried to get tickets but the show was sold out

12.3E Sense verbs ( 1.3C) can be followed by an object + -ing form when we are describing an action in progress or an action that is repeated: Sense verbs

As I walked past the church I heard someone playing Handel's 'Messiah' on the organ. (The person was in the middle of playing when I walked past.)

I saw a young mother slapping her child (She slapped him several times) These verbs can be followed by an object + infinitive (without to) when we are describing a single action or the action is complete:

We saw a young mother slap her child in the supermarket (She slapped once) Last week I heard them play the fifth symphony (I neard the complete symphony)

• We use to + infinitive after a passive sense verb: The young mother was seen to slap her child.

## Practice



### 12.1

Underline the mistakes in these sentences and correct them.

- O A great advantage of credit cards is no having to carry cash around all the time not
- 1 Have you ever heard my singing O Sole Mio?
- 2 We had to come in early for the opening the new extension.
- 3 Constant criticisms led to she resigning from that stressful job.
- 4 You'll have to put that out, sir, this is a not smoking carriage.
- 5 Passengers can find a heated wait room adjacent to platform ten.
- 6 The making a successful soufflé requires expert timing
- 7 There's not swimming from this beach, the current's too treacherous.
- 8 The argument ended up with we demanding a refund and compensation.
- 9 They stopped to make vinyl records ages ago.
- 10 The crane isn't capable lifting it it's too heavy.

### 2

### 12.2

Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it is as similar as possible in meaning to the sentence before it.

- O I really don't want to see him again.
  - I have no desire to see him again.
- 1 I want you to hand the report in tomorrow.
  - The report is
- 2 You can't join the army because you aren't suffice to the
  - You aren't fit .....
- 3 He was very worried that he would arrive late.
  - He was anxious not
- 4 Right now I'm afraid I can't give you an answer.
  - I am not
- 5 The government closed the borders with the aim of catching the criminals. In order
- 6 Closing the office was something the manager decided this morning.

  Ine manager made
- 7 I learnt that Amanda was going to marry Ronald, which was surprising.
- 8 They didn't publish the news because they didn't want to frighten the public.
  - They didn't publish the news so
- 9 Checking the balance on my current account was my main reason for visiting the bank this morning liwent.
- 10 When we got there they had already closed the store for stocktaking!
  We got there only ......



### Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

- 1 I'm not disappointed, I never really expected ........ (pass) the test.
- 2 Please don't hesitate ....... (call) if you have any problems.
- 3 The doctor recommended (avoid) strenuous activity for the first few weeks
- 4 The sales team aims ...... (exceed) its target by at least five per cent this year.
- 5 I don't suppose you happened (notice) whether there was a cash machine there?
- 6 How on earth do they justify ....... (keep) three dogs in such a small flat?
- 7 We'd better hurry up; I'd hate ....... (arrive) late.
- 8 Despite all the rejections. Dave's continuing (apply) for every vacancy he sees
- 9 We discovered an old document ....... (lie) under the floorboards.
- 10 I'll put off ....... (call) them until after I've spoken to the personnel officer.
- 11 You can watch the film if you promise ....... (go) to bed straight afterwards.
- 12 Being a diabetic, I like ....... (avoid) anything containing sugar
- 13 Thanks very much. Yes, we'd love ....... (join) you for dinner on Friday.
- 14 You really can't help ...... (feel) sorry for the poor guy.
- 15 Passengers are permitted (carry) only one piece of hand luggage onto the plane
- 16 Jonathan's the one who taught Rachel ...... (swim) last summer.
- 17 Sometimes you have to pretend ....... (like) people that you detest.
- 18 That's strange, I don't recall ....... (meet) him at all.
- 19 The judge will defer (pass) sentence and the psychiatric reports have been submitted
- 20 Whenever possible, the personnel department kes (settle) salary reviews prior to the quarterly board meetings.

### 4 12.3

#### Underline the correct form in italics.

- 1 Darling, did you remember packing/to pack some spare cassettes for the video camera yesterday?
- 2 I really regret leaving to leave school so young, it's ruled my career prospects
- 3 We tried pressing/to press the 'escape' key but the program just wouldn't respond
- 4 A suspicious young man was seen enter/to enter the building shortly before the incident
- 5 As we drove over the river we noticed local women washing/wash their clothes in the water
- 6 I once heard Karajan conducting/conduct the entire Ring cycle iit was wonderful
- 7 | stopped eating/to eat sugar years ago.
- 8 Nothing will stop their enquiries, they mean gettingito get to the bottom of this strange business
- 9 Don't forget recording/to record 'EastEnders' tomorrow evening
- 10 The woman woke up in the middle of the night, looked out of her window and saw something strange hovering/hover over the trees in the park.
- 11 After a career in the secret service, Ian Fleming went on achieving/to achieve fame as an author
- 12 Transglobe Airlines regrets announcing to announce the cancel ation of today's service to Istanbu due to air traffic restrictions.
- 13 Do you remember seeing/to see that film last summer?
- 14 If you can't find the information in the manual try looking/to look at our website
- 15 We were all exhausted so we stopped getting/to get some rest at a motel.

Read the article below and then decide which word or phrase (A-C) best fits each space. The exercise begins with an example (0).

## Death in the Air

Farol Khan, director of the Aviation Health Institute, (2) .... to have evidence that more than 6,000 passengers a year die of deep-vein thrombosis (DVT) as a result of long-haul flights. Unfortunately, as symptoms often take some time (3) ...., the link between the condition and flying is not always apparent. But there seems (4) .... a clear relationship between the occurrence of DVT and the steady reduction in the amount of legroom between seats in economy class cabins. In a bid (5) .... the number of passengers carried and their consequent profitability, many airlines have squeezed more and more seats into their planes, at the cost of comfort and legroom. And our (6) .... these

uncomfortable conditions is simply based on the fact that we know more seats means lower prices. But with limited opportunities (7) ..... or move around, the blood circulation in passengers' legs (8) ..... to slow down, and blood clots can easily develop. Most at risk are elderly people, sufferers from heart conditions and smokers. But as Emma Christofferson's case shows, even the young and healthy can do little to prevent blood clots (9) ... under these circumstances.

(10) ..... a 'caring, sharing' image is something many airlines are keen on, and some of these have finally (11) ..... to take the problem more seriously by issuing health advice to passengers 'trapped' on their long-haul flights. They usually recommend (12) ..... the legs and feet regularly, and advise (13) ..... walks up and down the aisle at least once an hour. But, as any experienced traveller knows, the aisles on most planes are only just wide enough for the trolleys (14) ..... through. It is often impossible (15) ..... down the aisle (16) ..... to the toilets, let alone (17) ..... exercise.

The truth is that until we are all prepared to (18) ... paying rock-bottom prices for long distance travel, the airlines will have no incentive (19) ..... conditions. And a return to exclusive and expensive air travel is something nobody would (20) ..... advocating.

- O A finding B to find C to be found
- 1 A sitting B to sit C sit
- 2 A suggests B admits C claims
- 3 A appearing B to appear C having appeared
- 4 A being B to be C be
- 5 A increasing B of increasing C to increase
- 6 A putting up with B put up with C to put up with
- 7 A stretching B to stretch C stretch
- 8 A begins B risks C can't help
- 9 A occurring B to occur C occur

- 10 A promoting B to promote C to be promoted
- 11 A suggested B considered C started
- 12 A moving B to move C move
- 13 A taking B to take C take
- 14 A getting B to get C get
- 15 A walking B to walk C walk
- 16 A getting B to get C get
- 17 A taking B to take C take
- 18 A give up B fail C refuse
- 19 A improving B to improve C improve
- 20 A undertake B choose



Complete the letter with suitable forms of words from the box below. The first one has been done as an example (0).

ask attend be bring buy cash cook fill in find join know learn live Jet make open say see take wonder write

Dear Mum and Dad,

So my first week at university is ever! No lectures this morning so I thought I'd drop you a line (0).. to let you know now things are going.

I'm glad (1) ..... that everything has worked out fine in the hall of residence. I remembered (2) ... for a room as far away from the lifts as possible (they really are noisy) and they found me a nice comfortable one on the second floor. The room's not very large and I was a bit snocked (3) ... that ten people have to share one bathroom. And it's a good thing you recommended (4) ... my own portable TV set from home as the one in the TV lounge is permanently tuned to the sports channel. There's also a little kitchenette on our corridor, so if I feel like (5) ... something for myself rather than eating in the canteen then that's no problem.

I think (6). In a place like this is going to be a lot of fun. There are two other girls from my course here and I plan (7) friends with them so that we can help each other with the course work. Everyone else seems very nice.

As Monday was the first day it was devoted to administration, which involved (8) ... lots of forms. I got my student I D. card and the timetable for this term. I've got a personal tutor and he's arranged (9) . . . me next week. The course coordinator persuaded mc (10) some extra courses which should be interesting. On Tuesday I managed (11) ... a bank account and I deposited my student ican chaque. I tried (12) . . . . the cheque but the bank said I will have to wait for it to clear. So I'll have to delay (13) ... books and things until next week.

My first few lectures proved (14) really fascinating. The lecturers really seem (15) what they are talking about. Still, there's a lot of work to do and I can't nelp (16) F I'll be able to keep up with it all, especially with all the distractions here. There are so many clubs and societies, it's incredible. I'm noping (17) . . . the parachuting club, I've always fancied (18) .......... how to do that!

Well, I'd better stop now, I'm going (19) . my first seminar this afternoon, so I've got some preparation to do.

Anyway, I promise (20) ...... again soon, love to everyone, Charlotte



# Participle and infinitive phrases

Participle phrases (e.g. having some time to kill) can be used in sentences to give extra information or to describe the result, cause or time of the information in the main clause. Extra information phrases are similar to relative clauses ( Unit 31). Infinitive phrases (e.g. to make the best of it) are used to talk about purpose and in a similar way to relative clauses, after superlatives and other expressions. (For information on the use of infinitives and -ing forms after verbs, nouns, etc. Dunit 12)



### PARTICIPLE PHRASES – FORM AND USE

13.1A There are several participle forms which we can use to make phrases-

Active and passive participles

	active participle	passive participle
simple	XXXX	(not) repaired
continuous	(not) repairing	(not) being repaired
perfect	(not) having repaired	(not) having been repaired

Participle phrases have active and passive forms but they do not have a tense. Their time reference is usually clear from the verb in the main clause:

Not having a ticket, I won't be able to go to the concert tomorrow (present future)

Not having a ticket, I wasn't able to go to the concert yesterday (past) In participle phrases, the active participle (ing form) has an active meaning (see example above) and the passive participle lied form) has a passive meaning

They haven't identified the body which was found in the Thames.

They haven't identified the body found in the Thames (passive participle phrase)

- We can't usually use modal verbs in participle phrases:
  - x The questions must be answered are not easy ones.
  - ✓ The questions which must be answered are not easy ones.

Verbs which are not normally used in the continuous leigible, own, possess ( 1 3). can be used in participle phrases:

x Yolanda is rich and is owning six homes ✓ Yolanda is rich, owning six homes

subjects

13.1B In many cases, participle phrases do not contain a subject. The subject of the main Participle clause (in **bold** below) usually acts as the subject of the participle phrase-

Moaning with pain, the victim was examined by a young doctor (- The victim was moaning)

If the participle phrase follows the object of the main clause then either the object or the subject of the main clause (in **bold** below) can be the subject of the participle phrase, depending on the meaning

We saw her plane coming in to land. (= The plane was coming in to land.)

The company has opened a new factory creating many new jobs (- The company has created many new jobs.)

- A participle phrase at the beginning of a sentence cannot refer to the object of the main clause
  - x Moaning with pain, a young doctor examined the victim.

(= A young doctor was moaning, not the victim.)

Different subjects

13.1C In formal (usually written) English, participle phrases can have a subject which is not the same as the subject of the main clause

Horns locked, the two stags struggle for mastery

I crouched in the alleyway, my eyes straining in the darkness.

### TYPES OF PARTICIPLE PHRASE

13.2A Defining phrases

Participle phrases are an efficient way of giving more information about a noun and can often replace a defining relative clause (\$ 31.1C). Compare these examples

The man is very noisy. The man lives upstairs

- The man who lives upstairs is very noisy (defining relative clause)
- → The man living upstairs is very noisy. (active participle phrase) The portrait was lovely The portrait was painted by my brother.
- The portrait which was painted by my brother was lovely (defining relative clause)
- The portrait painted by my brother was lovely (passive participle phrase).

We can only use a participle phrase to replace a defining relative clause if the subject of the main clause and the relative clause is the same. We cannot use a participle phrase if there is another subject between the relative pronoun and the verb

- \* The house living in is over a century old
- ✓ The house which we live in is over a century old.
- X The man engaged to has disappeared
- The man who Trudy was engaged to has disappeared.

In defining phrases, we only use an active participle phrase (ing form) when we are describing a continuing action or situation. We can't use an -ing form for a single completed action:

- X The thief taking her bag has been arrested
- ✓ The thief who took her bag has been arrested (single completed action).

13.2B Participle phrases can often operate like clauses of reason condition, result and time

Phrases of reason,		full clause	participle phrase
condition and result	reason	She will be unable to answer your queries because she is not qualified.	Not being qualified, she will be unable to answer your queries.
4.7 4.1 1.0 3.00 7.0		<b>As I hadn't been asked</b> , I didn't really want to interfere.	Not having been asked, I didn't really want to interfere
	condition	If you treat it gently, the fabric should last for years.	Treated gently, the fabric should last for years.
	result	The corporation shut down the plant, with the result that many workers were left unemployed.	The corporation shut down the plant, leaving many workers unemployed.
	time	As we turned the corner we saw the	Turning the corner, we saw the

Note that the result is often not intended: I stayed at work rather late, missing my last train home

(► 13.2C) hospital in front of us.

Time phrases

13.2C We usually use *ing* participle phrases when two actions nappen at the same time, or one happens immediately after the other. The -ing participle usually describes the background or earlier action. This is similar to the use of the continuous aspect for actions in progress (> 1.28) and background situations (> 2.28):

hospital in front of us.

**Leaving the motorway**, we noticed an overturned truck on the verge.

(= As/When we were leaving the motorway, we noticed ...)

Switching off the lights, I turned over and buried my head in the pillow (~ After \ switched off the lights, I turned over ...]

In written English an *-ing* participle phrase often describes the setting or background situation:

Living in Los Angeles, Brad was one of those ever optimistic movie wannabes

• When we want to emphasise that one thing happened before another, we can use a perfect participle for the earlier action. The participle phrase can come before or after the main clause:

Having passed my driving test, I was able to buy my first car (= After I had passed my driving test, ...)

I was able to buy my first car, having passed my driving test.

The perfect participle can also describe reasons or causes as these usually come before a result (> 13.2B above).

Having forgotten to take my keys. I had to borrow a set from my landlord (= Because I had forgotten my keys, ...)

### 15.3

### INFINITIVE PHRASES - FORM AND USE

13.3A We can use the following forms of the verb in infinitive phrases:

Active and passive infinitives

	active infinitive	passive infinitive						
simple	(not) to mend	(not) to be mended						
continuous	(not) to be mending	(not) to be being mended						
perfect	(not) to have mended	(not) to have been broken						

Infinitive phrases can be active or passive but they do not show tense. The time reference is shown by the context or by the tense of the verb in the main clause. The tax bill will be the first item to be debated in the next parliament. (future). Their proposal was the first one to be debated at yesterday's planning meeting (past).

But we can use the perfect infinitive for an event that happened before the main clause:

**Not to have acted** sooner is his greatest regret (= He regrets he dign't act sooner) Her greatest claim to fame is **to have been chosen** for the last Olympic squad (= She is famous now because she was chosen.)

13.3B

13.3B An infinitive phrase can act as the subject or complement of the verb be:

Subjects and complements

To reach the top is their aim.

Their aim is to reach the top.

- We use for with an infinitive phrase if the subject of the infinitive is not the same as the subject of the sentence:
  - \* Their aim is the team to win
  - ✓ Their aim is for the team to win

An infinitive phrase can be the subject or complement of a sentence:

To find her so distressed took him by surprise.

They struggled to keep up their standard of living

Sentences with an infinitive phrase as their subject can sound rather formal. We usually prefer impersonal it ( $\triangleright$  33.2) or an -ing form ( $\triangleright$  12.1):

It is difficult to keep up a friendship.

Keeping up a friendship is difficult.



#### TYPES OF INFINITIVE PHRASE

phrases

13.4A We can often replace a relative clause after a superlative lan ordinal number (e.g. first), Defining or one, next, last and only, with an infinitive phrase-

The **youngest** person that entered the programme was just fourteen

→ The youngest person to enter the programme was just fourteen.

The window seat is usually the first one which is taken

→ The window seat is usually the first one to be taken.

Linda was the only one who stayed for the whole performance.

→ Linda was the only one to stay for the whole performance.

• We usually don't use an infinitive phrase to replace relative clauses containing modal. verbs, because the meaning would not be clear:

\* He's the only player to save the team from defeat.

✓ He's the only player who might save the team from defeat.

13.4B We often use an infinitive phrase to describe a deliberate purpose or aim. This is the Purpose and infinitive of purpose (> 12.2B)

result

Davy took a year out to see the world and broaden his experience of life phrases. We can use an infinitive phrase to describe discovering something unexpected especially with only (> 12.2B)

He returned to the field to find the army in retreat.

Eliza rejoined her friends, only to discover that Mr Darcy had left (For infinitives after verbs ▶ 12.3B, after nouns and adjectives ▶ 12.2C.)



#### USES IN DISCOURSE

phrases

13.5A. We somet mes use infinitive and participle phrases to add a comment to something we Comment are saying-

I'm not very keen on it, to tell the truth

Generally speaking, they're a pretty friendly bunch of people.

It wasn't a bad show, all things considered

We can use an adverb to modify a participle. This describes the particular aspect of something which we are commenting on. The adverbican come before or after the participle:

Financially speaking, few of the dot com companies have a good track record Compromised artistically, Picasso felt compelled to leave Paris.

Note that we can use adverbs in the same way with adjectives (► 24.4A):

Although economically successful, the government is starting to lose popularity

13.5B In written English, it is usual to move from the familiar (the current topic) to the new Style (the information principle 36.1A) and to be economical with words and avoid repetition ( 35.1A) Participe and infinitive phrases help us to do these things Compare these examples:

> Steve went home. He noticed a piece of paper which had been left on the doorstep as he walked towards the door.

 Steve went nome Walking towards the door he noticed a piece of paper left on the doorstep.

Because Marion didn't have a degree she was the only one who wasn't offered a permanent contract.

· Not having a degree. Marion was the only one not to be offered a permanent contract.

# Practice

### 13.4

Choose the best participle forms (A-G) to fit into the sentences. One of the forms is not needed.

A giving B not having been given C not giving D having been given
E being given F having given G given

- 1 The best part to another actor, Josh felt unwling to continue his involvement in the show
- 2 I've always treasured the watch ..... to me on my eighteenth birthday.
- 3 The police officers stood at either end of the hallway. Ray no chance of escape
- 4 . our tickets to the attendant, we were ushered into the antechamber of the tomb
- 5 We are dividing up the grant according to need, the largest amount to the homeless
- 6 the mandatory month's notice by the andiord the tenant was able to stay on in the house

### 13.1, 13.2

Rewrite the following sentences, replacing the underlined phrase with a suitable participle phrase.

- O As they nadn't been arrested they were able to leave the police station Not having been arrested, they were able to leave the 20 we station
- 1 She fell asleep while she sat in the armchair.
- 2 Because I can speak Finnish I was able to follow their conversation
- 3 My brotner, who has spit up with his wife, wants to move in with me
- 4 So far nobody has claimed the money we discovered under the floorboards
- 5 After ne had moved out Danny found it difficult to find a nice place to stay
- 6 If you eave it for too long or paint will form a skin
- 7 The sea was very rough, which made me fee sick
- 8 As I am not very good with figures I'll let you do the accounts
- 9 This is a house which has been built to last forever
- 10 Provided you wash it at a coo temperature this garment will not shrink
- 11 People who play loud music late at night can be a real nuisance
- 12 Because he had been unemployed for so long, Jack despaired of ever finding a job
- 13 If you give them enough time, the engineers will be able to find the fault.
- 14 The people who lived closest to the river bank were the worst affected
- 15 Due to the fact that I hadn't registered. I was unable to vote in last week's election



Seven of these sentences have mistakes – either an unnecessary extra word or a missing word. Tick  $[\checkmark]$  the correct sentences and correct those with mistakes.

- 1 Study medicine at university you need to pass a biology exam.
- 2 I don't think much of him, be honest with you.
- 3 That was the very first programme to be shown on the new channel.
- 4 We don't want to be the last ones to leave.
- 5 It isn't necessary to be being rich to be happy.
- 6 I was the first one in my family to have been gone to university.
- 7 I'm afraid you aren't the first person to mugged in this neighbourhood.
- 8 She joined the Navy to see the world.
- 9 It's a shame not have seen the fireworks.
- 10 The 'Royale' is the latest fabric to have designed by Silvio Moresco.



### 13 L ILL

The famous quotations (1-5) are missing infinitive phrases. Match the infinitive forms (A-F) in the box to complete the quotations correctly.

1	'To err is human,, divine.' (Alexander Pope)	Α	to have loved
2	'One should eat, not live to eat.' (Molière)	В	to look natural
3	'It is better and lost than never to have loved at al (Samuel Butler)	C	to live
4	'To be, or: that is the question.' (William Shakespeare)	E	to forgive
5	'The best thing is , but it takes make-up to look natura (Calvin Klein)	F	not to be

### 0 14.1-15.4

Use the information in the table to write sentences, inserting an infinitive or a participle phrase. Some sentences can be written in more than one way. The first two have been done as examples.

	action/reason	aim/result/further information
0	The value of the currency fell, making fores	It made foreign holidays more expensive.  gn holidays more expensive.
00	Hilary got a job in a café, Hilary was able to w	She was able to make lots of new friends wake lots of new friends
1	Carlos joined a dating agency.	He wanted to find a girlfriend.
2	I left my keys at the office.	I couldn't get into my flat last night.
3	Manuela hasn't got a visa.	She can't travel to the USA.
4	My nephew emigrated to Australia.	He wanted to start a new life.
5	A new dam was built across the river.	It flooded thousands of hectares of farmland.
6	The old house had been restored by experts	It regained its former glory
7	I wasn't very fit.	I was unable to finish the marathon.
8	Dave and Maria's children had left home	They felt they should move to a smaller house
9	They got home early.	They found the place had been burgled.
10	Only one person stayed behind.	It was the caretaker.

### 13 6 ALL

Use infinitive and/or participle phrases to rewrite this extract from a TV listings magazine in a more natural way. The parts you need to change are underlined. You may need to change the order of some words. The first phrase has been done for you.

# Movie of the week The Godfather

It dates from 1971 and was directed by Francis
Ford Coppola, The Godfather won three Oscars.

The film lasts almost three hours and is Shakespearean in its scope and ambition. It is the story of a New York mafia family which is headed by Marlon Brando as 'the Godfather'.

Although Brando has the title role it is Al Pacino, who plays his troubled son and heir Michael, who steals the show in a masterly performance. As he struggles to reconcile his distaste for crime and brutality with his sense of family honour and duty, Pacino's character embodies the moral dilemma at the heart of the movie.



The director intersperses long scenes of family life with shorter sequences of extreme violence in order to achieve his aim of taking the audience on an emotional rollercoaster ride. Because it was shot in explicit detail, this violence may shock some viewers. But anyone who is prepared to put up with this will enjoy a unique dramatic experience. In fact, for many people *The Godfather* is the greatest American film which had been made in the 1970s.

Dating from 1971



Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. You must use between three and eight words, including the word given. This word must not be altered in any way. There is an example (0).

to Gary is usually . the first person to write in the office in the mornings
Martin is always a great asset at any party because he is so charming.  being
I took a short computing course following my graduation from college.  having
Ce ia's major regret is that she had never made more of her musical abilities to
As she threw open the French windows Mary said. There's nothing like fresh air!' throwing 'There's nothing like fresh air!' the French windows.
The company launched an advertising campaign with the aim of increasing its market share  to The company its market share
Finding the old house in such a derelict state came as a great shock.  find It came as in such a derelict state
Frankly, I don't think my clients will ever agree to those prices.  frank  I don't think my clients will ever agree
The shrubs should grow well if you plant them in a sunny spot.  planted should grow well
They will probably sell the ground floor flat first.  be They expect the ground floor flat
My brother is having a lot of trouble finding a decent job as he hasn't had the benefit of a college education.  having a college education, my brother is having a lot of trouble finding a job.
Sophie was a demanding boss because she was such a perfectionist.  being
The town hall was one of the few buildings that wasn't destroyed in the earthquake  been The town hall was one of the few

# Multi-word verbs

A common feature of English is the combination of verbs with prepositions and/or adverbs to create multi-word verbs, e.g. to put off, to put out, to put up with. These verbs can be difficult for learners because the meanings often cannot be worked out from the individual words, and there are special rules about the position of objects with these verbs. We sometimes refer to all multi-word verbs as 'phrasal verbs', although there are several different types. (For verbs with dependent prepositions. Unit 15.)



### FORM AND USE

14.1A Multi-word verbs are formed from a verb, e.g. grow plus an adverbial particle, e.g. Overview away, back, out, or a prepositional particle e.g. on off, up. There are four types of multi-word verb and each type has different rules for example about the use or position of the object:

Type 1 (► 14.2A)	intransitive phrasal verbs, e.g. take off.  The plane took off very late. (There is no object.)
Type 2 ( 14 28)	transitive phrasal verbs, e.g. put something off: We're putting the party off/putting off the party because of the awful weather (The noun object can go before or after the particle.)
Type 3 (= 14 3)	prepositional verbs, e.g. cope with something: How does she cope with all those kids? (The object goes after the particle.)
Type 4 ( 144)	phrasal-prepositional verbs, e.g. look forward to something.  They re looking forward to the holidays (The object goes after the particles)

Learner dictionaries indicate which type a verb is by showing a noun object with the verb:

> put sb/sth off phr v [T] to arrange to do something at a later time or date, especially because there is a problem, difficulty etc: They've put the meeting off till next week.

Multi-word verbs form tenses, and are used in questions and negatives and in the passive voice, in the same way as other verbs:

Will you be putting the party off? (future continuous question)

The party has been put off until next month. (present perfect passive)

We never separate the verb and particle in the passive form:

X That story was made by a resentful employee up.

✓ That story was made up by a resentful employee.

We can sometimes form nouns from multi-word verbs. (= 25.5A)

The car **broke down** five kilometres from home. (multi-word verb)

The **breakdown** happened five kilometres from home. (noun)

In some cases the order of the verb and particle is reversed in the noun derived from them:

The epidemic first broke out in Namibia. (multi-word verb) The first outbreak of the epidemic was in Zaire. (noun)

informal use

14 1B Where a multi-word verb has no exact synonym, e.g. grow up, we can use it in formal Formal and and informal contexts. However, when there is a single verb with an equivalent meaning, e.g. think about (- consider), the multi-word verb tends to be used in informal contexts while the single verb is more formal. Compare these examples:

[The bank will **think about** your application in due course.] The bank will **consider** your application in due course. (formal) [Honestly, how can you consider money at a time like this!] Honestly, how can you think about money at a time like this! (informal)

14.10 It is sometimes possible to get an idea of the meaning of a multi-word verb from its Meaning particle, because some particles are associated with areas of meaning, for example

on - starting/continuing/progressing, e.g. carry on, take on, get on

out - thoroughness, e.g. work out, see out, mark out

up - completion/finality, e.g. give up, break up, eat up

• However these areas of meaning can be abstract and may not cover all cases.



### PHRASAL VERBS

verbs

14.2A Intransitive phrasa, verbs (type 1 14.1A) consist of a verb plus an adverb. Phrasal Intransitive—verbs usually have a meaning which is different from the meaning of the separate parts **Getting by on my salary isn't easy!** (= managing)

Rollerblading never really caught on in England. (= became popular)

As intransitive phrasal verbs have no direct object, they cannot be made passive

X My car broke down the engine. ✓ My car broke down.

Intransitive phrasal verbs are sometimes used in imperatives:

Watch out. That floor's not very solid.

Come on! I can't wait all day!

verbs

14.2B Trans tive phrasal verbs (type 2 14.1A) consist of a verb + adverb and have a direct Transitive object (either a pronoun or a noun):

It isn't true, I made it up. I made up that story

If the object is a noun, it can either be between the verb and particle, or after the particle:

I made a story up. I made up a story.

If the object is a pronoun, we put it between the verb and particle, but not after the particle:

🗶 l made up it. 🗸 l made it up.

- We can't put an adverb between the verb and particle or between the particle. and object:
  - \* I paid early back the loan.
  - X I paid back early the loan.
  - ✓ I paid the loan back early.
- We can't put a relative pronoun immediately before or after the particle.
  - \* That's the room which up I did
  - X That's the room up which I did
  - ✓ That's the room which I did up.

Some phrasal verbs have a trans tive use with one meaning, and an intransitive use with a different meaning. Compare:

The plane took off on time. (take off, intransitive = become airborne)

The man took off his coat. (take something off, transitive = remove)



### PREPOSITIONAL VERBS

14.3A Form and use Prepositional verbs (type 3 > 14.1A) consist of a verb, e.g. look, plus a preposition, e.g. into, at, for. The combination of the verb and preposition creates a new meaning which can somet mes, but not a ways, be worked out from the parts:

She looked for her missing passport. (= searched, tried to find)

Would you mind looking into his complaint? (= investigating, researching) These verbs are transitive. We put the noun or pronoun object after the preposition. and not between the verb and preposition (compare with phrasal verbs 14 2B)

- \* We didn't fall his story for. \* We didn't fall it for.
- ✓ We didn't fall for it/his story

With prepositional verbs (but not phrasal verbs 14.2B above) we can put an adverb between the verb and preposition. But we cannot put an adverb between the preposition and object:

- X She parted with reluctantly her money
- ✓ She parted reluctantly with her money.

14.3B Special uses In formal English we sometimes prefer to avoid a preposition at the end of a sentence With prepositional verbs (but not phrasal verbs 14.2B above) we can put the preposition in front of the relative pronouns whom or which:

These are the principles (which) our party stands for.

- → These are the principles for which our party stands
- That's the type of client (whom) I'm dealing with.
- → That's the type of client with whom I'm dealing
- But we cannot put the preposition after whom or which.
  - \* These are the principles which for our party stands

Some prepositional verbs are mainly used in the passive form ( 145C), especially in written English:

The marketing strategy is aimed at a target audience of 18 to 25 year olds



### PHRASAL-PREPOSITIONAL VERBS

Form and use

14.4A These verbs (type 4 14.1A) are formed by combining a verb with an adverb and preposition. The combination creates a new meaning which cannot usually be understood from the meanings of the individual parts:

We look forward to hearing from you. (= anticipate with pleasure)

They are transitive and can be made passive:

All her employees looked up to her. (active)

She was looked up to by all her employees. (passive)

We can never use a noun or pronoun object between the particles

X I can't put up this treatment/it with any longer.

We cannot usually put a noun or pronoun object immediately after the verb:

- X I can't put this treatment (it up with any longer.
- ✓ I can't put up with this treatment/it any longer.

The exception is when the verb has two objects le gillet somebody in an something, take somebody up on something:

We let James in on the plan. We took her up on her offer.

- We cannot put an adverb before the first part de or after the final particle, but we can use an adverb between the two particles:
  - X He stands strongly up for his principles. (verb + adverb + particle)
  - X He stands up for strongly his principles (particle + particle + adverb)
  - ✓ He stands up strongly for his principles. (particle + adverb+ particle)



### WORD LIST: COMMON MULTI-WORD VERBS

These tables include a limulti-word verbs which occur at least ten times per million words in the Longman Corpus Network (Below sb = somebody and sth = something)

### 14.5A Type 1: intransitive phrasal verbs (► 14.2A).

break down ( - stop working) catch on (= understand become popular), come back (= return), come in, come on, fall out (= quarrel), fall through, fit in, get by (= manage.cope), get up go away go on (= cont nue) go out, grow up look out, pass out (= faint), shut up, sit down, stand up, stay on (= remain), take off, turn up (= arrive), wake up, watch out

### 14.5B Type 2: transitive phrasal verbs (▶ 14.2B):

act sth out ( perform/demonstrate) bottle sth up (= not allow a feeling to show), bring sth in (= introduce), bring sb up ( rear), bring sth up (= mention sth introduce a topic), carry sth out (= perform/undertake) do sth up ( restore redecorate), fill sth in/out (= complete in writing), find sth out ( discover) fix sth up (= arrange) give sth away (= reveal), give sth up (= stop), hold sth up (= delay), keep sth up (= maintain), leave sth/sb out, let sth out (= release) look sth up make sth up (= invent), pay sb back pick sth up (= collect) point sth out (= nighi ght explain) pull sth/sb down (= demolish, demote) put sth away, put sth off ( postpone) put sth on put sb up (= accommodate) run sb down ( criticise), set sth up (= estab sh implement/organise) take sth over, take sth up, throw sth away, turn sth/sb down (= refuse), turn sth/sb out

### 14.5C Type 3: prepositional verbs (► 14.3A, B)

call for sb, care for sb, come across sth (= encounter), cope with sth, deal with sth (= manage handle), fall for sth (= be tricked) feel like sth get at sb/sth, get over sth (= recover from) get through (= fin sh successfully) go into sth, go with sth (= match) lead to sth look after sb/sth, look at sth (= observe) look into sth (= investigate) look like sth (= resemble), look round sth (= v sit etc.) part with sth, pay for sth, rely on sth/sb run into sb (= meet by chance) see to sth (= organ sermanage), send for sb, stand for sth (= represent mean tolerate), stick to sth (= persevere follow), take after sb, talk about sth, think about sth (= consider)

The following prepositional verbs are usually used in the passive be aimed at (= intended for), be applied to, be considered as, be derived from, be known as, be regarded as, be used as, be used in

#### 14.5D Type 4: phrasal-prepositional verbs (► 14.4A):

back out of sth, break in on sth catch up on sthisb catch up with sb check up on sthisb, come across as sth (= appear to be) come down to sth (= be essentially), come up with sth (= invent), cut down on sth (= reduce), do away with sth, drop in on sb, face up to sth (= confront), get away with sth get back to sth (= return), get down to sth, get on with sth, get out of sth give in to sth, go out for sth go up to sb (= approach) keep away from sb/sth (= avoid) keep up with sb look down on sb look forward to sth (= anticipate), look out for sb/sth, look up to sb (= admire respect) make away with sth, move on to sth, put up with sth/sb (= tolerate), run away with sb run off with sth, stand up for sth (= defend), turn away from sth, walk out on sth/sb

The following phrasal-prepositional verbs are usually used in the passive: be cut off from, be made up of, be set out in

Tres reput it off antil Friday



Underline the most suitable verb in italics in each of these sentences.

- 1 Don't stop now Liz Continue/Go on, I'm dying to hear the end of the story!
- 2 In a bid to improve diplomatic relations, the Foreign Office has arrangedifixed up a visit by senior embassy staff.
- 3 The court sentences you to life imprisonment, with the recommendation that you not be released/let out for a minimum period of twenty years.
- 4 Owing to a lack of military support, the United Nations feels unable to maintain/keep up its presence in the war-torn province.
- 5 I don't think your dad trusts me he's always observing/looking at me.
- 6 You've got to make an effort, darling You'll never lose weight unless you reduce/cut down on the amount of fatty food you eat.
- 7 The government have announced plans to abolish do away with the disabled person's vehicle allowance in the next budget.
- 8 My little brother's always getting bullied at school. He just won't confrontiface up to the other kids
- 9 The presidential party will arrive/turn up at the palace shortly before function
- 10 My best friend always exaggerates half the things he says are just invented/made up1

### 0 14.2, 14.3

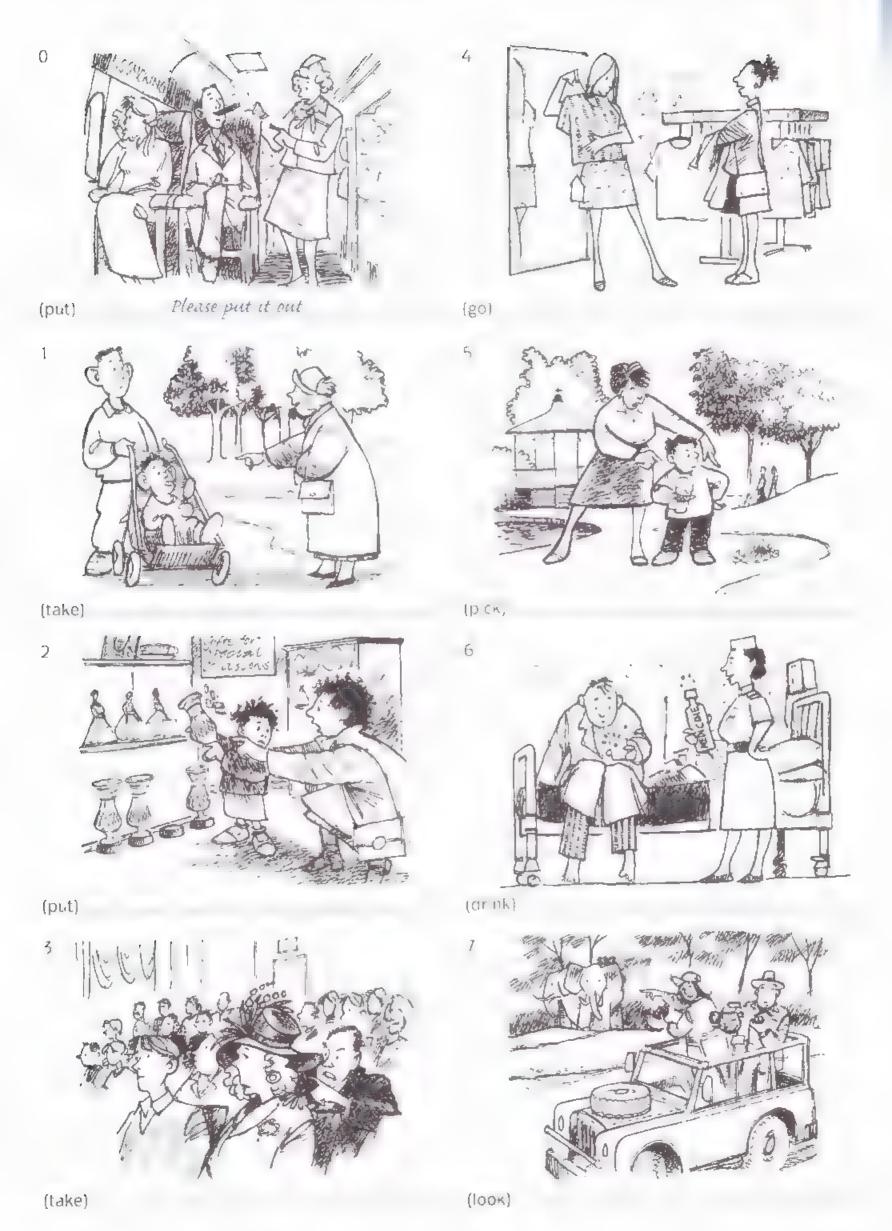
Rewrite these sentences using an appropriate multi-word verb. You must use a pronoun (it, him, her, them) to replace the <u>underlined</u> object. In some cases you may have to change the word order. The exercise begins with an example (0).

- O They've postponed the housewarming party until Friday.
- 1 Would you mind organising the removal yourself?
- 2 I met <u>Steve and Terri</u> quite by chance at the supermarket this morning.
- 3 I've arranged the meeting for ten o'clock tomorrow.
- 4 You're always criticising your colleagues.
- 5 I'm sure the police will investigate the burglary
- 6 The builders undertook the job very professionally.
- 7 Could you collect the children from school tonight?
- 8 Has Perry recovered from the flu yet?
- 9 She really resembles her parents, doesn't she?
- 10 Would you highlight the advantages for me?

### 14.2, 14.3

What are the people saying in the pictures on the next page? Write a short sentence for each situation using multi-word verbs and a suitable pronoun (it, them, you, etc.). All the multi-word verbs you need can be formed from the verbs in brackets and the particles in the box. The first one has been done as an example (0).

PARTICLES: after at down off \_out up (x2) with



### Rewrite the parts of the sentences in brackets with the words in the correct order Fort put it off antil tomorrow

- O Don't (tomorrow/put/until/off/it); do it now.
- 1 Thanks for the invitation; (looking/to/l'm/it/forward).
- 2 The evil witch (frog/prince/the/into/turned/handsome/a).
- 3 I won't have any sugar thank you; (it/l've/up/given)
- 4 There isn't a death penalty any longer; {away/they've/it/ done/with).
- 5 He's the footballer (million/a/team/manager/for/the/paid/ whom/dollars).
- 6 I have a small trust fund; (by/it/my/was/set/grandfather/up).

### ALL

Read the magazine article below. Then use the information in the text to complete the informal summary on the next page. Use no more than three words for each gap (1-18), including the word in brackets. The words you need are all multi-word verbs and do not occur in the newspaper article. The exercise begins with an example (0).

# When anger is healthy

Everyone knows that not allowing oneself to show feelings of anger and resentment can be very unhealthy, leading to stress and long-term feelings of inadequacy and powerlessness. But how do we release our anger without looking foolish or petulant?

The first thing to learn is that expressing your anger and losing your temper are not the same thing at all. One is natural and healthy, the other is destructive and dangerous. We usually admire those who can express their anger calmly, and see them as 'firm but fair' or mature and self-confident. While those who lose their temper appear to be immature, childish, selfish and aggressive.

Mandy Dickson is a psychologist who has established a successful one-day anger workshop that helps ordinary people to learn about and manage their anger. The seminar is not intended for criminals or the mentally ill, but for those ordinary people who feel powerless to control their own tempers.

The first thing Mandy explains is that anger is a natural and normal feeling, and that feeling angry about something is nothing to be ashamed of. But we need to recognise anger when we feel it, and to investigate its true

causes. Once we know the real cause of anger we can confront it and begin to do something positive about it. Mandy asks participants to complete a questionnaire about things that make them angry. By comparing these 'triggers' people often discover that the true causes of anger are other feelings, especially fear, disappointment and grief. But because it is not socially acceptable in our culture to openly demonstrate these feelings, we express them as anger. This is particularly true for men who, even in these enlightened times, are expected to hide any feelings of inadequacy or fear and be strong and stoical in all situations.

Having recognised the causes of anger, the first step is to learn how to avoid anger-inducing situations. The next step is to learn how to express one's feelings calmly and firmly. Mandy believes that when we are angry we want other people to understand our anger and sympathise with it. But we often fall into the trap of expressing anger by criticising those around us, when what we really want is their support and empathy. One of the most common causes of anger is when other people fail to behave in a way you expect them to. But as Mandy explains, human beings are not telepathic, they cannot be expected to automatically anticipate other people's desires and wishes. So an essential tool in reducing the occurrence of anger-inducing situations is to always explain exactly what you want and expect from those around you. It is all essentially a question of communication.

We know (0) bottling up (bott e) anger can be unhealthy. But now do we (1) (let) our anger without seeming foolish? Expressing anger and osing your temper are different things. One is healthy, the other dangerous. We (2) (look) people who express anger cannelly, but those who lose their temper (3) .................. (come) immature and aggressive.

Mandy Dickson has (4) (set) a one-day anger workshop which he ps people learn about and (5) (deal) their anger. It is (6) (alm) ordinary people who don't feel able to control their tempers. She (7) (point) that anger is natural and nothing to be ashamed of, but we should recogn selit and (8) (look) its true causes. Then we can (9) (face) it and begin to do something positive. Participants (10) (fill) a questionnaire about things that make them angry. They compare their responses and often (11) (find) that the causes are other feelings such as fear or grief. But in our culture it is not acceptable to (12) (act) these feelings in public. Men in particular are supposed to (13) (cover) these feelings.

### 5 ALL

Rewrite John's half of this unnatural telephone conversation in a more natural, informal style. Use the multi-word verbs in the box to replace the underlined verbs and phrases. Replace nouns with pronouns where possible and make any other necessary changes, as in this example:

io in [0] the list demol shed the conservatory

I ve just pulsed it down

do sth up put up with sb stay up get on with sb put sb up turn sth into sth look down on sb put sth up take sth off look forward to sth sit down take sth up finish sth off sort sth out turn sth down pull sth down

DAVE John, it's Dave. How are things?

JOHN Sorry I can't hear you (1) I I just reduce the volume on the radio. That's better

DAVE How are things? Still working on the house?

Yes (2) We ve completed the work on the kitchen and (3) we're renovating the dining room (4) We re transforming the room into a second bedroom (5) I ve just mounted the wallpaper but I ve been having trouble getting it (6) to remain vertically attached

DAVE I know what you mean. I hate wallpapering.

IOHN (7) And it's all got to be organised and ready by Saturday Jane's mother is coming and we're (8) providing accommodation for her for a few days.

DAVE I thought you didn't like her

OHN (9) We don't interact in a friendly way with each other but (10) I can tolerate her for a few days

DAVE Why do you dislike her so much?

(11) I'm sure she regards me as infer or to her. And she's so lazy. I mean she comes in (12) removes her coat, (13) assumes a seated position and expects us to wait on her hand and foot!

DAVE I see what you mean. Sounds like a nightmare.

10нд (14) Mm | think | might commence gardening as a hobby - just to get me out of the house!

DAVE Good idea. Well dibetter let you get on. And don't forget about our party on Friday

JOHN (15) Of course not, I'm anticipating the party with pleasure

# 15

# Dependent prepositions

In English there are many words which are used with particular prepositions. Because the choice of preposition depends on the word and meaning, the prepositions we use are called dependent prepositions. For example, we accuse someone of a crime, we don't accuse someone at a crime, by a crime or for a crime.

There are many verbs which combine with particular prepositions. Some of these are 'prepositional verbs' (e.g. quarrel with someone) and are explained in detail in Unit 14. Other verbs follow different patterns (e.g. accuse someone of a crime) which are explained here. There are also many nouns and adjectives which are followed by particular prepositions. (For prepositions and prepositional phrases. Unit 29.)

### GENERAL RULES

15.1A Preposition + object Prepositions after verbs, nouns and adjectives aways have an object. The object can be a noun, pronoun or verb.

I apologised to my boss/her/the managing director.

I apologised for arriving late.

Note that to can be a preposition.

15.18 Preposition + -ing form If the object of a preposition is a verb, it must be an -ing form:

★ She succeeded in win the race. 

✓ She succeeded in winning the race.

① The ing form can have its own subject. It is is a noun phrase or an object pronoun I'm looking forward to my wife returning

Dad insisted on us apologising.

In forma. English we can use possessives rather than nouns or pronouns ( 26.1A, 27.1A).

The judge granted bail as she felt there was no risk of the defendant's absconding. The detective insisted on our leaving the crime scene.

15.1C Preposition

Many adjectives describing feelings and emotions can be followed by a preposition or to + infinitive (word list > 15.5D):

or *to* ← infinitive We were annoyed at finding our places taken. He's keen on learning archery. We were annoyed to find our places taken. He's keen to learn archery. Some verbs can also be followed by either a preposition or to + infinitive, but there may be a change of meaning.

They don't agree with the government's poincy (- They have a different opinion) I agreed to help him fill out the forms. (= I said that I was willing to ...)

(For verbs + -ingrinfin tive Unit 12 for part ciple and infinitive phrases Unit 13)

15.1D Preposition or that clause Many of the words which describe what we say think or feel are followed by a preposition + -ing form. Some of these words can also be followed by a that clause (For more information on these words ► 9.2A, 9.5B):

The judge **insisted on** the jury **disregarding** the doctor's testimony. The judge **insisted that** the jury **disregard** the doctor's testimony.

- () But prepositions cannot be followed by a that clause except with the express on the fact that:
  - x My parents disapproved of that my brother left school at sixteen
  - ✓ My parents disapproved of the fact that my brother left school at sixteen

15.1E We do not use if after prepositions, we use whether:

Preposition |

X I'm afraid I wasn't aware of if she was watching me or not.

+ whether

✓ I'm afraid I wasn't aware of whether she was watching me or not.



### VERB + PREPOSITION PATTERNS

verbs

15.2A Some verbs combine with a preposition either to create a new meaning or to link a Prepositional verb with an object. These verbs are called prepositional verbs (> 14.3A).

They decided to look into the problem. (= to investigate it)

Tamsin complained about the bill.

She **apologised for** her outburst.

Some prepositional verbs also use an extra preposition before an indirect object, e.g. to the manager (word list 15.5A). Most of these are reporting verbs ( 9.5A).

Tamsin complained to the manager about the bill.

She apologised to the committee for her outburst.

Verb + object + preposition

15.2B We use object + preposition + ing form after particular verbs to link the verb with the person it affects and the action which is connected to it (word list > 15.5B):

The police accused her of stealing

+ -ing form

His sense of duty prevented him from leaving

These verbs can be made passive.

She was accused of stealing (by the police).

He was prevented from leaving (by his sense of duty).

15.2C We can use direct object + preposition + indirect object after particular verbs to link Verb + d rect the verb with two objects:

object +

The tour guide discussed the day's schedule with us

preposition +

Henry explained it to me very slowly

indirect object. With some verbs we can change the order of the objects, but in this case different. prepositions are used (word list + 15.5B)

> I blame our schools for the poor standard of education (- b ame somebody for something)

> I blame the poor standard of education on our schools (= blame something on somebody)

The King of Sweden presented the physic st with the Nobel prize (- present somebody with something)

The King of Sweden presented the Nobel prize to the physicist (- present something to somebody)

These verbs can be made passive. But only the direct object (the one which...) immediately follows the active verb) can become the subject of the passive verb My teacher explained it to me. →

X I was explained it by my teacher 
✓ It was explained to me (by my teacher)

• Unlike some verbs used with two objects (e.g. give), with the above verbs we cannot omit the preposition:

He gave it to me. He gave me it.

✗ He explained me it. ✗ He explained it me. ✓ He explained it to me

X He discussed us it. ★ He discussed it us. ✓ He discussed it with us.



### **NOUN + PREPOSITION**

15.3A Where a noun is related to a prepositional verb, the noun often takes the same Noun/verb + preposition (> 15.5C):

preposition He succeeded in winning the Palme d'Or. (= to succeed in something)

We congratulated him on his **success in** winning the Paime d Or (= a success in something)

15.3B But some nouns followed by a preposition are related to verbs which do not take a Noun only + preposition (> 15.5C).

preposition The members had a

The members had a discussion about the subscription charges ( a discussion about something)

We discussed the subscription charges (= to discuss something)

\* We discussed about the subscription charges.

Here are examples of other verbs/nouns like this:

to demand something/a demand for something

to fear something/a fear of something

15.3C The preposition is usually followed by an *ina* form or no in But there are some Noun + noun + preposition forms which can only be followed by a noun. (\* 15.5C):

preposition + \*\* The court issued a demand for repaying of the debt

✓ The court issued a demand for repayment of the debt.

### 104

noun

### ADJECTIVE/PARTICIPLE + PREPOSITION

15.4A Where an adjective is related to a noun or verbiwing in takes a preposition, the adjective Adjective/ usually takes the same preposition (% 15.5D).

preposition | Lexpressed my gratitude for their assistance | Livas grateful for their assistance | preposition | We depend on his generosity. We are dependent on his generosity.

Adjective + Adjective and opin one have dependent prepositions

Adjective + My grandfather's very keen on trout fishing

Stockbrokers are becoming increasing y worried about the news from New York

① Some of these adjectives are formed from verb participles eight in passive sentences eight was really scared by that film ( 8 1A). Although these adjectives ook like participles, they work differently and cannot always be followed with by:

✗ I am scared by horror films.
 ✗ He is interested by philosophy.
 ✗ He is interested in philosophy.

15.4C In some cases the participle form takes different Preposition prepositions depending on the meaning, for

choice after example (\* 29.2D) participles made by (+ the per

made by (+ the person/company/process which produced it)

made for (+ its purpose)

made from (+ original material which has been transformed)

made of (+ original material which is still visible)



The wool in Arran jumpers is made by Scottish sheep



### WORD LIST, DEPENDENT PREPOSITION PATTERNS

(Below, sb = somebody and sth = something.)

#### 15.5A Prepositional verb + object + preposition + object (> 15.2A)

agree about sth with sb agree with sb aboutlover sth apologise to sb for sth complain about sth to sb complain to sb about sth

depend on sb/sth for sth disagree with sb about/over sth auarrel with sb about/over sth rely on sbisth for sth

#### 15.5B Verb + direct object + preposition + indirect object (► 15.2B)

(\* These verbs can also follow the pattern verb + direct object + preposition + ing form )

accuse sb of sth\* acquit sb of sth advise sb against sth\* advise sb of sth aim sth at sb arrest sb for sth\* beat sb at sth\* blame sb for sth\* blame sth on sb bother sb with sth compensate sb for sth\* congratulate sb for sth\* (US English) congratulate sb on sth\* convict sb of sth\* convince sb of sth criticise sb for sth

cure sb of sth

deprive sb of sth describe sth to sb discuss sth with sb explain sth to sb help sb with sth lend sth to sb make sth for sb persuade sb of sth praise sb for sth " present sb with sth present sth to sb prevent sb from -ing protect sb from sth provide sb with sth provide sth for sb reassure sb of sth release sb from sth rescue sb from sth

rid sb of sth rob sb of sth save sb/sth from sth starve sb of sth steal sth from sb stop sb from -ing strip sb of sth supply sb with sth supply sth for/to sb suspect sb of sth throw sth at sb (= in order to hit them) throw sth to sb (= in order for them to catch it) warn sb about/against sth\* welcome sb to sth

#### 15.5C Noun + preposition + noun/-ing form (► 15.3)

(\* These nouns can only follow the pattern: noun + preposition + noun.) effect of

advantage of/in aim of/in amazement at anger about/at annoyance about/at answer to\* anxiety about apology for attack on awareness of belief in boredom with craving for damage to\* danger of/in decrease of (+ quantity) decrease in\*

delay in delay of (+ duration) demand for\*

difficulty in

excitement about/at expense of fear of gratitude for hope of idea of increase in\* increase of (+ quantity) insistence on insurance against interest in 10b of lack of matter of matter with\* method of objection to pleasure of/in point of/in possibility of

problem of/in proof of prospect of/for purpose of/in question about/of reason for relationship with satisfaction with seauel to solution to\* success in surprise at task of taste for thought of wau of work of worry about

prelude to

### 15.5D Adjective + preposition (► 15.4)

(\* These adjectives can also be followed by to + infinitive.)

absent from accustomed to addicted to afraid\* of amazed at/bu angry, annoyed\*, furious\* at/about (+ the cause of this feeling) angry, annoyed, furious with (+ the person who caused this feeling) anxious about (= feel nervous/worried about sb/sth) anxious\* for (= waiting impatiently for sth) ashamed\* of astonished at/by available for (+ purpose) available to (+ person) aware of bod/good at (= ability) bad/good for (= effect on health) bad/good to (= behaviour towards/treatment of the object) based on bored with capable of characteristic of close to concerned about (= worried about) concerned with (= involved in) conducive to confident of content\* with contrary to convenient for conversant with crazy\* about crowded with curious\* about

deficient in

dependent on devoid of different to/from different than (US English) disqusted with/at eager\* for engaged\* in (= working in/involved in) engaged to (= promised to marry) excited\* about faithful to famous for fed up with fond of fraught with glad for (= pleased for sb) glad of (= grateful for sth) good at/for/to (→ bad) grateful for (+ the cause of this feeling) grateful to (+ the person who caused this feeling) quilty of harmful to hopeful of impervious to impressed with/by inclined towards incumbent upon inherent in intent on interested\* in realous of keen\* on kind to lacking in late for made by (+ the person/company who produced it) made for (+ its purpose) made from (+ original material which has been transformed)

made of (+ original material which is still visible) nervous of obedient to obvious to opposed to pleased at/about (+ something general, e g. your recovery/the inflation figures} pleased with (+ something personal, e.g. my examresults/my new jacket) popular with prone to proud\* of ready\* for related to reminiscent of responsible for riddled with scared of shocked at short of similar to sorry\* about (+ the cause of this feeling) sorry for (+ the person you feel sympathy towards) subject to successful in sufficient for suitable for superior to sure of terrified of tired of tupical of upset about/by/over (+ the cause of this feeling) upset with (+ the person who caused this feeling) worried about worthy of wrong with

### Practice

to the Word lists (> 15.5) to complete these exercises



### Match the sentence beginnings (1-10) with the endings (A-J).

- 1 Although I had a lot of questions I was afraid ...
- 2 The passengers' relatives were anxious
- 3 It's not a matter ...
- 4 We have to face the possibility ...
- 5 My parents expressed surprise ...
- 6 We tend to be scared ...
- 7 As I stepped onto the boat I suddenly feit anxious ...
- 8 The pupils were scared
- 9 The committee sees no problem ..
- 10 Ever since that experience at the zoo she's been afraid

- A ..... of large animals.
- B ..... at the fact that I'd finally found a job.
- C of whether you want to do it or not, it's an order.
  - ..... that I would make them do the test again.
- E ..... to ask them.
- F in approving your application for planning permission.
- G ... of things we know little about.
- H . for news of their loved ones
- about the lack of life jackets.
- J ... of them not getting here in time.

### 2 15.2

Complete the sentences with appropriate verbs and prepositions from the boxes. Use each verb only once. Some of the prepositions will be needed more than once. Note that you will need two prepositions in numbers 10–15.

1	erbs	accuse	agree	apologise	blame	convince	cure	depend	
		disagree	explain	present	prevent	quarrel	rely	stop	supply
F	repositions	about	for from	n to d	of on	over wit	h		
2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	Somehow I man The subcontract The immigration Do you honestly The Chief Const In my opinion w I'm rather confu Don't take it out I wouldn't dare	tors should n authoritie y trank this table is goi ve can used; you'd it on me, l'	t be able to es couldn't faith healing to today d better ve never t	the	refugees ge to the ment prob procedure. you	spare parts ente him s year's awa ent me a do ng ertainly don'	ering the his a for bit the prevagain. what yo the trust his	stutter? ravery ous gove u felt was m	
	Congress is bou								1
	l absolutely refu								ly Justified
	Since the accide								
	I'm nappy to re year.								
14	In the event of electricity.	a power cı	it you will	have to		the emer	gency ge	nerator	•
15	Look, just give	me the car	keys; I do	n't want to		you	t	his any lo	nger.

### 15 3 15.2

Some of these sentences contain grammatical mistakes. Tick ( $\nu$ ) the correct sentences, then find and correct the mistakes.

- O He was accused by fraud of the newspapers.

  He was accused of fraud by the newspaper.
- 1 The firing squad aimed at the condemned man their rifes
- 2 Our accountant provided us with the end of year accounts
- 3 The bril lant architect presented us to her imaginative proposa's
- 4 My uncle blames on his nearing problems old age
- 5 The Prime Minister disagreed with the cabinet over the new welfare scheme
- 6 Do you agree about her with the corporate sponsorship deai?
- 7 The crippled patient was cured of the doctor's radical new treatment of arthrit's
- 8 Why won't you even discuss her with 17
- 9 The plane was saved from disaster by the quick thinking of the crew members
- 10 Gerald was accused of the court by lying under oath.

### 111

Complete the newspaper headlines with appropriate prepositions.

1

### SOAP STAR GIVES NO REASON ...... DIVORCE

4

MINISTRY ANNOUNCE SOLUTION ...... TRAFFIC JAM NIGHTMARES

2

Scientists predict success ...... battle against cancer

5

POSSIBILITY ...... MANNED JOURNEY TO SATURN SAY NASA

3

Fear sunburn keeps children indoors

6

FILM STAR DENIES
ATTACK ......
PHOTOGRAPHER

7	Renewed prospect peace at UN talks	14	NEW WONDER DRUG REDUCES CRAVING MICOTINE
8	PALACE ISSUES APOLOGY MISLEADING STATEMENT	15	Travel companies fail to provide insurance airport delays
9	LITTLE HOPE SURVIVORS IN AVALANCHE HORROR	16	NEW WAY FILING TAX RETURNS PROVOKES ANGER IN CITY
10	Ministers question effect violence in Hollywood films	1 7	WHAT'S THE MATTER OUR TEAMS? ASK SOCCER SUPREMOS
11	SEQUEL	18	Government deny belief quick fix solutions
12	CONGRESSMAN QUESTIONED OVER RELATIONSHIP BIG BUSINESS	19	TASK CLEANING UP BEACHES GIVEN TO VOLUNTEERS
13	PM GIVES JOB DRUGS TSAR TO EX POLICE CHIEF	20	BANK ANNOUNCES SHOCK INCREASE INFLATION FIGURES

### 15 5 15.4

For each of the sentences below, write a new sentence as similar as possible in meaning to the original sentence, but using the words given. The words must not be altered in any way.

- O She finds spiders very frightening.

  scared ...... She is very scared of spiders
- 1 Isaac was getting more and more frustrated by his lack of progress fed up
- 2 They say the terrorists carried out the atrocities. responsible
- 3 My students find our film and photography course interesting interested
- 4 The public rarely feels sympathy towards politic ans caught behaving badly sorry
- 5 We found the quality of her singing voice quite astonishing astonished
- 6 I don't think he likes spicy food very much.
- 7 Excessive consumption of fried food can have a bad effect on the arteries.

  harmful
- 8 I'm afraid I haven't got much change at the moment.
  short
- 9 Our neighbour treats her cats remarkably well good
- 10 He owes his fame to his performance in Othello at the National Theatre. famous
- 11 I have every confidence in his abilities.
- 12 Thank you for your swift response to my enquiry. grateful
- 13 My two brothers are not at all like me. different
- 14 The new legislation covers deregulation of the airline industry, concerned
- 15 I would love to know how the magician did his tricks curious
- 16 My colleague really likes all these new electronic gadgets keen
- 17 The daily swim seems to be beneficial to his health good
- 18 The research team is working on a brand new project engaged
- 19 Unfortunately we don't really expect them to reach the final round.

  hopeful
- 20 Inspector Morse believes the blind man committed the murder. guilty



### Complete the crossword using the missing words from these sentences.

#### **CLUES ACROSS**

- My client will be able to give ...... to your queries at this afternoon's press conference
- 3 I was furious ...... the teachers for allowing such bullying to carry on unchecked
- 4 Since the stroke Lucy has ...... on her children for all her basic needs
- 11 The class had a stimulating discussion ...... the refugee crisis
- 12 I feel my main job will be to the board of the need for substantial investment
- 13 We regret to announce that this evening's flight will be subject to a ...... of fifty minutes

- 15 The committee ...... her for the high standard of her application
- 16 We try to ...... products for the more discerning customer
- 17 Our paper is made 100 per cent recycled pulp
- 18 We felt that such a rude response was not of a person in his privileged position

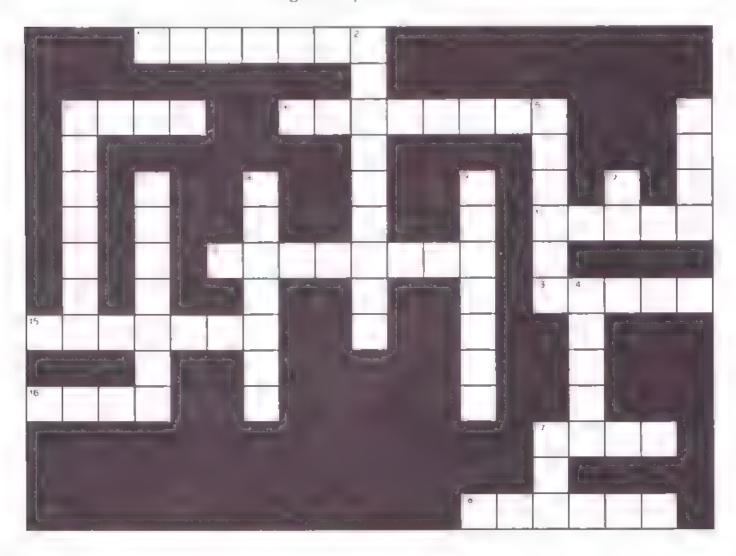
#### **CLUES DOWN**

- 2 There will be no problem you with all the spare parts you require
- 5 I really can't worry about he has personal problems or not
- 5 The National Health Service seems unable to cope with the increasing ...... for high-tech procedures

- The manager insisted

   we leave

   immediately,
- 7 The trust is going to him with a substantial annual income
- 8 The beach was ...... with happy holidaymakers enjoying the sunshine
- 9 I look forward to ... . the new sales manager next month
- 10 Findler and Outhwaite have agreed represent us at the pre-trial hearing
- 14 We crowded around the telephone as we were all for news of my father's progress.
- 17 I blame the government not recognising the problem soon enough



# Modal verbs (1)

### can, could, may, might, be able to

Modal verbs can be confusing for learners because individual modal forms can be used to express a number of different meanings. This unit looks at the modals we use to describe ability and possibility to make deductions arrangements, suggestions and offers, and to ask for and give permission. (For the use of can and could with sense verbs > 1.3C, for the use of modal verbs in conditional sentences > Unit 10.)



#### **ABILITY**

Present and present.

We use can to describe an ability and cannot or can't to describe a lack of ability in the present.

future

She can speak Spanish but she can't speak Italian.

If the present ability is surprising or involves overcoming some difficulty, we can also use islare able to

Despite his handicap he is able to drive a car

- We cannot usually use be able to with a passive:
- \* This book is able to be used by complete beginners.
  - This book can be used by complete beginners

To emphasise the difficulty or to suggest a great effort (in the present lipast or future) we use manage to In more formal English we can list use succeed in + ling form

Do you think she'll manage to get a visa?

The army succeeded in defeating their enemy.

To describe a future ability we use will be able to, not can (but > 16.3, 16.4).

- x Can I speak fluently by the end of the course?
- ✓ Will I be able to speak fluently by the end of the course?

We also use be able to where can/could is grammatically impossible, for example I haven't been able to drive since I dislocated my wrist (with the perfect aspect). We love being able to talk the local anguage (with sing forms and infinitives).

Another form for not be able to is be unable to it is more common in formal Engish. The lawyer was unable to persuade the jury of her client's innocence.

We use can (present) and could (past) before sense verbs (≥ 1.3C).

I think I can smell something burning in the kitchen.

**16.1B** We use *could* to describe the possession of an ability in the past:

Past Mozart could play the piano at the age of five

- ① To describe the successful use of a liability on a specific occasion we do not use could, we use a past tense or was/were able to:
  - X Mike's car broke down but fortunately he could repair it
  - Mike's car broke down but fortunately he was able to repair it.

But we can use could in questions, and in sentences with limiting adverbs such as only or hardly.

'Could you fix the computer yourself?' No, I could only back up the key files. She was so exhausted she could hardly speak.

We use couldn't or was/were not able to to describe a lack of ability or success.

Mozart couldn't speak French.

Despite being a mechanic, Mike **couldn't** fix his car when it broke down yesterday. We use couldimight have + past participle to describe a past ability which wasn't used or a past opportunity which wasn't taken. The meaning is similar to 'would have been able to' (compare the use of these forms in the third conditional ▶ 10.5):

Sne **could have paid** by credit card but she preferred to use cash (= She had the ability to pay by credit card but she didn't use it.)

I might have gone to university after leaving school but I chose to get a job instead (= I had the opportunity to go, but I didn't take it.)

We often use these forms to make a criticism:

You might/could have told me about the party! (- You had the chance to tell me but you didn't.)

We can use *couldn't have* + past participle + comparative adjective when we want to emphasise a past action or feeling

They couldn't have tried harder to make me feel welcome (= They tried very hard)
I couldn't have been more pleased when I heard about your results
congratulations! (= 1 was very pleased.)



### POSSIBILITY, DEDUCTION AND SPECULATION

**16.2A** We use *can* to describe things which are generally possible (we know they somet mes Present happen).

Drinks in restaurants can be very expensive (= Drinks are sometimes expensive)
In scientific and academic English we use may in the same way:

Over prescribing of antibiotics **may** read to the rapid development of resistant strains. To talk about specific possibilities we use may, might and could (but not can). The meaning is similar to 'perhaps' or 'maybe':

x There can be life on Mars.

✓ There may be life on Mars. (= Perhaps there is life on Mars.)

The rash could be a symptom of something more serious (= Maybe it is a symptom). We use the same forms when we are making a deduction based on evidence or on our experience:

He always wears smart suits. He could be a businessman.

'Why isn't she here yet?' 'I don't know. The train may be running late.'

We can use well after may might and could if we think the possibility is quite strong (If we are very certain of the possibility, we use must = 17.5.)

Don't worry, the contract could well be in the post (= It is probably in the post). To describe possibilities which depend on certain conditions we use could or might [ 10.4A]:

She **could** learn much more quickly if she paid attention (- She would be able to learn more quickly if she paid attention.)

We use can or could (but not may) to talk about specific possibilities in whill questions or with adverbs such as only or hardly.

\* Who may that be at this time of night?

✓ Who can/could that be at this time of night?

Where can/could that noise be coming from?

It can/could hardly be the postman, he only comes in the morning.

It can/could only be Steve. He's the only one with a key

We use might for a more tentative (less direct) question:

Might the losses be due to currency fluctuations?

We use can't or couldn't for things which we know are impossible and to make negative deductions.

You can't get blood out of a stone. (I'm sure about this, it's impossible.)

He couldn't be a doctor, he isn't wearing a white coat. (I'm certain he isn't ...)

We also use this form to say that something is impossible because we are unwilling to do it.

I couldn't pick up a spider; they terrify me.

When we think that something is possibly not the case we use *might not* or *may not*The shops **may not/might not** be open today, it's a bank holiday (Perhaps they are not open.)

• In spoken English we often contract might not to mightn t. We don't usually contract may not.

16.2B We use *could* to talk about general possibility in the past (things which sometimes happened):

Teachers could be very strict at my old school (Sometimes they were strict)

In scientific and academic English we use might in the same way:

Wealthy Victorian families **might** keep as many as a dozen indoor servants

We use could/might have for a specific past possibility:

She might have done it—she had the opportunity and the motive (Pernaps she did

John could have posted the letter. (I'm not sure whether he did or not.)

We also use *might have* for a past opportunity which we know was not taken (F 16.1B).

I might have gone to drama school but my parents wouldn't let me (I had the opportunity but I didn't go.)

We express a negative deduction about the past with can't have or couldn't have (► 17.5)

She can't have fixed the computer it's still not working properly (I'm sure she d'dn't fix it')

When we are less certain we use may not have or might not have:

We d better phone them, they **might not have** heard the news (Perhaps they naven't heard the news yet.)

We often use can't have or couldn't have to express surprise or disbelief: She couldn't have done it; she's such a nice woman.

**16.2C** If we are certain that something will be possible or impossible in the future we can use Future will/won't be able to:

We'll be able to travel to the moon, but we won't be able to travel to Mars
For predictions which are less certain we use may, might or could Could usually
describes a weaker possibility than may or might.

The directors **may** call a stockholders' meeting (Perhaps they will call a meeting) You never know, she **could** meet someone suitable tomorrow (It's possible, but unlikely.)

We sometimes use may/might have + past participle to talk about a possible completed action by a time in the future (similar to the future perfect ▶ 4.1D).

Call me next Tuesday; I might have finished the project by then.



### ARRANGEMENTS, SUGGESTIONS, OFFERS, ETC.

Arrangements

**16.3A** We use can, could or be able to to describe possible arrangements for a time in the future.

> The doctor could see you at six; he can't see you before then as he's too busy. I'll be able to see you after the lesson.

If the arrangement is uncertain we use may or might:

The dentist **might** be free to see you immediately after lunch, I'll have to check the diary.

I'm not sure if I'm available; I may be working that weekend.

16.3B Suggestions, offers and requests

The choice of modal verb for suggestions offers and requests depends on the formality of the situation. May and might tend to be more formal and tentative than can and could-

less formal	Ě	offers	requests	suggestions
TOTTING	FORMAL	Can I help you?	Can you close the window?	We <b>can</b> try that new café.
	OF FO	We <b>could</b> do that for you.	Could you pass me the salt?	You <b>could</b> lose some weight.
more formal	DEGREE	May I help you? Might I be of some assistance?	You <b>might</b> get me some milk while you're there.	You <b>might</b> give John a ring.

We use canicould always for an alternative or more tentative suggestion

We could always go to the Italian place

When we want to make a suggestion with the meaning 'there is no better choice. available', we can use the phrase might as well-

Now the children have left we might as well sell the house and get something smaller



### ASKING FOR AND GIVING/REFUSING PERMISSION

Present/ future

16.4A We use canican't for permission granted or refused by the person being asked and for permission subject to some external authority such as the law:

> 'Can I use your phone?' 'Yes, of course you can./No, I'm afraid you can't.' (I give/refuse permission.)

You can't smoke on the underground (The law doesn't allow you to do this ) In more formal situations we can use may and may not in the same way:

May | interrupt?

Candidates may not bring calculators into the examination room.

We use could or might to ask for permission in a more tentative way (might is very formal):

Excuse me, could I leave my coat here?

Might I ask the court for an adjournment at this point?

16.4B

Past

To describe general permission in the past we use could/couldn't:

In the 1950s British children could leave school at the age of fourteen.

But to talk about permission on a specific occasion in the past, we do not use could, we use was/were allowed to:

X I could leave early yesterday 
✓ I was allowed to leave early yesterday.

▶ Pages 198 and 199 for Round up of modal verbs

# Practice

The key to these exercises is on t

Choose a suitable	form o	f can,	could,	be	able to.	manage	to (	or	succeed	in t	0	complete	the
sentences below.													

- 1 The manager of the shop was a bit reluctant but in the end I get a refund
- 2 It was really annoying, I get on to any of the websites you recommended
- 3 What's her phone number? I ..... remember it.
- 4 Although Stephanie is deaf and mute she communicate with the aid of a special computer
- 5 They finish the new motorway next month so we get to the coast much more quickly
- 6 Most of the big hotels were full, but we find a room in one of those small guesthouses near
- 7 Would you speak more slowly? I ....... follow what you're saying
- 8 I really appreciate ....... speak to you so frankly about this.
- 9 After I move to the country I'm not going to ....... visit you so often.
- 10 Over the last few months the government's fuel tax levy generating over a pillion pounds in revenue
- 11 This new mobile phone is fantastic. It ...... be used anywhere in the world.
- 12 The shopping channel is a real boon for Liz, she adores buy clothes at any time of day or night!
- 13 1 ...... walk properly since I had that skiing accident.
- 14 Sadly, many of the indigenous people resist the diseases brought by the European settlers
- 15 The non-fiction section ...... be found on the third floor of the library.

### Match the situations (A-D) with the sentences (1-4).

- A Samantha is going to work at a ticket agency next year.
- B Judy went to the theatre yesterday and told the box office clerk that she was a theatre critic
- C Liz went to the theatre yesterday to buy some tickets. They didn't tell her about the special 'free ticket' offer.
- D Carol works at a ticket agency.
- She was able to get free tickets.
   She can get free tickets.
- 3 She will be able to get free tickets. 4 She could have got free tickets

### BICID

### Match the two parts (1-4 and A-D) to form sentences.

- 1 He could do it
- 2 He couldn't do it
- 3 He might have done it
- 4 He can't have done it

- A he had plenty of opportunity.
- B he wasn't even in the country.
- C he seems a very capable person.
- D he doesn't look old enough.



Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it is as similar as possible in meaning to the sentence printed before it. You must use a suitable form of can, could, may or might in each sentence. The exercise begins with an example (0).

- O I was absolutely thrilled when I heard about your engagement | coulan't have been more thrilled when I heard arout your engagement.
- 1 I'm very angry with you you knew I was having problems with the car and you didn't bother to help me!

You

- 2 Twenty years ago my neighbour offered me his apartment for \$30,000 but I didn't buy it. Twenty years ago I
- 3 It would be possible for us to issue the tickets today if you gave us your credit card number. We
- 4 The service in British restaurants is sometimes quite surly. The service
- 5 Might the disparity in the figures be due to a computer error? Is it
- 6 Don't worry, they'll probably be on the next train.

  They
- 7 I'm certain he isn't responsible for the error; he looks too experienced. He
- 8 Perhaps the shuttle bus on t working at the moment of sithe low season. The shuttle bus .
- 9 It's so annoying. You knew their phone number but you didn't give it to mel. You
- 10 I'm afraid it sn't possible to grow bananas in the Britishic mate. Unfortunate yi you
- 11 Given some ack our team has a good chance of with igite championship next month. With any luck
- 12 Perhaps Jim took it; he was in the office all day yesterday
- 13 It's possible that the results will have arrived by tomorrow lunchtime.
  The results
- 14 Who do you think is making all that noise next door?
  Who
- 15 Perhaps there are other intelligent life forms in the universe.

  There
- 16 Thanks to satellite technology, it is now possible to predict hurricanes quite accurately. We
- 17 Inelights are off so maybe he isn't at home. He
- 18 With a little bit of luck my's ster has the potential to be a huge star.

  My sister.
- 19 They offered Carrie a job in New York (but she didn't want to work there Carrie)
- 20 I would never be able to live in a house without a garden.

Complete the following article by writing the missing words. Use no more than two words for each space. The exercise begins with an example (0).

The worst experience of my life? I (0) ..... san. . . remember it as if it were yesterday.

I was staying at a beautiful hotel on the coast. My room was on the second floor. It was about two o'clock on my first night when I suddenly woke up. There was a very strong smell of burning but I (1) . . . tell where it was coming from I jumped out of bed, ran to the door and opened it. I (2) ..... see smoke coming from the staircase. I suppose I (3) . . . tried to run down the stairs, but I knew I wouldn't have made it. It was impossible, the smoke was too dense, I (4) ..... got further than the first landing before choking.

I went back into my room, slammed the door behind me and ran to the window. I had to escape, I (5) .... jumped out of the window but I felt too scared. It was too high, I needed something to climb down. Suddenly I had a brainwaye and ran over to the bed By tying the bedsheets together I (6) ..... make a kind of ladder. I field one end of the sheets to the foot of the bed and I threw the other end out of the opened window. Despite my fear of heights I (7) ..... climb out onto the window ledge. A small group of people had gathered on the ground and were shouting encouragement to me.

'Come on,' they said, 'you (8) ..... do it!' I was shaking with fear, but by refusing to look down and concentrating on the rope in my hands I eventually (9) ..... lowering myself from the ledge. Very slowly, putting one hand below the other, I (10) . ... climb down the bedsheet rope to safety.

# 16.3 16

#### Choose the correct description, A or B.

- 1 They allowed me to bring my dog.
  - A They usually allow dogs. B They don't usually allow dogs
- 2 The doctor could see you at eleven
  - A I'm not sure if she's free at eleven B I m suggesting a time for an appointment
- 3 Might I borrow your calculator for a moment?
  - A Talking to your best friend. B Talking to a clerk at the bank.
- 4 Well, we could always go on the bus.
  - A I don't really mind how we get there. B I really want to go on the bus.
- 5 I could wear anything I liked.
  - A When I worked as a secretary. B On the day I took my secretarial exams
- 6 We can have a look at the shops.
  - A I'm making a suggestion. B I'm describing a future ability.
- 7 May Linterrupt?
  - A At a formal business meeting. B At a family lunch.
- 8 You may not bring drinks into the auditorium during the performance
  - A It's up to you to decide. B It's forbidden
- 9 I might see you after the show.
  - A I probably will see you. B I'm not sure if I'll see you or not.
- 10 We might as well go straight home
  - A There's nothing better to do. B I really want to go home.



JANE

Fill the gaps in the dialogue using a suitable form of can, could, may, might, be able to, manage to

- or succeed in and a form of the verb in brackets. The exercise begins with an example (0). So how are the wedding arrangements going, Jane? Not too bad. We're seeing the vicar tomorrow so Harry and I (0) will be able to ask (ask) JANE him about hiring the church hall for the reception It would be great if you (1) ...... (get) that place, it's an ideal venue. MIKE Yes I know Although t (2) (be) a bit too smal if all our friends turn up ANE It holds about a hundred people, doesn't it? MIKE ,ANF Well, in fact it (3) (accommodate) up to a nundred and twenty five, apparently But there are about a hundred and forty on our guest list. It's a bit of a Catch-22 situation because 1 (4) ...... (not/invite) people until the reception is organised, but 1 (5) ...... (not/organise) a venue until I know how many people are coming! Some of Harry's cousins live in the States, don't they? MIKE Yes I'm not sure if they re coming it's quite an expensive trip so they (6) ANE (not/make) it over here. But I'm hoping at least some of them will come (a ways/get) one of those cheap charter flights. I've seen a lot of them MIKE advertised on the Internet recently ANF Oh, I think Harry (8) (tell) them about that a ready. He said he disent them some Internet links. What about catering? Have you made any plans yet? MIKE I've arranged something with Quality Caterers in the High Street. JANE Oh I wish I diknown that before! I (9) (speak) to Liz Brown for you when I saw Mikit her ast Tuesday. She's the manager there and she goes to the same tenn's club as me. You never know, I (10) ..... (even/get) you a discount! That's a pity Stri, they ve given us a pretty good dea. By the way. Mike there is one favour I JANI wanted to ask you. Sure. What is it? MIKE (11) ..... (we/borrow) your video camera? **JANE** Of course. You (12) ...... (have) the tripod as well, if you like. MIKE Harry dropped his camera when we were in Tenerife. And since we've been back he JANE (13) ..... (not/find) anyone around here to fix it. What about music at the reception? Are you going to get a band? MIKE No, we (14) [not/have] live music at the church half it doesn't have a licence. But ANE we (15) ..... (have) a disco. (a ways/ask) Jack e Branson she's got one of those mobile disco things You (16) MIKE I didn't know that I (17) (speak) to her about it yesterday – she was at my JANE aerobics class. I thought she'd given up disc-jockeying ages ago. (give it up) when the kids were very young, but I'm pretty Wel, I suppose she (18) MKE sure she's back doing it now.
  - then. On, that reminds me. Harry wondered why you weren't at football practice on Wednesday. It's that awful car of mine - it just wouldn't start on Wednesday, Luckily, Jim down the road

Lexpect shell be at the aerobics class next week so I (19) (ask) her about t

MINE (20) ..... (fix) it, although it took him two hours! 17

# Modal verbs (2)

# must, should, ought to, have to, need to

English has a number of different ways of expressing the concepts of obligation and necessity prohibition, recommendation and ogical deduction. This unit looks at the different modal verbs, as well as some common non-modal verbs, and phrases, which we use to express these concepts. (For other modal verbs.) Units 16 and 18)



### **OBLIGATION AND NECESSITY**

17.1A Forms

	must	have (got) to	need to	should/ought to
present	must	has/have (got) to	need/needs to	should/ought to
past	had to	had (got) to	needed to	should/ought to have (done)
future	must	will have to	will need to	should/ought to

Must, should and ought to are modal verbs (unlike need to and have to). They do not change form in the present tense, nor do they have a past tense or a future form with will nor infinitive or participle forms. As an atternative to must or when we can't use must (e.g., to refer to the past), we usually use have to:

- Past The staff and students at the university had to evacuate the campus
- · Future The Council must/will have to find ways of cutting costs next year
- · Infinitive: It's difficult to have to stand by and watch your child in pain.
- · Participle Having to listen to hip-hop music all evening is my idea of torture!

We can express a past meaning of snould and ought to by using a modal perfect. They really should/ought to have consulted their shareholders first.

Need can be used as a modal verb (without to) insually in negatives and questions

Need you shout so? I'm right next to you!

We needn't bother making the bed. The maid will do it

As an alternative to need, we can use need to or have to:

Do you need to/have to shout so?

We don't need to/have to bother making the bed.

We can use must, have to and need to with a passive phrase:

Democracy must/has to be seen to work.

Pulses need to be cooked thoroughly to eradicate the toxins in them.

## 17.1B Obligation

17.1B We usually express obligation in English with must or have to:

You **must** arrive in good time for the meeting tomorrow. The MD will be there Everyone **has to** register their name and address in order to be able to vote.

The difference in meaning between have to and must can be fine and often depends on whether or not the speaker sees the obligation as one they are imposing. We use have to to express an obligation we see as outside our control, e.g. rules imposed by an authorit,

Students have to wear school uniforms in the sixth form.

We often use must to express an obligation imposed by the speaker.

I must get up earlier - I waste so much time in the mornings.

Must is commonly used for the following situations:

- To give a strong personal opinion: I believe people must vote at elections
- To impose an obligation on oneself: I really must lose some weight
- To give instructions. The electricity must always be switched off before repairs are attempted. (In giving instructions, must is often used with a passive verb.)

• However, must expresses a strong obligation and we do not often use it in face-toface conversation as it can seem impolite and often inappropriate.

We often use should and ought to as an alternative to must as they express a subjective (often moral) obligation fet by the speaker but the obligation is weaker than with must You **should** treat your neighbours with more respect.

It is possible to use need to to express external obligation, particularly in the future We'll need to get our visas sorted out or we won't be able to stop over in the States We use have got to for external obligation like have to, but it is more informal than have to and more common in speech than in writing (have got to is rare in US English). What time have we got to be at the airport tomorrow?

[Claim forms have got to be date-stamped before payment will be made ] ✓ Claim forms have to be date-stamped before payment will be made.

We use should/ought to + have + past part c pie for an unfulfilled obligation in the past You really should have lought to have registered before term started The record was finally released eighteen months later than it should have been

17 1C We can use need to, must and have to to express necessity (i.e. a requirement that Necessity results from things other than just commands, rules or laws):

All living beings need to/must/have to take in sustenance in order to live I really need to/must/have to get some more sleep. I'm always exhausted

It is possible though quite rare today to use need without to in questions Need he really play his music so loudly?

If we want to express a necessity without suggesting who should deal with it, we can use need + -ing form: That poor bird - his cage really needs cleaning.

This use has a passive meaning and is similar to the passive infinitive ( 8 2B) That poor bird - his cage really needs to be cleaned.

Other ways of expressing obligation

17.1D We can use be to for an order from a person in authority (> 5.1A). The members of the jury are to report to the judge's chambers.

We use be obliged to (US obligated to, or required to in formal contexts We're obliged to contribute twenty-five per cent of the costs of the repairs Motorists are required by law to wear seat belts in the European Union We use be supposed to for a lesser obligation and one that is frequently ignored We're supposed to leave our textbooks at school but we often take them home

We use be liable to for obligation (often in a legal context): Anyone causing damage will be liable to pay for all necessary repairs



### PROHIBITION AND CRITICISM

17.2A		must not	cannot	other forms	should not/ought not to	
Forms	present	mustn't can't (have)		may not is/are not allowed to	shouldn't oughtn't to	
	past		couldn't	was/were not allowed to	shouldn't have (done) oughtn't to have (done)	
	future	mustn't	cannot	may not will not be allowed to	shouldn't oughtn't to	

use

17.2B We use must not (usually mustn't) to express a prohibition (an obligation not to do Meaning and something) imposed by the speaker or writer:

You mustn't touch that kettle. It's hot!

To express a weaker, often moral pron bition, we use snouldn't or oughtn't to You really shouldn't/oughtn't to speak to your mother like that! We tend to use shouldn't more often than oughtn't to

To express prohibit on by an external authority we often use other modal verbs or non-modal expressions. *Mustn't* may appear too strong in these situations:

Guests may not use the pool after 11 p.m. (formal ▶ 16.4A)

Women can't/aren't allowed to drive in some Arab countries (16.4A, B)

• It is possible, though not common, to use *must not have* + past participle for a present prohibition which relates to the past.

Entrants must be aged 16 to 25 and must not have done any professional modelling (The modelling is in the past, but the prohibition is in the present.)

We use couldn't or wasn't/weren't allowed to for prohibition in the past-

We couldn't go into the disco because we were too young.

Journalists were shown the disused buildings but they weren't allowed to enter them

We use shouldn't/ought not to have + past participle to criticise a past act on

You **shouldn't have driven** through that red light. You could have caused an accident. We usually use won't be allowed to or can t to express prohibition in the future.

Let's eat before we go We won't be allowed to/can't take food into the auditorium

# 1,5

### ABSENCE OF OBLIGATION OR NECESSITY

17.3A Forms present do/does not have to need not, do/does not need to need not, do/does not need to did not need to, need not have (done) future will not have to will not need to, need not

17.3B Meaning and We usually use don't have toldon t need to to express a lack of external obligation

X You mustn't pay to visit most museums in Britain.

✓ You don't have/need to pay to visit most museums in Britain (Entrance is free)
We use don't need to/needn't for absence of necessity fe't by the speaker Needn't
tends to express the speaker's personal opinion more:

We needn't/don't need to put the heating on yet it's not cold enough. We use didn't have toldidn't need to for absence of obligation in the past.

You didn't have to/didn't need to finish the washing up I could have done it

• Need has two past forms didn't need to and needn't have done. We use didn't need to when we don't know if the action happened or not:

We didn't need to take warm sweaters as the weather was so good (We don't know if the speaker took warm sweaters or not.)

We use needn't have + past participle when the action happened but was unnecessary We needn't have taken warm sweaters. We could have used the space in our luggage for more books! (We know that the speaker took warm sweaters.)

We use won't have to, won t need to or needn t for absence of obligation in the future With one of the new generation of food processors cooks won't have to/won't need to/needn't peel or chop any more.



## RECOMMENDATION AND ADVICE

17.4A Forms mustshouldought tohad betterpresentmust (not)should (not)ought (not) tohad better (not)futuremust (not)should (not)ought (not) tohad better (not)

17.4B

We use must for strong recommendations and advice-

Meaning and use

You really <u>must</u> read Sebastian Faulks's latest book. It's stunning!
You <u>must</u> do something about that cough. Please go and see the doctor.
Note that with this use *must* is usually heavily stressed in speech.

Recommendation or advice with should or ought to is less emphatic:

Even people as young as twenty-five should consider a personal pension.

Children ought not to spend long periods in front of a computer screen

We often use should and ought to with the passive:

The underlying shift in public opinion ought not to be exaggerated.

Had better (not) expresses the best thing to do in a particular situation. It often has a sense of urgency and can be a warning or a threat:

If the burglars took your keys, you'd better change the locks in case they come back. Your dog had better not dig up my rose bush again!

# 7.5

## LOGICAL DEDUCTION AND PROBABILITY

17.5A Forms

	must	have (got) to	should
present	must	have (got) to	should (not)
past	must have + past participle	had (got) to	should (not) have + past participle
future	must	have (got) to	should (not)

In this sense, we can also use must, have to and should with the continuous:

That disco is so loud. You must be damaging your ears when you go there

You have got to be joking! That was not a foul!

The accused should not have been driving at 80 in a built-up area.

17.5B Meaning and

use

We use *must* for something that we believe to be true because of evidence (i.e. we are making a logical deduction):

This must be the place - it's the only restaurant in the street

I thought the eclipse was today, but it must be happening tomorrow.

The opposite of must in this sense is can't, not mustn't ( $\triangleright$  16.2A).

This can't be the place - there's no one inside and there are no lights on.

It is possible to use have (got) to for emphatic logical deduction:

There has (got) to be some mistake. I didn't order this furniture.

We use must have + past participle to express a logical deduction about the past

There was a terrific noise last night. It must have been an explosion.

I couldn't wake you this morning You must have been sleeping really soundly

The negative of this is can't/couldn't have + past participle (► 16.2B).

Note the difference between the two past forms must have + past part c pie and had to The Corrs' new single has been played non-stop. You must have heard it! (deduction) I've always loved The Corrs and when I neard they had a new single out, I had to hear it! (obligation imposed by the speaker)

We use should/ought to for probability and shouldn't/ought not to for improbability (For probability with may and might 16.2.) We believe the statement to be true because of our prior knowledge, experience or present evidence:

The plane should be landing about now.

There shouldn't be problems with traffic at that time of the evening.

- We rarely use should to 'predict' a negative (unpleasant) situation. Instead we use will
  - **x** There **should** be problems with traffic at that time. The roads **should** be awful.
  - ✓ There'll be problems with traffic at that time. The roads will be awful

We use should (not)/ought (not) to + have + past participle to talk about the probability of an action in the past:

I don't know where our main speaker can be. He **should have arrived** hours ago

▶ Pages 198 and 199 for Round up of modal verbs

# Practice

# 17.1

Complete the dialogue with the best words or phrases from the box. Use each word or phrase once only.

do I have to had to has to have to having to must need to needs obliged to should supposed to will have to

BETH Hello. Reception said that you wanted a word with me.

LISA That's right. I'm interested in joining your gym. What (1) ...... do?

RETH Take a seat First, you (2) fill in this form. It asks for details about you and your state of health. We want to be sure that you're fit enough to use the gym.

LISA OK ... I have a slight problem with one knee. I twisted it a few weeks ago.

Well you really (3) tell the instructor about that then he'll make sure that your fitness programme takes account of it.

LISA Fitness programme?

Yes If you join you (4) have an induction session with one of our fitness instructors. He'll design a programme suited to your level of fitness.

LISA Oh, that's good. Now, it's £30 a month, isn't it?

BETH Well, yes but that's the special rate if you take out an annual subscription, so you're (5) . join for the whole year to get that rate. Otherwise it's £40 a month.

TISA I see Yes I think I illion for the year Is there anything else I should know?

ELET See there are some rules but they re-pretty obvious. Of course, everyone (6) wear appropriate clothes and footwear. There are lockers outside the gym, so you're not (7) take anything in with you, but we don't apply that rule very strictly. You'll probably want to take a tower and a bottle of water in with you anyway, you (8) drink plenty of water while you're exercising, to prevent dehydration.

isa. Yes are there any restrictions like (9) book time ahead in the evenings?

working properly and (10) mending tell an instructor Also, for your own good, you (11) ....... tell us if you feel unsure about how to use a particular machine.

Of course. Now the receptionist said I (12) provide a photo for the membership card, but I'm afraid I don't have one on me.

Billing That's OK Bring it next time you come. Until then you can use your receipt as proof of membership.

# 2 17.1-17.

Read the letter on the next page and decide which word or phrase below fits each space. In each case, only one answer is possible. Circle the letters you choose. The first one is given as an example (0).

0 A must not

1 A need not have 2 A mustn't have

3 A could not

4 A are to

5 A must not6 A are required to

B cannot

B must not have B shouldn't have

B did not need to

B are obliged to B are liable to

B do not have to

© need not

C had to

C needn't have C needed to

C aren't allowed to

C must

C need to

A need not	B do not need to	C have to
A need to	B do not have to	C must not
A are not supposed to	B are not obliged to	C need not
A had to	B will have to	C are to
A shouldn't be allowed	B oughtn't be allowed	C needn't allowing
A need not have been	B must not have been	C did not have to be
	A need not A need to A are not supposed to A had to A shouldn't be allowed A need not have been	A need to A are not supposed to B are not obliged to A had to B will have to B oughtn't be allowed

# Hilverstone Fox Watch

#### Dear New Member,

Many thanks for your application form for membership of the HFW (Hilverstone Fox Watch) Before I introduce the club to you, I would like to point out that you (O), pay your subscription until your membership application has been processed and approved, so those of you who joined at the fete last Saturday (I) provided cheques on the spot Our representative (2) accepted your cheques I am returning them where necessary, with apologies for any inconvenience.

HFW was set up three years ago for two reasons to lobby for the abolition of fox hunting—the founder members feit we (3)—do this as the Hilverstone Hunt is so powerful in this area – but also to provide some protection for the urban foxes here, who 4)—subsist on household scraps in some cases. Our meetings are fortnightly but please do not feel that you (5), attend each one All our members, however, (6), attend six meetings a year and at least two all night watches. We (7), insist upon this to prevent al. of the work from failing on the shoulders of a few people.

One or two words of advice a lot of people interested in foxes attempt to domesticate them by putting food down for them Please - you (8) .. do this For one thing, we (9) .. encourage vermin under local by-laws (and foxes are classed as vermin), but also, we (10) try to reintroduce these foxes to their natural habitat, as they are not naturally domestic creatures Please remember also that female foxes with young cubs can be quite aggressive children in particular (11) to go near them at this potentially dangerous time.

Finally, may I remind you that members of HFW (12) ... involved in the Hilverstone Hunt for at least one year prior to joining.

Thank you once again for your interest. I enclose a timetable of our meetings and events for the next three months, and look forward to welcoming you to one of them.

Yours faithfully, Jonathan Harker

# 17/ 5 17.1-11

Complete texts A-C with an appropriate verb or expression. Use the information in the box to help you. The first one is given as an example (0).

#### **REQUIREMENTS OF COURSE**

course	important	advisable	unnecessary
Α	keyboarding skills	access to a computer	prior publishing experience
В	previous experience	keyboarding skills	own computer
С	three GCSEs	good level of English	prior publishing experience/computer sk Is

#### A DESK-TOP PUBLISHING

Ten week intensive course for people interested in producing small scale publications. Applicants for this course (0) what have good keyboarding skills but are not (1) to have prior publishing experience. If possible, applicants (2) have access to a computer and Microsoft Publisher, but there are a limited number of machines available at the college.

#### B DESK-TOP PUBLISHING

Learn how to seif-publish from the professionals! We offer Desk-top Publishing courses to suit al schedules and budgets, from five week intensive courses to year-long evening courses. You (3) have your own computer (on our full-time courses) but you (4) have some previous experience in publishing. You (5) be able to use a keyboard. Call us on 01202-867349.

#### C DESK-TOP PUBLISHING

One year course Applicants (6) have previous experience in publishing, as part of the course involves work experience with a local printing company. Equally you are not (7) is to have good computer skills as all basic training is provided. A minimum of three GCSEs is (8) is and applicants (9) ....... have a good level of English.

# 4 17.5

Write four statements making deductions about each picture. Use the words and phrases underneath the pictures. The first one is given as an example (0).

- O (daughter) They must be waiting for their daughter
- ! (on/train) She can't ..
- 2 (miss/it) She must
- 3 (child/mother) She must
- 4 (phone/parents) She can't





- 5 (rain) It must
- 6 (slip/banana skin) The man must
- 7 (not/wife) She can't
- 8 (ambulance) Someone must



For each of the sentences below, write a new sentence as similar in meaning as possible to the original sentence, but using the word(s) given. The word(s) must not be altered in any way.

- O It looks certain that the orchestra's instruments are arriving on a later plane.

  The orchestra's instruments must be arriving on a later plane.
- 1 I strongly recommend you to try this sundried tomato bread.
- 2 There is no obligation to get an international driving icence for this country have
- 3 It was stupid of the government to try to break the strike should
- 4 I warn you not to chat up my girlfriend again! had
- 5 We didn't book the table but it didn't matter as there was hardly anyone in the restaurant anyway need
- 6 My hair's much too long. I'll have to get it cut soon. cutting
- 7 It is essential that you disconnect the gas supply before removing the boiler be disconnected
- 8 The management will not permit latecomers to enter the theatre until there is a suitable break allowed.
- 9 Why do we have to state ethnic origin on official forms these days? required
- 10 There can be no doubt that the solicitor has received the information by now must
- 11 It probably won't be difficult to get tickets for the first night should
- 12 It is essential that patients have not eaten or drunk anything for three hours before the operation must

# 6 ALL

Underline six more mistakes to do with modal verbs or expressions from this unit, then correct them.

## Minutes of Holmefield NeighbourCare meeting

- 1 Sergeant Dibden reminded us that we don't have to tackle a burglar if one
- 2 enters our home as this can be very dangerous. He also reminded us that we
- 3 are supposed by law to inform the police and our insurance companies of all
- 4 keyholders after a break-in.
- 5 Mrs Sanders from Twyfield Close reported that she had been burgled two
- 6 afternoons before The burglar should have got in through an open downstairs
- 7 window, although at that time of day there must be plenty of people
- 8 around who witnessed the break in You'd better report it to the police if you
- 9 saw anything as it's our civic duty.
- Mr Harrison from Dukes Avenue was concerned that he hadn't taken up an invitation from a security company to assess his house for security risks, but he
- was relieved to discover from Sergeant Dibden that he needn't have invited
- 13 them anyway, as the police can do security checks.
- 14 Finally, remember, if you need speak to a police officer, you can call Sergeant
- 15 Dibden at Holmefield police station at any time.

mustnit



# Modal verbs (3)

# will, would, shall

Learners of English often think of will as a way of expressing the future ( Unit 4) and of would as a word which is used mainly it conditions sentences ( Unit 10), but we use both of these modal verbs to express in number of other meanings. This unit also looks at shall which although it is the least used modal in English, we can use to express a variety of meanings.

# 18.1

#### PREDICTION AND CERTAINTY

18.1A Predictions about the future We use will/won't to make predictions about the future (► 4.1A):

He's been found guilty of murder. He'll be in prison for a long time.

You must work hard for this exam. It won't be easy.

Past predictions about the future

Sometimes we wish to express a prediction about the future that someone made in the past. For this we often use would/wouldn't (would is the past form of will):

We had to hurry to get him to the hospital. We knew it would be too late otherwise. This use of would is related to the use of would in reported speech (> 9.2E).

I'm sure the Lions **will** win the righty series this year -> She was sure the Lions **would** win the rugby series.

18.1C Certainty about the present We make confident predictions about the present based on our knowledge or previous experience (or on current expectations) with will/won't:

Rachel's in Turkey at the moment. I hope she's taken some winter clothes because it won't be warm at this time of year."

Compare this use of will and the present simple. We use the present simple to state a fact without expressing an opinion as to the certainty or otherwise of the event

Janet isn't nere at the moment. She's in France. (Fact. the speaker knows it's true.) To say that we believe something is certain, we use will/won't:

It's five o clock Janet'll be in Paris now (Certainty the speaker believes it's true). To express a certainty about something ongoing (e. where we would use the present continuous for a fact), we use will/won't + be + -ing form:

Jason is sympathetic because he knows his successor will be having a hard time at the moment.

18.1D Certainty about the past To refer to something which we fee certain has happened (but do not actually know) we use will have + past participle:

We sent the invitations on Monday so they will have received them by now Why hasn't anyone replied?

This is similar to must have + past participle (▶ 17.5B):

We sent the invitations on Monday so they **must have received** them by now We use won t have + past participle to refer to something which we feel certain has not happened:

We sent the invitations by second-class post. They won't have received them yet.

We do not use mustn't have + past participe in this way ( 17.5B 16.2B) but we can use can't have:

- \* We sent the invitations by second-class post. They mustn't have received them yet
- ✓ We sent the invitations by second-class post. They can't have received them yet.



## CHARACTERISTICS, HABITS AND ROUTINES

#### 18.2A Present

We often use will/won't to talk about actions that have become so routine that they are predictable:

Every lesson is the same he'll sit down get his books out and then he'll start giving us instructions. He won't greet us or show any interest in us.

We can extend this use of will to talk about habits and characteristics:

The public will always side with the nurses in any dispute.

The dominant male of the group will not tolerate the presence of other males

We can also use the present simple to describe characteristics and habits.

The public always sides with the nurses in any dispute.

The dominant male of the group does not tolerate the presence of other males

We often use will when talking about the characteristics of capacity or ability

The Olympic stadium in Sydney will hold 110,000 people.

This model will do 0 to 100 kilometres per hour in eight seconds.

It is also possible to use can and the present simple for these last two uses with no change in meaning.

The Olympic stadium in Sydney can hold/holds 110,000 people.

This model can doldoes 0 to 100 kilometres per hour in eight seconds.

We use will (not the present's mple) to describe an annoying habit or to make a criticism:

We enjoy going out with Frank and Caro- but they will argue in public!

- We do not contract will when we use it to describe an annoying habit we stress it:
  - X Geoff'li leave the lights on when he's last out of the office.
  - ✓ Geoff will leave the lights on when he's last out of the office!

We often use will/won't to criticise inanimate objects in this way:

Whatever I do, my car won't start first time on cold mornings.

To state a simple fact with no (or little) annoyance, we use the present simple:

My car doesn't start/never starts first time on cold mornings



My car won't start first time on cold mornings.

#### 18.2B

We use would/wouldn't to talk about habits in the past (> 2.5B).

Past

Every lesson was the same he'd sit down and get his books out, then he'd start giving us instructions. He wouldn't greet us or show any interest in us.

We can use would/wouldn't to criticise or talk about annoying habits in the past I miss Dad, even though he would always tell me how to run my life!

• We do not usually contract would to diwnen we use it in this way, we stress to When Alan was a toddler he would cling on to me whenever a stranger came in However, we do not always stress would when it is followed by an adverb.

My boss was awful he'd <u>invariably</u> find something for me to do at five o'clock. We can use would/wouldn't to talk about inanimate objects (► 18.2A):

The car would never start on winter mornings when we were in Sweden.



### WILLINGNESS AND REFUSAL

18.3A We use will to express willingness to do something:

Present/future willingness

The doctor will act as a witness to your signature. She doesn't mind doing that sort of thing.

and refusal. We can use it to express be willing to. In this sense, we can use will/won't in the if clause of a first conditional (► 10.3A):

If you'll take a seat for a moment, Mr Franks will be with you soon (If you are willing to take a seat for a moment, ...)

We use won't/shan't to express unwillingness or refusal to do something:

The PA won't book my flights. She says it isn't in her job description.

'Go and buy some milk, will you, love?' 'No, I shan't. I'm busy.'

18.3B

We use would/wouldn't to show willingness or refusal in the past. We use would in the affirmative only to refer to general willingness (i.e. a habit):

willingness

Dad would always help us with our maths homework.

- and refusal. We do not use would in the affirmative to express will ngness to do something on a single occasion in the past:
  - \* The tour guide was very helpful. She would contact the Consulate for me when I lost my passport.
  - ✓ The tour guide was very helpful. She contacted/offered to contact the Consulate. for me when I lost my passport

We can use would not for refusal on a single occasion in the past:

The shop assistant wouldn't change this jumper for me, even though I hadn't worn it

### OTHER USES OF WILL/SHALL/WOULD

Offers and promises

18.4A We can use both will and shall to make offers. We use will in the affirmative both to make offers to do something ourselves and on behalf of other people:

Sit down. I'll wash up this evening.

Your car sounds a bit rough. Harry will take a quick look at it, if you like.

We use shall in questions to make more tentalive offers than with will in the affirmative Shall I wash up this evening?

We use will to make promises:

My government will turn round the economy and reduce unemployment.

We can use would, will or won't when we offer something to another person

Would you have/like some more of the pie? (neutral)

Will you have some more of the pie? (neutral)

Won't you have some more of the pie? (more encouraging)

18.4B Suggestions We use shall in questions with we to make suggestions:

Shall we go out for a curry tonight? (= Why don't we ...?/How about ...?)

To ask for suggestions or advice, we can use shall with a question word.

What shall we do about Tom if he doesn't get into a university?

US English uses should in preference to shall for suggestions.

Let's decide what to do this evening. Should we go bowling?

We use shall in question tags after let's (► 7.2B):

Let's forget about it now and talk about something else, shall we?

• We use would in suggestions or responding to invitations if we want to be more tentative or distant-

It would be a good idea to get together one evening.

'Come to dinner on Sunday.' 'That would be nice. I'll let you know.'

18.40 We often make requests with war These requests are informal and we usually use them only with people we know quite well (can  $\triangleright$  16.3B). Requests

Will you give me a call when you get to the hotel?

We use would to make requests more tentative or polite or to request things of people we do not know so well:

Would you lend me the car tomorrow night, Dad?

Would you fill in this form, please, sir? (could ▶ 16.3B)

We can make a request more insistent by using will you as a question tag-Come and look at this, will you?

If we make a request in this way, we do not expect the answer to be 'no': Pick up my suit from the cleaner's when you're out, will you?

18.4D We use will and shall for orders and formal listrictions. We use shall for more formal Orders and instructions, especially in official documents You will/shall all stay behind for thirty minutes and clean this room.

The secretary shall minute the proceedings of each meeting

We also use shall/will for rules, for example of examinations and competitions. The judge's decision shall be final.

We can use would/wouldn't to show disagreement in a polite way. 18.4E

I wouldn't say that. Disagreeing I wouldn't go that far.

18.4F We often use would with verbs of ix ight proferoice like love prefer etc.) to express desires and preferences which we think we can realise: Expressing

desires and preferences

instructions

We'd love to come to gour well trans it is September. Thank you for the invitation I'd prefer to lose weight by a treature of the timetho fithan by a new frendy diet

We can use would with rather to express a preference (▶ 11.2E): Our delegates would rather not stay at the conference centre.

Note that we can use an object with these forms. I would like you to listen to me when I'm talking!

# HYPOTHETICAL WOULD

18.5A. We use would with no or verbs of iking in the higher express indexine for the present. or future. Fulfilment of the desire is impossible or improbable: Hypothetical

It would be so nice to live by the sea. (The speaker doesn't live by the sea.) desires about

I would prefer to be a man. (The speaker is a woman.)

To state a simple fact, we use the present simple: present/future

It is nice to live by the sea.

We can use the present's inple (18 to talk about something we carrently like and do but we use would like to talk about an unfulfilled desire-

I like to stay in five-star hotels. (I do stay in five-star hotels and enjoy it.)

I would like to stay in five-star hotels. (I don't stay in them, but it's my desire.)

Wish + would expresses a desire for another person (not) to do something

I wish you wouldn't talk with your mouth full! (► 11.3C)

If we want to conment on a hypothetical situation in the past, we use would/wouldn(t+18.5B Hypothetical have + past participle.

desires about the

the

It would have been a good idea to notify us in advance of your intentions.

(= The person did not notify anyone in advance.)

[It would have been a good idea to have notified us in advance ...]

▶ Pages 198 and 199 for Round up of modal verbs

# Practice



Complete these dialogues with will, won't, would, wouldn't, + have if necessary, and a form of the verbs in the box. The first one is given as an example (0).

argue de come have hold prepare say start stop watch O 'Sue says she's enjoying the job but she's putting on weight.' 'Yes, that ....will be... because of all those long business lunches.' 1 'Are you having problems with your new camera?' 'Yes, the flash ...... in semi-darkness, only when it's fully dark.' 2 'Shop assistants used to be more polite, didn't they?' 'Yes, a few years ago they ...... always ...... "please" and "thank you" and smile.' 3 'Surely there are too many people here to get on one plane?' 'No, a jumbo jet ...... easily ...... over 300 people.' 4 'I hope Josh is OK at that summer camp. He might be homesick.' 'Don't worry about him. He ...... a great time!' 5 'Do you think that the jury will acquit Nick?' 'I hope so. I'm sure that his lawyer ...... a solid defence.' 6 'I don't think this new secretary is as good as Janice was.' 'I don't know. Janice ...... always ...... whenever you pointed out errors in her typing ' 7 'The new horse at the riding stables seems to be working out very well.' 'Quite well, but he ...... and eat whenever he gets the opportunity!' 8 'Oh no, I've just noticed a mistake in the headline for the front page article!' 'Phone the printers. They ...... printing it yet - they don't print until early morning.' 9 'What happened after the car broke down?' 'Well, we knew that traffic ...... along that road so late, so we slept in the car.' 10 'Why are you and Jack arguing so much these days?' 'He takes me for granted. He ...... TV every evening and ignore me completely.'

# 2 18.2,18.

Rewrite the underlined parts of this phone conversation, using will, won't, would and wouldn't.

JAKE	020 7543 9216	
ALICE	Hi, Jake. It's Alice here.	
JAKE	Alice, how nice to hear from you!	
ALICE	Actually, Jake, I'm phoning to ask you for some advice.	
JAKE	(0) I'm willing to help you if I can, of course.	Ill nelp you
ALICE	Your mother receives help from the Council, doesn't she?	
	Can you tell me what (1) they agree to do and what	
	(2) they don't agree to do for older people?	
JAKE	Yes, of course. Mum has a home help. She comes three	
	times a week. (3) She's perfectly happy to do light cleaning	
	and (4) she's willing to get the shopping, but	
	(5) she refuses to do anything heavy.	
ALICE	That's fair enough. What about cooking?	
JAKE	Well, when she first started (6) she was happy to prepare	***************************************
	supper when she came, but she stopped that after a few weel	ks.

ALICE Why was that?

JAKE You know my mum. (7) <u>She insists on saying exactly what she thinks</u>. Apparently the home help used to make Italian food and Mum didn't like it. (8) <u>She refused to eat it</u>

Why are you asking, anyway?

ALICE It's Dad. He can't move around very easily now. The neighbours are great, they (9) make a habit of popping in now and again but (10) he's unwilling to ask them for help if he's in trouble

JAKE Mmm. You can understand that

ALICE Oh, but he's so impatient. I take him to the shops once a week, but yesterday (11) the car refused to start and I was about half an hour late. (12) Was he willing to wait for me?

No, (13) he insists on trying to cope by himself! He went to the shops and collapsed on the way there.

JAKE Oh, dear It's a worry, isn't it? Look, (14) if you don't mind waiting for a few minutes, I'll look out the phone number for the right person at social services.

# 18.4

Complete the dialogues below the pictures Use will, shall or would.

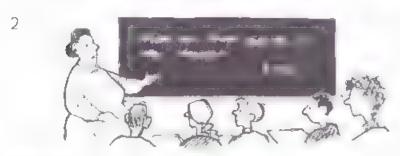
O PROGRESH

STUDENT 1: Will you pass me the dictionary, please?
STUDENT 2: Yes here you are



WOMAN: .....

FRIEND: I won't, thanks. I'm trying to lose weight.



TEACHER

STUDENTS: Oh, Miss, not another essay for homework! We've already written two this week.



MAN

On yes please! We always need someone to take the minutes.



POLICE OFFICER: .

THIEF: Come with you? No, why should 1?



MAN: I don't understand what you want from

HIC

WOMAN:

MAN: But I do respect you!

Read the article and then decide which word or phrase A, B or C below best fills each space. Circle the letter you choose for each question. The exercise begins with an example (0).

# Words, words, words

The words that caught the mood of the decade are all there in a book published yesterday – clone, concentration camp, gene, depression – except that the decade was not the 1990s; these words (0) ... current in the 1900s

The Guinness Book of the Twentieth Century cites lists of buzzwords for each decade of the last century. At the outset of the 20th century, few people would have guessed that it (1). more language change than ever before. Of course, before the days of the communications revolution language evolved much more slowly. Many days of the days (2). language not to change at ali, but that is an unrealistic dream in the age of the global village.

Words you (3). every day, such as chatline and trainers, (4) ... only thirty years ago. And a word as universal as teenager gained common currency only in the 1940s. Words change in meaning too: a scientist in the 1960s (5) .. clone to refer only to plants. And anyone who asked '(6) .. we watch the soap tonight?' would have encountered total incomprehension before the Second World War. (Soap was what you washed with.)

There is a more worrying side to this if you consider that new coinage reflects the society it comes from. Only twenty years ago few people (7). stalking, ethnic cleansing or road rage - concepts that the world (8). perhaps be better without. It (9). nice to think that the 21st century (10)... us happier words, but don't hold your breath!

0	(A)	would have been	В	word be	C	w.l. have been
	-	with the		brought	C	would bring
		would rather	В	wo ca prefer	(	wil prefer
3	Α	wilhear	В	will be hearing	C	WI have neard
4	Α	would not have been recognised	В	would not be recognised	C	will not recognise
5	Α	wowdn't understand	В	will be understanding	C	would have understood
6	Α	Won't	В	Wo ild	C	Shall
7	Α	shall have understood	В	would have understood	C	will have understood
8	Α	would	В	w t	C	shal
9	Α	wil be	В	ed b Low	(	would have been
10	Α	would bring	В	would have brought	C	will bring

Read the statements from people who have or have had a disadvantaged life. Complete the sentences, expressing the people's desires and regrets about the past. Use the word in brackets.

- O We don't have running water in our homes. We have to collect water from the stream or from a pipe in the village. (like)
  - Aisha would like to have running water in her home
- 1 We we hawooden shack outside the city. It's very small but eight of us the in it. It's my dream to live in a real house. (prefer)

  Pedro
- 2 In my country we have to pay for med cine and a lot of people can't afford it. The government should provide free medicine. (like)

  Esther
- 3 Every day I go into the town and I beg in the streets for money. Obviously I don't like going begging, but we need the money. (rather)

  Sun-Li ......
- 4 I wear the same clothes every day I look at mode's it magazines and I mivery envious of the it beautiful clothes. (be nice)
  Hana thinks it
- 5 I I ve in a viriage just outside a big ity. The village's OK but not people from the city come and dump their rubbish in our village. It's dreadful! (wishes)

  Sunil
- 6 I didn't go to school. My fan ly couldn't afford to serid me. So now can only get a badly paid job It's such a pity, because I enjoy learning new things. (been good)

  Maria thinks it

# 6 ALL

There are nine more mistakes in this text connected with the language in this unit. Underline the mistakes and correct them.

- 1 I'll never forget the day my life changed. It was a normal day in those days I
- 2 shall do my nomework straight after school so that I could go and listen to pup
- 5 music at Janice's after dinner. So I was sitting in front of the fire, trying to keep.
- 4 warm Mum was ironing, I looked at the clock.
- 5 'Dad's late,' I remarked to Mum.
- 6 'It's Thursday, He'd be visiting Granny.'
- 7 My grandmother lived in a cold, draughty cottage on the moors. Mum and
- . Dad wanted her to move in with us, but our house was very small, and she won't
- 3 They knew that the cold winter months would have hastened her death she
- already suffered from chronic bronchitis but she was a stubborn old woman
- who will insist on her independence.
  - Won't it be nice if we had some money? We could buy a big house and
- Granny could have a flat of her own in it. I hate being poor.'
- Oh, pet, I shan't say we're poor. We're not as well off as some, but we've got a roof over our heads and food in our bellies.' Mum would always see the best in every situation. It really annoyed me! 'Will I make a nice cup of tea? Your Dad would be frozen when he gets in. He'll want to save the bus fare so mosure he's walked all the way from your grandmother's.'

At that moment, the door opened and Dad walked in, waving a slip of paper.

Forget the tea, Mary. We're going out tonight. First prize in the lottery.

Me re rich!

d'outet

# Round up: Units 16–18

# **Modal verbs**

Modal verk	15			
function	time	form	example	
ability	present	can	She can speak Spanish but she can't speak	16.1A
		is/are able to	Despite his handicap he is able to drive a car.	
	past	could	Mozart could play the plano at the age of five.	16.1B
		was/were able to	Mike's car broke down but he was able to repair it	
possibility	present	may, might. could	There <b>may</b> be life on Mars.  The rash <b>could</b> be a symptom of something more serious	16.2A
	past	could have, might have	She might have done it; she had the opportunity and the motive.	16.2B
	future	will be able to	We'll be able to travel to the moon but we won't be able to travel to Mars.	16.2C
arrangements	future	can, could,	The doctor could see you at six; he can't see	
		be able to	you before then as he's too busy.	16.3A
permission	present/ future	can, can't	'Can I use your phone?' 'No, I'm afraid you can't	16.4A
	past	allowed to	I was allowed to leave early yesterday.	16 4B
obligation	present	have (got) to must need (to) should	Students have (got) to wear school uniform here I must get up earlier.  Do we need to get a visa for the USA?  You should respect your neighbours.	17.18 17.18 17.18 17.18
	past	had to	We had to report to reception by four	17.1B
	future	will have to, will, need to	We'll have to/'ll need to get our visas sorted out	
necessity	present	must, have to, need to	All human beings must/have to/need to have enough sleep	17.1C
	past	had to. needed to	Cave dwellers had to/needed to hunt in order to survive	17 1C
	future	will have to, will need to	You'll have to/'ll need to work harder than that	17.1C
prohibition	present/ future	must not cannot, may not should not	You mustn't touch that kettle! Guests can't/may not use the pool after 11 p.m You shouldn't speak to me like that!	17.2B 17.2B
	past	could not	We couldn't go because we were too young.	17.2B
past criticism		should (not) have	You <b>shouldn't have driven</b> through that red light	17.2B

function	time	form	example	
absence of obligation	present	do not have to, do not need to	You don't have to/don't need to pay to visit most museums in Britain	17.3B
or necessity	past	did not have to, did not need to, need not have	You didn't have to/didn't need to finish the job. We needn't have taken sweaters as it was so warm there.	17.3B
	future	will not have to, will not need to	You won't have to/won't need to ask the doctor to sign this form.	17.3B
advice/ recommendation	present/ future	must should had better	You really must read 'Birdsong'! You should consider a private pension. You'd better change the locks straight away	17.4B 17.4B 17.4B
logical deduction	present/ future	must, have to cannot	This must/has to be the place. This amount can't be correct.	17.5B 17.5B
	past	must have cannot have	That noise <b>must have been</b> an explosion. She <b>can't have done</b> it – she wasn't even here.	17.5B 17.5B
probability	present/ future	should	The plane <b>should</b> be landing now.	17.5B
	past	should have	What's happened to the boys? They <b>should</b> have arrived hours ago	17.5B
certainty	present	will	It won't be warm at this time of year	18 1C
	past	will have	They'll have received the invitations by now	18.1D
routines	present	will	He'll come in and he'll start giving instructions.	18.2A
	past	would	He'd come in and he'd start giving instructions.	18.2B
habits	present	will	The public will always side with the nurses	18.2A
	past	would	Dad would always tell me how to run my life	18.2B
characteristics	present	will	The stadium will hold about 110,000 people	18.2A
	past	would	The car wouldn't start on cold mornings.	18.28
willingness/	present	will, won't	The doctor will act as a witness.	18 3A
refusal	past	would, wouldn't	The shop wouldn't change this jumper.	18.3B
other functions	present/ future	will, shall	I'll wash up this evening Shall I wash up this evening?	18.4A
		shall	Shall we go out for a curry?	18 4B 18.4C
		will would	Will you give me a call? Would you fill in this form, please?	18.4C
		will, shall	You will/shall all stay after school tonight	18.4D
hypothetical desires	present/ future	would	It would be nice to live by the sea	18.5A
	past	would have	It would have been a good idea to notify us in advance	18.58

# Auxiliaries, have (got), do

Be, have and do can be used as main verbs (I have a new car) or as auxiliary verbs (I have sold my old car). We use forms of have as auxiliary verbs in perfect tenses, forms of be in continuous tenses and passives, and forms of do in questions and negatives. In this unit we look at these auxiliary functions, at the use of have and do as main verbs, the use of do for emphasis, and at have and have got.

#### **AUXILIARY VERBS**

19 1A. There are three aux liary verbs in Engish have he and do. We use have and be to uses make perfect, continuous and passive forms of tenses.

I haven't seen her for ages.

John is working very hard these days.

The flat is watched by the surveillance team twenty-four hours a day.

We use forms of do to form questions integatives and negative questions in the present and past simple:

Do you enjoy going to the theatre?

Did they like the new place?

The thermostat doesn't work any more

We didn't go to Corfu after all.

Doesn't the thermostat control the heating?

Didn't you go to Ibiza?

- We don't use auxiliary verbs with modal verbs, e.g. must, can, should:
  - x Do we must pay excess baggage on this?
  - ✓ Must we pay excess baggage on this?
  - \* We didn't could wear high heels at my old school
  - ✓ We couldn't wear high heels at my old school.
- We don't askally repeat the same's abject and a ix-lary verbing a sentence. [We were watching television and we were laughing at Mr Bean's antics.]
  - ✓ We were watching television and laughing at Mr Bean's antics.

We sometimes omit auxiliary verbs in newspaper headlines.

Terrorist arrested in dawn raid. (= A terrorist was arrested ...)

We often omit subjects and address or some are ariting notes or postcards.

Enjoying my holiday. Flying back next week. (= I am enjoying ... I am flying ...)

But we don't omit auxiliaries if doing so would make the meaning unclear:

[Dave going to come to party but tied up ] (= Dave is coming )

✓ Dave was going to come to the party but he's tied up. (= Dave isn't coming.) We also use be have and do as substitute words in text ( 35.2B, 35.3B) and in inversion (▶ 34.3B)

forms

19.1B We often contract not and the auxiliaries now and be. In writing we use an apostrophe Contracted (') to represent the missing letter(s):

full form	is	are	has	have	had	not
contracted form	's	're	's	've	'd	n't

We don't combine contracted auxiliaries with a contracted form of not-

I have not seen it.

\* I'ven't seen it \( \sqrt{ | haven't seen it or. I've not seen it.

But in spoken English and when we represent speech in writing we can combine contracted auxiliaries, e.g. 've, and contracted not with modal verbs-

He shouldn't've done it. (= He should not have done it.)

You may near ain t instead of amilistare not used in conversation and in popular. songs. This form is considered incorrect by most English speakers:

[I ain't going to the party ] (= I am not going to the party.)

- We don't contract was:
  - X He's watching television when she arrived
  - He was watching television when she arrived.

In formal English we don't use contractions when there is more than one subject.

- \* The Army and the Navy've launched a recruitment drive.
- ✓ The Army and the Navy have lounched a recruitment drive.
- 1 The contraction for has and is is the same is Similarly the contraction for had and would is the same: 'd. The context tells us which auxiliary is being used:

He's taken a long lease. (= has taken) He's taking a holiday. (= is taking) He'd known her for ages ( hacknown) He d know what to do (= would know)

- We usually avoid using contractions in very formal English: [Clauses 10-15 don't apply in the case of valuables stolen from vehicles.]
  - ✓ Clauses 10–15 do not apply in the case of valuables stolen from vehicles.

#### **EMPHASIS**

19.2A. To make a sertence, which includes an arxillary, more emphatic in speech we stress Stressing the the auxiliary verb (underlined in the examples): auxiliary

Fancy seeing you again. It has been a long time!

Don't beat around the bush. Did you or didn't you take it?

That holiday's done wonders; you are looking well!

But if the auxiliary is preceded by a modal verb then we stress the modal: That's absolutely ridiculous; you must have seen something!

19.2B Present simple and past simple phrases which do not contain an aloxiliary can be made more emphatic by adding a form of do: Inserting do

I'm very sorry sir. We do try our post to comply with most passenger requests The witness is hazy on the details, but she did notice a scar on his forearm.

We can also emphasise imperatives with do:

Do shut up

We often use this pattern to make polite suggestions or offers:

Do sit down and make yourself comfortable

Do let me help you with that heavy case.

#### HAVE AND DO

have and do as main verbs

19.3A Have and do can be used in the same way as other main verbs.

He didn't have any brothers or sisters. When do you do the washing?

in British English we can use have without auxiliary do in questions and negatives Has the government any real intention of addressing the crime problem head on? I haven't a clue what they're talking about.

• We don't issually use the passive of mair verbinare. When we do it has the meaning 'be tricked or cheated'.

You paid \$100 for a T-shirt! You've been had! (= You've been cheated.)

Have and do can combine with particles to make multi-word verbs (▶ Unit 14):

You re having me on! I don't believe he's going to do the house up by himself (For have/get something done and have somebody do something ▶ 8.3A)

Meanings of have

19.3B We use have to describe many different states leig possession, inclusion, relationship ings of The chairman of the board has a Gulfstream executive jet (possession)

Our latest computer will have a number of upgradeable components (nc us.on) I have two older brothers. (relationship)

(We do not use *nave* in continuous or passive forms with these meanings 19.4A.) We can use *have* + noun to talk about experiences and actions:

He has a headache every time he eats blue cheese (- He suffers from a headache We're having chicken with cashew nuts. (= We're eating chicken ...)

We can use have + noun when we want to give extrainformation by using adjectives. They raced up the hill. The race was exhausting.

They had an exhausting race up the hill

I'm going to swim in the sea tomorrow. It will last a long time and be invigorating. I'm going to have a long, invigorating swim in the sea tomorrow.

Sometimes we use *have* + noun when there is no single verb in English for the action or experience we want to describe (For more about *have* and *take* + noun 20 1C). You have an appointment with the accountants at four.

I had a brainwave on the bus coming here

The children often have nightmares after thunderstorms

Won't have and wouldn't have can be used to mean 'not tolerate': I won't have anyone smoking in my house.

19.3C Do can have several meanings. We often use do to talk about actions in general:

Meanings of

do

What did you do this morning?

We can use do meaning 'carry out/complete a task':

Sarah's doing something for her boss. (= is carrying out a task)

Right. That's done at last (= A task has been completed.)

There are many fixed expressions with do.

What does he do? (= What's his job?)

That child could do with a good telling off. (= deserves/needs)

Five minutes will do if you're rushed for time. (= be sufficient)

(For different expressions with make and do ▶ 20.1B)

# 9.4

#### HAVE GOT

19 4A have got = have We use have got as an atemative to have to express possession and similar states in the present ( 19.3B). Have got is more common than have in informal British English [He has a car but he hasn't a garage to keep it in.]

✓ He's got a car but he hasn't got a garage to keep it in.

In formal written English we can use have got, but have is more usual.

[Applicants have got three months in which to complete and return the forms.]

✓ Applicants have three months in which to complete and return the forms.

• We usually use a form of nave not have got to talk about past or future possess on [I had got a pet labrador when I was a child.]

✓ I had a pet labrador when I was a child. (= possessed)

[I'm going to have got a nice cottage by the seaside when I retire.]

✓ I'm going to have a nice cottage by the seaside when I retire (going to possess)

• Have got and have do not have continuous or passive forms when they mean 'possess':

★ He is having (got) a car ★ A car has been got by him ✔ He has got a car In US English have got is used mainly in speech, and the negative and question forms are not common.

(For have (got) to to express obligation, etc ▶ 17.1B)

have got ≠ have

19.4B Have got's also the present perfect form of the verb get. It can mean has become, has obtained, has received, etc. Compare:

She's got/has a degree in chemistry and works at the lab. (= possesses) She's just got a degree and hopes to get a job in a lab. (= has just obtained) We can use have got as an infinitive with these present perfect meanings but not with

the meaning of 'possess':

perfect infinitive

- ✓ I hope to have got the results by March ( to have obtained).
- X She has always wanted to have got a car. ( = to possess)

modal/auxiliary verb + perfect infinitive

- ✓ Sne must have got a terrible snock (must have received).
- \* Members can have got two cards each. (= possess)
- ✓ She will have got the keys by next week. (= will have obtained)
- **★** While she is working for Blake's, Cassandra will have got a company car (= possess)

We can use had got with the meaning 'had obtained/received', etc:

He'd got a certificate from the winter some word claim sick pay (= mad ontained) In US English the past participle form of let when it means has become obtained received', etc. is gotten:

Hollywood movies have gotten more and more violent in recent years. We don't use have got in these ways

to describe actions

\* Can you answer the phone? I've got a shower-

✓ Can you answer the phone? I'm having a shower

in short answers [ellipsis ► 35.3]

'Do you have/Have you got anything vegetarian?'

\* 'Yes, we have got ' V'Yes, we do/have.'

in tag questions ( ▶ 7.2) × You've got two brothers, haven't you got?

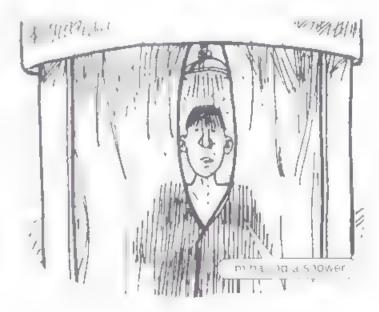
✓ You've got two brothers, haven't you?

with used to

★ We used to have got a place in the country.

✓ We used to have a place in the country





# Practice

# 19.4

There is one auxiliary verb missing from each of these sentences. Rewrite the sentences using a suitable auxiliary verb Whenever appropriate, use contracted forms If two contracted forms are possible, in conversational speech for instance, write both.

- O He could not seen them do it.

  He couldn't have seen them do it.

  He couldn't re seen them do it.
- 1 I been waiting here for nours
- 2 They trying to find a nice note for two hours astingnt
- 3 She will not returned by the time the show starts
- 4 Protection under this policy not include items of an aggregate value exceeding \$500
- 5. He might not known that it was you at the door
- 6 their boss not realise that they are under a of of pressure?
- 7. James got better despite the fact that he not been taking his medication for weeks.
- 8 she not appreciate how upset he was?
- 9. We regret to inform you that the bank unwilling to extend credit facilities in this case
- 10 Hilary not expecting you until this evening.
- 11 They really should told you about their decision.
- 12 The documents requested from your solic tor have not received and we are therefore obliged to cancel your contract forthwith.

# 2 19.2

The words in these sentences have been jumbled up. Write the sentences correctly then match them to the descriptions in the box.

- A Emphatic sentences B Imperatives C Suggestions/offers
- 0 seat/do/a/take

Do take a seat

- 1 to/drink do yourself he pla
- 2 himse f to/behave did, promise he in future
- 3 attent on do young pay man

4	good/run/enjoy/the/park/the/dog/a/does/around
5	off do your/take feet table the
6	quiet keep do
7	us.come join dorand
8	go at yourself home make
9	a lot manage Jane did to lose of weight quite
10	Disney/the/the/do/children/love/really/channel
Fo	19.3 r each of the sentences below, write a new sentence as similar as possible in meaning to the ginal sentence, but using the word given in bold. The word must not be altered in any way.
0	He's going to restore the house himself
1	I don't know what the answer is.
2	Don't forget you are due to see the sales manager at ten o'clock.  appointment
3	Does Your Honour have any further instructions on this matter?  has
4	How does Clare earn a living?
5	She won't allow anybody to use bad anguage at the dinner table
6	He's been deceiving you.
7	on State of the st
	Will this piece of fabric be suitable for the new curtains?

9 You've been tricked!

done

having

10 It isn't quite finished yet.

11 What was on the menu for your staff lunch last week?

12 I think he's in the middle of an asthma attack

The following dialogue and the hotel brochure below each contain at least six phrases which can be replaced by forms of have or have got. Find the phrases and rewrite them. Use contractions whenever appropriate, and only use have if have got is either not appropriate or not grammatically correct.



	SARA	New hairstyle, Liz?	1
	LIZ	Yes. I use this marvellous new hairdresser.	2
	SARA	Really?	3
	LtZ	Mm. Jane Lindsay, she owns a place in the high	4
		street	5
	SARA	But I thought you went to that place next to the post office	6 1
	LIZ	No, I used to, but the woman who did my hair emigrated to Australia last month.	8
	SARA	Oh? Well, your new woman's certainly very original! Your hair contains extensions, doesn't it?	10 11
	LIZ	Yes, they're great, aren't they?	1.2
11.	SARA	Very distinctive. I've always wanted to possess	13
The state of the s		extensions but I've never had the nerve to ask for them. Was it expensive?	14 15
Not really. She's doing a special	offer	You can receive timee in stying sessions for the	16
price of two - if you bring a frien	d alor	ng.	17

18

19

24

25

26

27

28

29

30

31

32

# Glenforth Dotel

SARA

1/

Bring a friend?

Situated in the heart of the beautiful Scottish Highlands, the Glenforth Hotel offers 20 the discerning guest the ultimate in luxury and gracious living. 21

Yes. There is an appointment for you there at two oir ock tomor ow afternoon. My treat

Dining We possess a Miche in starred restaurant aftering the best in cordon ofeu-22 cuisine featuring a variety of locally-sourced organic ingredients. 23

Leisure facilities Would you enjoy indulging in a relaxing swim or sauna? Our guests can obtain free membership of the adjacent Glenforth Health Centre which includes a fully-equipped gymnasium, heated indoor pool and sauna/steam rooms.



Bahysitting service If your family contains small children you will be able to take advantage of our unique babysitting service. We employ several fully-qualified local nannies who are able to take care of your children for an evening.

Sports For those of our guests that enjoy fishing, the hotel has acquired the fishing rights on a three-mile stretch of the river Glenswift, which is teeming with a large number of salmon, trout and bream.

(Note in formal written texts like the one above it would be considered inelegant style to use the same words, e.g. have and have got, too often.)

Line 2 Ive got this marvellous new hairdresser



# Choose the most appropriate form (A or B) to complete each sentence.

	A They were B They're				
2	The committee is of the opin on that such a case provided for under Article 7 of the treat A is not B isn't				
3	You're guite wrong I know it was dark but he really the outline of the burg aris face. I i sure of it!				
	A saw B did see				
4	Listen, Burt. He done it. He's been with me at the betting shop all day.'  A couldn't've B could not have				
5	Mandy's marrying old Benson? You're me on!  A having B doing				
6	Crents wishing to take up this offer must an address within the European Union  A have B have got				
7	You ought to visit Emily; a wonderful flat overlooking the river.  A she got B she's got				
8	OK then. The rear stalls if you haven't got any seats in the front circle.  A will do B do				
9	He's got one of those new WAP mobile phones,				
0	Today's nead mes. British and French authorities a joint anti-smuggling initiative.  A 've announced B have announced				
	He told you he was a millionaire and you believed him! You've!  A been done B been had				
2	The great thing about Laura is that she's always been able a laugh at her own expense.  A to have B to have got				
3	I look a mess, I could really a new haircut.  A do B do with				
4	Once the computer centre is built the college is hoping to a steady stream of applicants eager to improve their computing skills.  A have got B have				
	I couldn't tell you what Bill looks like now, we seen him for ages.  A 'ven't B haven't				

# Confusing verbs

Some pairs of verbs in English are subtly different from each other and so can be a source of confusion for learners. This is because the pairs, eig make and do lay and lie, have similar meanings but are used to describe different kinds of actions or situations. These are false synonyms. In other cases there are verb pairs which cause problems because we use them to describe similar situations even though they have opposite meanings, eig borrow and lend. These are opposite pairs in this unit we look at the verb pairs witch are most often confused. (For say and tell. Unit 9)

## **FALSE SYNONYMS**

Several verbs appear to have similar meanings but are used differently.

20.1A Make often means 'create' or 'produce':

make and do

Aunt Alice is going to make the bridesmaids' dresses.

Gouda cheese is made in Holland

Make often expresses the idea of building and constructing-

The multinationals are making a lot of products if the developing world these days We also use make to describe a process of change. The meaning is similar to 'become or 'cause to be':

The spare bedroom has made a wonderful office to Deirdre ( . has become)

Those new drugs seem to make him very lethorgic. (= cause him to be)

Make + object + infinitive (without to) means 'force' or 'command':

The police officer made me empty my pockets.

Make has a number of idiomatic meanings such as it aim and keep an appointment He makes \$1000 a week on the oil rigs.

I can't make it on Friday; I'm in a meeting all day

We often use do to describe an activity or to mean learry out complete a task'

What are we going to do for your birthday? (= take part in an activity) You can go out after you've done your homework. (= you've completed)

(For more information about the uses of do ▶ Unit 19)

We can use do + determiner + ing form to describe regular tasks at nome or at work There isn't much in the fridge as I haven't done the shopping yet.

We do the stocktaking every Wednesday morning.

with make and do

20.1B There are several multi-word verbs with Expressions make or do (▶ Unit 14).

> Don't believe a word he said, he made it all up. (= invented)

The government did away with the death penalty in the sixties.

(= abolished)

- There are a number of fixed expressions with either make or do
  - x It's time to do a decision
  - ✓ It's time to make a decision.
  - \* Who made your hair?
  - ✓ Who did your hair?



Here are some of the most common expressions with make and do. (Note that in the table below, sb = somebody and sth = something.)

#### make

a noise an exception an attempt an offer an excuse an appearance a plan a fire an appointment (= arrange) a point a fortune arrangements friends (with sb) a profit a bed a (phone) call a fuss progress a promise a charge (for sth) a gesture a remark a choice a good/bad job of sth a habit of sth a sound a comment a speech a contribution a journey a start (on sth) a list a decision a suggestion a living a difference time (for sth/sb) a discoveru love trouble a mess an effort war an enemy of sb a mistake a will an enquiry money

#### do

have

an/no/any idea

an experiment the laundry your best (= try hard) military service sb a favour business (with sb) good (= help other people) research the cleaning/cooking/ sb some good (= make sb the shopping ironing/washing (up) better/healthier) sport a course your teeth (= brush/clean) your hair/face/nails some damage well/badly (= be harm the dishes successful/unsuccessful) the homework/housework your duty yourself an injury an exam/a test an/some exercise a job

+ noun

20 1C We can describe some actions with either have or take, in other cases we only use one have/take of these verbs:

take

lunch/dinner/ account of part (in) an appointment a photo(graph) action (= an existing a meal advantage (of) place a quarrel arrangement) a breath power an argument a race precedence a row care (of) a baby a chance a care althe right (to) a decision a chance (to do a say (for) something to a dislike to sth)

a holiday/ a vacation (over) responsibility a look a nap a rest sth/sb a risk eat a chat a seat effect root a talk a dance sides (with sb) exception (to) a SID a drink a think a stroll the form of a step/steps (no/the) time an effect (on the trouble (to) a swim medicine/drugs a wash sth) uears/months/ a word (with) a message a fall weeks/days/ offence (at sth) a fit hours, etc. a go

have or take

a bath/shower

an exam/test

a break

a quess

beenlaone

20.1D The two past participle forms, gone and been, are used with similar but slightly different meanings. In British English we use been, not gone, when we express the idea of visiting or going somewhere and then leaving or returning:

Jane's just got back. X She's gone to the doctor's.

✓ She's been to the doctor's. (= She went and then came back).

We use gone not been, when someone has gone somewhere but not yet come back Jane isn't here right now. X She's been to the doctor's.

She's gone to the doctor's. (= She went there and hasn't returned ) For both of these situations, gone is commonly used in US English.

20.1E To lay expresses an action it means to put something or someone down in a flat position. To lie describes a state of being in a horizontal position. Compare: laullie

You will find the process easier if you lay all the parts on a worksurface (action)

I think I'll just **lie** on the sofa until my headache goes. (state/position)

There is also the verb lie meaning 'to say something that isn't true':

That child lies all the time. (= says things which are not true)

Notice that these three verbs have different forms:

infinitive	past tense	past participle	present participle
lay (= action)	laid	laid	laying
lie (= state)	lay	lain	lying
lie (= tell lies)	hed	lied	lying

They've laid new carpet throughout the house.

We've been laying artificial grass on the new football pitch.

We found the old photographs lying in a drawer.

Yesterday I was so tired that I lay on the ped all morning (past simple of lie)

20.1F speak/talk

Speak and talk have very similar meanings and are often equally appropriate-I'm going to talk/speak to my teacher about it after the lesson.

We usually use speak, not talk for formal speeches when a person in authority is addressing an audience.

- **X** The Prime Minister talked to Parliament this morning.
- Before the election the President spoke to the nation on television.

We use speak, not talk, to refer to languages:

- x Anatoly talks English with an accent \(\varphi\) Anatoly speaks English with an accent We use talk for long conversations:
- ★ We were up half the night speaking! ✓ We were up half the night talking! There are a number of expressions with speak or talk:

Could you speak up. I can't hear you. (= talk louder)

I'd like to talk about our new sales strategy. (= explain/discuss)

You're talking nonsense. (I strongly disagree with what you are saying )

raise/rise/ arise

20.1G Raise refers to the action of someone or something I fting, increasing or moving something else in an upward direction. To rise only refers to the movement itself

The government has been urged to raise corporation tax rates to match those in other European Union states. Rates are predicted to rise by ten per cent

- Because raise refers to an action done to something or someone else it always has a direct object:
- x Fares will raise next year. ✓ They will raise the fares next year.

Rise cannot have an object:

**X** They will rise the fares next year. ✓ Fares will rise next year.

In formal English we somet mes use arise to refer to problems or difficulties occurring Tissue rejection is a problem which can arise in this procedure.

Arise does not have an object:

x Let's hope nobody arises that issue ✓ Let's hope that issue doesn't arise Note that these verbs have different forms:

infinitive	past tense	past participle	present participle
raise	raised	raised	raising
rise	rose	risen	rising
arise	arose	arisen	arising

20.1H We use rob to refer to the person or place that suffered the robbery, we use steal to rob/steal refer to what was taken:

\* Thieves stole my uncle.

✓ Thieves robbed my uncle.

★ A gang stole the head office. 

✓ A gang robbed the head office.

★ They robbed his gold watch. ✓ They stole his gold watch.

We can use the preposition from to link steal to a person or place:

Colonel Blood stole the crown jewels from the Tower of London in 1665.

We can use the preposition of to link rob with the thing which was taken:

No man has the right to **rob** another **of** his freedom.

## **OPPOSITE PAIRS**

Some verbs act as 'mirror images of each other. They describe the same event from different sides.

20.2A borrow/lend

If you want to use something that be ongs to someone else you can borrow it from them. The owner of something can lend it to you for a certain period:

'Dad, could we borrow your electric drill? Sorry I've already lent it to Michael '

bring/take (and fetch)

20.2B Bring means to take someone or something with you to the place you are now, to your home, or to the place/event you have been talking about:

I've brought the pliers you said you needed

When are you going to bring your new boyfriend to meet us? (to our house) Jane and I got lost on the top of the mountain and we had to stay there till morning Fortunately Jane had brought some food and water.

Take means to move someone or something away from the place you are now, away from your home or away from the place event you have been talking about

I can't find the cheque book - Dennis must have taken it when he left this morning When are you taking me to meet your parents? (away from here to their home)

The choice of verb depends on the situation of the speaker:

Are you bringing your scuba gear? (on our holiday)

Are you taking your scuba gear? (on your holiday)

I brought the car to work today. (I am at work now.)

I took the car to work today. (I am not at work now.)

Fetch means to collect someone or something from another place and bring it to the place you are now, to your home or to the place you are talking about. We don't use bring with this meaning of 'collecting':

- Could you bring the children from school on Monday?
- ✓ Could you fetch the children from school on Monday? (- go to the school and bring) them home)

# Practice

## 20.1

### Rewrite the sentences using suitable forms of make or do.

- O What activities are you planning for next week?
- 1 Heavy rains have led to parts of the road becoming impassable.
- 2 We're going to have the roof repaired next spring.
- 3 It's all part of the research I'm carrying out for my dissertation
- 4 I'm rather busy this evening so I won't be able to meet you at the cinema.
- 5 The old pond has become a wonderful paddling pool for the kids.
- 6 How can you talk to me like that after all I've achieved for you!
- 7 Are you going to take any more aerobics classes?
- 8 In many countries women still earn less money than men for the same work.
- 9 They forced the hostages to walk for three days without food or water.
- 10 They've been producing Rolls Royce cars in the same factory for forty years

# 2 20.1

## Complete the sentences with a suitable form of have or take.

1 You somet mes have to wait a year or two for the plants to really root in the soil

What are you doing next week?

- 2 Unless a cheque is received by return of post we will have no option but steps to recover the disputed sums through the courts.
- 3 I can't nelp you with that I'm afraid I absolutely no idea when it comes to electrics
- 4 You want to become a doctor at your age? It years to get through a medical degree
- 5 Do you mind if I ...... a quick wash before we sit down to eat?
- 6 She's very worried about the takeover. Perhaps you should a chat with her about it
- 7 And what makes you think you ...... the right to lecture me on morality?
- 8 I'm not feeling too good today I the most almighty row with my girlfriend last night
- 9 In the latest developments in the civil war it appears that the rebel army power in the southern provinces.
- 10 I can't think why you're so reluctant to go. Come on, ... a risk for once!
- 11 We regret to announce that Alvin Claymore is unable . part in tonight's performance owing to ill health
- 12 The residents insist on their say, they're going to demand a public meeting with the housing committee.
- 13 With any luck the new policing in tative a positive effect on the appaling crime rate around here.
- 14 I know I'm o d-fashioned but I do exception to all the bad language on TV these days
- 15 You really can't put this off any longer you must a decision on the Know son case today



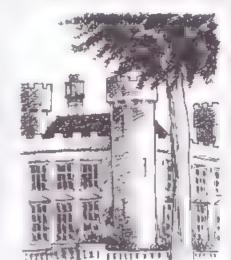
Replace each of the underlined phrases in the text with an expression containing a suitable form of *make* or *do* plus a word or phrase from the box. Add any necessary words. The first one is given as an example (0).

bad job charge decision fuss journey mistake promise start best good laundry research shopping trouble up

# HIGHLAND HELL

This month Jeremy Yegal's 'Hotel Road Test' is the Trent Castle Hotel in Scotland.

In the bad old days, Scottish country hotels had a reputation of being cold, draughty and dour places which tried hard to make their guests feel as unwelcome as possible. Well, the tourist industry has moved on and we at TravelDetective felt it was time to see if the winds of change blowing through the British hotel world had yet reached our northern extremities. From the catalogues and brochures, it



0 did their best

seems that every castle in Scotland has turned itself into a hotel, and it was difficult to reach a conclusion about which one to try. In the end we settled for a little-known but promising place deep in the Highlands.

So, tull of optimism, I travelled north on the overnight sleeper, jumped into a cab and headed east to the Trent Castle Hotel. I had <u>investigated</u> and I knew that the place had been converted from a sixteenth-century fortress about five years ago. From the outside it certainly looked the part with tall granite walls and looming turrets overlooking the dark waters of I ochtrent. But the owners had clearly <u>committed an error</u> with their work on the interior. Rather than warm and welcoming, it was just as grim and forbidding as the outside.

I got to my room and, always eager to test a hote.'s efficiency, I began by calling room service and asking for my clothes to be washed. It took forty-five minutes for the chambermaid to arrive, and when she did, she happily informed me that the hotel would impose a fee approximately equiva ent to the gross national product of the average third-world nation for each item of clothing I wished to have cleaned. Never one to complain, I politchy declined the offer of instant bankruptcy and decided to ask the woman about the possibility of an extra blanket or ten, as the temperature in my room was hovering around zero and it was only the middle of the afternoon. She guaranteed to bring one straight away, and that was the last I was to see of her for my entire visit.

Anxious to find some warmth, I decided to try out the hotel sauna, sure that some dry heat would be healthy for me. But when I asked the receptionist about the location of this heavily advertised facility, she looked at me as though I had invented it. 'Been closed for months,' she announced. 'It you want something to do you could always go out and buy some things, there's a lovely souvenir shop six miles down the road,' The prospect was deeply unexciting.

'Look,' I said, 'I don't want to cause difficulties, but the sauna is advertised in your brochure.'

'Oh, that thing's tull of mistakes,' she replied, 'The printers really messed it up.'
Rather like the owners, I thought to myself ...

2

4

5

7

8

9

10

11

12

13

14

# 20 4 20.1

In the following texts some lines (1-17) have a mistake with the verb and some lines are correct. Find and underline any incorrect verbs and write the correct verb form, then tick  $(\checkmark)$  the correct lines. The exercise begins with two examples (0) and (00).

## US RATE RISE

- The Chancellor returned from this month's meeting of the 'Group
- of Six' with news that interest rates are to be <u>rised</u> by an average of half a percentage point in the United States. While the Chancellor
- has gone in Dallas city markets have been feverish with rumours of
- even higher increases. The US dollar has been laying at an all-time
- low for several weeks and the American trade deficit has been rising steadily. The Chairman of the Federal Reserve has been to Tokyo to
- discuss the problems which have arose from pressure in Congress to
- 7 tackle the deficit. He will be in Japan until next Tuesday.

# raised

## PRICELESS TREASURE DISAPPEARS

- ... The Benton Horde, a priceless collection of ancient Roman silver, has
- disappeared from its display cabinet in the British Museum. At today's
- emergency press conference, Museum director Alan Woods talked of
- his theory that the treasures had probably been robbed by a professional
- gang on behalf of a specific collector as the silver is too well-known to be sold on the open market. Ten museums have been stolen in the last
- six months and the number has been raising steadily over the last few
- years. The Benton Horde is one of Britain's most important collections
- of Roman silver. It was found in 1926, having laid undiscovered for
- almost sixteen centuries beneath a Sussex field.

# 20.2

#### Choose the best word in italics for each sentence.

- 1 We'd better order a taxi to bring/take us to the airport next week
- 2 My uncle borrowed/lent me the money to buy my first car.
- 3 Shall I bring/take my holiday photos when I come over on Saturday?
- 4 Is there any chance of you bringing/fetching the kids from their swimming lesson tonight?
- 5 The car isn't here, I'm borrowing/lending it to my sister for the week.
- 6 My boyfriend went to Japan on a business trip and brought/took me a fantastic MP3 player
- 7 Can I borrowlend your dictionary? I left mine at home.
- 8 When my girlfriend left me she brought/took my entire CD collection.
- 9 Would you like me to fetch/bring your car from the garage this afternoon?
- 10 Is there any chance I could borrowllend your calculator over the weekend?

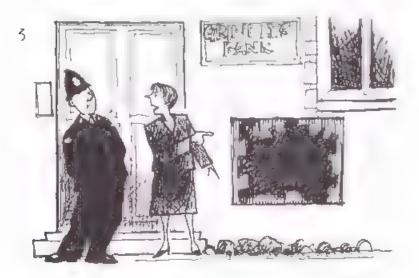
### Choose the correct label, A or B, for each picture.



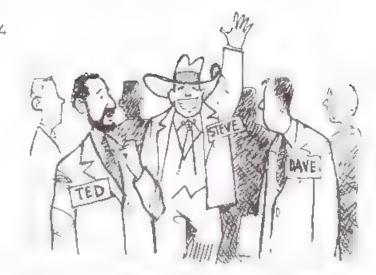
- A 'Of course I ove you darling, but when are you taking me to meet your parents?'
- B 'Of course I love you darling, but when are you bringing me to meet your parents?'



- A Poor Jenny, she always ends up doing the dishes.
- B Poor Jenny, she always ends up making the dishes.



- A They've robbed the cash machine, officer.
- B They've stolen the cash machine, officer.



A tim afraid Steve's just been to Texas Bitm afraid Steve's just gone to Texas



- A They're exhausted, they've been laying all morning
- B Iney re exhausted, they've been lying all morning.



A He's always borrowing her clothes.

B He's always lending her clothes.

# Adjectives

Adjectives in English seem straightforward as they do not change their form except when they are comparatives or superiatives ( Unit 22) But the different positions of adjectives, e.g. concerned residents or residents concerned, and the sequence of groups of adjectives can cause difficulty. This unit looks at these areas and at the use of participle and compound adjectives (For modification of adjectives Unit 23.)

# ADJECTIVE PATTERNS

use

21.1A Adjectives are words which give extra information about nouns. They do not change Form and their form to show number or gender:

> The hero was played by a **young boy** Several **young girls** took the secondary roles Many adjectives are formed from other words notice the spelling changes

+ ic	+ (i)al	+ able	+ ful	+ ent	+ ive
history → historic	politics → political	fashion → fashionable	beauty → beautiful	depend → dependent	effect → effective
+ ous	+ less	partici	ples (► 21.2A)	compounds	(► 21.2C)
danger → dangerous	hope	interes interes		home-made red-hot	

Adjectives can sometimes act as nouns when they describe a particular group or characteristic ( 28.1B) We usually use the definite article and a plural verb

Old people are becoming more numerous = The old are becoming more numerous

- We cannot use the possessive 's with adjectives used as nouns or make them plural.
  - \* The government is looking at the disabled's problems
  - ✓ The government is looking at the problems of the disabled.
  - X The Japaneses enjoy a high-standard of living.
  - ✓ The Japanese (or Japanese people) enjoy a high standard of living.
- When we make a brief comment in conversation we often use what + adjective + noun or how + adjective.

What an amazing story! X What amazing! ✓ How amazing!

21.1B Most adjectives can be used in front of a noun (attributive position) or after a linking Attributive verb, e.g be (predicative position):

- position Attributive: We've just seen an exciting film.
  - Predicative: That film was exciting

 But there are some adjectives which we usually only use in one position. Some. classifying adjectives (which describe what type of thing something is) and emphasising adjectives are mainly used before a noun (see the table below):

- X The plant they are building outside the town is chemical
- ✓ They're building a chemical plant outside the town.

## Adjectives usually used in attributive position.

chemical, chief, criminal, elder entire, eventual, former, industrial, local, classifying adjectives lone, main, maximum, medical national, nuclear, only, outdoor/indoor, principal, social, sole, underlying, whole

emphasising mere, sheer, utter adjectives

position

21.1C Adjectives in predicative position are usually the complement of a linking verbile given Predicative become, feel, seem ▶ 30.2B).

When she heard the noise Mary became very uneasy.

However after certain verbs of thinking and feeling (i.e. consider, find think) we ca omit the linking verb:

I consider/find him (to be) very reliable.

Many adjectives beginning with the letter a and adjectives describing health and feelings are not usually used before nouns, we use them in predicative position

- \* Try not to disturb the asleep children.
- ✓ Try not to disturb the children; they are asleep.

# Adjectives usually used in predicative position:

ablaze ofloat afraid alight alike, alive, alone, aloof, ashamea beginning with a

askew, asleep, awake, aware

content fine, glad, ill pleased poorly, ready sorry sure upset health and feelings

(un)well

There are some fixed phrases, doms in which we use normally predicative adje. before a noun with a special meaning leiging glad tidings, an ill wind in ready wit a state, an upset stomach.

Some predicative adjectives have equivalent words which can be used before a ne-They are doing experiments on live animals/animals which are alive.

Ill afraid alike asleep predicative alive SICK sleeping attributive live/living frightened sımılar

Adjectives after nouns, pronouns,

somewhere, etc.:

X I'm looking for cheap something ✓ I'm looking for something cheap

etc

Some adjectives including some ending in -able and lible can follow a noun if the r follows a superlative adjective or the first/last/next/only:

They say she's the oldest woman alive

I'm afraid that's the last ticket available.

Adjectives that are followed by a prepositional phrase leig interested in something suitable for somebody (> 15.5D), go after, not before, a noun:

- X The project will appeal to interested in ecology students
- ✓ The project will appeal to students interested in ecology.

This is similar to a reduced relative clause ( 31.16). We can also use a full relative clause with the adjective in predicative position (> 21.1C):

The project will appeal to students who are interested in ecology.

Some adjectives have a different meaning when used before or after a noun. The meeting was full of concerned residents. (= worried)

The students concerned were a small minority (- who took part were involved) I'm afraid we have opposite points of view. (= contrasting)

We used to live in the house opposite. (= physically facing/across from us)

The present chairman is getting on a bit. (= current/existing now)

We took a vote of all members present (= physically there)

Responsible parents have been outraged by this show (= caring/conscientious) The person responsible will be caught and punished (- who did the action)

He gave us a ridiculously involved excuse. (= complicated)

The president gave medals to all those involved. (= who took part)

21.1D We use adjectives after indefinite words, ke something, anyone, no one, nothing

# PARTICIPLE (-ING OR -ED) ADJECTIVES

21.2A We often use ing and -ed participles as adjectives. We usually use them in the same Position positions as other adjectives (► 21.1B):

A win, even by only one goal, would be a satisfying result.

I never find fast food very **satisfying**.

Recommendations from satisfied customers got our business off the ground We follow up every complaint from customers dissatisfied with our service Some participle adjectives (see the table below) can be used on their own before or after a noun:

The chosen song features innovative use of digital sampling The song chosen may be a disappointment to lovers of traditional ballads

U But some participle adjectives (see the table below) can only be used after a noun

X Please dispose of your cigarettes in the provided ashtrays.

✔ Please dispose of your cigarettes in the ashtrays provided

affected, chosen, identified, infected, before or after a noun

remaining, selected, stolen

applying, caused, discussed, found, only after a noun provided, questioned, taken

21.2B When we use participles as adjectives, -ing participles have an active meaning and -ed participles have a passive meaning-

I always seem to play for the losing team. (= the team which is losing)

She found the lost ring under the sofa. (= the ring which had been lost) We often use participles as adjectives to describe feelings or opinions. We use -ing

participles to describe a feeling that something causes: It was a frightening film. (= it frightened us/it made us feel afraid) We use -ed participles to describe a feeling that someone experiences:

I felt frightened when I watched that film (= I was frightened I experienced fear)

Inanimate objects cannot have feelings so we don't usually use ed adjectives about feelings to describe them:

\* The report into the Paddington rail crash was rather worried

✓ The report was rather worrying (= The report made readers feel anxious). We can use that/those with all part cipie adjectives with a meaning like the one/the ones that ' ( 28.2A, B) In this pattern we use that to refer to a thing and those to refer to things or people:

The easiest route is that taken by Amundsen (- the one which was taken by) Those living in temporary accommodation will be rehoused within three months (= those people who are living in)

I feel sorry for those left behind. (= Those people that are left behind.) (For more information on participles in phrases > Unit 13.)

21.2C We sometimes combine participles with other words to make compound agjectives. The participle usually comes last. Notice the use of hyphens when the compound adjective Compounds is used before a noun

> This Japanese maple is a particularly slow-growing variety Handel's 'Xerxes' was a rarely-performed opera until relatively recently Interest in Latino music is no longer confined to a **Spanish-speaking** audience The marines made a death-defying leap over the cliff edge.

# **GROUPS OF ADJECTIVES**

21.3A Adjective order

We often use more than one adjective to describe a noun. The order of adjectives generally follows this sequence of categories:

The 747's refurbished interior features fantastic soft grey leather seats

opinion+size+quality/character+age+shape+colour+participles+origin+material+type+purpose

For sale: small, old, French carriage clock.

We always put the category which is most permanent or important (usually 'type' or 'purpose') next to the noun:

- X The builders took out the gas heating antiquated system.
- ✓ The builders took out the antiquated gas heating system.

And we put opinion adjectives before all others:

- X I've just bought this new mobile fantastic phone.
- ✓ I've just bought this fantastic new mobile phone.
- We don't usually use more than three or four adjectives before a noun. If we want to give more information we can use additional clauses:

[It's a charming small nineteenth-century French brass carriage clock]

✓ It's a charming small French carriage clock made of brass and dating from the nineteenth century.

Paired adjectives

21.3B If two adjectives describe different parts of the same thing we put and between them

- X The chrome steel facade glinted in the sunlight.
- ✓ The chrome and steel facade g nted n the sunlight (- Some parts were chrome, some parts were steel.)

We always use and between two colours:

- \* The players will be wearing blue red shirts for this match.
- ✓ The players will be wearing blue and red shirts for this match.

We can use and between two adjectives which describe similar aspects of something.

She's looking for a stable and long-lasting relationship.

When two adjectives describe contrasting aspects of the same thing we put but, yet or though between them:

The flat was located in a rundown but central part of town.

Group therapy can be a simple yet effective solution to this sort of problem

21.3C Using commas and and When there are several adjectives in predicative position we usually put and before the last one:

I'm afraid the hotel was ancient, dirty and overpriced.

With longer lists of adjectives of the same category before a noun we can use commas and put and before the last adjective or we can simply list the adjectives

I found him a friendly, knowledgeable and dedicated guide.

I found him a friendly knowledgeable dedicated guide.

We don't use and before the last adjective when the adjectives are of different categories:

- \* We enjoyed sitting in the fantastic soft grey and leather seats
- ✓ We enjoyed sitting in the fantastic soft grey leather seats.

# Practice

The key to these exercises is on page 363



Use the word in the box to form an adjective that fits in the numbered space in the sentence. The exercise begins with an example (0).

	I have absolutely no interest inpolutical debates.		politics
1	Entry to the single currency zone is on meeting several financial criteria.	1	depend
2	Most public car parks now have special parking bays for the	2	able
3	John F Kennedy enjoyed a rise to fame in the 1960s.	3	meteor
4	Our lives are ruled by bureaucrats who seem to be answerable to no one.	4	face
5	It was more than funny, it was absolutely!	5	hysteria
6	People claim the rise of popular culture has had a effect on national identity.	6	destroy
7	There are few things more than people who shout at waiters.	7	disagree
8	They say the love their pets more than their children.	8	Britain
9	I've made my mind up and any attempt to change it is	9	point
10	The soil in this valley is particularly	10	fertility
11	As a teenager I went through a very phase.	11	argue
12	Unfortunately, a sense of moral duty seems to be becoming increasingly	12	fashion
	these days.		
13	Orange and lemon trees are in this part of Spain.	13	plenty
14	Two weeks in the Bahamas for less than a hundred dollars? That's!	14	believe
15	There's no point carrying on, the situation is	15	hope
16	The compass will only work when laid on a surface.	16	horizon
	That documentary on drug smuggling was a fine example of	1.7	investigation
	Dry cleaning is often the only way to deal with stubborn stains.		effect
	Some of his pathetic excuses were downright		laugh
	According to recent statistics the . have Europe's highest per capita income.		Holland

# 2 21.1

Look at these pairs of sentences. Tick ( $\checkmark$ ) those which are grammatically correct and cross (x) those which are incorrect. In some cases both sentences are correct.

Α	Cost is the chief factor.		В	The cost factor is chief.	
Α	This is the principal argument.	r	В	This argument is principal.	
Α	He had an ashamed feeling		В	He felt ashamed.	
Α	That's a ridiculous idea.		В	That idea is ridiculous.	
Α	The village has a local post office.		В	The village post office is local.	
Α	It was sheer madness.		В	The madness was sheer	
Α	You have a ready dinner.	-	В	Your dinner is ready.	
Α	He had an alone sensation.		В	He sensed he was alone.	
Α	We're building an indoor pool.		В	The pool we are building is indoor.	
Α	You have very alike children.		В	Your children are very alike	
Α	That was a silly comment.		В	That comment was silly.	
Α	She's a mere beginner.		В	That beginner is mere	
Α	They are afraid people.		B	Those people are afraid	
Α	We have maximum security here.		8	Here the security is maximum.	
Α	He's my ill brother		В	My brother is ill	
	A A A A A A A A A A A	A Cost is the chief factor.  A This is the principal argument.  A He had an ashamed feeling  A That's a ridiculous idea.  A The village has a local post office.  A It was sheer madness.  A You have a ready dinner.  A He had an alone sensation.  A We're building an indoor pool.  A You have very alike children.  A That was a silly comment.  A She's a mere beginner.  A They are afraid people.  A We have maximum security here.  A He's my ill brother	A This is the principal argument.  A He had an ashamed feeling  A That's a ridiculous idea.  A The village has a local post office.  A It was sheer madness.  A You have a ready dinner.  A He had an alone sensation.  A We're building an indoor pool.  A You have very alike children.  A That was a silly comment.  A She's a mere beginner.  A They are afraid people.  A We have maximum security here.	A This is the principal argument.  A He had an ashamed feeling  A That's a ridiculous idea.  B The village has a local post office.  B It was sheer madness.  B You have a ready dinner.  B He had an alone sensation.  C He had an alone sensation.  C He had an indoor pool.  C He had an alone sensation.  C He	A This is the principal argument.  A He had an ashamed feeling A That's a ridiculous idea.  B That idea is ridiculous.  B The village has a local post office.  A It was sheer madness.  A You have a ready dinner.  A We're building an indoor pool.  A You have very alike children.  A That was a silly comment.  B This argument is principal.  B He felt ashamed.  B That idea is ridiculous.  B The village post office is local.  B The madness was sheer  B Your dinner is ready.  B He sensed he was alone.  B The pool we are building is indoor.  B Your children are very alike  That was a silly comment.  B That comment was silly.  B That beginner is mere  C They are afraid people.  B Those people are afraid  B Here the security is maximum.

Indicate the correct position for the adjective or phrase in brackets, as in the example. The word the adjective/phrase describes is underlined.

- O There was nothing in the book.
- 1 Many of the portraits are in the Prado Museum.
- 2 There was something about her behaviour.
- 3 They gave an explanation which simply served to confuse the jury
- 4 I'm afraid six o'clock is the only appointment.
- 5 The state of affairs is unlikely to continue for much longer.
- 6 I'm afraid the person is on holiday at the moment
- 7 They've started having late night parties in the apartment.
- 8 Anyone would be deeply offended by that harrowing documentary
- 9 Don't worry about getting receipts, the amounts are very snall
- 10 Flower buds often turn black and rot away

(original)

(painted by El Greco)

(inexplicable)

(involved)

(available)

(present)

(responsible for recruitment)

(opposite)

(sensitive)

(concerned)

(damaged by frost)

# L

# 2102

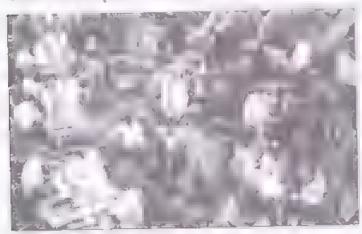
Study the numbered options in *italics* in this text Underline the correct options Note that in some cases both options are correct.

# Airport hell

Results of a recent survey of international air travellers have revealed (1) alarmed/alarming discrepancies in the levels of (2) comfort and service provided/provided comfort and service at many leading airports around the world. A

- (3) staggered/staggering 75 per cent of
- (4) interviewed those/those interviewed felt that airports were failing to provide a
- (5) relaxed/relaxing and efficient environment.

Airports in Britain and the United States came in for particular criticism. Fewer than one in ten people were fully (6) satisfied/satisfying with the (7) provided service/service provided at leading airports in these countries. Researchers point to the enormous growth in



passenger numbers in the last twenty years, a (8) continued/continuing trend which has not been reflected in a corresponding growth in airport facilities.

By contrast, airports in the growing economies of south-east Asia and the Pacific have received far higher satisfaction ratings. Many (9) questioned passengers/passengers questioned felt that these airports, which are generally more modern than their equivalents in the West, usually offered (10) enhanced/enhancing check-in facilities and a more pleasant environment when compared to their competitors.

A (11) discussed key factor/key factor discussed in the report is the way in which airports deal with flight delays. The better airports have found ways to cope with (12) bored/boring passengers, ranging from television lounges to children's activity areas. (13) Delayed/Delaying passengers seem to appreciate small details such as comfortable seating and the availability of a wide range of refreshments. (14) Affected passengers/Passengers affected were less likely to complain if their children were (15) amused/amusing and they were able to find inexpensive cafés and bars.

# 21 5 21.2

Improve these sentences by rewriting them using compound participle adjectives to replace the underlined phrases. Use suitable forms of one word from each box to form the compound adjectives and make any changes necessary to grammar and word order.

brilliant car digital home film fast Slow rare technology colour drive know manufacture visit enhance go grow make move

- O São Paulo is a city which is getting bigger very quickly...... São Paulo is a rapidly-expanding city.
- 1 Northumberland is a part of England which people don't go to very often
- 2 They were soon englifed by the water which was flowing very quickly
- 3 In recent times changes which are caused by technical developments have had a profound impact on working practices.
- 4 The oak is a tree which doesn't get bigger very quickly.
- 5 Australian parrots have plumage which is a mixture of bright red, ye low and green
- 6 The Midlands is Britain's main region that produces automobiles
- 7 The Hubble space telescope has produced pictures which are improved by electronic means that have amazed the public.
- 8 There is a segment of the public that visits cinemas that will always want to see corny adventure movies
- 9 The new wing will be opened by a TV personality whom many people have neard of
- 10 The desserts which are produced by ourselves are the main feature of our restaurant

# 21.5

Rewrite these jumbled sentences with the words in the correct order. As a clue the first word of the sentence has a capital letter.

- 1 wine/lt's/ancient/jar/a/Greek/priceless/ceramic
- 2 new/a/centre/Our/has/fantastic/school/state-of-the-art/computer
- 3 superb/textured/the/She/ten/sales/found/metres/dark/blue/of/velvet/in
- 4 Italian/It/upholstery/luxurious/features/leatner
- 5 orange/for/study/We've/a/lovely/chosen/inexpensive/and/walipaper/green/the



All these sentences contain mistakes. Find the mistakes and rewrite the sentences correctly. In some cases you may need to add, remove or change words; in others, you may need to change the word order.

- O The house was draughty, and damp cold.

  . The house was draughty, damp and cold.
- 1 Sylvia had a warm, gentle but friendly personality.
- 2 They've just bought a little Persian beautiful cat.
- 3 That documentary about racism was truly horrified.
- 4 This was the taken route by the original explorers
- 5 The wealtnies seem to have all the power in our capitalist societies.
- 6 The book is bound to appeal to fascinated by crime readers
- 7 We comforted the afraid children after their terr fying ordeal
- 8 On many quest ons my father and I have opin ons opposite
- 9 They ve chosen a blue yellow colour scheme for their kitchen
- 10 The injured bird appeared to have a breaking wing
- 11 The boat has an aluminium and glass fibre unique hul-
- 12 I'm afraid the city was noisy though overcrowded
- 13. A new form of licensing is the proposed by par lament solution
- 14 No punishment is severe enough for the respons ble person for these crimes
- 15 We are an action group acting on behalf of parents who are lone
- 16 It was difficult because we had to choose between two aske alternatives
- 17 Tali anyone will find these seats cripplingly uncomfortable
- 18 Living in Scotland viewers may experience poor recept on due to weather conditions
- 19 Karen found her new job to be well-paid and challenged
- 20 The movie is a moving fast account of events during the Gulf War

# Comparison

Gradable adjectives (= 23.1) can be used to make comparisons. The rules for the production of comparative and superlative forms of adjectives are generally straightforward but there can be difficulties with spelling, exceptions in use, and the different phrases which accompany them. This unit also describes ways of making comparisons without using comparative and superlative forms, eight with like and as



# COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE ADJECTIVES

22.1A Form and



We use comparative adjectives to compare two (or more) things or people, and super ative adjectives to distinguish one thing or person from a number of others. This table shows the forms of comparative and superlative adjectives and the basic patterns they are used in:

	comparative adjectives	superlative adjectives
adjectives with one syllable: cheap	adjective + -er (+ than) The hamburger is <b>cheaper</b> ( <b>than</b> the cheeseburger).	the + adjective + -est: The hot dog is the cheapest
ending in silent -e: safe	omit final -e: safer	omit final -e: the safest
ending in a consonant + y: dry	change y to i: drier	change y to i: the driest
ending in a single vowel + a single consonant. big	double the final consonant. bigger	double the final consonant the biggest
adjectives with two or more syllables.  expensive	more + adjective: The hamburger is more expensive (than the hot dog)	the most + adjective: The cheeseburger is the most expensive
irregular adjectives good/bad far old	better/worse further/farther older/elder	the best/worst furthest/farthest oldest/eldest

We can use than to introduce a clause after a comparative adjective:

Los Angeles is bigger than I expected it to be

We can use other phrases between a comparative adjective and a than clause Burgers were more expensive in this restaurant than in the others we visited. If the object of the comparison is a pronoun without a verb we usually use an object. pronoun (► 27.1D). If there is a verb we use a subject pronoun:

[I'm taller than he.] \(\nu\) I'm taller than him. \(\nu\) I'm taller than he is.

When we have two or more adject ves with more in a list, we usually only use more.

[Lester and Graves were more hardworking and more determined than the others]

✓ Lester and Graves were more hardworking and determined than the others When we refer to a place or group we use in not of after superlatives.

\* New York is one of the largest cities of the world. 
... in the world.

✗ He's by far the cleverest student of his class.
✓ ... in his class.

But in formal English we can put an of phrase at the beginning of the sentence before the superlative

Of the students in his class, he is the cleverest

# 22.1B Exceptions

There are some exceptions to the rules of form and the patterns of use listed above One syllable adjectives ending in -ed and the adjectives real, right and wrong form the comparative and superiative with more and most (they do not take -er and lest)

X I was boreder than I was on the flight to Sydney

✓ I was more bored than I was on the flight to Sydney.

Many two-syllable adjectives ending in -ig -g -ow r and I and the adjectives common, handsome mature pleasant porte simple and stupid can have either more and most or -er and -est:

The photographer wanted something more lively (or livelier).

Your son needs to develop a maturer or more mature) attitude to his work When we add a negative prefix to two syllable adjectives ending in y (e.g. happy unhappy) they can still take -er and -est:

He's the unhappiest man in the world

In informal spoken English we somet hes use a superlative adjective when we are only comparing two things, especially if the two things make a set:

I've got two cars but the Mercedes is the best

# Irregular adjectives

22.10 We can use elder and eldest (instead of older and oldest) to talk about people's ages. especially people in the same family but we can't use elder immediately after a verb Their eldest/oldest son went to Han aid. Mary is the eldest/the oldest.

X Mu sister is elder (than me). V My sister is older (than me).

Note that we don't use elder and eldest to talk about the age of things:

X This is the eldest house in the street V This is the oldest house in the street We use further or farther to talk about a 'greater distance':

John's house is the farther one

I've moved further away from my parents. (= a greater distance away)

We use further (not farther) with the meaning of 'extra' or 'more': Let me know if you have any further questions. (= extra/more)

# 22.1D Emphasis and strength

Most one sy lable adjectives can also form the comparative and superlative with more or most instead of -er or lest. We usually use this form for emphasis in spoken English. You should be more proud of the things you ve already achieved (= prouder)

I think this is the one she is the most proud of. (= proudest)

Comparatives can be made stronger or weaker by inserting a word or phrase in front of them:

- Stronger even (very) much, far a lot, lots (informal) considerably, a great deal (formal) + comparative:
  - The cheeseburger's even more expensive than the fishburger.
- Weaker a little slightly, a bit (informal), somewhat (formal) + comparative The hot dog's a bit cheaper than the hamburger.

We can make a superlative weaker or stronger in the same way.

- Stronger: by far, easily (informal) + superlative:
   He's by far the cleverest student in his class (= He's much cleverer than the others)
   She's easily the best programmer in the company (informal) (= She is much better
   than the others.)
- Weaker: one of, some of + superlative:
   New York is one of the largest cities in the world (- There may be some larger)

**22.1E** To say that two things are equal we can use patterns like is + no + comparative or is Equality not + any + comparative:

The fishburger is **no more expensive than** the hamburger ( They are the same price )
The fishburger **isn't any cheaper than** the hamburger (- They are the same price )

22.1F We use less and least as the opposite of more and most. We use these words with all less and adjectives including one-syllable adjectives:

I prefer the paisley pattern; it's less bold than the others.

The hot dog is the least expensive.

least

enough -

But in informal English we usually prefer to make negative comparisons of this kind with not as ... as (► 22.2B):

I prefer the paisley pattern; it isn't as bold as the others.

(For the use of more/most/less/least/ with nouns ▶ 25.4A, B.)

# ADJECTIVES WITH AS, SO, TOO, ENOUGH AND SUCH

22.2A We can say that two things are equal by using as + adjective + as (Also 22.3D) as as The hamburger is as expensive as the fishburger.

We make this comparison more emphatic with just-

We really shouldn't have gone it's just as bad as I predicted it would be!

To say that things are almost equal we use just about about almost or nearly.

I've had just about as much as I can take.

She's nearly as old as I was when I got married.

22.2B We make a negative comparison with not as/so + adjective + as:

not as as The hot dog isn't as expensive as the hamburger (- The hot dog is cheaper)
We can modify this comparison with nearly or quite.

The hot dog isn't nearly so expensive as the cheeseburger (- It is much cheaper)
The hot dog isn't quite as expensive as the namburger (- It is sightly cheaper)
In informal spoken English we can use not anything like nothing like or nowhere near + as + adjective:

The fishburger is**n't anything like as expensive as** the cheeseburger. The fishburger's **nothing like** (or **nowhere near**) **as expensive as** the cheeseburger.

22.2C We use another type of 'comparison' when we describe the result of a particular qualt.

so, too and or characteristic. We can use several structures:

• so + adjective + (that) clause:

I'm afraid I can't identify her It was so dark (that) I couldn't see her face (= It was very dark. The result was that I couldn't see her face.)

too + adjective (+ for/to phrase).
 It was too dark (for me) (to see her face).

(not) adjective + enough (+ for/to phrase).
 It wasn't light enough (for me) (to see her face).

A more formal alternative to these forms is so + adjective + as to phrase. It was so dark as to make it impossible to see her face.

22.2D We can use as and such to introduce a comparison. There are two patterns:

as and such • as + adjective + a + noun + as:

It wasn't as bad a result as I'd expected (- It was a better result than I'd expected)

 such a + adjective + noun + as (or that clause): It wasn't such a bad result as I had expected.

It was such a dark night that I couldn't really see her face.

# OTHER TYPES OF COMPARISON

22.3A We can describe how something increases or decreases by repeating the same comparative two or sometimes three times, putting and between the forms Progressive |

comparison

Her visits to the country to see her son became rarer and rarer (= increasingly rare) As the illness progressed the patients grew more and more detached from reality Marching into the sunset, the figures became smaller and smaller

To describe how a change in one thing causes a change in another, we can use two 22.3B comparative forms with the Note the use of the comma after the first clause Combined

The longer you leave it, the worse it'll get. comparison

> We sometimes omit the verb be in the clauses. The more sophisticated the product the more substantial the potential profit

When we contrast two related qualities, we always use more (not -er): 22.3C

Contrastive comparison

x I'm sadder than disappointed ✓ I in more sad than disappointed Her eyes are more green than grey

We can also use not so much ... as or rather than:

I'm not so much disappointed as sad. Her eyes are green rather than grey

22.3D We often describe something by comparing it to something else which has similar qualities. These comparisons are known as is miles. There are two forms like and as

as + adjective + as:

Listening to her was about as interesting as watching paint dry. (In informal English we sometimes omit the first as. She looks white as a sheet.)

like + noun or verb phrase:

The cruise ship was like a skyscraper lying on its side.

There are many idioms in which we use these two patterns:

You're as white as a sheet; I think you'd better see a doctor.

I feel full of energy today – I **slept like a log** last night.

We use like (not as) before a noun when we are making a comparison between two things which seem similar:

X You look as a man who's seen a ghost¹ ✓ You look like a man who's seen a ghost¹ When Mike puts on his dark suit he looks like a waiter (= He resembles a waiter)

We use as (not like) before a noun when we are describing someone's job, role or identity, or something's function:

X Simon's working like a waiter during the summer vacation.

✓ Simon's working as a waiter during the summer vacation. [This is his job ] Use your payroll number as a password for the computer (This is its function)

We can also describe something by comparing it with something similar without using like or as; this is known as a 'metaphor':

We nope the new treaty will form a bridge between our two nations (a bridge metaphor for a link)

Metaphors are common in poetry and literary English:

Sometimes too hot the eye of heaven shines (eye of heaven - metaphor for the sun)

# Practice

# 71

## 22.4

Fill the gaps with appropriate comparative and superlative forms of the adjectives in the box. Add than and the if necessary.

	dry					loose scared			tidy
0	I'm rather worried	l about t	he side	effects of	faspirin	Can you i	recomme	end a	safes

- 1 And now we come to the award for ...... actor in a leading role.
- 2 It's been raining non-stop. I wouldn't be surprised if this turns out to be July on record!
- 3 The authenticity of dialogue and setting often makes low budget films seem artificial version of reality in Hollywood movies.
- 4 In medieval times people rarely travelled long distances. For most peasants they would ever travel would be to the local market town.
- 5 In our study children on a diet high in dairy products tended to be considerably average
- 6 Now that I'm employing a cleaner the house has become a ot the ever used to be!
- 7 This skirt's much too tight on the hips. I need something with a ....... fit.
- 8 DiCaprio was awful! I think that's ...... performance I've ever seen him give.
- 9 I don't mind the Mediterranean summer because it sia heat than you find in the tropics
- 10 They say the great pyramid at Giza is structure to survive from the ancient world
- 11 I like all Mozart's operas but I think Don Giovanni is the one I am ....... on.
- 12 We inherited two paintings from my grandmother. Of the two I disay the landscape is
- 13 I know all murder is wrong, but don't you agree that it s to murder a child than to murder an adult?
- 14 I've ever felt was when Joe and I were flying over the H malayas and we hit a storm, it was absolutely petrifying
- 15 That play was so tedious I was watching that than I was when I spent three hours trapped in that lift last year!

# 2 22.1, 22.2

Match each sentence (1-7) with a sentence with the same meaning from A-G.

- 1 It's slightly cheaper
- 2 It's much cheaper.
- 3 It isn't anything like as cheap.
- 4 It's just as cheap.
- 5 It's by far the cheapest.
- 6 It isn't quite as cheap.
- 7 It isn't as cheap.

A It's considerably more expensive.

a ternative?

the somewhat

- B It's the least expensive.
- C It's more expensive.
- D It's somewhat less expensive.
- E It's no more expensive
- F It's slightly more expensive
- G It's nothing like as expensive.



It wasn't as

# Tick (✓) the best explanation, A or B.

1	The prices on the menu aren't nearly as expensive as I expected.	
	A Prices are a little cheaper than I expected.	
	B Prices are much cheaper than I expected.	
2	It looks as if your new car isn't any more reliable than the old one!	
	A Both cars are equally unreliable.	
	B The new car is slightly less reliable than the old one.	
3	Of all the teams in the league, theirs is the least successful.	
_	A Their team is the most unsuccessful.	
	B Their team is less successful than some of the others.	
4	They said it was one of the most powerful earthquakes ever.	()
7	A No other earthquake was as powerful	
E	B There may have been more powerful earthquakes.	
3	The new tax regulations are somewhat more rigorous than last year's.	
	A The new regulations are much more rigorous than last year's.	
_	B Last year's regulations were slightly less rigorous.	
b	I have to say that the notel wasn't quite as luxurious as the brochure claimed	
	A The hotel was much less luxurious than the brochure claimed.	
	B The hotel was slightly less luxurious than the brochure claimed.	
7	This is by far the best seat in the plane. There's loads of legroom.	
	A No seat in the plane is better.	
	B Other seats may be equally good.	
8	She isn't anything like as snobbish as you said.	
	A She is less snobbish than you said.	
	B She isn't snobbish.	
9	I'm afraid your figures are no more accurate than the ones Rachel gave me	
	A Your figures are less accurate than Rachel's.	
	B Your figures and Rachel's figures are equally inaccurate.	
10	As far as Daniel's job is concerned, things are about as bad as they can be	
	A Daniel's job could get worse.	
	B Daniel's job couldn't be any worse than it is.	
Ĉ.	22.2 13 1	
7		
Cor	nplete each sentence so that it means the same as preceding one(s). Use the	ne words in
bra	ckets but do not change the words given in any way.	
Ω	As students get closer to their exams they become more nervous (the mor	e)
0	The closer students get to their exams, the more nervous they become.	-,
1	The lecture was very boring As a result I fell asleep. (so that)	
'	The lecture	
ר		(tedt that)
1	The tickets sold out within days because the concert was so well publicised (s	ucii tilat)
7	It was	ne to)
٥	The wording of the document is very complicated it's incomprehensible (so	as toj
,	The wording of the document	
4	I couldn't find my contact lens because it was very dark. (too)	

5 My friends claimed that the exhibition was interesting but I found it pretty dull (exhibition)

- 6 She's slightly angry but she's very disappointed. (than) She's
- 7 Approaching the church, we noticed the sound of the bells becoming increasingly oud {and ... and}
  - Approaching the church, we noticed the sound of the bells
- 9 My son can't get a place at kindergarten because he's too young (enough) My son isn't .
- 10 Their remarks were only slightly insulting, but they were extremely inaccurate (not so much)

  Their remarks

# 5 22.3

Match the situations (1-15) with the similes (A-P). Then use the similes to rewrite the sentences. You may need to use a good dictionary for this exercise.

A like a cat on a hot tin roof I like hot cakes J as a fiddle B like a trooper K as a feather C like a lamb to the slaughter D like a bull in a china shop L as ice E like a bear with a sore head M as the grave F like a log N as a sheet G like a chimney O as a mule H like a rocket P as the fills

- O Stonehenge is incredibly ancient more than 4 000 years od (P.) stonehenge is as old as the hills
- 1 She's a heavy smoker. .....
- 2 He's incredibly clumsy and often breaks things
- 3 I slept really soundly last night.
- 4 It's absolutely freezing in here!
- 5 She so haive, she doesn't realise what a dangerous situation she's going into
- 6 My grandmother may be 85 but she's incredibly fit and healthy.
- 7 Do you feel all right? You're very pale. .....
- 8 He's terribly nervous, he can't keep still for a moment
- 9 She's in a foul mood this morning, shouting at and arguing with everyone.
- 10 Our new car goes really fast.
- 11 My new flatmate never stops swearing. .....
- 12 Once the lights were out the dormitory became early quiet.
- 13 She doesn't need to diet, she weighs hardly anything! . . .
- 14 Once the old man has made his mind up he never changes it whatever you say
- 15 These new mobile phones are selling amazingly well



Complete the following article. Use only one word for each space (1-20). Read through the whole text before you begin writing. The exercise begins with an example (0).

# **CONSUMER REPORT**

# HAIR CONDITIONERS

# Supremesoft \*\*

At \$2.99 for 250ml Supremesoft is the (2) expensive of the three brands. But, surprisingly, price is no guide to quality as this brand was (3) .......... more effective (4) ......... the cheaper brands. On the other hand, the panel felt the packaging was (5) ......... upscale than the competitors, and the conditioner itself had an attractive colour and scent. But these advantages weren't significant (6) ....... to compensate for the extra cost.



# Vitabalm \*

Vitabalm is the (7) . . . . of the tested brands (\$1 99 for 250ml). Our consumers thought the packaging wasn't (8) . . attractive (9) . . the others and the conditioner had what one tester described as 'a rather chemical smell'. It was (10) — as effective as the others in dealing with tangled hair, but testers with dry hair found that it wasn't rich enough (11) …… give their hair any extra body. And everyone agreed that it was (12) . — harsh to be useable on a daily basis.

# ActiveShine \* \* \*

This brand emerged as the (13) . . . . all-round value for money. It had a strong smell, rather (14) . . . . . . an antiseptic cream, but the smell was not (15) . . . . . strong as to be off putting. Testers found that it was just as effective with greasy hair as with dry hair and it was (16) . . . . far the most successful with flyaway hair ActiveShine doesn't have (17) . . . . . a rich composition as Supremesoft, but our testers found that (18) . . . . . more they used it, the (19) . . . . . noticeable the effect on their hair, so it was considered to be just as effective (20) . . . . . . the others in the long term.

So, at around \$2.50 for 250ml ActiveShine receives this month's three-star rating.



# Gradable and ungradable adjectives

Adjectives are 'describing' words. Most adjectives have a meaning which can be made stronger or weaker, these are called 'gradable adjectives'. Other adjectives have a meaning which is extreme or absolute and cannot easily be made stronger or weaker. These are called 'ungradable adjectives. The differences in the way we use these two kinds of adjectives can cause problems even for advanced students. This unit looks at these different types of adjective and the ways in which we can modify their meaning (For adjective use in genera. Unit 21 for adjectives used in comparisons. Unit 22)

# **13.1**

# MODIFYING GRADABLE ADJECTIVES

# Gradable and ungradable adjectives

23.1A Gradable adjectives represent a point on a scale. For example, cheap and expensive are adjectives on the scale of how much something costs'. Ungradable adjectives represent adable the limits of a scale (> 23.2A below).

ungradable adjectives (limit of the scale)	free	freezing	vast/enormous
gradable adjectives	(very cheap) cheap (not very cheap)	cold	large
↓	(a bit expensive) expensive (very expensive)	hot	small
ungradable adjectives (limit of the scale)	priceless	boiling	minute/tiny

We can make comparative and superlative forms from a ligradable adjectives



23.1B Strengthening the adjective

23.1B We can make gradable adjectives stronger with *very*, but not with the adverbing absolutely:

- \* That new jacket looks absolutely expensive.
- ✓ That new jacket looks very expensive.

There are several other modifiers which we use to strengthen the meaning of these adjectives so rather, really extremely, terribly most (formal) pretty (informal)

Last night's match was terribly exciting

I felt **pretty upset** after the accident. (informal)

The chapter on the early sonnets was most instructive. (formal)

We often use less common adverbs to modify certain gradable adjectives. Although very is commonly used to strengthen any adjective, your English will sound more fluent and natural if you learn to use other combinations of adverb and adjective:

I was bitterly disappointed at my exam results.

My brother is painfully shy

The students in this school are highly intelligent.

Note that we can often only use certain adverbs with certain adjectives (for commonly used combinations ▶ 23.4).

the adjective

23.1C Gradable adjectives can usually be made weaker by the words fairly slightly a (little) Weakening bit (informal) and somewhat (formal):

I've been feeling slightly dizzy all morning.

My friend was a bit drunk. (informal)

The police reported that the man was somewhat inebriated. [formal]

In conversation, a bit is a useful way to make a critical remark more polite-

You're a bit overdressed, aren't you?

We can use not very and not at all to weaken gradable adjectives after the verb be The end of term test wasn't very long and it wasn't at all difficult.

23.1D With gradable adjectives guite usually means 'fairly' but can have other quite meanings. The different meanings are only apparent in spoken English as they are dependent on stress and intonation:

The lecture was quite interesting. (unmarked = fairly interesting) quite interesting (stress on adjective - more interesting than the speaker expected) quite interesting (stress on adverb - ess interesting than the speaker expected) (For *quite* with ungradable adjectives ▶ 23.2B)

# MODIFYING UNGRADABLE ADJECTIVES

adjectives

23.2A Ungradable adjectives (e.g. enormous vast tiny priceless, free) have a meaning which Ungradable represents the imit of a scale For example the imits of the scale of 'how much something costs' ( table in 23 1A) are free (- t costs nothing) and priceless (- its cost s too great to be counted). Ungradable adjectives are not usually used in comparatives. and superlatives (but 23.2D), and we do not use very to make them stronger

- \* The Ming vases are more priceless than the Egyptian mummies
- ✓ The Ming vases are more valuable than the Egyptian mummies.
- \* Entrance to the museum is very free.
- ✓ Entrance to the museum is absolutely free.

the adjective

23.2B A common way to intensify the meaning of ungradable adjectives is with the adverb Intensifying absolutely. We use this device to add emphasis in spoken and informal English, it is not common in writing:

I couldn't swim in the sea; the water was absolutely freezing

The show was absolutely fabulous

When we use quite with ungradable adjectives, it has a similar meaning to 'completely' emphasising the strength of the adjective:

The tenor's performance was quite amazing

You're quite correct.

Although we use absolutely with many ungradable adjectives, there are some adjectives which are never intensified with absolutely and some where we prefer to use other intensifying adverbs such as completely, totally and utterly. There are no grammar rules which explain these combinations so it is best to learn them as vocabulary items (**23.4**).

I'm afraid your answer is completely wrong

Since the accident Henry has been totally deaf in one ear.

Susan was utterly appalled by her husband's dishonesty.

We can also use a most before ungradable adjectives used before a noun:

Hilary has a most amazing hairstyle.

23.2C We do not usually make ungradable adjectives weaker by using the modifiers fairly, almost. slightly, a (little) bit, somewhat or not very:

nearly, etc.

X Their favourite possession is a slightly priceless Satsuma vase.

X I-wouldn't recommend the show; it's not very fabulous.

But we do use almost, nearly, practically or virtually to indicate a point close to the absolute meaning of ungradable adjectives:

He never turns the heating on – it's practically freezing in there.

The battery in my calculator is almost dead

After six months with the disease he was nearly deaf and virtually blind

Comparatives and superlatives

23.2D Because ungradable adjectives represent the limit of a scale, they are not usually used in comparatives and super atives. However, in spoken English many 'ungradable' adjectives can be used gradably when we are comparing similar things at one end of a scale and can then be used in comparisons:

I've never been more exhausted than I was after the New York marathon.

That was the most delicious meal you've ever cooked!

With comparatives of this type we often use still more or even more:

Their house is even more enormous than Richard's!

## MODIFYING ADJECTIVES IN INFORMAL ENGLISH

23.3A really, real, etc.

There are several modifiers which we use with both gradable and ungradable adjectives to make their meaning stronger. The most common in informal English is really

That film was **really exciting**. It's **really freezing** in here!

In informal US English real can be used instead of really:

That watch looks real expensive.

Expressions such as nice and and good and can be used to intensify many adjectives The hotel was nice and clean. I'll come when I'm good and ready.

In very informal English, dead and a number of slang words (e.g. bieeding) can be used as intensifiers:

The rollercoaster ride was dead scary.

We usually do not use these colloquial modifiers in formal English: [Her Majesty was dead interested in the traditional Maori dancing.] [The bank is really sorry about having to refuse your application for a loan ]

23.3B Gradable and ungradable

Some adjectives can have both gradable and ungradable meanings, depending on whether the speaker feels the adjective describes an absolute quality or one which is relative to something else.

I m afraid there are no rooms the hotel is full (ungradable = completely full) The hotel's very full but I think I can get you a single room for tonight (gradable ~ has many guests but there is still some space)

Other adjectives like this are empty beautiful black delicious, new, possible





These collocations are taken from the British National Corpus (Below, 'sb = somebody and 'sth' = something.)

adverb +	adjective
bitterly	cold, disappointed, divided, hostile, humiliated, hurt, opposed, resented, resentful, upset
completely	acclimatised, alone, different, drained, empty/full, extinguished, immune (from/to sth), incapable (of sth), incomprehensible, lost, negative, new, open (with sb) (= honest), overlooked, revised, right/wrong, untenable
deeply	ashamed, attached (to sb/sth) (= strong feeling for), conscious, conservative, depressed, disappointed, disturbed, divided, embedded, embittered, hurt, indebted (to sb), ingrained, in love with, involved, involved (in sth), lamented, meaningful, moving, religious, rutted
entirely	absent, beneficial, clear, different, false, fitting, free, global, impersonal, loyal, new, obvious, serious, unconvincing, unexpected
heavily	armed, booked, built, censored, criticised, embroiled (with sb/sth), flavoured, guarded, involved (in sth), muscled, polluted, populated, protected, publicised, regulated, represented, scented, soiled, taxed
hideously	bad, burnt, deformed, disfigured, disfiguring, effective, embarrassing, expensive, injured, lurid, mangled, scarred, swollen, ugly, unhygienic
highly	commended, contagious, controversial, critical, dependent, developed, educated enjoyable, flexible, intelligent mobile paid, personal, polished, political, popular, publicised qualified recommended, regarded relevant, resistant, respected, significant, skilled, specialised, technical, toxic, trained, unlikely, valued, volatile
painfully	acute, aware, evocative, learned, loud, obvious, self-conscious, sensitive, shy, slow, small, sparse, thin
perfectly	arranged, balanced capable fitting ( appropriate), formed, genuine, good, healthy, normal, placed, proper, rational, reasonable, (all) right, safe, still, straightforward, understandable, valid
seriously	damaged, exposed, hit (= damaged), ill, impaired, rich, threatened, undermined, wealthy
totally	abandoned, abused, alien, anaemic, decent, destroyed, different, embarrassed, harmless, homogeneous, honest, impervious (to sth), inadequate, incompetent, integrated, irresistible, logical, new, normal, overpowering, stiff, surprising, unacceptable, unbelievable, undefined, unjustified, wasted
utterly	abandoned, alone, appalled, careless, dejected, destroyed, devoted (to sb), different, disastrous, fearless, futile, impossible, irresistible, lacking, ruthless, tragic, unacceptable, unattainable, unquestioning, useless, wrecked

# Practice



Put each adjective into the correct box below. Each box will contain ten adjectives.

amazing attractive cold correct dead enormous exciting expensive extinct fascinating freezing good interesting huge large minute paralysed shy sick ugly

ungradable adjectives	gradable adjectives	

# 23.1, 25.2

Use the words in the box below to rewrite each sentence, making it either stronger or weaker according to the instructions. Use each word once only. The exercise begins with an example (0).

virtually very somewhat a bit highly absolutely slightly fabulously fairly

## Make these sentences weaker:

- O The dress I bought yesterday is damaged The dress I bought yesterday is slightly damaged
- 1 These days mobile phones are inexpensive
- 2 Be careful changing gear; the gearstick's stiff
- 3 The inscription on the tomb was indecipherable. ......
- 4 Many of the Inca religious ceremonies were bloodthirsty

## Make these sentences stronger:

- 5 Jane's flat was freezing last night. ......
- 6 This new computer game sounds interesting
- 7 Hilary's new boyfriend is rich. .....
- 8 Victory in our next game seems unlikely

# 5 25.1-25.5

Match the labels (A-D) with the sentences (1-6). Some labels may be used more than once.

A US English B formal C informal D very informal

- 1 We were wearing the same outfit! It was dead embarrassing
- 2 The cave paintings were real impressive.
- 3 I thought Dave's behaviour was a bit bizarre last night.
- 4 The professor's lecture was most illuminating.
- 5 Francis Bacon's later works were somewhat disturbing
- 6 These new engines are pretty reliable.



Read the article below and decide which word (A-C) best fits each space (1-10). The exercise begins with an example (0).

# Fakes found in major museums

Oscar White Muscarella, a (0) ... respected archeologist at New York's Metropolitan Museum, claims that more than 1,250 forgeries are on display in the world's leading museums and art galleries. In his latest book Muscarella specifically names 37 forgeries in the Louvre, 16 in the British Museum and 45 in his own museum in New York. Muscarella's earlier claims have been heavily (1) ... by some museum officials who are (2) ... opposed to his arguments. But Muscarella has (3) ... good scientific evidence for his claims, showing that over 40 per cent of the objects examined by the Oxford Thermoluminescence laboratory are fakes. The reason for the quantity of forgeries is (4) ... simple. Because many of the objects in our museums were found by amateurs and illegally exported from their countries of origin they have no official provenance or documented history. Museums are painfully (5) ... of this embarrassing

problem and as a result they have been known to overlook the lack of written records before accepting or buying antiquities. This makes it (6) ... impossible to detect forgeries, especially if they are accurate copies. But in fact many forgeries are (7) ... obvious as they are often copied from a photograph which only shows the front of an object. When examining the back of the forgery they can look (8) ... different from the original. But museum officials tend to be (9) ... conservative and hate to question objects which have been sitting in their collections for many years.

Muscarella specialises in the ancient Middle East, and this is the area of archaeology in which he has found so many forgeries. But his research has had the effect of undermining the reputation of some of our most (10) ... regarded institutions, and this should be of concern to anyone who values our cultural heritage.

(B) highly A absolutely C very 0 A discussed B rejected C criticised 1 2 B highly C rather A bitterly 3 A perfectly B absolutely C somewhat 4 A virtually B quite C really 5 A conscious B understanding C aware C pretty A very B virtually 7 B entirely C deeply A a bit 8 A completely B absolutely C almost C deeply 9 A heavily B dead 10 A very B highly C absolutely

Six of these sentences contain mistakes. Tick ( $\checkmark$ ) the correct sentences, then find the mistakes and correct them.

- 1 We thought the state rooms in the White House were real impressive!
- 2 I'm afraid there's nothing to eat; the fridge is very empty.
- 3 The tour bus is completely full so I've only got six seats left to offer you.
- 4 I love these 'awayday' tickets; they're nice and cheap.
- 5 We chose the hotel because it was very recommended by our neighbours
- 6 If you were really serious about your studies, you would have given up that evening job.
- 7 Everyone in our class loves Jackie she's dead friendly.
- 8 Jack was a very built man with massive shoulders and a menacing stare
- 9 I found the funeral ceremony absolutely moving.
- 10 The Ambassador would be really delighted to accept this honour on behalf of the President.



This box contains eight groups of gradable and ungradable adjectives with similar meanings. There are four adjectives for each group in the box below. Complete the gaps in the table. The example for *nice* is provided.

diminutive ecstatic engaging diverting boring brilliant delighted annoyed hungry furious happy fascinating fantastic fabulous famished exhilarated starving scarce minute ravenous Lovely little irate irritated interesting uninteresting unique tedious tiny uncommon stultifying

	gradable adj	ectives		ungradable	adjectives	
1 dull 2 small 3 amusing			· · · ·			
4 rare			* *	a 6.4		
5 angry 6 nice	lovely.	XXX	xxx	fabulous	fantastic	brilliant
7 pleased		XXX	XXX	+ +		h ++++ = h
8 peckish		XXX	XXX			

The writer of this letter has made mistakes with some of the adjectives she has used. Find the mistakes and substitute suitable alternative adjectives from the table in exercise 6. You can only change the adjectives, everything else must remain the same. There are 14 unsuitable adjectives in the letter, including the example.



taving an absolutely greatime here in Barcelona The weather has been wonderfully hot and sunny with hardly a cloud in the sky. Our hotel is in the Gothic quarter — it's very minute but quite comfortable. The staff are all very friendly and helpful — we got back from a slub at 3 a.m. a couple of days ago — all of us were absolutely hungry of source — and the doorman kindly offered to make us all sandwiches. Steve wasn't impressed as usual), he was actually fairly furious because they didn't have granary bread!

we've seen most of the sights in the 3t, karen was absolutely pleased when we went to the 'Sagrada Familia' – she loves taudis werk it is certainly a tetally rare building. And Steve was very esstatic about going to the Maritime Museum – ne seems to find anything to do with boats uttery interesting can't understand it myself, was absolutely annoyed when he suggested we stay there over lunch time – especially as I was a bit tawished at the time not surprising after two very tedious nours of looking at dusty ediships' It was even more stultitying than that afternoon we spent with the vital inspectors – if you can imagine such a thing!)

The street life here is very fascinating we've spent a lot of time wandering around and staring at the street performers Luckly there are lots of pavement cafes and it's very fabulous to simply while away the time watching the world go by.

Anyway I nope things are going we at the office although I can't say i'm very exhilarated at the thought of getting back there next week!

Lots of love

Jackie

# Line 2 <u>niee</u> fabulous

# Adverbs

Adverbs are words which modify or give extra information about verbs, adjectives, other words or whole clauses. This unit examines the form and use of adverbs, ncluding adverb pairs with very similar forms, as well as adverbs and adjectives with the same form. This unit also looks at the position of adverbs which modify verbs and at those adverbs which convey a viewpoint or attitude or modify a whole sentence

## **FORM**

24.1A adverbs

Some adverbs are not derived from other words, while others are formed by adding Forms of suffixes (e.g. -ly) to other words or are formed from groups of words. These are some common examples of adverbs (note spelling):

not formed from other words

just, well, soon, too, quite, still

fixed phrases

kind of, of course, at last

# formed from other words

adjective + -lu

tragic → tragically, excitable → excitably, easy → easily,

real → really

noun/preposition +

home · homeward after · afterwards, price · pricewise,

-ward(s)/-wise

health → healthwise

compounds

some + times - sometimes

24.1B Confusing forms

In some cases adverbs have the same forms as adjectives in other cases two different adverbs are derived from the same adjective:

## Adverbs which have the same form as adjectives:

close, dead, fast, fine, long, low, pretty, short, straight, wide, wrong

## Common adverbs from the same base, with different meanings:

direct (= without stopping)

We flew direct from La Guardia to Houston.

directly (= immediately/very soon) Don't go. I'll be with you directly.

late (= not on time/not early)

The plane arrived late due to bad weather.

lately (= recently)

highly (= extremely)

She's been rather ill lately.

high (= to a great height)

He lifted it high over his head.

Arsenic is highly toxic.

hard (= with a lot of effort/severely) He braked hard when he saw the cat. hardly (= scarcely, almost not) We hardly know our neighbours.

right (= direction/correctly) Turn right at the crossroads. Try to do it right this time!

rightly (= correctly in my opinion) The tribunal rightly condemned the war criminals.

free (= without paying) We got into the concert free!

freely (= without limitation or control) Sheep roam freely over the hills.

deep (= to a great depth/distance) We explored deep into the jungle.

deeply (= thoroughly) I'm deeply ashamed of my behaviour. There are a few adjectives which look I ke adverbs, e.g. friendly, lonely, cowardly ( Unit 21) We cannot make these adjectives into adverbs in the usual way. We use alternative words or phrases, or the adjective with manner or way:

X He left cowardlyly, sneaking out the back door.

✓ He left like a coward ... ✓ He left in a cowardly way...

We use some common adjectives as adverbs in informal conversational English, although some speakers consider this incorrect:

[They sell things very **cheap** in that market.]

In informal US English real and good can be used instead of really and well She's a real nice girl. The team's running good this season.



## USE

Modifying, and adding information The most common use of adverbs is to modify adjectives, the adverb usually comes before the adjective:

I thought his answers were pretty good on the whole.

Some adverbs, e.g. really, almost quite pretty, can modify another adverb

The French team did **really well** in the first round.

Certain adverbs, e.g. quite roughly about approximately, can also modify following noun phrases, prepositional phrases and numbers:

Her news came as quite a shock.

In our school roughly fifty students have mobile phones.

A key use of adverbs is to add information about the time, manner or place of an action or state described in a sentence (▶ 24.3):

He hit the ball hard and this time it flew into the back of the net.

Note that we can use noun phrases (this time) and prepositional phrases (into the back of the net) as adverbs.

We can use adverbs with as, so, too, enough, etc.:

She performed so enthusiastically that the judges overlooked her inexperience We missed the bargains because we didn't get there soon enough.

Some adverbs are used in conversation to show the speaker's attitude ( 24 4B)

Using adverbs in comparisons

24.2B We can use adverbs in comparatives and superlatives, usually with more and most In the lottery draw red balls seem to come up more frequently than yellow ones Of all the relatives at Gran's funeral I think Uncle Ralph felt her loss most deeply Adverbs which do not end in Iy take the same comparative and superlative forms as

adjectives (> 22.1A):

If you tuned the engine more often the car would go faster.

Note that the comparative and superlative forms of the adverb well are better and best



# POSITION OF ADVERBS IN SENTENCES

24.3A The three positions

The position of an adverb depends on its meaning and the word or phrase it is modifying. Adverbs which modify adjectives, other adverbs and noun phrases have fixed positions ( 24.2A above), but adverbs which modify a verb or add information about how, when or where something happens can take several positions in a sentence We call these 'front position' (before the subject) 'mid position' (next to the verb ▶ 24.3C below) and 'final position' (after the object or complement):

final front mid

These days I probably take my health much more seriously

If the object or complement of a verb is very long we can put a final position adverb. before it-

These days I take much more seriously all those things I used to take for granted

position

24.3B We can use many adverbs in this position. We often use adverbs which link or contrast Front with information in the previous sentence:

I've been incredibly busy this week Yesterday I worked more than twelve hours After negative adverbs (e.g. never), or after adverbs of time and place followed by a verb of movement or position, we put the verb before the subject (inversion = 34.3)

Never have I seen such a disturbing sight. Here lies the body of our late lamented sovereign.

• We do not use adverbs of definite frequency, e.g. daily, weekly in front position ★ Monthly I get paid. 
▼ I get paid monthly.

24.3C This is the usual position for adverbs of indefinite frequency, adverbs of degree. Mid position adverbs of certainty, one-word adverbs of time, even and only:

> always frequently, generally, hardly ever, never normally, adverbs of indefinite occasionally, often, rarely, seldom, sometimes, usually frequency absolutely, almost, completely, entirely, just, hardly, partly, adverbs of degree quite, rather, really, slightly, totally certainly, definitely, probably adverbs of certainty one-word adverbs of already, finally immediately, just, now, no longer, soon, still, time

With a simple verb we put the adverb between the subject and the verb, but with simple forms of be the adverb goes after the verb:

X She arrives always by taxi and she always is on time.

✓ She always arrives by taxi and she is always on time.

If there is a modal or aux liary verb we put the adverb after the (first) auxiliary verb We've never been to the Greek islands. You can just see the coast.

Sea eagles have occasionally been seen around Loch Lomond

These adverbs go after do or not:

They don't really understand my point of view

 But we put sometimes, still, certainly, definitely and probably before a negative. auxiliary:

X I don't sometimes understand his arguments. He hasn't still convinced me

✓ I sometimes don't understand his arguments. He still hasn't convinced me. In spoken British English, if we want to emphasise an auxiliary verb or a simple form of be, we can put a mid-position adverb before it. The auxiliary/verb (underlined) is usually stressed:

You **really** don't understand me at all! But she **never** is on time! Compare:

I don't really like him. (unmarked position = 1 slightly dislike him.)

I really don't like him. (emphatic position = 1 hate him.)

We can do this in US English even when we are not emphasising the verb: Madonna never has been shy of image changes.

• We do not use other time adverbs (definite time or frequency) in mid position We every day buy our lunch at that sandwich bar on the corner But we can do this in news reports:

The Federal Reserve today announced an immediate rise in interest rates

24 3D Final position The most frequent position for adverbs in English is the end of the sentence. It is the usual position for yet, a lot, any more, any longer, too, as well:

X They aren't any more selling it 
✓ They aren't selling it any more. We usually put adverbs of manner (which describe how something is done) and adverbs of definite frequency (> 24.3B) in this position:

★ He well plays the guitar. ✓ He plays the guitar well.

Adverbs of manner which end in ly (except badly) can go in final or mid position. Harry painstakingly counted out the coins and arranged them neatly into piles

• We don't use hardly ever or never in final position:

X They watch television hardly ever ✓ They hardly ever watch television

1 If we put often, rarely and seldom in final position, we must use very or quite

✗ These days I eat desserts rarely
✓ These days I eat desserts very rarely. If there are several adverbs in final position, we usually follow a sequence of adverbs of manner, then place, and finally time:

The statue was lifted (carefully)(onto the plinth)(before the ceremony)

# SENTENCE ADVERBS

Viewpoint adverbs

24.4A Adverbs can describe the particular aspect of something we are commenting on **Economically**, the current government has been a resounding success (= The government has successfully managed the economy.) Although economically successful, the government is starting to lose popularity

Attitude/ sentence adverbs

24.4B Adverbs such as clearly, honestly, obviously surprisingly, understandably can express our attitude towards an action:

> You ve obviously been eating too many sweets young man! (This is a logical deduction which is clear to anybody.)

We can also use these adverbs in conversation to introduce, extend, or make a comment on a topic or opinion. We usually put these 'sentence adverbs' at the front or end of the sentence, separated by a comma.

Incidentally, I noticed they were looking for new players down at the Red Lion I don't think he knows what he's talking about, frankly.

There are a number of these adverbs where the meaning is not always obvious.

adverb	meaning
admittedly	This probably qualifies or contradicts what I have just said/heard
apparently	This is something I believe to be true or have heard, although I'm not certain it is correct
fortunately	This is something positive which contrasts with something else I have said/heard. I am pleased about this.
frankly	This is my true opinion, although it may be shocking.
incidentally/ by the way	I am changing the subject – this is some information which is not directly connected with the previous information
understandably	One can sympathise with this.

Some adverbs, e.g. naturally and clearly can be used as sentence adverbs and also as adverbs of manner. Note the different meanings:

Despite being in a zoo, the animals behaved quite naturally (- in a natural way) Naturally, wild animals behave quite differently in captivity. (- what is expected) The teacher answered the question clearly and precisely (- in a clear way) Clearly, the teacher didn't answer the question. (This is obvious.)

# Practice



## Underline the correct option in italics.

- 1 He stapped him friendly/in a friendly way on the back.
- 2 Does that flight go direct/directly or is there a stopover?
- 3 Many of the senior staff are right/rightly concerned about their pensions
- 4 There's been a lot of talk about European integration late/lately.
- 5 Our new cellphone fits easy/easily into the average-sized pocket.
- 6 The path leads straight/straightly to the front door.
- 1 Healthy/Healthwise, stress is probably the most serious problem facing people today
- 8 Animals are now able to wander freelfreely throughout the game reserve.
- 9 In late spring the gulls nest high/highly on the cliff face.
- 10 The remains of the Spanish galleon lie deep/deeply under the ocean.
- 11 The minister will begin by giving a statement. After/Afterwards, you will be able to put your questions to him directly.
- 12 Jackson came pretty close/closely to winning that last race.
- 13 You'll never get better if you don't eat—you've nard/hardly touched your dinner!
- 14 In the Denver play-offs the Miami team did real/good well.
- 15 Some of these kids drive their cars far too fast/fastly.

Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. You must use between three and six words, including the word given in bold. This word must not be altered in any way. The exercise begins with an example (0).

0	Karen did really well in the test.	
	highly Karen was highly successful	in the test
1	The car started to accelerate as we turned the corner.	
	go As we turned the corner the car	
2	She really didn't expect to win so much money.	
	quite Winning so much money came	surprise
3	Evolution is slower during periods of climatic stability.	
	happens Evolution	. during periods of climatic stability
4	We didn't get there in time to hear the overture.	
	soon We wanted to hear the overture but we didn't get	

- 5 More or less three-quarters of our students are fee-paying these days.
- These days
- 6 In the USA only a few people have heard of our products.
- entirely Our products are

in the USA

our students pay fees

- 7 She gave such a moving performance that we were virtually in tears.
  - She performed ...... we were virtually in tears
- 8 Mr Skidmore had a deeper involvement than any of the other directors.
  - Of all the directors, Mr Skidmore was
- 9 In terms of politics, I felt most of the participants were biased.
  - politically In my opinion most of the participants
- 10. I couldn't have made my answers to the questionnaire any more nonest than I did
  - I answered the questionnaire

COLC

# 3 24.3

Tick (✔) all those adverbs which can complete the sentences and cross (X) those that cannot. In one case none of the adverbs will fit.

- 1 Clarice ...... opened the door to the secret compartment.
  - A slowly B last week C probably
- 2 We don't ...... know the identity of the masked stranger.
  - A still B really C certainly
- 3 You can ...... see the coast from this point.
  - A definitely B just C as well
- 4 Our next door neighbours go there
  - A as well B hardly ever C a lot
- 5 ...... the boss gives me a hard time.
  - A Every day B Daily C Sometimes
- 6 I get the feeling you haven't ...... understood my point.
  - A entirely B really C probably
- 7 The public don't ...... respond in the ways advertisers expect them to.
  - A sometimes B any longer C always
- 8 I haven't been to the cinema .......
  - A yet B often C very often
- 9 Alarming's gns of radiation leakage have been reported around the power station
  - A often B this week C always
- 10 ...... have I been subjected to such outrageous demands
  - A Never B Rarely C Frequently
- 11 I'm afraid the bank does not ...... permit such large overdrafts.
  - A generally B any longer C any more
- 12 The patient ...... reacts to any kind of bright light.
  - A badly B immediately C usually
- 13 He plays the saxophone .........
  - A too B quite rarely C never
- 14 The data from those sensors isn't ...... reliable.
  - A absolutely B sometimes C always
- 15 She treats her children .........
  - A carefully B well C badly

# 4 24.3

Rewrite these sentences putting the words and phrases in brackets in the best order. Note that none of these sentences are emphatic. The exercise begins with an example (0).

- O My parents (allowed/hardly ever) us to (late/on weekdays/stay up).

  My parents hardly ever allowed us to stay up late on weekdays
- 1 Taking advantage of a gap between the players. Owen kicked the ball (into the netrust before half time/skilfully).
- 2 Foxes (often/be seen/can) scavenging (on the streets of London/at night)
- 3 David (well/behaves/quite) when he is at home but he (at school/causes trouble/often).
- 4 The post (arrive/sometimes/on time/doesn't) in this part of the city
- 5 Jennifer (immediately/didn't/recognise) the man waving (at the end of the show/frantically/from the balcony) / \_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

- 'Admit it. You took that money out of the till.' 'I'm sorry. I don't know what you are talking about!' (really) 2 'How ridiculous! They can't fit us in on Saturday because they're full." 'But that place is full on Saturday evenings!' (always) 3 'Isn't it strange that he never mentions his wife. Don't you wonder why?' 'Yes, I have wondered about that.' (often) 4 'Laurence won't even let us discuss your proposal.' 'I'm not surprised. He doesn't listen to my ideas.' (never) 5 'How bizarre. The customs officer really went through my luggage with a fine-tooth comb!' 'That's not unusual: the customs officers are quite thorough, (usually) 6 'You must have some idea of his whereabouts.' 'I'm sorry but we don't know where he is.' (honestly) 7 'I think you should swallow your pride and apologise to them.' 'Come off it. You can't expect me to just cave in like that.' (really) 8 'Take a break? Give yourself space? What are you on about?" 'You don't have a clue what I'm talking about, do you?' (absolutely) 9 'Downloading that software seems to be taking an awfully long time.' 'I'm afraid these programs do take a long time to download.' (sometimes) 10 'Look. It's midday and Tabitha still isn't here.'

'Well, she is in the office before noon these days.'

(rarely)



Make this dialogue more natural by using suitable adverbs from the box to replace each of the expressions in *italics* (each adverb can only be used once and not all the adverbs will be needed).

admittedly apparently by the way clearly exactly fortunately frankly ideally naturally obviously reasonably really still seriously understandably

- STEVE Not a bad party last night. Lots of old faces from college were there.
- CLARE (1) That sounds interesting; can you tell me more? ......
- Yeah. Lizzie was there with her new husband (2) This is something I've heard although it may not be true. he's something very high up and important in the civil service
- CLARE Yes, I've heard that too (3) This is my true opinion, although it may be shocking . . . . I never really expected her to marry anyone successful. She was always so scruffy and laid back. She was never into social status or anything like that.
- STEVE (4) It is a logical deduction she's changed her outlook on life. I mean, she was very smartly dressed and she kept telling me all about how much money their new house had cost
- CLARE (5) Do you expect me to believe that? .....
- STEVE Yes, she was really bragging about it.
- CLARE Well she never used to be interested in money at al. (6) This probably contradicts what I've just said ....... she did like eating out and travelling.
- STEVE (7) What I'm about to say isn't really related to what we ve been discussing . . . your old frame Simon was at the party.
- CLARE Was he? I haven't seen him for ages.
- STEVE (8) As one would expect . . . ne couldn't stop asking me questions about you
- CLARE I think he still hopes that we might get back together one day.
- STEVE (9) That is completely accurate ..........
- CLARE Well not much chance of that! On, was that obnoxious old creep Douglas Jarroid there?
- STEVE I m afraid so (10) I'm pleased about this , he was right over the other side of the room so I didn't have to talk to him. He was trying to chat up Mary Brackhell. I can't think why
- CLARE (11) This is obvious ....., he still fancies her.
- STEVE Maybe She certainly wasn't very interested in him (12) which one can sympathise with ...
- CLARE Strange how some people never change, isn't it?

# 7 ALL

# Rewrite these sentences using all the adverbial expressions in brackets.

- O The press office advised us not to discuss the matter (before the conference/last week/publicly)

  ...Last week the press office advised us not to discuss the matter publicly before the conference.
- 1 Ruined, the owner of the bus ness agreed to sell the premises (reluctantly, within the month financially/rather)
- 2 There is nothing better than collapsing (onto a sofa/probably/at the end of the day/.az ly)
- 4 We regret having to announce the suspension of all staff working in our subsidiary (currently/under the circumstances/in San Diego/deeply)
- 5 We seem to get the chance to talk (about these things/seriously/these days/rareiy)
- 6 Many of my colleagues disapprove of my scheme to update the accounting procedures. (thoroughly/over the next quarter/unfortunately/in the sales department)

# Nouns and noun phrases

English nouns generally present few problems for the advanced learner but some aspects of countability and noun-verb agreement can be problematic. This unit looks at these aspects, as well as at plural nouns and at the nominalisation of verbs into nouns (For compound nouns ▶ Unit 26; for nominalisation of adjectives ▶ 21.1A.)

# **BASIC POINTS**

meaning

25.1A English nouns only change their form when they are plural ( 25.2A, B) and to show Form and possession (► 26.1).

Nouns can be countable or uncountable ( 25 3A) and concrete (table, child, station, food, storm) or abstract (hope, responsibility, anger, efficiency, consternation)

Gender

25.1B Nouns do not have grammatical gender in English. Some have a 'natural' gender, e.g. woman - female, father - male. Most nouns for jobs do not imply a gender. To specify gender, we have to say, e.g. a woman doctor. However, some nouns for jobs and roles do refer to males or females, often by their suffix e g businessman (maie), manageress (female) It used to be common to use the -man suffix to refer to people of both sexes

That's the view of Sheila Davison chairman of the Institute of Public Relations A lot of people avoid this now, especially if referring to a woman, and prefer a form with no implicit gender, e.g. chair, or to match the suffix to the person, e.g. chairwoman That's the view of Sheila Davison, chair(woman) of the Institute of Public Relations



# SINGULAR AND PLURAL NOUNS

Regular p ara s

25.2A In writing most English nouns form the plural with -s. This is true of nouns which end in most consonants (e.g. road + roads, bag + bags, town + towns) and the vowels a and e (e.g. area  $\rightarrow$  areas, rope  $\rightarrow$  ropes). But note these variations.

noun	plural form	examples
ending in consonant + y: BUT vowel + y:	+ ies + s	family → families, party → parties tray → trays, monkey → monkeys
ending in -ch, -s, -sh, -x, -z:	+ es	watch $\rightarrow$ watches, boss $\rightarrow$ bosses, fox $\rightarrow$ foxes, waltz $\rightarrow$ waltzes <sup>2</sup>
ending in consonant + o: BUT vowel + o:	+ es + s	potato → potatoes, hero → heroes³ radio → radios, video → videos

- <sup>1</sup> If the pronunciation of ch is /k/, add -s only: patriarch  $\rightarrow$  patriarchs.
- <sup>2</sup> Note these exceptions of vowel + z:  $quiz \rightarrow quizzes$ ,  $fez \rightarrow fezzes$ .
- 3 Some words ending in -o, especially words from other languages, take -s only piano + pianos, photo + photos, kilo + kilos, adagio - + adagios

25.2B English does not have very many irregular plurals. Here are some examples

Irregular plurals

noun	plural	examples
ending in -f or -fe	usually + ves1	leaf → leaves, loaf + loaves
foreign nouns	varies according to origin of word:	Latin origin: terminus → termini, datum → data, vertebra → vertebrae Greek origin: crisis → crises, phenomenon → phenomena

noun	plural	examples
other irregulars	+ (r)en: change of vowel: no change in plural:	child → children, ox → oxen woman → women, foot → feet sheep → sheep, craft → craft (e.g. boat,

Several words ending in f and all those ending -ff just take -s chief + chiefs, belief > beliefs, cliff > cliffs. Some words ending in f take either plural endingscarf → scarfs/scarves. You can check irregular plurals in a dictionary. You may sometimes see plurals formed with an apostrophe lespecially with dates and abbreviations 1960's, some GP's. In sis quite common and may be considered correct. in informal writing, but it is considered incorrect in formal written English.

no singular

25.2C Some English nouns are more common in the plural form. These occur in a number of Nouns with categories (► 25.4 for agreement with verbs)

- · Clothing: clothes, jeans, trousers, pyjamas, trunks, dungarees
- form Tools/equipment scissors, glasses (- spectacles) scales, handcuffs, pliers
  - Games: dominoes, darts, cards, bowls
  - Subjects/activities physics maths politics economics, aerobics, athletics
  - Other: goods, whereabouts, remains, thanks, news, stairs, proceeds These nouns may have a singular form with a different meaning or as part of a compound noun ( 26.3C) a glass (e.g. wine grass), a pyjama party, a dartboard

# COUNTABLE AND UNCOUNTABLE NOUNS

25.3A Countable nouns are usually concrete nouns and they can be counted' a computer, Use three computers. Uncountable nouns cannot be counted' oil, beauty, fruit. We do not use alan with uncountable nouns, and we do not make them plural.

X The Asthma Helpline will be able to give you an advice/some advices

✓ The Asthma Helpline will be able to give you (some) advice.

● There are some differences between British English and US English accommodation (uncountable in British English)/accommodations (countable in US English) Some determiners change according to whether the noun is countable or not ( 28.3) For good health we should eat a few vegetables every day, as well as a little fruit It is also advisable to drink less alcohol and eat fewer sweet things.

In informal English it is possible to use less rather than fewer with countable nouns. although many people consider this to be incorrect:

[You should eat less sweet things ] [There are less people here than yesterday ] Less is always correct if it refers to a whole, e.g. a period of time ( 25.4C) The flight takes less than three hours (three hours = a period of time)

25.3B Some nouns can be countable or uncountable, but have different meanings

Countable and uncountable meanings

noun	countable meaning	uncountable meaning
coffee1	I'd love a coffee, please. (= a cup of coffee)	Do you drink coffee? (= the liquid)
chicken <sup>2</sup>	I'll buy a chicken for dinner tonight. (= the whole bird)	Would you like some chicken for dinner? (= a part/the dish)
drawing <sup>2</sup>	This is an amazing drawing by Leonardo. (= a picture)	My son is very good at drawing. (= the activity)
stone <sup>2</sup>	Someone threw a stone at our window. (= one item)	In this flat landscape of scrub and stone (= the material)

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> This applies to all drinks: teala tea, beerla beer, lemonade a lemonade

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> There are other examples of the same type as these, but not all nouns of the type can

be both countable and uncountable a duck/duck, a fish/fish, but not a-beef, a-park; a painting/painting, a sculpture/sculpture, but not an-art, a-poetry, a paper/paper, a rock/rock, but not a wool, a cotton

25.3C Quantifying uncountable nouns

25.3C We can refer to a specific example of an uncountable noun with determiner + countable noun + of + uncountable noun Common countable nouns in this pattern are piece and bit.

The Council will remove two pieces of unwanted furniture if desired.

Did you hear that interesting bit of gossip about Susan?

Other common nouns used in this way are a slice of bread/meat/cheese/cake, an item of news/furniture/clothing; a lump of sugar/coal; a cup of coffee/tea.

We can sometimes make an uncountable noun countable when we want to express 'different types' of the noun:

The wines of Australia are now of similar quality to many from France
We can make some uncountable abstract nouns countable if we refer to a specific type
of the noun, for example, distrust • a deep distrust a distrust of accountants. This is
common with nouns connected with emotions. We do not make these nouns plural

Jealousy is an enormously destructive emotion

She felt an incomprehensible jealousy when she saw him with her daughter

# 125.4

# **AGREEMENT**

25.4A Subject

In English the verb usually agrees with the subject even if the verb is separated from its subject by prepositional phrases, relative clauses, brackets or commas

+ verb + object/ complement The petrol station across the road from the new shops has just cut its prices. However, if the verb is a long way from the subject but is closer to a complement

( 30 2B), it is possible to agree the verb with the complement. Compare **The most exciting event was the rowing finals.** 

The most exciting event in the Sydney Olympics for most British viewers was/were the rowing finals

The same can apply after what used to introduce a relative:

What the Board needs to address now is/are the terms of the redundancies.

25.4B Two subjects/ plural subject

+ verb

We usually use a plural verb with two subjects linked by and or both ... and:

Mum and Dad were hoping that you'd join them this evening.

Both the doctor and the surgeon have advised me to have my gall bladder out

- However, we use a singular verb if we consider the two items as one concept x Fish and chips are one of the most common English dishes.
  - ✓ Fish and chips is one of the most common English dishes

Titles of books, films, etc. take a singular verb, even if they are plural nouns.

Hitchcock's film 'The Birds' is based on a story by Daphne du Maurier

When we link two tems by or the verb usually agrees with the second of the items. Either my brother or my parents are going to bring the sleeping bags.

25.4C Noun ending in -s + verb Some uncountable nouns end in s but take a singular verb. These often concern illness (measles, mumps), sport (aerobics, gymnastics) or study (mathematics, politics).

German measles is a particularly dangerous illness for pregnant women Politics is a topic best avoided with people you don't know well.

Some nouns refer to one object divided into two parts and take a plural verb, e.g. scissors, trousers, scales (► 25.2C):

Scissors are used to cut the jeans.

- A plural subject describing a single entity e.g. measurement, can take a singular verb
  - X Two metres aren't particularly tall these days.
  - ✓ Two metres isn't particularly tall these days.

Twenty-four hours is a long time in politics.

25.4D Collective noun + verb

We can use either a singular or a plura verb with most collective nouns, .e nouns referring to a group of people, animals or things, e.g. family, government group, staff, team, band class jury. A singular verb presents the collective noun as a 'whole' entity

The family has agreed that the funeral should be held in Ireland

A plural verb presents the noun as a group of nd v.dua.s, e.g. family members

The family are all gathering here for Christmas.

A large number of proper nouns fall into this category, eight by United Nations

The United Nations has agreed to deploy a peacekeeping force.

The United Nations are in disagreement on this issue.

① Unlike British English, US English prefers a singular verb in these cases In English we prefer to use a singular verb after a collective noun if we use alan rather than the:

A team of inspectors is visiting the prison tomorrow afternoon.

A few collective nouns always take a plural verb, e.g. cattle, police, people:

The police are investigating his accusation of fraud.

An adjective used as a collective noun aways takes a plural verb ( 21.1A)

The middle-aged have a lot to offer employers if only they would see it. It is common to use a plural verb after nouns such as the majority, a number, a couple, when these are followed by of + a plural noun:

The majority of the people were pleased to see the government fall.

# 25.5

# **NOMINALISATION**

25.5A Verb → noun

It is possible to make verbs into nouns in English by adding a suffix e.g. -ion, ment -er: educate  $\rightarrow$  education, establish  $\rightarrow$  establishment, teach  $\rightarrow$  teacher.

It is also possible to use many verbs as nouns, especially in informal English Can't you open that? Shall I give it a try?

I'll take you to the station if you give me a shout when you're ready.

This does not apply to every verbilit is best to check in a good dictionary It is also possible to make nouns from malti-word verbs. The particle often (but not always) precedes the verb in the noun form:

The epidemic first broke out in Zaire • The first outbreak of the epidemic The plane took off very smoothly. • The takeoff was smooth.

The car broke down five kilometres from home • The breakdown happened

25.5B Verb phrase → noun

phrase

It is sometimes more concise and elegant, especially in written English, to use noun phrases rather than verb phrases to express an idea:

 Verb phrase The committee decided to open the playground to all children This was welcomed by the local schools.

 Noun phrase The committee's decision/The decision of the committee to open the playground to all children was welcomed by the local schools.

The noun phrase is often made up of two nouns linked by a preposition:

## verb phrase

They released the video in 1998. The law was amended last week. The war drained the country's resources.

## noun phrase

The release of the video in 1998
The amendment to the law last week
The war was a drain on the country's
resources.

An adverb in a verb phrase changes to an adjective if the verb is nominalised.

The girl shouted loudly and attracted the attention she wanted.

The girl's loud shouts attracted the attention she wanted.

# Practice

# 25.1, 24

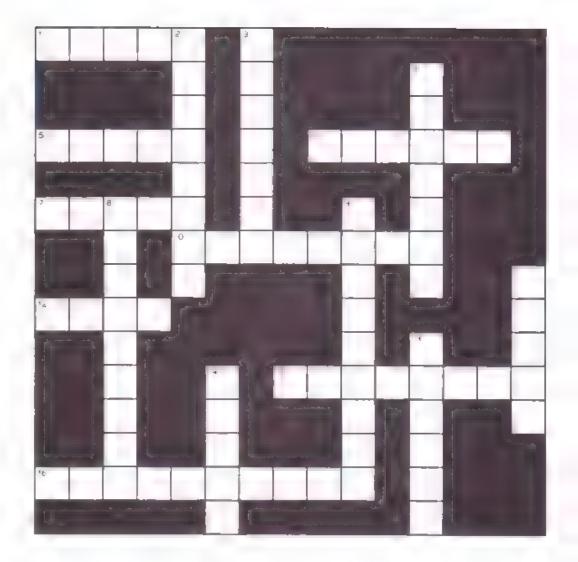
Complete the crossword from the clues below.

#### **CLUES ACROSS**

- 1 plural of quay
- 5 neutral form of chairman
- 6 singular of media
- 7 singular of wharves
- 10 plural of formula
- 12 singular of heroes
- 15 plural of monarch
- 16 plural of mosquito

### **CLUES DOWN**

- 2 plural of sheriff
- 3 neutral form of manageress
- 4 plural of quiz
- 8 plural of address
- 9 plural of flamingo
- 11 plural of goose
- 13 plural of crisis
- 14 singular of oases



# 25.2, 7

Underline the correct words or phrases in *italics* to complete this article.

# ooooo Cookery Corner ooooo

In today's Cookery Corner I'd like to address a request from Mrs Parkinson of Suffolk for (1) an information/information about which type of (2) chocolate/chocolates to use in cooking. Well, Mrs P, my (3) advice is/ advices are always to use the best possible chocolate you can find. It's the same principle as with (4) wines/wine: in cooking always use (5) an equivalent quality/equivalent quality to what you eat or drink. With chocolate, the reason for this is that higher quality chocolate will always give your cakes and sweets (6) better/a better taste. To judge the quality of chocolate, look at the amount of cocoa in the chocolate. Good quality chocolate has more cocoa solids and (7) less sugar/fewer

sugars. For the best taste choose chocolate with a high cocoa (8) contents/content - never (9) fewer than/less than 70 per cent cocoa solids and as much as 80 per cent if possible. It goes without saying that you should also use other (10) ingredient/ingredients of the highest quality, too. If, for example, you're using coffee in your chocolate recipe, always use (11) a strong, fresh coffee/strong, fresh coffee. If you're making (12) a cake/cake, use the right kind of (13) flours/flour, and always weigh the ingredients on your kitchen (14) scale/scales. Believe me, if you follow these simple rules, the next time you bake a chocolate cake, there won't be (15) a lump/ a slice left over!



Read this draft of a newspaper article, then complete the rewritten sections of the article below with a noun or noun phrase. The first one is given as an example (0)

St Andrew's Hospital Trust has recently confirmed that a fresh wave of food poisoning has broken out in the Scottish resort, and this has alarmed everyone who lives in the town. A spokesperson stated that the illness was not serious and could be easily treated. This appeased community leaders but they requested further reassurances that the authorities were doing everything within their control to contain the spread. The hospital authority has announced that it will investigate fully the causes of this epidemic. As a recent investigation into a similar outbreak concluded that the cause was poor meat hygiene in a local butcher's shop, local shopkeepers are concerned about what will come out of the pending investigation. The leader of the Shopkeepers' Association, Len Murphy, suggested that the source of the epidemic might be hospital kitchens, which has angered hospital staff. The kitchen staff at the hospital have now called for a strike of hospital auxiliaries across the region, which is likely to have severe financial consequences for the health authority.

2

3

4

5

6 7

8

10

11

12

13

14

15

16

17 18

19

Find fifteen more mistakes, or places where the style could be improved, in this text. Underline the mistakes and correct them. The exercise begins with two examples.

# Snow Falling on Cedars

opens

arches

# by David Guterson

Snow Falling on Cedars open in the courthouse of San Piedro, a small sleepy island off the Pacific coast of the north-west United States. Underneath the courtroom windows, four tall narrow archs of a leaded glass, a drama which will divide the island's communitys are unfolding. The defendant stands erect in the dock; the local press and the jurors – farmers, grocers, builders, fisher wifes – await the start of this trial. Kabuo Miyamoto is accused of the murder of Carl Heine, a young fisherman. The alleged crime by a young man of Japanese descent stirs up the emotions of the islanders and questions their believes and their politic. It takes place in the 1950's, and not many years has passed since the Japanese on San Piedro was eager to defend their adopted country against the country of their ancestors, some people in the community were unable to forgive Japan its role in the War, and the trial causes their deeply-held prejudicies to surface,

Snow Falling on Cedars is not only one of the best mysterys of recent years, but it raises issues which afteets us all. However, it ends with a great optimism David Guterson has succeeded in combining the best from both classic and populist American literatures into a spellbinding art. Buy and read this beautiful novel.

# 5 25.3, 25.4

Fill the gaps in these sentences with a, an, nothing (-) or the correct form of a suitable verb. If there are two possible answers, put both possibilities.

- 1 Have you put ...... pepper in this dish? I like plenty of seasoning
- 2 What he direally like us to buy him for his birthday some new Nike trainers
- 3 Rickets ...... a disease caused by a deficiency of vitamin D.
- 4 I first felt the desire to visit Venice when looking at painting by Canaletto
- 5 You can't hold a classical concert in the village hall; the acoustics ...... terrible!
- 6 A large number of police officers present at the demonstration last week in case of trouble
- 7 At present 10,000 ki ometres —— the longest wa king competition held in the Olympics

- 8 'What have we got for supper?' Salmon I got huge fish at the fishmonger's for only five pounds." 9 Eitner the twins or John, the eldest brother, going to make a speech at the Golden Wedding 10 My brother thinks that economics ...... really interesting. I disagree. 11 Saudi Arabia, along with most of the oil producing nations. Voted to raise the price of crude oil again. 12 That band always had a reputation for performing better in the studio than live 13 Both my brother and sister ...... lived in this town all their lives. 14 We developed ...... passion for Baroque music at university. 15 Roast beef and Yorkshire pudding definitely still the favourite of many British people! ALL Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it is as similar as possible in meaning to the sentence printed before it. The exercise begins with an example (0). 0 The drama school is always looking out for new talent. The drama school is always on the lookout for new talent. I I heard some fascinating news on the radio this morning. I heard a fascinating 2 The police used handcuffs to restrain the aggressive young man. Handcuffs 3 A few roads in the Brighton area have been affected by the recent floods A small number 4 OK. I'll call the bank tomorrow and check our balance OK. I'll give . 5 The medical profession considers that children eat too many sweet and fatty things today The medical profession considers that children should 6 It didn't take us ten minutes to get here from the station. It took us 7 A lot of people have taken up our new offer, which has delighted us. We have been delighted by the 8 We've got quite a lot of unwanted furniture since we moved to the smaller house We've got several . . . . . . 9 The management expects all staff to attend the meeting tomorrow afternoon All staff ..... 10 They should now address the questions of VAT and fuel tax.

What

Dominoes

11 A lot of the older men sit in cafés and play dominoes.

12 We launched the new women's magazine in April and it was a great success

14 The teachers were boosted by the fact that the parents agreed to help fund the new playground.

The teachers were boosted by the parents'

# Possessives and compound nouns

We can show the relationship between two nouns by using possessive forms or compound nouns. There are two basic possessive forms, the genitive ('s – e.g. the company's shareholders) and the of structure (e.g. the shareholders of the company. This unit describes the forms and uses of the genitive and explains how we choose between this and of phrases. It also contrasts the use of possessives and compound nouns.



### FORM AND MEANING

26.1A Possessive forms

26.1A We can indicate the possessive form of a noun by adding 's (the gen tive form 26.1B) sessive or we can use the of structure (noun + of + noun):

There was a scratch on my car's paintwork.

There was a scratch on the paintwork of my car.

• We usually use the definite article before an of structure (except with the 'double possessive' ▶ 26.1D):

x ... on a paintwork of my car. x ... on paintwork of my car.

✓ ... on the paintwork of my car.

There are possess ve forms of pronouns and a so possessive adjectives ( 27 1A)

You can't use that card, it's mine

Oh sorry. I didn't realise it was your personal photocopy card

26.1B 's – basic These are the key rules about which form of the genitive ('s/s'/') to use:

rules

singular noun: add 's house → house's bus → bus's singular proper noun ending in 5 Mr James + Mr James's house/Mr James' house add 's or an apostrophe (') only regular plural noun: add an boys → boys' buses → buses' apostrophe only men + men's children + children's irregular plural noun (not ending in -s) add 's one, somebody, everyone, each one's house somebody's house other, etc.; add 's nobody's house everyone's rights each other's houses

26.1C We can have two genitives together:

's – special rules

We were beginning to get fed up with our neighbour's tenant's loud music.

If the meaning is clear from the context, we can use the genitive without a following noun:

That isn't my handwriting. It's Selina's. (= Selina's handwriting)

If the possessive form consists of a compound noun (= 26 3C) or two or more nouns which form a single team or group we put the 's on the last noun only

Are you coming to my brother-in-law's party? (compound noun)

I'm a great fan of Lerner and Lowe's musicals (They wrote as a single team)

When the nouns do not form a single group we must use 's with both nouns. Schrodinger's and Heisenberg's versions of quantum mechanics had seemed different (two versions of the theory)

If the possessive noun is part of a short phrase (without a verb in it), we usually put the 's at the end of the phrase:

- X The man's in the corner dog began to bark.
- ✓ The man in the corner's dog began to bark (- The dog belonging to the man in...). the corner ...)

26.1D We can use the genitive form and the of structure in the same phrase (the double The double possessive) when we want to make the first noun specific but at the same time snow possessive that t is one of several. We usually use the indefinite article with this pattern

(of structure I heard the story from a friend of my brother's (- from one of my brother's friends) + genitive) We do not always include the genitive 's on the second noun:

They got a tip off from **a friend of the owner**.

- The double possessive is common with pronouns. We always use the possessive pronoun:
  - X She's a friend of us X She's a friend of our.
  - ✓ She's a friend of ours. (= We have several friends. She is one of them.)



### THE GENITIVE ('S) OR OF STRUCTURE

in certain fixed expressions

26 2A The genitive

We usually use the genitive is (and not the of structure) to express the following ideas

CATHOLOGY	example
referring to general ownership, or possession of somebody's home	Have you seen Sheila's new car? We'll be at Mum's soon. (= Mum's house)
referring to people and animals (especially with proper nouns ▶ 28.1E), and to personal/professional relationships and human qualities	Sheila is Harold's youngest daughter.  Do you like Snap's new collar?  Have you met the boss's new secretary?  John's intransigence is a pain.
referring to location in time (but not with dates)	Have you seen the poem in today's 'Observer'?  * It was in 19th December's paper.
referring to the origin of something, for example where it comes from or who made it	Oil is Saudi Arabia's biggest export The 'St Matthew Passion' is Bach's most profound work.
referring to a quantity or measure, for example of duration, distance or value (We can also use compound nouns 26.3C.)	There will be an hour's delay. The hotel was ten minutes' drive from the beach.
in expressions for value/quantity with worth	Could you give me a pound's worth of chips?
with the names of shops, companies and people/places that provide a service	I'm getting the Thanksgiving shopping at Macy's. (= Macy's department store) Was there anything nice at the butcher's this morning? (= the butcher's shop)

She was at death's door For God's sake!

For pity's sake! For heaven's sake!

26.2B The of structure (noun + of+ 110011

We usually use the of structure (and not the genitive 's) in the following situations

### example

with abstract nouns (e.g. science) and when we are referring to inanimate things

I've been studying the philosophy of science We set up our base camp at the bottom of the mountain.

when the noun is followed by a verb phrase or clause which defines it

The players ignored the jeers of the women standing in the front row.

when we refer to a specific date

It was destroyed in the fire of 1666

with long or complex phrases, even when we are referring to people

A man was sentenced to death for the murder of an English tourist, Monica Cantwell.

certain fixed expressions and titles

He's the President of the United States. The Prince of Wales is to visit Iceland.

26 2C Either We can usually use the genitive 's or the of structure to express the following ideas

pattern

use

### example

referring to a quality that something possesses or displays (but we prefer to use the genitive with human qualities)

We were amazed by the ship's sheer size We were amazed by the sheer size of the ship

referring to the subject of something its topic or theme (► 26.2D)

The Queen's portrait has caused dismay The portrait of the Queen has caused dismay.

with human creations such as countries organisations, cities, institutions, machines, vehicles, buildings, etc. (The

Radio City Music Hall is one of New York's most famous theatres. Plane trees are a common sight on the

genitive is more common.) (but note exceptions ► 26.2A above) streets of London.

expressing a reason or purpose with sake. We agreed to make a go of it for the sake of the children/for the children's sake.

26.2D Gentie + of structure The gentive and the of structure can describe different types of relationship such as ownership, origin and subject. To avoid confusion when we are describing more than one relationship between nouns in a phrase, we prefer to use the 's genitive for the origin, owner or creator, and the of structure for the subject or topic:

\* I wasn't convinced by the quarrel's description of the witness

✓ I wasn't convinced by the witness's description of the quarrel.

(the witness = the person who made the description, the guarrel - the topic of the description)

One of our most popular exhibits is Van Dyck's portrait of King Charles

(Van Dyck = the creator of the portrait, King Charles = the subject of the portrait) We can also combine possessive forms with prepositions ( Unit 28) to describe a number of different relationships:

Have you seen the National Gallery's portrait of King Charles by Van Duck?

ownership ('s)

subject (of structure)

creator (preposition)

information with the of structure

26.2E We can use the of structure to put new information at the end of a sentence (for more on the information principle > 36.1A). Compare:

American presidential candidate Robert Kennedy was assassinated in 1968

- \* He was former president John F Kennedy's younger brother
- ✓ He was the younger brother of former president John F Kennedy (The new) information is the reference to John F Kennedy.)



### SPECIFYING OR CLASSIFYING POSSESSIVES AND COMPOUND NOUNS

Specifying or classify ng possessives

26.3A Possessive forms of nouns can describe two types of relationship. In most cases we use possessive nouns as specifying words showing a relationship with something specific such as a person or place (underlining = stressed word):

> Marion washed the children's clothes every Thursday (- the clothes belonging to Marion's children)

In other cases, possessive nouns can describe a 'classifying relationship describing the type of thing something is (underlining = stressed word):

Janice decided to open a snop specialising in children's clothes (- clothes designed for any children to wear)

We use adjectives in a different way depending on which type of relationship the possessive form is describing. With specifying possessives the adjective only describes. the noun following it:

She was suspicious of her wealthy brother's girlfriend ( Her brother is wealthy) She didn't like her brother's wealthy girlfriend (- His gar.friend is wealthy)

But when we use adjectives in front of a possessive noun with a 'classifying meaning, the adjective describes the whole phrase not just the possessive noun which follows it Janice's shop had a large selection of hand-made children's clothes (- The children's clothes are hand-made, not the children.)

26.3B Other classifying relationships

We use of and other prepositions to describe classifying relationships such as type of content, subject, source and purpose:

I ve got a marvellous book of short stories by Somerset Maugham (content) The kids have been watching a film about rollerblading. (subject)

I'm hoping to buy a sofa from that Swedish store. (source)

Our uncle's company manufactures lubricants for ball-bearings (use/purpose)

- We do not use a possessive if there is a compound noun with the same meaning. X I bought a new racquet at the sport's shop
  - ✓ I bought a new racquet at the sports shop (sports shop is a compound noun).

nouns

26.3C Compound nouns are words which have been created by combining two nouns which Compound are related to each other. They are similar to classifying possessives because the first noun 'classifies' the second noun, it describes it or tells us its purpose:

dressmaker (= maker of dresses) fashion magazine ( magazine about fash on) Compound nouns can be written as a single word (dressmaker), two separate words (fashion magazine) or two words joined by a hypnen (waste bin). There are no rules for this and it is best to check in an up-to-date dictionary.

Compound nouns can also be formed by combining nouns with verbs or adjectives

- Thanksgiving screwdriver noun + verb: windsurfing fire-eater
- filing cabinet rocking chair swimsuit verb + noun; cookbook easy chair real estate
- blackbird adjective + noun: highway ● Some compound nouns are formed from mult word verbs ( Unit 14) They usually follow the same order as the verb, but there are a few exceptions.

turn out → turnout spill over → overspill turn down → downturn

We can also make compound nouns from time expressions (► 26.2A).

a three-week holiday a four-hour delay a ten-minute drive

- Be careful with compound nouns describing containers. The compound form only. describes the container itself, not its contents. Compare these examples:
- In a shop: I'd like a dozen Royal Doulton tea cups. (compound noun = cups designed to hold tea)
- In a café: X l'd like a tea cup and a Mars bar, please.

✓ I'd like a cup of tea and a Mars bar, please. (= tea in a cup)

# Practice

### 26:4

Rewrite the sentences using genitive forms. The exercise begins with an example (0).

- O The stories Steve told and the stories Jane told were completely different steves and lanes stories were completely different
- 1 I'm sure this bag belongs to somebody.
- 2 Let's go to the shop the girls own.
- 3 That is the hotel belonging to Mr Hollis. .
- 4 I love the operettas of Gilbert and Sullivan.
- 5 It's the fault of nobody.
- 6 They had respect for the opinions of each other. .....
- 7 The dog belonging to my next-door neighbour never stops barking
- 8 I'm fed up with the hopeless ineffic ency of the secretary of my boss
- 9 The personality of my mother and the personality of my father are very alike
- 10 These aren't my keys, they are the keys belonging to my flatmate
- 11 The new Act of Parliament will protect the right of everyone to pravacy
- 12 The toilet for men is over there on the right. .....
- 13 I've just inherited the house belonging to the brother of my grandmother
- 14 The opinions of residents of sink estates are rarely taken into consideration
- 15 The dance routines of Fred Astaire and Ginger Rogers are legendary.

### 26.1

Eight of these sentences contain mistakes. Tick (✓) the correct sentences, then find and correct the mistakes.

- 1 Elizabeth is a good friend of him.
- 2 I'm really fed up with my landlord's wive's endless complaints about noise.
- 3 As the English say, ones' home is ones' castle.
- 4 You should pay attention to what he says; he's a close associate of the managing director.
- 5 Don't blame him, it was mine own fault.
- 6 She's been put in charge of childrens' activities at the summer camp in Maine
- 7 Since they got married they've only been interested in each other.
- 8 My brother's-in-law's parents have decided to emigrate.
- 9 We don't know him very well; he's just an acquaintance of us from our university days.
- 10 There's something wrong with that buses' brake lights.

# 3 26.2

### Choose the correct alternative, A or B. In some cases both options are correct.

	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,	
1	What did you do	A at the course's end? B at the end of the course?
2	Have you met	A Sam's new girlfriend? B the new girlfriend of Sam?
3	is a constant source of inspiration.	A Barcelona's architecture B The architecture of Barcelona
4	I need to visit	A the doctor's surgery.  B the surgery of the doctor.
5	Some debris got caught under	A the conveyor belt's wheels.  B the wheels of the conveyor belt.
6	Our organisation strives towards	A poverty's elimination.  B the elimination of poverty.
7	The Ninth Symphony is arguably	A Beethoven's greatest work. B the greatest work of Beethoven.
8	is the search for personal fulfilment in a hostile world.	A The novel's theme B The theme of the novel
9	He's taking from his job at the university.	A a year's sabbatical B a sabbatical of a year
1	0 sometimes drives me up the wall.	A My husband's impatience  B The impatience of my husband
1	1 Throughout the flight we had to put up with	A the children sitting in the back row's antics.  B the antics of the children sitting in the back row.
1	2 The most senior clergyman in the Church of England is	A Canterbury's Archbishop.  B the Archbishop of Canterbury.
1	3 We're going to hold the party at	A Michael's place. B the place of Michael.
1	4 was an important turning point in French history.	A 1789's revolution B The revolution of 1789
1	5 Researchers have been amazed by the to mutate when attacked	A virus's ability B ability of the virus
1	6 The vet wasn't very pleased with	A Fido's progress. B the progress of Fido.
1	7 Her doctoral thesis investigates in medieval China.	A Confucianism's spread B the spread of Confucianism
1	8 The blessing will take place at	A the Twelve Apostle's church, B the church of the Twelve Apostles.
1	9 Why can't you just hand in your notice,	A for heaven's sake! B for the sake of heaven!
2	are generating a lot of excitement at the Paris fashion shows	A Galliano's latest designs B The latest designs of Galliano

# 26 4 26.3

Use the words (1 15) in the box to form compound nouns that fit in the same numbered gaps in the text. You will need to add the second part of the compound yourself. The exercise begins with two examples (0) and (00).

Today's consumer guide looks at (0). \*\*Laptop:\*\* computers The range of these portable computers on the market can be daunting, but a good place to start is computer magazines. These often contain useful (00). \*\* buyer s quides\*\* ... and reviews of models currently on the market. Suppliers of the leading (1). ... often sell their products at cut prices through these magazines. If you decide to buy by (2). ... you will find the advertisements a good source of bargains. And if you pay by (3)... you will automatically be insured. But if you need help in choosing a model, it might be better to shop in the (4)... where you can ask a (5)... for impartial guidance and advice.

You should make a (6) ... of the features and facilities you require, and these will depend to a large extent on the way you plan to use your machine. If you use a lot of graphics (7) ... you'll need a fast processor, a large (8) ... and a high-definition screen. If you are only going to be using the machine for (9) ..., processor speed will not be so important, but you will want a comfortable and sturdy (10) ......

Almost everyone these days needs to access the Internet in order to use e-mail and cruise the (11) ..., so look for a high-speed modern. Be aware of the input and (12) ..... devices you want. CD and floppy disk drives usually come as standard, but you may want a DVD drive or a PC-card slot.

Once you have checked all these features you can compile a (13) ... of models you are interested in Check that your chosen models include comprehensive (14) .... and ask your supplier about warranties and (15) .... service.

0 lap

00 buyer's

1 brand

2 mail

3 credit

4 high

5 shop

6 check

7 soft

8 hard

9 word

10 key

11 world

12 out

13 short

14 instruction

15 after

# 5 26.3

### Which explanation is correct, A or B?

- 1 Stephanie loved her beautiful daughter's sports car.
  - A Stephanie's daughter was beautiful
  - B The car belonging to Stephanie's daughter was beautiful
- 2 There's a new doctor's surgery on the corner of Greenford Street.
  - A The doctor has recently qualified.
  - B The surgery has recently opened.
- 3 She inherited a wonderful wooden doll's house.
  - A The doll is made of wood.
  - B The house is made of wood.
- 4 The company manufactures low-cost nurses' uniforms.
  - A The nurses earn low wages
  - B The uniforms aren't expensive.
- 5 Gary didn't think much of his new boss's management techniques.
  - A Gary has a new boss
  - B Gary's boss has some new management techniques.

- 6 Bil and Suzy found hiring a well-educated children's nanny was worth every penny
  - A Their nanny was well educated.
  - B Their children were well-educated.
- 7 I managed to find a place in the 24-hour supermarket's parking lot.
  - A The supermarket is open 24 hours.
  - B The parking lot is open 24 hours.
- 8 Dave was often embarrassed by his aggressive flatmate's comments.
  - A Dave's flatmate was aggressive.
  - B His flatmate's comments were aggressive.
- 9 My uncle is restoring a redundant tax-inspector's office in Newcastle.
  - A Some tax inspectors have been made redundant in Newcastle
  - B The office in Newcastle is no longer required by the tax inspectors.
- 10 Who's going to look after our sick neighbour's puppy?
  - A Our neighbour is sick.
  - B Our neighbour's puppy is sick.



bank holiday)

Use compound nouns to complete the sentences. The compound nouns you need can be formed by combining words from each of the boxes below. Then rewrite these sentences using appropriate possessive forms to replace the phrases in brackets. In two sentences the phrase in brackets does not need to be changed.

land down horse news fit \_cabmet stick jam robber traffic filing wind turn agent racing walk five-minute walking bases O The only thing missing from (the office belonging to my boss) is a . Ine only thing missing from my boss's office of there can ret 1 Could you pop down to the and pick up (the evening paper that Charles orders) 2 That silver-topped belongs to (one of the friends that I have) 3 The (private beach of the hote!) is only a from here 4 The (privat sation organised by the government) of the signing ahead next year 5 The ...... wouldn't allow (the girlfriend of his tenant) to move in. 6 (The pens on fund of my father) has been bad y affected by the \_\_\_\_\_\_ in the value of blue chip stocks 7 C are bought a beautiful new \_\_\_\_ for (the wedding of the sister of her brother in law) 8 The managed to gnore (the screams of the crowd) lining the beach 9 Whenever we are over at (the house belonging to Dad) we seem to spend the entire time watching ..... on the television 10 The \_\_\_\_\_\_ refused to accept (the jurisdiction of the legal system) over him. was caused by the volume of cars setting out for the south coast at (the start of the

# Pronouns

Pronouns are words which we substitute for nouns in order to avoid repetition. This unit explains how English uses subject and object pronouns, reflexive and reciprocal pronouns, and indefinite pronouns. (For determiners used as pronouns. 28.2, 28.3, for relative pronouns. 31.2A, for more on pronouns as substitutes for nouns. 35.2.)

### PERSONAL PRONOUNS

27 1A We use personal pronouns to refer to both people and objects. (This unit also looks at possessive adjectives.)

subject pronouns	object pronouns	(possessive adjectives)	possessive pronouns	reflexive pronouns (► 27.2)
1	me	my	mine	myself
you	you	your	yours	yourself/yourselves
he	him	his	his	himself
she	her	her	hers	herself
it	îĖ	its	(no pronoun)	itself
we	us	our	ours	ourselves
they	them	their	theirs	themselves

27.1B After we mention a person or an object once or if the context makes it clear who or Use what we are referring to, we usually use pronouns to refer to them.

We use subject pronouns instead of a noun as the subject of a verb:

Paul Allen plans to set up a rock music museum He was a founder of Microsoft

We use object pronouns instead of a noun as a direct or indirect object:

- · Direct object: I met Julian yesterday. I like him, don't you?
- Indirect object Those books belong to Julian Can you give them to him, please?
   We use possessive adjectives before a noun to express 'belonging':
- Adjective Did the neighbours leave that here? It looks like their deckchair
   We use possessive pronouns instead of a possessive adjective + noun;
- Pronoun: No, it's not their deckchair. It's ours! Don't you recognise it?

Omission/ inclusion of pronouns

27.1C English does not usually omit pronouns, especially subject pronouns:

We can expect carol singers; they often come at this time of year.

But it is incorrect to use a noun + pronoun together as the subject of a verb

- ★ E-mails they have become a real nuisance V E-mails have become a real nuisance We do not use object pronouns in infinitive phrases or relative clauses if the object has already appeared in the same sentence.
  - \* Those plastic cakes look good enough to eat them.
  - ✓ Those plastic cakes look good enough to eat.
  - \* That's the play I told you about it. V That's the play I told you about

27.1D Subject and object pronouns

There are some cases where we can use either an object pronoun or a subject pronoun After as and than in comparative patterns, we use the subject pronoun only in very formal English; the object pronoun is more common:

- Formal: [The ski instructor didn't ski any better than I]
- · Informal: The instructor didn't actually ski any better than me.

After as and than, we can use a subject pronoun with an auxiliary or modal verb [> 22.1A]:

The ski instructor didn't ski as well as I do/did/can.

We usually use the object pronoun in short responses: 'Who's there?' 'It's us.'

After It is we use the subject pronoun in formal anguage, the object in informal

- Formal: It is they who asked for the music to be turned down.
- · Informal: It's them who asked for the music to be turned down.

When we have a noun and pronoun, or two pronouns together, we tend to put the speaker last (possibly out of politeness):

You and I are both invited to the pro-celebrity golf match, if you fancy it.

However, if we have a noun and pronoun where the pronoun does not refer to the speaker, we usually put the pronoun first.

Don't you think we should let him and his wife decide when to come?

- We should use object pronouns after a preposition although in informal English you may hear the subject pronoun.
  - x They're sending the new consignment over for Tom and I to check
  - ✓ They're sending the new consignment over for Tom and me to check.
- 27 1E In some exclamations we modify object pronouns usually with an adjective Modifying Look what I've done! Silly me! Lucky old him/her.

  We can use a noun after a pronoun to clarify who or what we are referring to

We can use a noun after a pronoun to clarify who or what we are referring to I want you boys to report to the Head after this class!

Then she, Mrs Vincent, got up and asked everyone to leave at once.

27.1F We use it to refer to animals things ideas or actions and not usually to people unless. Uses of he, to refer to an unborn or young baby (if the sex is unknown):

Mary brought her new baby into the shop yesterday - it's very cute.

she and it

one

We use it as an 'empty' subject (▶ 33.2).
'Who can that be at the door?' 'It's my neighbour. He often calls this late.'

It has been several years since sultry singer Sade was last in the spotlight

We use he and she to refer to people and also to animals, especially domestic pets

We had to take our dog Damon, to the vet yesterday He's got ear mites. The fact that English distinguisnes gender with he him, his and she, her, hers can cause difficulty in deciding which form to use after a subject or object not clearly of either gender. He, him or his used to be most common, but many people now object to this. Ways to avoid using he, him and his include the use of helshe (him/her, his/her) in writing, or they (them, their) or plurals in speech or writing:

A doctor always makes decisions according to the best of his/her/their knowledge

Doctors always make decisions according to the best of their knowledge

We often use they (them, their) after indefinite pronouns:

Someone called you from Grant's Garage Oh, did they leave their name?'

27.1G We use one or ones to avoid repeating countable nouns:

Do you prefer the dark chocolates or the light ones?
We do not use one to replace uncountable nouns:

★ Do you prefer white rice or brown one? ✓ Do you prefer white rice or brown?
We can use one/ones after the and adjectives, but not immediately after a/an

x I'd like a loaf of bread. Can you pass me a one from the top shelf?

✓ I'd like a loaf of bread. Can you pass me one from the top shelf?

These are interesting fossil specimens. This is an amazing one.

We do not use *onelones* when we refer to an item that has previously been defined Compare:

I need a drink, a large one. (= any drink)
Where's my drink? Oh, there it is. (= my drink - a defined drink)

### REFLEXIVE AND RECIPROCAL PRONOUNS

27.2A Reflexive pronouns

Reflexive pronouns are formed with self/selves ( 27.1A). We usually use reflexive pronouns when the subject and object are the same person or thing.

✓ Quick! The baby's burnt herself! X Quick! The baby's burnt her. Compare:

Ben treated him to an ice cream. (him = someone else, not Ben)

Ben treated himself to an ice cream. (himself = Ben)

After prepositions we use an object pronoun to refer to the subject when it is clear who or what it refers to; otherwise we use a reflexive pronoun. Compare:

Jim emerged from the underground station and looked around him (him = Jim)

Jane was upset. Alexa was really annoyed with her. (her = Jane)

Jane was upset Alexa was really annoyed with herself (herself - Alexa)

We use reflexive pronouns to refer to the subject after verbs with dependent prepositions (> 15.2):

Politicians have to believe in themselves if they expect the people to believe in them (We use them here as the subject of to believe in them is the people and not politicians.)

We can use either the object pronoun or the reflexive to refer to the subject after as (for), like, but (for) and except (for):

Howard made sure that everyone except him/himself had a drink, as he was driving

27.2B of reflexive pronouns

Some verbs take the reflexive in English where it may not seem logical, and where Idiomatic use is milar verbs in other languages may not take the reflexive, eigine enjoy yourself, help yourself, acquaint yourself (with), behave yourself:

Did the children behave themselves while we were out? (- behave well)

Help yourself to the food won t you? (- take as much food as you want)

The phrase by yourself/himself, etc. means 'alone' or 'without help':

We've decided to go on holiday by ourselves next year.

There are many verbs which take a reflexive in other languages but do not usually do so in English, e.g. wash, dress, feel, remember, hurry:

★ I don't feel myself very well today. 
✓ I don't feel very well today.

of reflexive pronouns

27.2C We can use reflexive pronouns to emphasise the subject or object of a sentence. The Emphatic use pronoun can come after the subject, after the auxiliary (if there is one) or verb after the object or at the end of the sentence.

I have used this technique on a number of occasions,

### myself

We can use the reflexive pronoun either at the beginning or the end of a sentence and separated by a comma to mean 'as far as I'm concerned':

Myself, I don't like the new fashion for flared trousers.

I don't like the new fashion for flared trousers, myself

We use (all) (by) myselfigourself etc to emphasise without any help' or 'completely alone':

The garden looks amazing. Did you do it (all) (by) yourself?

Reciprocal pronouns

27.2D Compare the use of rec procal pronouns (each otherlone another) and reflexive pronouns Steve and Elaine blamed only themselves for the break up of their marriage (They both blamed the two of them and nobody else.)

Steve and Elaine blamed each other for the break up of their marriage (Steve plamed Elaine and Elaine blamed Steve.)

Each other usually refers to two subjects, one another to more than two, though we tend to use the two forms interchangeably in informal English-

He spoke fast and his words tumbled out tripping over each other/one another

- Don't use a reflexive or an object pronoun where a reciprocal pronoun is needed.
  - ✗ So, we'll see ourselves/us at the fountain at half past one tomorrow.
  - ✓ So, we'll see each other at the fountain at half past one tomorrow

### 'IMPERSONAL' PRONOUNS

they

27.3A When we wish to express general feelings and opinions (i.e. not necessarily those of the you we speaker), we can use you, we or they

You can wear whatever you like to go to the theatre these days.

If we wish to include ourselves, it is better to use we-

We can wear whatever we like to go to the theatre these days.

If we wish to exclude ourselves, it is better to use they.

They behave really badly at football matches nowadays.

We also use they to refer to people in authority:

Did you know they've put the parking charges up again?

27.3B We use one in formal language to mean people generally including ourselves

One can sympathise with the sentiments behind the actions of the strikers

We can use one as a subject or object pronoun, and as a reflexive pronoun:

One tends to learn to fend for oneself if one lives alone.

- The use of one to mean 'I' is considered unnecessarily formal: [One would like to attend the ceremony, but one is too busy.]
- US English rarely uses one, but prefers you (► 27.3A).



### INDEFINITE PRONOUNS AND ADVERBS

27.4A Form and use

person	object	place	manner
someone/body1	something	somewhere	somehow
anyone/body	anything	anywhere	anyhow <sup>2</sup>
everyone/body	everything	<b>e</b> verywhere	
no one/bodu3	nothing	nowhere	

Any some every and no combine with nouns or adverbs to form pronouns (or adverbs)

- We use -one and -body interchangeably.
- 2 anuhow is informal and is similar to anyway: Anyhow, as I was saying
- 3 We usually write no one as two words, we write nobody as one word.

These pronouns and adverbs do not refer to a specific person, place, etc.:

They were miles from anywhere - no one would hear her scream.

We use some compounds when we are thinking of a particular unspecified person. place or thing but we use any compounds when we are thinking of people, places or things in general:

'What would you like for your birthday?'

'Oh, anything,' (= no particular present)

'Well, there's something I would like ...' (= a particular present)

• Anu + one/thing/where is not negative:

Anyone would hear her scream. (= any people in the area)

We use any + one/thing/where with the meaning it doesn't matter who/what/where' 'Where shall I sign the card?' 'Oh, anywhere you like.'

If we use these pronouns and adverbs as subjects, they take a singular verb.

Everything is going smoothly and NASA expects to launch the shuttle as scheduled We can use these pronouns with modifiers, e.g. adjectives or else.

Tony decided to do something active about his problems.

Something else you become aware of all over the Basque country is the bracken

### 27/4

Read the article below and replace the underlined words with a suitable pronoun or possessive adjective. The first one is given as an example (0).

En route to Majorca, Mr Warner picked up the in-flight magazine. (8) The magazine ...... fell open at an article about albino lobsters.

These very rare lobsters are just paler versions of a normal lobster. (9) Albino lobsters ....... are also very valuable: (10) an albino lobster ....... caught off the American coast was sold

for £15,000; another, bigger (11) <u>albino</u> lobster ...... was insured for £20,000.

As soon as he reached his destination, Mr Warner raced to a phone. 'Don't sell that lobster!' he told his family firm. But it was too late. (12) The lobster ...... had already been sold. Mr Warner couldn't believe his bad luck. A diner somewhere had eaten the prize catch and (13) the diner ...... had had no idea at all of (14) the animal's ...... value. After 40 years as a fishmonger (15) Mr Warner ...... had thought that no one knew the business better than (16) Mr Warner .. ..... but he had never come across (17) an example ..... of those lobsters before! Mr Warner said that he now knows what it's like when a person wins the lottery only to realise that (18) that person ...... have thrown away the ticket!

It's . we

# 2 27.1, 27.3

Rewrite all of the underlined phrases in this dialogue to correct the mistakes with the pronouns. Some of the underlined pronouns are grammatically incorrect; others may be considered too formal or old-fashioned. In some cases you will just need to change the order of the pronouns. The first one is given as an example (0).

MILES	352 87641. Hello.
PHOEBE	Hi, Miles. (0) It is I, Phoebe.
MILES	Hi, Phoebe, how are things?
PHOEBE	Not too bad. (1) Me and Justin have had colds, but we've
	still been going in, (2) a teacher can't desert his class!
MILES	You should take time off, you know (3) One can't carry on
	working if one isn't feeling well.
PHOEBE	I know what you mean, but (4) it's we teachers who always
	get the blame if the kids don't learn enough and fail their
	exams, so (5) one can't take too much time off. Talking of
	colds, have you had (6) a one this year yet?
MILES	No, I think (7) Land Jenny have been really lucky so far.

PHOEBE	Yes, you have. Listen, Miles, I'm actually phoning to find out if (8) Jenny and you would be interested in joining the amateur operatic society in the village (9) with Justin and I.	
MILES	You're joking, aren't you? You know that you and Justin sing much (10) better than we, and anyway, Jenny thinks the society is really snobbish, so she won't be interested.	
PHOEBE	Perhaps (11) one does get a lot of middle-class people there, but they're always friendly. (12) If anyone new comes in. he's always made welcome.	
MILES	I don't know when is it, anyway?	
PHOE8E	The season starts on Thursday evening	
MILES	Oh, we can't come then. Our dog Samson is having a minor operation that day and (13) we want to be with it in the evening in case the anaesthetic hasn't worn off properly.	
PHOEBE	Oh, (14) poor old he! I hope it goes OK, and I quite understand. (15) One can't be too careful with animals. OK, let's get together another time then. I'll give you a buzz soon.	

# 27.2, 27.3

In each pair of sentences below, one or both sentences are correct. Tick ( $\checkmark$ ) the correct sentences and cross (x) the incorrect ones. Where both sentences are correct, choose an explanation from the box for the difference between them. You can use the explanations more than once.

- A The pronouns refer to different people.
- B There is no difference in meaning at all.
- C The difference is one of emphasis.
- D One sentence is more formal or more dated than the other.

		V and the second	
0		You can get tickets for the whole of the city transport network here.	
	b	One can get tickets for the whole of the city transport network here.	0
1	à	Alicia and Charles biamed themselves for the break-up of their marriage	
	b	Alicia and Charles blamed each other for the break-up of their marriage.	
2		Ewan is thinking of bringing some work with him.	
		Ewan is thinking of bringing some work with himself	
3		We all give each other small presents at the Christmas party.	
		We all give one another small presents at the Christmas party.	
4		Ouch! That radiator is really hot. I've burnt myself!	
		Ouch! That radiator is really hot. I've burnt me!	
5		We're going to miss the bus. Quick, let's hurry ourselves!	
-		We're going to miss the bus. Quick, let's hurry!	
6		The paint effect you've used on the wall is great. Did you do it yourselves?	
		The paint effect you've used on the wall's great. Did you do it by yourselves?	
7		Will we be able to find each other amongst all the people at the concert hall?	
,		Will we be able to find ourselves amongst all the people at the concert hali?	
0		The girl's coach rebuked herself for missing some very easy shots.	-
Q		_	
0		The girl's coach rebuked her for missing some very easy shots.	
9		I thought the Government supported GM food. Didn't the PM say that?	
		I thought the Government supported GM food. Didn't the PM say that himself?	
10		Most people find this style of art depressing. As for me, I think it's stimulating!	
	b	Most people find this style of art depressing. As for myself. I think it's st mulating!	

Underline the correct alternative in *italics* in these sentences. In two sentences both alternatives are acceptable; in these sentences, underline both of them.

- 1 You can't have lost the tickets. They've got to be anywhere/somewhere!
- 2 I haven't got a clue where I am! Isn't there anyone/no one here who could direct me to the Stakis Hotel?
- 3 Is/Are everyone here now? We'll start the tour straight away then.
- 4 There is hardly anybody/nobody to be seen on the streets of the centre after dusk
- 5 Peter decided that he needed to do constructive something something constructive with his life
- 6 The kidnap victims were bundfolded driven into the country and thrown from the car miles from somewherelanywhere.
- I It is essential that we locate someone/somebody who can repair this machine within the next 48 hours.
- 8 The mayor is caught in the city traffic. We ve somehow ranghou got to find a way to get her here fast.
- 9 'What would you like to drink? 'Oh something/anything Whatever you're having will be fine
- 10 That new chess champion from the Ukraine is amazing. Anyone (No one can beat nim)
- 11 Anyhow/Anyway, I must be going now. I've got lots to do this morning.
- 12 The pall can bounce *anywhere isomewhere* between the inner tramines, but if it bounces outside them, you lose the point

# 5 ALL

Read this extract from a book and complete it with a suitable pronoun or possessive adjective which best fits each space. In the book the author, an American, describes his first visit to England.

I didn't know how early (7) ....... could decently begin asking for a room in England, so I thought (8) ....... would leave (9) ...... till mid-morning. With time on (10) ....... hands, I made a thorough search for a guesthouse that looked attractive and quiet, but friendly and not too expensive, and at the stroke of ten o'clock presented (11) ....... on the doorstep of the (12) ....... I had carefully selected, taking care not to discompose the milk bottles. (13) ....... was a small hotel that was really a guesthouse, indeed, was really a boarding-house.

I don't remember (14) ....... name, but I well recall the proprietress, who showed (15) ....... to a room, then gave (16) ....... a tour of the facilities and outlined the many complicated rules for residing there. This was all bewilderingly new to me. Where I came from, (17) ....... got a room in a motel, spent ten hours making a lavish and possibly irredeemable mess of (18) ......, and left early the next morning. This was like joining the army.



Read the article below Some of the lines are correct (examples 0 and 000), some have a wrong word that must be replaced (example 00) and some have an unnecessary word (example 0000). If a line is correct, tick ( $\checkmark$ ) it. If a word must be replaced or omitted, underline it and write its replacement if necessary at the end of the line. There are four examples at the beginning (0, 00, 000 and 0000).

In Manchester, UK, twelve-year-old Andrew and his friends kick a ball to 0 each other themselves after school every day. It is Andrew's ambition to play football 00 for Manchester United. In Pakistan, Asma, also twelve, stitches the balls that 000 Andrew and his friends play with them. It is Asma's ambition to become a 0000 teacher. That ambition is as unattainable for her as is Andrew's for them. 1 In recent years the use of child labour in producing footballs has become 2 an issue which it fuels public indignation. About 80 per cent of match-grade 3 footballs are produced in Pakistan, many of their by children. But is this 4 necessarily a bad thing? Work can be a way for children to gain skills and 5 increase them choices. Many families in Pakistan are extremely poor, they 6 need to find money everyhow and many children have to work. Stitching 7 footballs is safe, easy work, which it can be done at home, fitted around the 8 child's schooling. Anyone wants the children in Pakistan to go to school 9 more than them do But, as one child says, 'If we are to go to school instead 10 of work, one must give us money'. 11 At a conference organised to address the problem of children having to 12 work, children theirselves were asked to give opinions. A girl from Peru 13 commented, 'Anybody must get together to fight the real problem - poverty 14 - not working children.' Children at the conference felt that they herself 15 should be consulted, as adult decisions are often wrong for them. For 16 example, many Bangladeshi children they suffered in the mid-1990s when a 17 US Bill threatened to ban imports made by it: clothing manufacturers in 18 Bangladesh sacked all children under fourteen, and many of themselves were 19 forced to take less well-paid, more harmful work, including prostitution. 20

# Determiners

Determiners are words that precede nouns le gliarticles demonstratives, quantifiers and possessive adjectives. Articles can be a problem area in English for students even at advanced level, especially for those whose own language has a very different article system. This unit covers articles, demonstratives and quantifiers.

### **ARTICLES**

# Basic rules

28.1A Articles (alan the) precede nouns and some other words in a noun phrase, e.g. few. little adjectives. The article is usually the first word in a noun phrase, but note

- all/both/half + the: all the information, both the twins
- quite/rather/such/what/half + a/an: quite a difficult problem

We use the indefinite article (alan) with singular countable nouns a garage, an opinion We use the definite article (the) with singular countable nouns (the garage), with piural nouns (the latest computers) and uncountable nouns (the purest water). We can omit the with uncountable and plural nouns (> 28.1 D).

Naming, describing and classifying

28.1B We use alan when we name or describe something.

That's a scarab beetle. 'What's that?' 'It's an enormous anthill.' We use alan when we refer to one example of a class or a species.

An African elephant has larger ears than an Indian elephant.

We use the to refer to the whole class or species:

The African elephant has larger ears than the Indian elephant.

However, it is more common to refer to the whole class with the plural-

African elephants have larger ears than Indian elephants.

- We do not use alan to refer to a whole class rather than individual examples
  - \* Ruthless poachers hunt an elephant for the valuable ivory of its tusks
  - ✓ Ruthless poachers hunt the elephant for the valuable ivory of its tusks.
  - ✓ Ruthless poachers hunt elephants for the valuable ivory of their tusks

We can also use the with an adjective to refer to a class of people ( 21 1A) The homeless will be removed from the streets and placed in hostels.

topics

28.1C We use alan when the topic (noun) is not known to our listener/reader, we use the Known or when it is known. Therefore, we usually use alan for the first reference to a topic in a unknown text, but then use the for subsequent references:

A new travel guide has advised would be tourists to Morecambe that it is a place to avoid. ... The guide paints a bleak - if not third-world - picture

We do not always have to mention something for it to be known to the listener. We consider that it is known in the following situations:

situation	example
something is unique	We are in danger of permanently damaging the Earth.
superlatives	Muhammad Alı is the greatest heavyweight boxer ever.
the context makes it 'known'	'Has Edward arrived yet?' 'Yes, he's in the dining-room.' (= the dining-room of the house we are in)
a defining phrase makes it 'known'	Oasis is the Manchester band that shot to fame in the early 1990s.
a prepositional phrase makes it 'known'	Meet me in the cafe next to the underground station near my house

28.1D General and specific

28.1D With plural nouns we use either the or no article. We don't use an article when we want rall and to refer to a group or class in general (▶ 28.1B). Compare:

**Tourists** are often blamed for changing the character of a place (= all tourists)

Did you notice what **the tourists** in the cathedral were doing? (= specific tour sts)

It is commonly accepted today that brown **bread** is good for you.

Did you remember to get the bread out of the freezer?

We only use an article before an abstract noun if we wish to make an abstract noun more specific, e.g. to talk about a particular type of hope:

\* It is impossible to live in a world without the hope.

✓ It is impossible to live in a world without hope. (hope in general)

The hope of finding a cure for cancer drives a lot of medical research

Nouns such as church, hospital school do not take an article if we think of their

purpose, i.e. church as a place of worship, or school as a place of learning.

Fewer people attend church regularly now than twenty years ago.

Can children leave school at fourteen in your country?

If we think of the physical place or building, we use an article:

The collection for restoring **the church** has almost reached its target is there **a school** in the village or do the children have to go to the town?

28.1E Other common uses of articles

a/an

jobs, nationalities and beliefs: I'm a structural engineer. Helmut's an Austrian. Cat Stevens became a Muslim.<sup>1</sup>
numbers. a hundred thousand
prices, speeds, etc: two dollars a kilo, 20km an hour

We can use these without an article if we put the noun before the person's name.

\*\*Irishman Eddie Jordan has put together a team of great quality and spirit\*\*

the

some geographical names plurals (the United States, the US) areas (the West), mountain ranges (the Pyrenees), oceans or seas (the Pacific Ocean the Black Sea), rivers (the Rhone)

musical instruments: She plays the violin.

the media: All our family work in the theatre.2

in some comparative phrases: the more the merrier, all the better

in front of superlatives and first, last, next, only, same, right, wrong: the most

dangerous profession, the last time, the only one

in measurements: You can buy saffron by the gram.

physical environments: I prefer the town to the country.

newspapers: the Times, the Herald Tribune, the Daily Mirror

dates when spoken: the tenth of May

<sup>2</sup> We often use television, cinema, etc. without an article to refer to the art or entertainment form. She works in television. I in studying film in my final year. If we refer to a specific item we use the article:

Don't put flowers on the television Have you seen the new film by Ridley Scott?

no article proper names: James, Chris Graham, Mr Jones<sup>3</sup>

names of most countries, mountains, lakes: Japan, Mount Everest, Lake Victoria substances, liquids and gases: Cooking oil is simply liquid fat

materials: This blouse is made of silk.

political or business roles: Lagos became President of Chile in 2000

transport: We're going by rail to London, then by plane.

times and seasons: at night, in summer, at dusk4

no article meal(time)s: Have you had breakfast? See you at lunch. sports: She plays both tennis and squash very well. illnesses: He's got lung cancer. She's had German measles

<sup>3</sup> We use alan if we want to make a name less specific:

A Mr Jones came to see you this afternoon. (I don't know which Mr Jones ) We can make a name more specific by using the:

The Mr Jones with the stutter came to see you. (The stutter identifies this Mr Jones.) "A though we don't usually use an article with seasons little possible to use the in the spring/the summer, and note that we use the with parts of the day in the afternoon

• We usually use a possessive adjective (not the) to refer to parts of the body. Put your hand up if you know the answer.

### **DEMONSTRATIVES**

adjectives

28.2A We can use demonstratives, this/that (singular) and these/those (plura), as adjectives Used as before nouns to refer to someone or something known to both speaker and listener 'I'm not sure which shoes to buy.' 'Well, I think these shoes are lovely.'

	close	distant
space	Do you recognise this man? These parrots can live to over 70	I've seen <b>that</b> man before Can you see <b>those</b> birds in the tree?
time	What are you doing this weekend? There's so much crime these days.	Do you remember that weekend? There were no drugs in those days

We use them to distinguish between close and distant things (in both space and time). In very informal speech we can use this or these instead of alan or some, often to introduce a topic or start telling a story:

This woman came up to me in the bank and asked if she could borrow

Used as pronouns or intensifiers

28.2B We can use demonstratives as pronouns to refer to a noun, a thing or idea ( 35.2A)

This is a really wonderful cup of tea. What kind is it?

Alan says he's giving up his job to travel the world. I think that's stupid.

We can use this to talk about a situation that we are experiencing:

This is the worst recession we have seen for more than ten years.

We can use demonstratives as a more formal alternative to the one(s):

Hundreds of Brixton residents turned out to welcome Tyson to their borough Those who had bothered were rewarded by a 40-minute walkabout

In certain expressions, we can use this or that instead of so to intensify an adjective I've never known a winter this cold before. So you think you're that clever, do you?



### QUANTIFIERS

quantifiers and their use

28.3A Quantifiers are determiners which describe the quantity of something. Notice the use Common of or of the shown in the table:

quantifier	+ singular noun	+ plural noun	+ uncountable noun
no		I've got no coins.	I've got no money.
none of the		none of the details	none of the information
neither	neither cat	neither of the cats	
either	either twin	either of the twins	
any	any document	any (of the) documents	any (of the) information
both		both (of the) awards <sup>2</sup>	

quantifier	+ singular noun	+ plural noun	+ uncountable noun
few/little half	half (of) the task	(a) <b>few</b> (of the) sweets <sup>3</sup> <b>half</b> (of) the tasks	(a) little (of the) water <sup>3</sup> half (of) the work
some several		some (of the) jewels several (of the) episodes	some (of the) jewellery
a lot of many/much	a lot of the conference	a lot of (the) ideas many (of the) chairs	a lot of (the) time much (of the) furniture
most each	most of the holiday each applicant	most (of the) apples each of the applicants	most (of the) fruit
every (one of) all	every page <sup>4</sup> all (of) the problem	every one of the pages all (of) the problems	all (of) the trouble

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> We often use quantifiers (except none and a lot) directly before a noun:

It is impossible to nominate both candidates for the Vice-presidency.

With most quantifiers, using of the before a plura, or uncountable noun changes the meaning of the noun from general to specific.

I'd like some jewellery. (general, we don't know which jewellery)

I'd like some of the jewellery. (specific, a particular set of jewellery)

- · With both we can omit of before the Both of the candidates believed they had won
- <sup>3</sup> For the difference between little/few and a little/a few (► 6.3A).
- "Note the difference between each and every Buth quantifiers describe more than one'; we can use each to refer to two things, but not every:
  - \* She was wearing a fine gold chain on every ankle.
  - ✓ She was wearing a fine gold chain on each ankle.

But: She was wearing a ring on every finger

We usually use some in positive sentences, any in questions and negatives:

You've got some interesting ideas but however, got any money to back them? We can use any in positive sentences with the meaning lit doesn't matter which

You won't catch any fish here. Any fisherman will tell you that

It is possible to use some in questions where we have some expectation that the answer will be positive.

Is some of the information useful? (I expect that a part of it is.)

Is any of the information useful? (I have no idea if it is useful or not.)

Quantifiers as subjects

28.3B We can use quantifiers (except no and e.er.,) without a noun as subject of the clause The vote was split: half were in favour of the motion, half were against it. When used as subjects some quantitiers take a singular verb, and some take a piural verb. Others are used with a singular of plana verb, depending on the noun they substitute or modify. Look at the table

> each, either, much always singular!

Much of the research has already been completed.

both, several, a few, many always plural

Some visitors to the new gallery are enthusiastic but many have

expressed their disappointment.

singular or plural any, half, some, a lot, all

Some of the information is considered top secret. Some of us are hiring a minibus to go to the match.

'We can't get many books to the schools in the outback.' 'Don't worry.

Any (books) are better than none."

None of the students is/are willing to accept the increase in coursework

<sup>1</sup> The quantifiers neither and none take a singular verb with plural nouns, though a plural verb is now accepted in speech and informal writing:

# Practice

### 28.1

Read this story and fill in the gaps with the correct article: a/an, the or – (no article). For one gap you will need a possessive adjective.

If rst experienced terror when I was seven. My mother lived in London, but after a brief liaison with (1). soldier from the United States she became pregnant and fled to (2). country. (At that time, fifty years ago, it was considered shameful to be a single parent.) A great aunt of hers lived in (3). cottage in (4). North Wales, and there she was able to bring me up in (5). peace, pretending that she was a widow. (6). locals were all very friendly to us and accepted us without question, and I had (7)....... blissful childhood.

One day Larrived home from (8) — school to find my mother clutching (9) — telegram in floods of tears (10) — telegram informed her that her father – my grandfather – had died. His funeral would be in three days and we had to go to London. I had never been outside (11) — village and I was really excited at the thought of going to (12) — capital city. So, two days later, we boarded a train to London. It was (13) — first time I had been on a train and I could barely contain (14) — excitement of such an adventure. Several hours later we arrived. I clutched my mother's hand as we stepped down from the train. (15) — station was full of people rushing home from (16) — work and it was quite dark. Now. (17) — fear was starting to creep into my mind. Then, suddenly, we were in (18) — street outside the station. I had never seen so many people, buses and cars, nor heard so much noise. I was terrified. I opened. (19) — mouth and the wall that I let escape was one of (20) — sheer terror.

### 2 28.1

Complete these short sentences with an appropriate article: a/an. the or - (no article).

- 1 He's got ...... asthma.2 The ring is just a band of ..... gold.
- 3 It prints seven pages ...... minute.
- 4 Let's have a weekend in ...... mountains.
- 5 She's at ..... work.
- 6 It's in ...... Tasman Sea.
- 7 Sorry it's ..... wrong answer.
- 8 It appeared in ....... New York Times.
- 9 She's always been ........ Catholic.
- 10 What's for ..... dinner?

- 11 We're going on a day trip by ...... coach.
- 12 They're flying to ...... Seychelles.
- 13 It's ..... best solution.
- 14 Can you ski on ...... Mont Blanc?
- 15 It's quite warm there in ...... winter.
- 16 We all need ...... oxygen.
- 17 We've had over ...... dozen applicants.
- 18 She works in ...... television.
- 19 It's all ...... better if you can come early.
- 20 He was crowned ...... king

## 3 28.2

Complete the dialogue with a demonstrative adjective or pronoun from the box.

this (x3) that (x4) these (x1) those (x2)

ROB What's on TV tonight, do you know?

JENNY No. Why don't you look in the paper you're reading?

ROB (1) ...... paper doesn't have TV listings.

JENNY Oh, right. Well try (2) ...... one on the shelf, over there.

OK \_ yes, let's see There's nothing much on (3) \_\_\_\_\_ days at all, is there? It's all soaps and detective series

- JENNY Mmm I thought there was always a serious documentary on Tuesday evenings (4) one last week on homelessness was really interesting.
- Yes, you're right. There's one on travellers. Listen (5) Is awful. 'Although andowners may lose income while travel ers are on their land, there is no fast route to evicting them

  (6) . . who go through the courts often have to take out more than one injunction before the matter is settled.'
- JENNY Wel, what do you expect? The travellers need somewhere to live, like the rest of us. The government should give them land.
- ROB (7) ........'s no solution, is it? They want to travel, not to settle.
- JENNY How do you know? There was (8) story in my magazine about travellers from years ago and the encampments they made they were allowed to settle down then.
- Yes, but in (9) days there was more free land Land is (10). valuable today, people use every bit of it and don't want travellers on their land.
- JENNY Mmm, well why don't we turn the TV on and find out what the documentary says?

# 4 28.1, 28.2

Match one of the sentences or beginnings of sentences in each pair (1-8) with a continuation of the sentence or conversation from the list below (A-I).

- A I don't know him. Do you?
- B Could I have a closer look at it, please?
- C It's a basic human right.
- D You just have to shop around.
- E It's the tallest type of tree in the world.
- F She took journalism and media studies.
- G You know, the one where Chris works.
- H You know, the one that we couldn't get last week.
- I I've never come across one so talkative before!

0	a	Let's meet in a wine bar.	
	b	Let's meet in the wine bar.	
1	а	My sister went to university.	
	b	My sister went to the university	+
2	а	The cat communicates a lot of desires and emotions.	
	b	This cat communicates a lot of desires and emotions	+
3	a	Dr Richards called to speak to you.	
	b	A Dr Richards called to speak to you.	+ .
4	а	People shouldn't be denied freedom.	
	b	People shouldn't be denied the freedom	+
5	а	A giant redwood once grew to over 70 metres.	
	b	The giant redwood can grow to more than 70 metres.	+
6	а	Let's get a video out this evening	
	b	Let's get that video out this evening.	+
7	а	You can pay a lot less for a car these days.	
		You could pay a lot less for a car in those days.	+
8	а	This is an interesting specimen.	
	b	That's an interesting specimen.	+

# 23 5 28.3

For each of these questions, either one or two alternatives (A–C) are correct. Circle the letters of all the correct alternatives.

- 1 I haven't seen ...... of those films, so I don't mind which one we go to A any B no C either
- 2 You shouldn't slouch like that. It puts ...... of pressure on one hip and leg A much B a lot C all
- 3 At this stage, ...... information would have been a step in the right direction.
  - A little B some C any
- 4 The Fitness Room would like to invite of its patrons to enter the annual fitness challenge A all B every C some
- 5 ...... witnesses responded to the police appeal after the accident.
  - A No B None C Any
- of the women who attended the demonstration was wring to give us an interview A No B None C Many
- 7 We would like to add that medalion is inscribed with the name of its lucky owner A each B every C either
- 8 Only ...... of the news today has been about the election.
  - A half B a little C a few
- 9 We guarantee that tem of the dinner service will be replaceable for a period of ten years
  A each B every C all
- 10 We are delighted to be able to welcome ... the competition winners to the gala evening.

  A both B either C all

# 6 ALL

Complete the article with the words from above each paragraph. (- = no article)

a all the the the The this your - -













# FOOD FRIGHTS

Planning a big day out this summer? It's not just the rides that could turn your stomach!

The risk of food poisoning should be the last thing on (1 ... mind when you're enjoying a quiet day out (2) ....... summer. But, in (3) ........ UK, there were around 95,000 reported cases of (4) ... food poisoning in (5) ... last year alone - a four-fold increase on the number of reported cases just ten years ago.

We checked tood safety at 13 of our top tourist attractions. We tested the food on offer and inspected hygiene standards at restaurants, cafés and kiosks on site. Standards were generally poor. About (6) .... third of the 65 food samples we bought failed to meet satisfactory microbiological guidelines. Sandwiches came out worst. In five of (7) .... . 25 samples we bought we found food-poisoning bacteria. But, to judge from our inspections, the results are not that surprising. Only one in seven food outlets passed (8) .... ... of our inspection criteria. (9 .... ... majority of problems we came across were staff-related, and showed a lack of training in (10) ........ food safety.

1 + 1 ne

t it

# What we found

At (11) . . . . tourist attraction we bought a selection of sandwiches and other food products. Our tests revealed specific food-poisoning bacteria in five of (12) ... . . sandwiches. High levels of other general bacteria were also found in more than (13) ... ... of the sandwiches – while (14) .... bacteria don't make you ill, they do point to (15) ....... poor hygiene practices.

Five sandwiches contained food-poisoning bacteria at levels that are not satisfactory according to guidelines. (16)....... could cause food poisoning (17)... children, elderly people and pregnant women are particularly vulnerable. We ve informed (18)... food outlets and tourist attractions concerned, (19)........ tout not all) have taken positive action as a result of (20)........... disturbing findings.

# 7 ALL

0

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10 11

12

13

14

15

16 17

18

19

20 21

22

23

00

000

Read the following text. In most lines there is an unnecessary word, a word missing or an incorrect word. For each numbered line (1-23), identify the mistake and write the correct word in the space on the right. Some lines are correct. Indicate these with a tick ( $\checkmark$ ). The exercise begins with three examples.

# Magnum past and present

Magnum is a co-operative of nearly sixty photograph, is with offices in New York, London, Paris and Tokyo. A co-operative was founded in 1947 by photographers the Robert Capa, Henri Carto r-Bresson, George Robger and David Seymour. All them had been involved in the Second World War. Rodger had walked hundreds of miles through forest to escape Japanese in the Burma. And Seymour received a medal for his work in American intelligence.

However, all of founders of Magnum had been photographers for some time. Photographic work they were famous for dated back further. Capa's photos of the Spanish Civil war were called 'finest pictures of front-line action ever taken.'

They all appreciated an importance of showing the world what really happens during this major conflicts and world crises, so they decided to produce the best documentary photography at this time. Cartier-Bresson once commented 'Some photographers tell the news step by the step as if making an accountant's statement.' He and Magnum, on the other hand, felt that the news had to be shown in that way that would engage most the people who are unable to experience world-changing events at first-hand.

Tragically, within a decade of the start of Magnum, the half of its original founders died while covering other wars. However, agency had started to employ other top-class photographers and its work was sure to continue. Today, Magnum is some goal for many young photographers. It still produces the finest documentary photographs of world events. Recent coverage has included the events in Balkans and the tribal wars in East Africa, and while Magnum photographers cover these events, we will all be able to appreciate both best and worst of humanity.



# Prepositions

Prepositions are a common cause of confusion for learners, often because each preposition has a number of different uses. This unit looks at the uses of a range of prepositions, and the difficulties they can present (For prepositional and phrasa, verbs Unit 14, for prepositions dependent on nouns, verbs and adjectives Unit 15)

### INTRODUCTION

29.1A A preposition describes the relationship between two or more things. It can link houns Basic verbs or adjectives before the preposition with a noun or pronoun after it:

information

Now, let's move on to Item six on the agenda.

Be careful The hem of your dress is dragging along the floor

John's got an appraisal tomorrow. He's really anxious about it.

Prepositions can be one word only, e.g. of throughout or more words, e.g. because of We got fewer dollars this week because of the drop in the exchange rate

29.1B Prepositions and adverbs There is no difference in form between prepositions and many adverbs, but there is a difference in use, a preposition has an object but an adverb does not. Compare

Did you ever travel before the war, Dad? (preposition) I have a strange feeling that I've been here before. (adverb)

We can modify prepositions with adverbs (the adverbs in the example are in bold) The pub is almost at the end of the street just before the traffic lights



### MEANING AND USE

29.2A Position

vertical relationships

above, after, below, beneath, down, on, on top of, over, under, underneath, up

Above and over have similar meanings as do below and under. We usually use above or below:

The refuge is in the hills above the town.

The temperature was below freezing last night.

But we use over or under in the following cases:

When one thing covers another:

The clouds hung low over the hills. He disappeared under the water.

When horizontal movement is suggested:

Are we going to fly over the Alps?

- With prices, ages, speeds, distances and quantities, where we mean more than or fewer/less than:
  - \* The conference was very badly attended below two hundred people came
- ✓ The conference was very badly attended under two hundred people came.

We use above or below to talk about 'level' or 'rank':

Is the position of Managing Editor above or below that of Editorial Director? It is also possible to use after in this sense:

His opinion is second only after the Managing Director's.

Note the use of up and down:

John lives a few houses further up/down the hill from us

We generally use beneath in idiomatic phrases:

Your behaviour towards my new husband was really beneath contempt!

horizontal relationships against, along, alongside, around, at. beside, between, by, in, near, next to, on, on the left/right of

We use at with a point in space, e.g. at the bus stop at 8 Baker Street, we use on with a surface or a line, e.g. on the table, on the river on Oxford Street, and we use in with something that surrounds, e.g. in the wood. We use different prepositions depending on how we see a place. Compare:

The group will meet at 7.30 at the sports centre. (= either inside or outside)
The group will meet at 7.30 in the sports centre. (= inside)

Also at the corner of the street (= a point) but in the corner of the room (= inside) We usually use in with countries cities or towns. We use on with streets, roads, avenues, etc., and we use at with the names of squares if we think of the address', and in if we think of the square as 'surrounding' us:

\* The film premiere this year will take place on Leicester Square at London

✓ The film premiere this year will take place at Leicester Square in London

The trees in Leicester Square don't look very healthy.

We use at when we refer to gatherings of people at a party, at a conference. We use beside and alongside to express proximity along a line:

Warehouses were built beside/alongside the motorway.

'facing' relationships across after before behind, facing, in front of, opposite, over

We use in front of or behind to describe the spatial relationship of two things, one after the other on a line and facing the same way:

A is in front of B. B is behind A.

In front of and behind can also be used for metaphorical, not literal, position:

front back front back

Christopher is really **behind** his brother in terms of academic development Before and after can refer to position in some contexts:

Karen's nephew appears before/in front of the magistrates this afternoon.

You'll be called first as my name is after yours on the list.

Opposite, facing, across and over have the meaning of on the other side of but with across and over we have to state on the other side of what, e.g. a road, a river:

I'll meet you in the cafe opposite/facing the theatre (- on the other side of the road)
I'll meet you in the café across/over the road from the theatre.

The difference between opposite/facing and in front of is that the items on the 'line' are not facing in the same direction, as in the diagram above, but are facing each other:

A is facing/opposite B. A and B are facing/opposite each other.



29 2B Movement and direction

vertical movement down (to), off, on, onto, over, up (to)

We use these prepositions for movement up or down:

Keep to the right as you go down the stairs.

Look at Johnny's knee - he's just fallen off his bike.

We get on or off a bus, plane, train, boat and bike but into and out of a car.

We can use over for a movement up and then down an obstacle:

The burglar leapt over the garden fence as he ran away from us.

passing movement across, along, down, over, past, through, up

We use along for movement in a line, e.g. along a riverIroad:

You can spend a pleasant afternoon strolling along the canals in Amsterdam

We also often use up and down with roads and rivers (meaning 'along'):

Go up the road to the corner, and the cinema is on the left.

We use across for movement from one side to the other of something on a 'surface' e g across the riveriroadifield. We use through for movement inside something, e.g. through a room/tunnel:

You walk across the playing field to the wood then you go through the wood

Over is similar to across (one's de to the other) but it incorporates the idea of above.

Are we going to fly over the Alps on the way to Italy?

We use past for a movement from one's de to the other of something next to till was startled by a huge bird that flew past my window this afternoon.

movement in one direction around at, away from down down to from into onto out of, to, towards, up, up to

We can use both to and at after certain verbs, e.g. throw shout. To suggests that the recipient of the action is willing but at that he/she is not willing:

Can you throw that book to me, please? (I am willing.)

Don't throw stones at the cat! (The cat is unwilling )

We can use up to or towards when we approach someone or so nething, but we use only up to if we actually reach the person/thing.

- \* Do you think I can go towards him and ask for his autograph?
- ✔ Do you think I can go up to him and ask for his autograph?
- ✓ The scientist moved quietly towards the group of grazing animals.

We can use up (to) and down (to) for movement north or south within a country: We've just come down to Canberra from Darwin.

We can express a circular movement with (a)round:

We drove (a)round the roundabout three times before we took the correct exit.

We can also use the prepositions of movement in a less literal way:

A system of charges has been introduced into the Health Service.

### 29.2C point in time at, in, on

Time

We use at with times, special periods (e.g. celebrations) and in some phrases:
at five to seven at Christmas at might at the weekend (US English on the weekend)
We use in with parts of the day, months, seasons, years, centuries, etc.:
in the evening, in December, in 1999, in the winter, in the twentieth century

We use on with days and dates, including special days:

on Thursday, on (the morning of) the 31st of October, on Christmas Day
We sometimes omit the preposition if we use about or around to be less specific
Let's meet at the station (at) about six; there's a train at ten past
We can supply the materials (on) around Thursday next week.

In US English and informal British English, we can also omit on before days:

Great news! The travel agent can get us on a flight that leaves **Wednesday**We do not use the prepositions at on or in mmed ately before adverbs or adverb a phrases such as today, tomorrow, last/this/next week:

- \* The new soap opera on BBC2 is starting on tomorrow.
- ✓ The new soap opera on BBC2 is starting tomorrow.

before or after after, before, by, past

We can use after or past to mean 'later than':

There's no point in going to the party now; it's after/past eleven o'clock

We use before to mean before a time—and we use by to mean 'before or at a time

Applications must be submitted before 30th November (—on the 29th or earler)

Applications must be submitted by 30th November (—on the 30th or earler)

① The adverbial phrases in time (with time to spare) and on time (at the right time often fixed) have different meanings:

The wedding car arrived in time but the bilde wasn't ready (= time to spare)
I want to arrive right on time at the church. It's not done for the bride to arrive before the groom. (= not early or late)

duration as from/of, between, during, for, from ... till/until/up to, in, inside, since, through(out), until/till, up to, within

We can use a number of different prepositions to talk about duration:

As of next Monday we will have to sispend flexible working arrangements until further notice.

The long flowing style of hair ara creties was fashionable during/through(out) much of the seventies.

This volcano hasn't erupted since 1935

The motorway widening was successfully completed within/in/inside four months

British English uses from — to to express the start and end points of a period of time,
but US English uses through:

I'll be staying at the Hilton from Friday to Monday.
I'll be staying at the Hilton Friday through Monday.

29.2D Other meanings reason because of, due to, for, from, out of, owing to, through

The 10 00 service to Bath has been cancelled **due tolowing to** staff shortage. Huge numbers of people in the Third World die **from** starvation every day. Many parents sacrifice their own mater at wealth **out of** the desire to give their children everything.

The fire started through careless disposal of a cigarette end.

means by, by means of, in, via, with

We use by or with to introduce an instrument.

Negotiations were held by phone between the client and his solicitor.

The victim was killed **by** a bullet to the head/**with** a sawn-off shotgun.

We also use by for the agent (or originator) of something.

It's a painting by Van Gogh. He completed it during his stay in Arles.

Note the difference between by and of here.

It's a painting of Van Gogh. It's actually not a very good likeness of him.

We use in when we refer to the means we use to achieve something Complete the form in pencil. He prefers to paint in watercolour.

### purpose for, towards

I want an opener that can be used **for** opening bottles of beer as well as wine We're saving all of this extra income **towards** a round-the-world trip next year

comparison against, as, beside, between, contrary to, than, (un)like

We use against, beside and contrary to to make a contrast:

Look at this year's sales figures **against** last year's, they're so much better **Beside** her sister, Laura was positively plain.

The Davis Cup final was won by the French team contrary to expectations. We use between to differentiate (usually the difference between).

You won't be able to tell the difference between butter and this spread.

We can use like to make a comparison, but we use as to express a role:

She behaves like a director, but she's really only a secretary.

Speaking as a director of the company, I believe we should sell the shares.

inclusion and exclusion among, as well as, besides, between beyond, inside, instead of, out of, outside, under, within, without

We usually use between with only two objects and among with more than two For women, the distinction between work and leisure is less clear-cut. The terminals are among the biggest single development sites in Europe. Note the uses of the following prepositions which have the meaning of exclusion. Are there any issues remaining besides that of the roof repairs?

I'm afraid that changes to the curriculum are beyond/outside/out of our control.

exception apart from, barring, but for, except (for), save

Everyone is invited to the conference dinner except (for)/apart from/save those who have bought 'day' tickets only.

Except and except for can both be used after phrases containing determiners such as all, every, no:

Julian did very well in all his exams except (for) geography.

Except for one question on calculus. Julian got all the maths questions right. However, when the prepositional phrase contradicts the main idea of the sentence, we use except for:

Trulli emerged from the wreckage of the car uninjured except for a broken thumb. We use but for to mean 'if not for':

The house would have been destroyed but for the quick thinking of the firefighters

contrast ► 32.2 despite, for all, in spite of

Despite/In spite of/For all his grand ways he was really no better off than the rest of us

material from, of, out of, with

We use different prepositions when we describe the material from which something is made (made (out) of, made from, made with ▶ 15.4C).

We use of when the original material is still visible:

a dress made of silk—a jacket made of leather—a table of the finest mahagany. We use from when the original material has been transformed:

ice cream made from strawberries - toilet rolls made from recycled paper

We use with when we refer to a filling or an ingredient: vine leaves stuffed with rice rice pudding made with cream We use of in metaphorical phrases. a man of iron a heart of gold

benefit for, for the sake of, on behalf of

On behalf of our snareholders, I'd like to thank all of you who voted in favour of the merger.

I think we should move to the country for the sake of the children

reporting according to

We do not use according to to report our own feelings or opinions:

- X Holograms aren't a real art form, according to me.
- ✓ According to many art critics, holograms aren't a real art form.
- ✓ Holograms aren't a real art form, in my opinion

### PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES

A prepositional phrase consists of a preposition and the word(s) that follow it. The 29 3A most common words that follow prepositions are nouns and pronouns Form

> it's for you comparisons between | Clinton and Kennedy | sleep on the floor

We can also use -ing forms, adverbs or wh- clauses after prepositions:

As well as helping us to move into the house John bought us a great present Please don't interfere in any way with what I have written in the introduction

A prepositional phrase can include a determiner before the noun or ing form The head teacher doesn't approve of his arrangements with a local band

We can't use a that clause after a preposition:

- \* The government managed to pass the bill through Parliament, despite that it had a low majority
- ✓ The government managed to pass the bill through Parliament, despite its low majority/despite naving a low majority/despite the fact that it had a low majority Nor can we use an infinitive phrase except with the prepositions except, but and save Please come straight home - don't stop except to phone us.

prepositions

29 3B A 'stranded preposition' is a preposition on its own at the end of a clause or sentence. Stranded English commonly uses stranded prepositions in:

Who are you coming to the party with? Questions:

I've been offered the job in London that I applied for! Relative clauses:

What is your coat made from? The passive:

Infinitive clauses: That man is impossible to work with!

We sometimes keep the preposition and object together in formal language We have been unable to offer you the position for which you applied

• We do not precede the relative pronoun that with a preposition:

\* We have been unable to offer you the position for that you applied

# Practice



#### Rewrite the sentences. Put the words in brackets in the correct order.

- 1 The people in the earthquake zone were encouraged to [area away from get the] while there was still time
- 2 Water will be made available [and/crisis/for/hospitals.schools the throughout]
- 3 The acting and the costumes were excellent, [as but for plot/the] it was ridiculous!
- 4 It must have been raining really hard. All [are/through passers-by soaked/the]
- 5 In siyear's award for excellence in the industry will be collected [behalf of on/winner/the] by the chairman of the Design Foundation
- 6 The rescuers pulled the dog [a/by/from/means/of/rope/the/well].
- 7 Can you pass me the pasta pan? It's [cupboard/of on right the top]
- 8 The journey time has been reduced [hours just three to under]
- 9 'You're late. You weren't on the train that was derailed, were you? No Jone after the mine just/was
- 10 Didn't you recognise her? She was sitting [a most beard man opposite/the/the with]



#### 29.2

#### Underline the best alternative in italics.

- 1 Our son, James Christopher, was born in/on the morning of 2nd March
- 2 Don't forget that your final assignment must be nanded to your tutor Ion next Monday
- 3 The sold ers didn't arrive at the village on in time —the rebels had already burned the remaining houses
- 4 Don't be late for the Philharmon a concert you know they a ways start dead onlin time
- 5 There has been no sign of the birds until/since nightfall
- 6 David Mamet's latest play will be showing on Broadway October up tolthrough December
- 7 Payment of your electricity bill is now four weeks overdue. If we do not receive payment on/by 31st July, we shall refer the matter to the court.
- 8 As he opened the shop at 7 30 in the morning. Mr Charles was attacked by/with a baseball bat
- 9 The definitive photograph of/by Mari yn Monroe is the one where she is standing over an air vent
- 10 Alexander Graham Bell worked as/like a teacher for much of his life.
- 11 It was impossible to find anything of importance between among the dead man's papers
- 12 It is the duty of governments today to take seriously the threat of global warming, in spite offfor the sake of future generations.
- 13 Except/Apart for a few less experienced individuals, all of the recent applicants were taken on
- 14 This publication is made of/from paper from sustainable forests.
- 15 Letters of application for this post should be completed in/with handwriting

Complete the following article with the most appropriate prepositions. The preposition may consist of more than one word. The exercise begins with an example (0).

# End of the road

We had no idea where to look for a hotel or a pension in this sleepy town, so we walked (13) ....... an old man sitting (14) ....... a bench by the fountain. He pointed us in the direction of a narrow alleyway and told us we'd find the best hotel (15) ...... the little road. It seemed unlikely, but we followed his advice and sure enough, (16) ...... the other end of the alleyway, (17) ...... two picturesque old houses, was a sign saying 'hotel'. Just (18) ...... the hotel, (19) ...... the other side of the street, was a house covered in the most colourful flowers, and I immediately hoped that we might be able to see the house from our bedroom window. (20) ....... the hotel reception, a cool, dark room with a bar (21) ...... one corner, we asked about a room. Our satisfaction was complete when we realised that even the best room in the hotel was (22) ....... \$50.

We looked at the room, decided to take it and went down to the lounge, where we stopped for a delicious cappuccino. Soon dusk was falling, so we handed the room key (23) ....... the receptionist and told him we'd be back with our luggage in ten minutes. As we walked (24) ...... the narrow streets, we discussed what we would do the next day and how long we'd stay in the little town. Imagine our horror when we arrived (25) ...... the car park to find it completely empty – our car and all of our luggage had been stolen!

In most of the lines of the following text, there is one word or phrase missing. For each line 1–14, indicate where the word should be (use  $\angle$ ) and write the missing word in the spaces on the right. Some lines are correct. Indicate these lines with a tick ( $\checkmark$ ). The exercise begins with two examples (0 and 00).

One of the changes in entertainment in recent years has been the arrival of alternative comedy. In this type of comedy, performers work with (is considered

what

- 1 to be taboo or controversial. It's a very strong kind of humour, the main aim
- 2 which is the desire to shock people out their comfortable complacent lives and
- 3 make them think about is important in life today. Some of the most common
- 4 subject areas that a ternative comedians work are politics, sex and religion
- 5 Alternative comedy takes place mainly in adult clubs and comedy venues,
- 6 because of the that it guestions and threatens the establishment public TV
- 7 channels have been reluctant to give it much air time, except try to boost ratings.
- 8 occasionally among certain audience sectors. In fact, whenever alternative
- 9 comedy has appeared on prime time TV, viewers with children have complained
- 10 about being somehow corrupted by the nature of the humour. Of course, this
- 11 kind of comedy is not intended for children at all, nor is it really the older,
- 12 established families with children that it is a med. Fortunately for a ternative
- 13 comedians, the section of society it is intended younger people who themselves
- 14 question the values and priorities of society continue to support it.

### 5 ALL

Underline the correct word or phrase in italics. In some cases, both may be correct.



No, you're not looking at a scene (1) from/out of a James Bond movie! The futuristic buildings in this photo really exist. They are part of the Eden Project – one of the most spectacular (2) in/of the Millennium projects.

The Eden Project is located (3) at/in Cornwall, England, in a former clay pit (4) above/over 50 metres deep. It consists of two enormous domes, a large open area and a visitor centre. The Eden Project functions (5) as/like a 'storeroom' for a huge number of plants from (6) across/all over the world. The two collections of domes house plants and trees (7) from/for the tropical and temperate regions (8) of/in the world, while the open area accommodates more local species.

The Eden Project is much more (9) as/than a storeroom, however. It is a centre (10) for/on education.

art and science, snowing us ways in (11) which/that plants are vital to the world's existence, and promoting understanding of the delicate balance (12) between among using and conserving plant life. As well as (13) offer/offering a visitor attraction (14) to/for people of a liages, the Eden Project provides a focus both for scientific research and for education (15) including/inside exciting experiences for children, such as walking (16) through/in a rainforest (17) outside/without leaving England.

In the year 2000, the Eden Project was in the final stages (18) at/of construction (19) Contrary to/Unlike most projects of this scale, the Eden Project opened its doors to visitors (20) for/during that building stage (21) For/Since several months visitors were able to experience the challenges that lie (22) under/behind the building of such a project and get a taste of (23) what/which was to come. (24) From/In spring 2001 this living theatre opened fully to the public and for (25) under/below £10 everyone can now experience the diversity of the world's plants



Prepositions are missing from the following three stories. Use the prepositions in the box above each story to fill the gaps.

according to across between by from in on to

#### A BAD EXPLORER

A man (1) . Kentucky, USA, had a dream that would take him away from the rolling bills of his home state. The dream, to row (2) . . . . the rey Bering Strait (3) ...... Alaska and Russia. (4) ..... a bathtub! Unfortunately, the dream was not completely fulfilled (5) . . . the explorer, 'I took four gallons of peanut butter along bat (6) ...... the morning of the fourth day, it had gone solid (7) ...... late afternoon a though the sun was still high, the sea went rather thick. Next morning I was frozen in . No problem. He abandoned the bathtub and walked (8) ....... land.

at behind in instead of into like under with

# Some stupid thieves

the town of Vang, Norway, a group of professional thieves were carrying out a carefully planned tobbety. Everything was going 10 — clockwork. They broke into a company (11) — ..... night, located the safe and set up some explosives that would blow the door of the safe off, allowing them to get to the money inside. After setting the fuse, they ran (12) ...... the next room, crouched (13) ...... the wall and waited for the explosion. It came a few seconds fater. The safe door was blown off. So was the roof, In fact, the entire building collapsed, trapping the robbers, still crouching in the next office, (14) ...... the rubble of the destroyed building. There had been just one problem they had not foreseen: (15) ...... money, the safe had been filled (16) ...... dynamite.

about against along at between during in in into

# Self-help crime prevention

A Western businessman living (17) Japan had been warned (18) . . . pickpockets in the Tokyo subways. These notorious thieves operated (19) the crowded rush hour. They had a habit (20) . . . grabbing wallets just as the subway doors were closing, leaving the victim helpless (21) ...... the train while they disappeared with the loot.

One morning the businessman was (22) — his usual subway stop when the train pulled in. He got on, and sure enough, just as the train doors were about to close, he felt a man rub (23) . ... him. In a panic, the businessman reached for his wallet. It was gone! He looked up as the doors began to close and saw that a man had just got (24) . .... , the train The man was looking at him triumphantly.

When he reached his office, he called his wife to get his credit card numbers so he could cancel them. 'But honey,' she said, 'I've been waiting to call you. You left your wallet (32) ...... the dressing table when you went to work today.'

# Word order and verb patterns

Word order in English is very important in signalling the relationships between the different elements within a sentence. Although the subject usually precedes the verb in English, there are many different ways of ordering the other elements in the sentence This unit examines word order in sentences, as well as the most common verb patterns in English and the way we link clauses to make complex sentences.

#### WORD ORDER IN ENGLISH

Sentence word order

30.1A Word order shows us which element of the sentence is the subject and which is the object. In affirmative sentences, the subject is usually first, followed by the verb-Sarah really enjoys a hot dog (for tea occasionally).

> subject verb

This is not the same as: A hot dog really enjoys Sarah (for tea occasionally)

The main part of the example above (i.e. outside the brackets) shows subject-verb-object word order (SVO). There are, however, occasions when we



main verb object auxiliary verb subject

We also change the order when we place adverbs such as never, seldom, rarely (> 34.3B) at the beginning of the sentence for stylistic reasons:

Is the Prime Minister discussing the issue of debt with the Cabinet?

'Never in the field of human conflict was so much owed by so many to so few.' (For more on word order with adverbs ▶ Unit 24.)

30.1B Variations

Apart from the variations mentioned ( 30 1A), a number of patterns can follow verbs in English. Note that even verbs with similar meanings can take different patterns

I said that you could go. (verb + clause)

I told you that you could go. (verb + indirect object + clause) She told me a lie. (verb + indirect object + direct object)

• The indirect object is often a person who receives something (a lie, in the example) above) and it is often introduced by a preposition (▶ 30.2C).

#### VERB PATTERNS

30.2A

Some verbs do not have an object. These are intransitive verbs:

Verb only (intransitive verbs)

They've arrived! The cup shattered

We can use adverbs or prepositional phrases with these verbs:

They've arrived there! The cup shattered into hundreds of tiny shards of glass After admitting the charge, the politician apologised to all his constituents Some common intransitive verbs are come fall, go happen, lie, sleep, swim wait

Some verbs can be intransitive or transitive (used with an object 30.2C below)

The door opened. (intransitive) He opened the door. (transitive)

The meat burnt. (intransitive) The cook burnt the meat. (transitive)

Some common verbs that can be transitive or intransitive are begin, break change, close, continue dry finish, hang, hurt, move separate, stand, start, stop tear, turn

Sometimes the two uses of a verb can have very different meanings.

He ran to catch the bus. (intransitive = moved quickly)

He ran the new software to show us how it worked. (transitive = operated)

In modern usage, some transitive verbs are used as intransitive verbs

I don't know why you're bothering with those boots - they won't self

And some intransitive verbs are used as transitive verbs:

In order to survive we need to grow the business by 100 per cent within two years

30.2B Verb + complement Some verbs are followed by complements (not objects). A complement is usually a noun phrase or an adjective that identifies idescribes or gives information about the subject.

George Carey has become the new Archbishop of Canterbury

My grandmother has become very forgetful recently

f f subject verb

complement

Some common verbs which introduce complements are be, become, appear, keep (+ adjective), remain, taste, make:

You don't want to remain a shop assistant all your life, do you?

A quiet afternoon at home would make a nice change.

Chris was very good - he kept quiet all through the boring sermon.

After seem, appear look feel and sould we can use an adjective to describe the subject. The whole group seemed very keen. Marie's new outfit looked fantastic!

We can also use a noun phrase to describe the subject after these verbs:

That sounds a wonderful idea! Your suggestion seems the best solution

- However, when we use a noun phrase after seem or appear to identify (rather than describe) the subject, we have to use to be to introduce the noun phrase.
  - \* Surprisingly, the young fresh-faced boy seemed the boss.
  - ✓ Surprisingly, the young fresh-faced boy seemed to be the boss.

A complement can also describe the object of a verb. In this case, the object comes before the complement:

The committee named Frances President.

The journey made the children fractious.

subject verb object complement

We often use verbs of naming, e.g. name, call, elect, with this pattern:

The President finally decided to call his new dog Buddy.

We can use a noun or an adjective as the complement after verbs such as think, keep, consider, prove, call, find.

Although he was twenty. Katherine still considered him a child/childish

Many critics call Kevin Costner's The Postman his worst movie yet

We can use an adjective as a complement in the same pattern in a number of idiomatic phrases after verbs such as *drive*, *send* and *turn*:

The noise of the planes flying over us at night drives me crazy!

The new aftershave from Givenchy is guaranteed to send women wild.

Did you see his expression? It could turn milk sour!

Transitive verbs have a direct object, which can be a noun or a pronoun-Verb + We discussed the problem!it at great length object(s) subject verb object The object can also be an -ing form (with or without a prepositional phrase): The instructor suggested practising (on the nursery slopes first). We can omit the object after some trans tive verbs where the context is clear Geoff was mortified to find that he had failed (the test) again. Some common transitive verbs which can omit the object are answer ask, drink, eat, enter, fail, leave, pass, play, practise, sing, study, wash, win, write. In English a number of verbs can take two objects, e.g. give, bring, buy show. These verbs take a direct object and an indirect object and there are two possible patterns The judges gave the enormous marrow/it first prize. subject verb indirect object direct object The judges gave first prize to the enormous marrow. subject verb direct object indirect object \* The judges gave to the enormous marrow first prize. If we put the direct object first, we introduce the indirect object with a preposition (either to or for). We do not vary from this. If the indirect object is a pronoun, we prefer to put it before the direct object. [The Shakespearean actor brought a certain amount of class to us.] ✓ The Shakespearean actor brought us a certain amount of class. Which pattern we use often depends on what information in the sentence is new. We prefer to put new information at the end of the sentence (> 36.1A). 30.2D We can use a prepositional phrase after intransitive verbs (► 30.2A). Verb + The train departed from platform 9' but we were waiting on platform 5 prepositional phrase subject verb prepositional phrase We can also use prepositional phrases after transitive verbs: He carefully removed the egg | from the nest |. verb object prepositional phrase We do not usually change the order of object + prepositional phrase in this pattern, unless the object is very long (▶ 36.18): \* He carefully removed from the nest the egg one chick that had already hatched 30.2E Many verbs can be followed by another verb (► 12.2A): Verb + verb

He carefully removed from the nest the three fragile blue-speckled eggs and the

The consultant refused to take responsibility for the decision.

subject verb verb

We can use a direct object between the verbs-

We require all students to attend the pre-sessional English course.

subject verb direct object verb

With some verbs we do not need to, for example modal verbs, auxiliary verbs, semi modals (need and dare), and make and let:

He daren't leave early without my permission.

Let the dish stand for at least a minute after removing it from the microwave

We can use the verb help with or without to:

The volunteers helped (to) provide support and comfort to the refugees.

30.2F Verbs can be followed by that clauses or which clauses (those which start with a question Verb + clause word). We often use that clauses after verbs of speaking and thinking.

The staff agreed that redundancies were the only course of action

subject verb clause

• We can omit *that* after the verbs mentioned above:

The warden told the visitors (that) the prisoner did not want to see them

Examples of wh- clauses are indirect questions ( $\triangleright$  7.3):

I couldn't meet you. You didn't tell me when you were arriving

subject verb object clause

Who words can be followed by to + infinitive after verbs such as show, explain, teach Is it common for people to teach their children how to drive here?



#### LINKING CLAUSES

30.3A We can link clauses of equal value (le both can stand on their own) with and, but or or Coordination With these conjunctions we can often put either of the clauses first:

We can pay in one lump sum or we can pay in instalments.

We can pay in instalments or we can pay in one lump sum.

If the subject is the same in both clauses, we can omit it in the second clause (= 35.3A). He rang the doorbell and knocked on the door

We can also use the 'two-part conjunctions both and either or, neither nor and not only ... but (also):

At the French Open Hewitt both proved his return to form and won the only Grand Slam title to have evaded him.

30.3B When we link a main clause with a subord hate clause (le dependent on the main Subordination clause), we use conjunctions (when if a though). With subordinate clauses we cannot usually change the order of the events in the clauses without changing the meaning

1 The flowers were delivered just after she left]. (she left = first event)

main clause subordinate clause

2 She left just after the flowers were dewered (flower de ivery - first event)

main clause subordinate clause

It is, however, usually possible to change the order of the clauses themselves Just after she left the flowers were delivered. (= same as 1 above) Just after the flowers were delivered, she left. (= same as 2 above)

Common types of subordination are:

- that or which clauses. Didn't the notice say when the water was going to be cut off?
- Adverbial clauses, e.g. of condition (▶ Unit 10) or contrast (▶ Unit 32) There may well be more accidents in future if air traffic continues to grow Although the Aztecs were rich and powerful, the Spanish conquistadors overpowered
- Relative clauses, introduced by pronouns, e.g. who, which, that (▶ Unit 31): It was surprisingly not their latest CD that went platinum, but the one before
- Comparative clauses ( Unit 22) With the strength of the pound at present we paid less for our holiday this year than we did last year.

# Practice



#### 30.1

Choose the correct sentence, A or B, for each cartoon. In some cases both sentences are correct.

- 1 A The dog chased the cat down the garden.
  - B The cat chased the dog down the garden.





2 A John thought Harriet was wonderful.

B Harriet thought John was wonderful



3 A Mary said Kevin was an idiot B 'Kevin,' said Mary, 'was an idiot.'



- 4 A Our priceless Ming vase broke the picture of Uncle Albert when it fell on it.
  - B The picture of Uncle Albert broke our priceless Ming vase when it fell on it.



- 5 A Jerry has become a real little devil.
  - B A real little devil has become Jerry.

### 3

### 30.1, 30.2

Each sentence below contains one mistake with word order. Rewrite the sentence correctly.

- O The military regime denied to the world's press access

  The military regime denied access to the world's press
- 1 When he made out his will, Mr Smithson refused to leave anything his estranged son
- 2 Geoff originally believed Susan when he told her he was having long bus ness meetings after work
- 3 Please leave by the door your shoes before entering the temple
- 4 The Management recommends that you keep safe your valuables by handing them in at Reception

- 5 The invitation doesn't tell what we should wear at the reception us.
- 6 The new President of the United States has been elected George W Bush.
- 7 It is said that our thinking power really improves studying philosophy.
- 8 She carefully placed the 24-carat gold, diamond encrusted engagement ring that her flance had just bought her onto her finger
- 9 The course director insists on attending at least 80 per cent of classes the first year students.
- 10 Prizes can be claimed by sending the form and proof of purchase as lat the address below

# 3 30.2

Read the newspaper article and then choose the best phrase (A–P) to complete each space. Write the letter of the chosen phrase in the space. Some of the answers do not fit at all. The exercise begins with an example (0).

# Children at risk from mental illness

A recent study has shown that levels of mental illness (0) G. The study claims that mental problems such as depression and anxiety (1). One of the reasons given for this is the current obsessive preoccupation of parents with their children's safety Parents today consider the streets (2). , so children are taken from home to school and back, and their parents rarely let them (3) ... . This preoccupation has two causes, fear of traffic accidents and anxiety about child molesters and murderers on the streets. Parents' fears make (4) about the outside world and children in turn miss the normal adventures of everyday life. In addition, they don't learn (5) ... with other children. Over-anxious children often become (6) ... and their fears are therefore realised and even increased. It is a vicious circle. It is a fact, however, that children could be experiencing (7). While parents may think a child molester lurks (8) this is not supported by statistics, very few children are attacked by people they don't know. The fear of traffic accidents is certainly more real but is something that needs to be addressed by society in general. Some cities in The Notherlands, for example, have created 9)—and pedestrian-friendly zones, where cars, if allowed at all, must give priority to people and bicycles. Children can therefore play (10) ....

There are, however, critics of this study. Many child psychologists believe that (11) ... enough to cause mental problems. They consider the problems more likely (12) ... family breakdown in modern society.

- A their children anxious
- B are affecting one in five youngsters
- C this lack of independence not to be
- D traffic-free zones
- E how to form relationships
- F this lack of independence is not
- G un children are rising
- H these fears unnecessarily

- I to be a result of
- J more safely in these areas
- k go out on their own
- L their children to be anxious
- M too dangerous for their children
- N victims of bullies
- O round every corner
- P being too dangerous for children

# 4 30.2

Rewrite the jumbled phrases to make sentences with the correct word order.

- 1 named/Samantha/their first daughter/the couple
- 2 to stand/when he arrives/visitors expects/His Excellency
- 3 to stay/a legal assistant I wouldn't like/for long
- 4 brought/to the team/Amanda/al her expertise
- 5 brought/the team/Amanda/all her expertise
- 6 has become/a very nexper enced sa esman/the Sales Manager
- 7 into the box/sparkling, diamond encrusted/he placed/18 carat gold ring carefully wrapped/the
- 8 provided all rubbish please/in the bins/put
- 9 let to/your parents/all-night parties/do.go.you/?
- 10 the grenade/removed/the paratrooper/the pin/from/carefully
- 11 so her daughter/the bracelet/bought/for her/Susan I ked it
- 12 all day long, their resistance/stand the prisoners/they to made reduce
- 13 of destruction all sick the scenes/us/made/ in the film
- 14 an easy programme trying/first/recommended the trainer



### 30.3

Match the clauses in A and B to make sentences, using a linking word from the box to join them. Decide if each sentence contains co-ordinated clauses or a subordinate clause, and write C or S

> after even though and than that when

- O Did the doctor say exactly -
- 1 It was the finest portrait
- 2 Some of the passengers were causing trouble
- 3 The holiday will be automatically cancelled
- 4 The policeman was rushed to hospital
- 5 We can either go camping
- 6 Maurice Greene won the gold medal
- 7 Our car broke down last week
- 8 The whole class would rather go to the cinema

- a the pilot diverted the plane to the nearest airport.
- b stay in a cheap hotel.
- c we only bought it two months ago.
- d he smashed the World and Olympic Records
- e he had been stabbed in the park.
- f the artist had ever painted.
- g see a play at the theatre.
- h you'll be able to go back to work?
- i we don't receive the balance on the due date

+ when (5

furious! It was hitarious!"

Nîn	ne of these sentences contain mistakes. Tick (🗸) the correct sentences and correct the mis	takes.
1	The wind knocked the vase off the table and it broke thousands of pieces	
2	The attitude of some shopkeepers today makes me absolutely furious!	
3	The children seemed content to remain to be tenants in their parents' house.	
4	I can't understand what's happened. There appears some mistake.	
5	The whole teaching staff found the new head teacher very nefficient and positively offensive	
6	No wonder you can't get a table for tonight – we recommended book the restaurant at least a week in advance.	
7	The winning team proudly showed to their gathered rans their trophy	
8	The voice over the loudspeaker explained as the problem	
9	I don't know the way to the I brary Can you tell me to go?	
10	The young boy looked around and gingerly placed back its correct position the gold watch. He wouldn't steal it after all.	
11	The neighbours very kindly he ped move us our furniture into the new house	
12	The smell of fish cooking drives absolutely wild my cats	
ę.	ALL	) _
Fill	l each gap in this text with no more than three words.	
Bo coi Eve	w things are more detested by drivers than the 'Denver out' – the wheel clamp. Motorists in many countries in mider (1) one of the most odious inventions ever eryone dreads the consequences of finding one of these on the clamping company waiting (2) to arrive paying the fine for removing the clamping company waiting (2).	ng the
cla	One inventive motorist recently found an ingenious way of releasing his car, however, (3)	cause
ha he wo ma tyr	y damage at all to the clamp or his car. A local shopkeeper takes up the tale. This motorist cance to his car and found a clamp on the wheel. He seemed (4) a mild-mannered man, but it dobviously made him really (5) as he started muttering and swearing under his breath calmed down. He took out a mobile and phoned the clamping company and they told him (6) build be there in 45 minutes, which obviously didn't please him. Then he had an idea. He took a atch and started fidding with the car tyre. I realised that he was (7) the air escape from the fight he got the jack out of the car boot and jacked up the car. The clamp then slid off the thino problems! (8) he had carefully placed (9) on the pavement, he pumped his tyack up is miled at me, got in the car and drove off. Five minutes later the clampers arrived to find the same the clampers arrived to find the same time the car because of the minutes later the clampers arrived to find the same time.	this Then  the wheel yre

# Relative clauses

Relative clauses are subordinate clauses ( 30 3B) which refer to the noun of the main clause dentifying t or adding extra information. There are two types of relative clause defining clauses (identifying the noun or classifying it as part of a group) and non-defining clauses (adding information about the noun). This unit examines both types of relative clause and the pronouns and adverbs used to introduce relative clauses

#### **RELATIVE CLAUSES**

Form and use

31.1A Relative clauses are subordinate clauses introduced by relative pronouns, such as that which or who ( 31.2) These clauses give information about someone or something in the main clause. Compare these examples:

Lused to live in one of those houses. They have now been demolished

Lused to live in one of those houses that have now been demolished

main clause

relative clause

The relative pronoun is the subject or object of the relative clause ( 31.1B) It s therefore unnecessary to repeat the noun from the main clause or introduce a personal pronoun to replace it-

\* I used to live in one of those houses that they have now been demolished We usually put the relative clause as close as

possible to the noun it refers to, otherwise the meaning may not be clear:

X Jack has prepared his favourite dish from Jamie Smith's recipe book, which he is about to eat.

✓ Jack has prepared his favourite dish. which he is about to eat, from Jamie Smith's recipe book.

We often avoid relative clauses in casual speech and writing preferring shorter ways of defining or adding information:

People who come from Wales are often quite musical. (relative clause)

Welsh people are often quite musical. (adjective)

People from Wales are often quite musical. (prepositional phrase)

31.1B Subjects and objects

A relative pronoun can be the subject of a relative clause.

Last week I saw that film which won all the Oscars.

#### subject relative pronoun

Here, the pronoun is the subject of the relative clause (the film won the Oscars) ever though it is the object of the main clause (I saw the film).

A relative pronoun can also be the object of a relative clause.

Last week I saw the film which you made at college.

#### object relative pronoun

Here, the pronoun is the object of the subordinate clause (you made the film) In defining relative clauses ( 31.1C) we can omit the relative pronoun when it is the object of the relative clause, but not when it is the subject.

\* Last week I saw the film won all the Oscars.

✓ Last week I saw the film you made at college.

31.10 A defining relative clause identifies or classifies a noun or pronoun in the main clause

Defining • Identifying relative clause Is this the book that you were looking for?

 Classifying relative clause. Would all those who have booked dinner please go to the relative clauses restaurant now?

(In the second example, the relative classifies the members of a group ) In defining relatives, the relative clause gives information which is necessary for the sense of the sentence. In the first example above, if we say just Is this the book?, this does not convey the key meaning of the whole sentence, . e. the book that you were looking for.

We often use defining relative clauses to describe an important quality of someone or something:

Van Gogh was an artist who used a lot of bold, vibrant colours.

We often use a relative clause with the same pattern for emphasis, with introductory it (> 34.1B).

It is always violent crime that provokes the most extreme reaction from the public

31.1D We usually use non-defining relative clauses to add extra information about the subject Non-defining of a main clause:

relative clauses

ITV's News at Ten, which occupied the mid-evening slot for many years was a very popular programme.

(main clause = ITV's News at Ten was a very popular programme.)

We can also use non-defining relative clauses to show consecutive actions:

Heskey passed the ball to Owen, who scored a magnificent goal.

We use non-defining relative clauses mainly in writing and formal speech.

Punctuation and pausing

31.1E We usually use commas to separate the relative clause from the main clause in nondefining relatives, but we do not use them in defining relatives:

> The tribespeople, who traded with the settlers, retained their land (A I of the tripespeople retained their and and incidentally they traded with the settlers ) The tribespeople who traded with the settlers retained their land (Only some of the tribespeople retained their land - this defines a group.)

The use of commas reflects the way we say the two types of relative clause. In defining relative clauses, there is no pause between the main clause and the relative clause

We asked for the double room which had a sea view.

In non-defining relatives, there is a short pause after the main clause or between the two parts of the main clause:

We were given a lovely double room ( ), which had a sea view. I first met Harry Gardiner ( ) who eventually became my father-in-law ( ) at a Law Society meeting.

with relative

31.1F We can use prepositions with relative pronouns. Where we put the preposition depends Prepositions on formality (► 29.3B):

- Informa Have you seen the little case that/which I keep my contact lenses in?
- clauses · Formal This system provides a case in which the contact lenses can be kept We do not put a preposition before the relative pronoun that:

✗ This system provides a case in that the contact lenses can be kept.

(If we put a preposit on before who the pronoun always becomes whom Compare The people who this report is addressed to will have to consider carefully the consequences of the proposed cuts.

The people to whom this report is addressed will have to consider carefully the consequences of the proposed cuts.

We can often use where (for places) or when (for times) instead of which + preposition (► 31.2A):

This is the house where I grew up/which I grew up in/in which I grew up

relative

clauses

General use

31.1G We often 'reduce a relative clause, i.e. we shorten it by omitting the pronoun and verb Reduced We can do this with a participle phrase (> 13.1, 13.2).

Marilyn was the woman living in the flat underneath us at the time (- wno lived/was living in ...)

The clauses struck out of the agreement were all unimportant (- which were struck out/which we struck out ...)

Another possibility is to use an infinitive phrase (► 13.3, 13.4).

Newton was the first person to really understand the laws of gravity. (= who really understood ...)

### **RELATIVE PRONOUNS AND ADVERBS**

31.2A This table lists relative pronouns and adverbs and how they can be used

	used for	used as			
pronouns		subject	object	defining	non- defining
1 who	people, animals	V	V	V	V
whom	people	ж	V	V	V
<sup>2</sup> which which	objects, animals ideas	<b>V</b>	V	×	~
3 that	people, objects, animals	V	V	✓	×
4 whose	relationships, possessions	~	V	V	V
<sup>5</sup> no pronoun	people, things, animals	×	•	V	×
adverbs					
6 where	places	V	V	<b>V</b>	V
7 when	tîmes	V	V	V	· •
8 why	reasons	✓	✓	V	~
nominal pr	onoun				
9 what	objects, ideas (means the thing that)	<b>V</b>	•	•	×

Notes on the table.

We sometimes use who to refer to animals, particularly domestic pets: Is Sheba the dog who was run over and nearly killed last year? Whom is formal and we rarely use it in speech. We now mainly use it after prepositions (► 31.1F):

I am referring to the person with whom you were seen on that evening.

Note that we always use which (not who) to refer to inanimate objects. We can also use which to refer to the 'idea' of a whole clause:

When he came home, he was unusually attentive, which made her very suspicious Here, which refers to the fact that 'he was unusually attentive'.

We can use that to refer to people or objects, but we usually prefer to use who for a person when the pronoun is the subject of the relative clause:

Ms Harrison is the lawyer wholthat has been chosen to represent you

- We do not use that in non-defining relative clauses:
  - x This offer, that will not be repeated, must end next week.
- In US English that is more common than which or who in defining relative clauses.

- It is possible, though not very common, to use whose to refer to objects it would only be possible to colonise planets whose atmosphere contained enough oxugen to sustain human life. (= the atmosphere of which)
- We often omit a relative pronoun when it refers to the object of a defining relative clause (> 31.1B):

The girl (who) I met in the florist's was at the party. (= I met the girl.)

We cannot omit the pronoun if it is the subject of the clause:

- \* The girl works for the florist in the High Street was at the party
- ✓ The girl who works for the florist in the High Street was at the party
- We cannot omit an object relative pronoun in non-defining relative clauses.
  - X Last year's winner presented the cup, each holder keeps for the year.
  - ✓ Last year's winner presented the cup which each holder keeps for the year.
- 6 We can use which or that + a preposition instead of where (▶ 31.1F):

Mozart's birthplace and the house where he composed 'The Magic Flute are both now museums.

Mozart's birthplace and the house **that** he composed. The Magic Flute. **in** are both now museums.

We can use that as an alternative to when in defining relative clauses:

I remember - it was the day when/that the heatwave started.

We can use which or that + a preposition instead of when (► 31.1F):

The attacks continued up to the day on which the agreement was signed

<sup>8</sup> The only noun which takes why as a relative pronoun is reason

Sometimes he thought her clear morality was the reason why/that he loved her We can use which + for instead of why.

High taxation is often the main reason for which governments fall.

- It's possible to use relative adverbs without the noun to which they refer it's (the place) where that rock festival is held every year.
- We use what to mean 'the thing that which. The clause containing what is a nominal clause i.e. the whole clause acts as a nounce ther a subject or an object. While what isn't used in the same way as that or which it can fulf the same functions as the other relative pronouns.

Why don't you tell the police what you told me yesterday?

In this example what you told me yesterday is the object of the verb tell. It means the same as:

Why don't you tell the police the story (that) you told me yesterday.

We cannot use what to replace who, which or that:

- \* It was the money what I wanted, not the fame.
- ✓ It was the money (that) I wanted, not the fame.

This could be expressed as.

The money was what I wanted, not the fame. (= the thing that I wanted)

**31.2B** We often use modifiers, such as *all* of and many of before which or whom in a non-Modifying a defining relative clause to refer to the subject or object of the clause:

relative pronoun/

adverb

The supermarket removed from the shelves all of its jars of tomato puree, several of which were found to contain fragments of glass.

The college entered over a hundred students for the exam, all of whom passed. We interviewed fourteen applicants for the post, none of whom we thought suitable

31.2C In defining relative clauses we can modify the pronoun or adverb with *-ever* to give the Whichever, meaning of anything, anyone, anywhere, etc.:

whenever, Use whichever phone you want - they all have outside lines.

etc. I'd like to meet whoever did that to the garden hedge!

I'd like to meet whoever did that to the garden hedge! You can put the photo wherever you think it looks best. I don't mind.



### 31.1

Match each headline (1 10) with a sentence (A–J). Then write one sentence containing a relative clause (defining or non-defining) to combine each headline and sentence that accompanies it. Use the present perfect tense in the main clause.

- O SCIENTISTS DISCOVER NEW WONDER-CLIRE FOR CANCER
- 1 BODY OF MAN FOUND IN RIVER SEVERN
- 2 FASHION ICON QUANT LEAVES BUSINESS
- 3 GLOBAL WARMING CONFERENCE ENDS WITHOUT AGREEMENT
- 4 IRVINE NARROWLY MISSES FORMULA 1 WORLD CHAMPION TITLE
- 5 HAND COUNT OF VOTES CONTINUES
- 6 LONDON ZOO REMAINS OPEN
- 7 POLITICIAN HANDS IN RESIGNATION
- 8 SIZE 16 MODEL WINS NEW ESTÉE LAUDER CONTRACT
- 9 MADONNA'S UK HOME BURGLED

- A He was disgraced in a financial scandal.
- B They were spoiled in the recent US presidential election.
- C His contract with Ferrari finishes at the end of the season.
- D It was held in The Hague.
- E She shares the house with her British husband, Guy Ritchie.
- F It was in danger of closing through lack of funds
- G She refused to diet to a size 12.
- H The man jumped off the Severn Bridge.
- I They have been studying cancer genes for years
- J She is famous for inventing the mini-skirt
- O Scientists (1) who have been studying cancer genes for years have just discovered a new wonder cure for cancer
- 1 The body of a man
- 2 The fashion icon Mary Quant
- 3 The global warming conference
- 4 Formula 1 driver Eddie Irvine
- 5 The hand count of votes
- 6 London Zoo
- 7 The politician
- 8 The size 16 model
- 9 Madonna's house in the UK

Choose the best sentence to describe each cartoon.



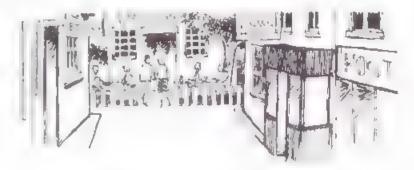
- 1 A The burglar who fell off the ladder was arrested by the police.
  - B The burglar who fell off the ladder was arrested by the police.



- 2 A The customers who arrived after nine o clock weren't allowed into the sale.
  - B The customers, who arrived after nine o clock weren't allowed into the sale.



- 3 A I decided to buy the microwave oven which had a grill inside.
  - B I decided to buy the microwave oven, which had a grill inside.



- 4 A We stopped at the only pub in the vibage which had a front garden
  - B We stopped at the only pub in the village, which had a front garden.

## 3 31.2

Complete the following article by writing each missing relative pronoun or adverb in the space provided. Use only one word for each space.

# Jack of Hearts

Jack of Hearts is a new six-part drama series (0) .which/that comes to our screens this week. It has been given the prime Wednesday evening 9.30 slot, (1) . . . . shows that the network has faith in its latest creation. The first episode opens to a scene (2) . . . a young man is being chased. He stops at a phone box and makes a desperate call. This calls wakes up a man (3) \_\_\_\_\_ most viewers will recognise as Keith Allen – the slightly sleazy unshaven Cockney (4) . . . characters are usually less than wholesome. This time, however, he is on the right side of the law, playing a probation officer with a complicated professional and personal life, both of (5) ....... form the main themes of the series. The writers have managed to find a different angle on his personal problems. At the centre of these problems is his stepdaughter, for (6) ....... he attempts to keep the household together. His relationship with the girl's mother, (7) ....... seems to be a bad-tempered, grumpy woman, is further compromised later in the series (8) ....... she joins the staff of a college at (9) ...... she meets a former lover. Thus the ground is prepared in this first episode for a series (10) . ..... may help to lift British summertime TV out of its regular slump.



This article has too many relative clauses in it. Change the underlined parts so that you don't use a relative clause. The first one has been done for you.

### Controversial school to close

Brockenhurst School, which opened as an educational experiment in 1974, is to close this summer. All the teachers (0) who are currently employed by the school will be relocated to other schools in the area (1) which have staff vacancies.

Brockenhurst was founded by (2) Sir Patrick McDonald, who comes from Inverness, at a time when new educational theories were welcomed by the establishment and experiments in education were supported. However, in recent years, such initiatives have been frowned upon as successive governments have urged a 'backto-basics' approach.

The school currently employs 28 teachers, (3) all of whom come from the holistic school of education. Most of the teachers have been at the school for at least 15 years. There are approximately 780 students (4) who are of different ages at the school, and they will all transfer to schools in the region. Staff (5) who are currently living at the school will be found alternative housing by the local council.

Sir Patrick was the first person (6) who was informed of the government's decision and he passed the bad news on to staff and students at a meeting (7) which was held last week. Sir Patrick, who is 62, has decided to take early retirement. Although Sir Patrick himself was unavailable for comment, a spokesperson for the school told us, 'We are all very sorry about the closure. For over 25 years we have run an establishment (8) which has been dedicated to making learning a rich and enjoyable experience. All the staff and students (9) who have been participating over the years will agree that this is a sad day not only for the local community but for education in this country as a whole.'

currently employed by the school

5 ALL

Complete the article at the top of the page opposite with an appropriate relative pronoun or adverb (if necessary) and a phrase from the box. Use each phrase once only. Write the letter of each phrase (A–I) in the spaces (1–8).

pronouns	phrases
who	A raise huge amounts of money
whose	B only the privileged can take part
whom	C most of us can only dream about
where	D activities are as diverse as
which	E she was able to raise so much
why	F women hire private jets to go shopping
that	G has given nearly \$200 million
	H you often can't find a cab
	I they wear only once

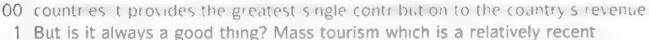
# Women who rule New York

Astor, for example, is a 97-year-old socialite (5) ....... to charitable causes in the last 40 years. This 'Queen of New York Society', (6) ...... visiting elementary schools and attending charity dinners, has raised \$4 million in one evening alone. In an explanation of (7) ......, she admits that she tries to stimulate competition amongst her wealthy and famous guests. This is a rarified life in (8) ......, but which does a lot of good for the less fortunate.



Read the following text. In most lines, there is an unnecessary word, a word missing or a punctuation error. For each numbered line 1-22, identify the mistake and write the correct version in the space on the right. Some lines are correct. Indicate these lines with a tick (✔). The first two lines are examples (0 and 00).

O Tourism today is an industry that grown so much in recent years that in many



- 2 phenomenon brings with it a whole raft of problems. First it means that a
- 3 country's economy may rely on an industry which it is wholly seasonal with
- 4 the consequence that the huge numbers of people work in tour smiduring the
- 5 season have no income during the rest of the year. Some find wherever work
- 6 they can, but others may turn to a government is already receiving lower
- 7 revenues for support.
- 8 Second, It is true that in many countries tourists are destroying the very
- 9 sights they fock to see them. They take nome pieces of an ancient monument
- 10 or of a coral reef which will gradually result in eros on of the attractions and
- 11 therefore of the industry. While this kind of destruction may be wholly
- 12 un ntentional la certain type of tour st what wants only a 'good time can be
- 13 very destructive in a different way: they drink too much, pick fights and
- 14 destroy the clubs and bars where they are drinking in. Obviously, it is then
- 15 this behaviour by that the local community judges all members of that
- 16 nationality group, creating enmity between races rather than fostering
- 17 empathy, what should be one of the main advantages of tourism.
- 18 Finally, there are many places tourism is threatening a well-established
- 19 way of life: people that whose livelihoods traditionally come from older
- 20 industries such as agriculture or fishing are finding new jobs and wealth in
- 21 the over developed tourist regions, but at what cost? It is sometimes difficult
- 22 to understand exactly which a country gains from tourism.

# Contrast

English can express contrasts, with conjunctions, adverbs and prepositions. Knowing exactly now to use each type of contrast is one of the more advanced points of Englisi This unit looks at the most common ways of contrasting information

### CONJUNCTIONS OF CONTRAST

## Expressing difference

32.1A A contrast between two clauses can be one simply of difference between the ideas expressed in them. The most common way of expressing a simple difference in English is with but:

Life expectancy in Japan is now over 80 but it is several years lower in the UK Other conjunctions which express simple differences are while whereas and whilst While is more informal than whereas; whilst is very formal:

Reds and yellows are warm colours, whereas blues and greens are cool.

While only 84 people died on the railways last year, more than 5,000 died on the roads.

We can put alc alise starting with while whilst or whereas either before or after the main clause, but a clause starting with but has to come second.

I've got two sisters, while my best friend has got two brothers.

While I've got two sisters, my best friend has got two brothers.

\* But I've got two sisters, my best friend has got two brothers

My best friend has got two brothers but I've got two sisters.

The clause introduced by the confunction is usually the one which carries more emphasis or introduces something new to the discourse (> 36.1).

• We always separate clauses with while whereas and whilst with a comma. This is not usually necessary when we use but.

#### 32.1B Expressing opposition or surprise

There is another type of contrast in English where the idea of one clause is in some way opposing the idea of the other, and will often expresses an element of surprise For example, we may feel that it is surprising to pay a lot of money for a meal in a restaurant and to find that the food is awful or to fail an exam after studying hard

Although we paid an enormous amount of morely for the meal, the food was terribly disappointing

Derek failed the exam but he had studied really hard for it.

Derek failed the exam, although he had studied really hard for it

We use the conjunctions but (al)though and even though to introduce the fact or idea in opposition to information in the main clause.

Note that the subordinate clause can precede the main clause.

Although he had studied really hard for the exam, Derek failed it.

Remember that but does not introduce a subord nate clause and that a clause starting with but cannot precede the other clause in the sentence (▶ 32.1A).

x But he had studied really hard for the exam. Derek failed it.

It is often possible to start eitner clause in a sentence with a conjunction depending on which clause has the information we consider surprising and which we want to focus on. Compare these examples:

Little is known about the artist's early life although a lot has been found out about his later life

A lot has been found out about the artist's later life, although little is known about his early life

In the first example, the writer probably feels that it is surprising that a lot is known about the artist's later life when I the is known about his early I fe, but in the second, it is the lack of knowledge about the artist's early life which is surprising. Though is a more informal alternative to although.

I enjoyed the exhibition, though I thought it was rather badly organised.

Even though adds emphasis to the subordinate clause:

Psychosis is also part of this debate even though problems arising from it affect a relatively small number of people.

- ① Do not use even although or even by itself-
  - X She loves him, even although he is violent
  - X She loves him, even he is violent
  - ✓ She loves him, even though he is violent.
- Do not confuse even though and even if (► 10.7D).

I'm going to apply for the job, even though it pays very little. (fact)

I'm going to apply for the job, even if it pays very little (I don't know what it pays)

A more formal conjunction of contrast is yet:

These exclusive villas are only a five minute walk from the busy centre of the resort, **yet** they are a haven of peace and tranquillity.

32.1C We can use these conjunctions with an adjective instead of a clause:

Other patterns with although, even though and though

The necklace, **even though** (it was) staggeringly expensive, would match the dress **perfectly**.

**Though** exhausted after the drive home. Shelley cooked a meal for them all. Her face, although deathly pale, was as stern as ever.

We can use though after an adjective, with verbs such as be, look, seem:

Beautiful though she is, you must be sure that you love her for herself.

Compare this with the use of although as a conjunction:

Although she is beautiful, you must be sure that you love her for herself.

We can use though at the end of a sentence to make a contrast with the sentence that precedes it (► 32.3B)

#### PREPOSITIONS OF CONTRAST

We can use the prepositions despite and in spite of to express contrast. They are more formal than (al)though:

**Despite** the depressed gold price, mine production rose in most areas last year. As these are prepositions, they do not introduce clauses:

- X In spite of she saw me in the car, she didn't wave or say hello.
- ✓ Although she saw me in the car, she didn't wave or say hello.
- X Despite the plane left an hour late we arrived at our destination on time
- ✓ Though the plane left an hour late, we arrived at our destination on time.

These prepositions can be followed by a noun or an -ing form:

**Despite** often **offering** poor conditions and basic salaries, charities rarely have problems in recruiting staff.

To introduce a clause with despite or in spite of, we have to add the fact that:

In spite of the fact that the final rehearsal had gone so badly, the first night was a great success.

#### ADVERBS OF CONTRAST

Formal ty

32.3A We can use sentence adverbials, e.g. however, nevertheless, still, on the other hand on the contrary to make a contrast between sentences, but mainly in more formal speech and writing.

> A dog may be a good companion for the elderly However, the need to take it for walks may be a disadvantage.

Nevertheless Inonetheless is more formal than however:

The new version of Windows is not problem-free Nevertheless, it is still an improvement on the previous one.

We use commas to separate these adverbials from the sentence

We use even so in the same way, often to express a particularly surprising contrast The last attempt to swim the Channel ended in disaster Even so, more swimmers than ever are training to achieve this difficult feat.

More informal adverbs of concession are still, all the same and mind you:

Our latest designs are not really as innovative as the competition Still, they will certainly be popular, as they are realistically priced

I know it's not late. I have to go, all the same

The new programme about dinosaurs is a bit far fetched. Mind you it's a lot more interesting than most of the other programmes on TV right now.

32 3B All of the adverbs of contrast can be placed at the beginning of the contrasting Position sentence.

One way of selecting candidates is a written editorial test. On the other hand, an informal interview can often be more informative.

We can also put them after the subject or verb of the contrasting sentence Little is known about Snakespeare's early life in Stratford. His years in London, however, are well documented. I... are, however, well documented.

The adverb though can be put at the end of the contrasting sentence:

We haven t had a lot of success with the garden this year. The weather was much hotter than usual, though.

Nevertheless and nonetheless are not commonly used at the end of a sentence, we tend to use them at the beginning of the sentence. But we often use even so at the end of a sentence. Look at these examples

Last year the government turned away more asylum seekers than ever before.

Nonetheless, the public considers that too many are allowed to stay.

The public, however, considers that too many are allowed to stay.

The public considers that too many are allowed to stay, even so.

The informal adverbistill can appear at the beginning of the sentence, but not the end and all the same and mind you are common at both the beginning and the end

I know it's far too expensive for someone on my income.

Still, it's worth it! All the same, it's worth it! It's worth it, all the same! Mind you, it's worth it! It's worth it, mind you!

# Practice

these exercises is on page 365

## 32.1

Combine each sentence in A with a suitable contrasting sentence from B, using the conjunction given in brackets.

Α

- O Cliff Richard's Christmas single went straight to the top of the charts.
- 1 Many people believe that capital punishment is a deterrent to serious crime
- 2 We usually consider it healthy to eat lots of fruit.
- 3 I enjoy having people to stay.
- 4 The main medium of communication on the Internet is English.
- 5 Jain Banks's early novels were considered quite strange.
- 6 I tend to drink more white wine.
- 7 Global warming is often considered the main factor in current climate fluctuations

В

- a Many web sites now operate in other languages. (although)
- b Too much can produce an excess of acid in the stomach. (but)
- c. He is revited by much of the pop music establishment (even though)
- d Climate change has long been a feature of the Earth's development (yet)
- e It actually makes little difference to the crime rate. (on the contrary)
- f My husband prefers red. (whereas)
- g I always appreciate the peace when they have gone. (though)
- h His later books are more mainstream and accessible. (while)
- O Cliff. Richard's Christmas single went straumt to the top of the charts, even though he is reviled by much of the pop music establishment

## 32.1, U1

For each of the sentences below, write a new sentence as similar as possible in meaning to the original sentence, but using the word given.

- O Malcolm's teeth were bothering him again even though he had recently visited the dentist despite Malcolm's teeth were bothering him again, aespite the fact that he had recently visited the dentist.
- 1 Very ittle of the remaining stock sold despite the low prices in the sale. **even though**
- 2 The ailing magazine tried introducing several new features. Nevertheless, circulation continued to drop.

although

- 4 In spite of her insistence that all was well. I knew that something was wrong fact.
- 5 The Scots won the battle, even though they had a far smaller force.

  despite
- 6 Despite the fact that the critics hated it. Archer's latest book was well received by the public being . . . .

Six of these sentences contain a mistake in word order or formality. Tick () the two correct sentences and correct the mistakes in the others.

- I I think that I did gu te well in the computing exam. It was more difficult than though I expected
- 2 We were expecting a basic but pleasant apartment. On the contrary, what we got was little more than a hovel.
- 3 Strictly no pets are allowed in the hotel rooms. Guide dogs for the blind may be permitted with prior permission from the management, mind you.
- 4 Julian's just had a shocking cold. It didn't last long, still.
- 5 Office supplies may be ordered as necessary. However, all orders must be copied to the Accounts Department.
- 6 I know you'd like us to be godparents to I the Emily. We dirather all the same not
- I That new kid at the nursery is a right little pain. He really gets on your nerves. Nevertheless, we veigot to do our best by him.
- 8 Writing more than the required number of words will not attract a higher mark. You may be penalised for failing to follow on the other hand the rules.

# 4 ALL

Which of the sentences in these pairs are alternative ways of saying the same thing? Which pairs have different meanings? Put a tick  $(\checkmark)$  in the correct box. The exercise begins with an example (0).

xa	mp	le (0).
0	A B	In spite of the fact that this computer costs less it sias good as the other one.  Despite its lower price, this computer is as good as the other one.  same different []
1	Α	Despite the awful weather, the parade was a success.
	В	Although the weather was awful, the parade was a success.  same  different
2	Α	Brilliant as he is, he can't find a suitable job.
	В	Though he is brilliant, he can't find a suitable job. same  different
3	Α	Even though I went to the party, I didn't see her.
	В	Even if I went to the party, I wouldn't see her. same different
4	Α	The new museum is extremely popular. It hasn't made any money yet.
	В	The new museum is extremely popular, yet it hasn't made any money.  same  different
5	Α	This ice cream is very sweet and rich, though it's not very fattening.
	В	This ice cream is very sweet and rich. It's not very fattening, though. same different
6	Α	The waiters in this restaurant are notonously rude. However, customers keep coming back.
	В	Ine waiters in this restaurant are notor ously rude. Even so customers keep coming back same.   different.
7	Α	Even as we complained, the noise continued.
	В	Even though we complained, the noise continued same  different
8	Α	We were at the Norfolk Hoter while the rest of the group was at the Grange
	В	While we were staying at the Norfolk Hote, the rest of the group moved to the Grange same different.

9	Α	Though delighted at her sister's success Nicky couldn't help feeling somewhat envious
	В	Despite her delight at her sister's successivicky couldn't help feering somewhat envious
		same different
10	Α	Men usually have good spatial aware less, whereas women's inguistic skills are often better
	В	Whereas men usually have good spatial awareness, women's inguistic skills are often better
		same different .
11	Α	'Mary threatened to leave last night. She's still here now.'
	В	'Mary threatened to leave last night. Still, she's here now '
		same different
12	Α	Chicken poxils much milder in children than in adults lit's still not pleasant, mind you
	В	Cacken pox is much milder in children than in adults. All the same it's still not pleasant
		same different .

## 5 ALL

Complete each gap in the text with a conjunction or preposition from the box

Although but despite Despite even though however However Nevertheless
On the contrary though whereas While Yet

# The Elgin Marbles

The High Marbles are statues which date back to the Sin century BC. () ... Although. they were created in Greece and were located there until the late 18th century, they are now exhibited in the British Museum, London.

The statues used to be in Athens (1) ..... they were bought in 1799 by the Linglishman Lord Figin, who wanted to bring them back to Britain as part of his personal art collection. (2) ......., on the sea voyage back to Lingland, the ship carrying them was sunk and the 'Marbles' were temporarily lost. It would be an incredibly expensive operation to recover them.

(3) . .. , Figin did so, and (4) .. .... he was a very rich man, he placed himself in enormous debt.

[5) ....... his own desires, he had to self the Marbles to the British Government to recover his losses and they were housed in the British Museum, where they have remained ever since.



In recent times, (6) ......, the statues have become the subject of debate between Britain and Greece and, indeed, among British historians and archaeologists. (7) ...... the Greek authorities have requested the return of the Marbles on many occasions, the request has always been refused. There are arguments on both sides. Some people believe that it would be foolish to return them, valid (8) ...... the Greek request may be, because of the pollution that is affecting the

Parthenon and the possibility of earthquakes in Greece Restored to the Parthenon, the Marbles could be exposed to damage, (9) ...... they are safe in the British Museum.

Of course, there are equally compelling arguments for their return, especially on the moral level. It cannot be denied, 10 ....... the material safety the statues enjoy in Britain, that they are part of the Greek heritage. Many people also retute the argument that Athens would not be a safe place for them. 11 ....... they claim that if the statues were returned to Greece, a new state-of the art building would be constructed to bouse them, where they would be both safe and in their rightful environment. Furthermore, the British authorities have long used the argument that works of art should not be subject to 'ownership', but should be kept where they are accessible to most people. (12) . ..... in the past they have returned a number of cultural artefacts from other civilisations to their origins.

The argument continues, and is likely to do so for some time in the future.

# Introductory there and it

In this unit we look at the use of *it* and *there* as 'empty' subjects to introduce new information or the main content of a sentence. We can also use them to manipulate the position of subjects objects and clauses in sentences. This allows us to describe or report things in an indirect way and to create a more impersonal style often found in formal English. (For information on the pronoun  $it \triangleright 27.1F$ ; for the use of it to introduce cleft sentences  $\triangleright 34.1B$ )

# BUA

Form

#### INTRODUCTORY THERE

33.1A We use there as an 'empty' subject + is/are to introduce new information and/or to say Use that something exists or happens:

If you're looking for a cafe there's one opposite the station (new information) [Fifty-one states exist in the USA.] There are fifty-one states in the USA [Three murders happen in the film.] There are three murders in the film.

[Is a bank situated near here?] Is there a bank near here?
We often use there is/are to introduce or describe a character or place, or to set the scene when telling a story or joke:

At the top of the hill there's a small cate with wonderful views over the bay

There's an Englishman, an Irishman and a Scotsman who go into a bar

There is/are is usually followed by an indefinite noun phrase, not a definite noun
 phrase (▶ 28.1A):

\* In the hotel lobby there is the cash machine (definite noun phrase)

✓ In the hotel lobby there is a cash machine. (indefinite noun phrase)

But we can use there is/are with definite noun phrases when we are reminding someone of something we/they already know, or pointing something out:

- ✓ Don't forget there's a/the cash machine in the lobby if you run out of money (reminding somebody of something you/they know)
- ✓ Look, there's a/the cash machine next to the porter's desk (pointing something out)

33.1B We can use all forms of be after there, including modal forms:

Once upon a time there were three little bears.

There will be an interval of twenty minutes during the performance.

There must have been a thousand applicants for the post.

The form of be agrees with the complement.

There is only one answer to this question.

There were two ways out of the building

• But in conversational English, we sometimes use there is with a plural complement.
There's two ways we can do this.

33.1C Special patterns

There + be can be followed by a noun + participle phrase (► 13.1, 13.2):

There's a strange old man sitting in the corner.

There are two scales of temperature used in science.

When we are describing a single action we use a full relative clause.

X In 1755 there was an earthquake destroyed much of Lisbon

✓ In 1755 there was an earthquake which destroyed much of Lisbon

In formal English, verbs with future meaning leig anticipate, expect, envisage, intend [▶ 5.2A], can be followed by there + to be/being.

The organisers didn't expect (there to be) quite such an overwhelming response We don't anticipate (there being) any resistance from the anti-hunting lobby

We commonly use there (+ be) with the following words and expressions: 33.1D

Words and expressions after there [+be]

there + be + quantifiers (any, some, much, many, several, etc 28.3A)

there + be + indefinite pronouns (somebody nothing, etc : 27.4A)

likelu/sure/supposed + to be

there + be + problem/difficulty/ trouble + -ing form

there + appear/happen/seem(s)/tend used + to be

there + a passive reporting verb (e.g. is said to be, is thought to be) + an indefinite noun phrase (This is used to describe a general feeling or belief.) (compare it > 33.2C)

In formal written English we can use there + ariselarrive/come/emerge/ enter/exist/follow/live/occur/remain/ result/sit/stand/take place

Are there any more issues outstanding? There are several ways we can tackle this

I ve had a good look and there's nothing to report Isn't there somebody here who can help us?

there + be + bound/certain/expected/ If the government goes ahead there's sure to be an outcry from the miners.

> Hang on, there was supposed to be a television in the room

x There won't be any trouble to get back

✓ There won't be any trouble getting back.

There used to be a house at the end of the common Researchers noticed that there tends to be a higher number of influenza cases in warm winters.

There are thought to be several other senior officers implicated in the cover-up. In Zaire alore there are believed to be more than a million sufferers of the disease.

Deep inside her there arose a desperate hope At the crime scene there remained little in the way of physical evidence.

There follows a full list of our current terms and conditions of trading.

#### INTRODUCTORY/IMPERSONAL IT

33.2A We can use it as an 'empty' subject. This is a grammatical device to introduce or identify something later in the phrase. It is followed by a definite noun phrase. (**▶** 28.1):

'Who's that?' 'It's Alan.'

Hello, it's Steve here. Could I speak to Jane?

'What's worrying you?' 'It's the children.'

It can refer to one or many things, but grammatically it is always singular:

X It are Alan and Margaret at the door.

✓ It's Alan and Margaret at the door.

We use it + be to introduce information about the following topics:

weather/environment It'll be cold in Edinburgh at this time of year

It was damp and foggy in London that autumn

time/dates It is eight o'clock in the morning

Thank goodness it's Friday today

conditions/situations It's so quiet and peaceful here

It was becoming increasingly dangerous

distance It's quite a long way to the nearest town.

33 2B Common expressions

with it

We use it before seems as ifithough and looks as if though to describe impressions and probability:

It seems as if we ve known each other for years (In s. s.my. mpression)
It looks as though I'm going to fail the test. (I think it's probable.)



We can also use it as an empty object after certain verbs to introduce a following clause.

like/hate/love + it + when/that clause (This is used to describe likes and dislikes.)

would appreciate it + if clause (This is used to make a polite request.)

owe/leave it to somebody
+ infinitive clause

think/find/consider + it + adjective/noun/preposition phrase + that clause I hate it when people stare at me. We love it when the grandchildren come over.

I would appreciate it if you could fax your response as a matter of urgency

We owe it to him to try and find a resolution. We leave it to you to suggest a suitable date.

I find it intolerable that we have no recourse in law He thought it a pity that they hadn't contributed to the fund

I consider it in your own best interests that you leave immediately.

33.2C We sometimes want to describe our attitudes, feelings and opinions without mentioning Impersonal it ourselves directly. We can use it + be as an impersonal way to introduce these phrases This is less direct than sentences beginning with I think/feel/believe and allows us to present opinions as though they were impersonal general feelings or even objective facts. We also use this device in academic writing where there is a convention that ideas should be presented in an impersonal way. There are several patterns that we use.

> it + be + adjective + -ing form It was lovely meeting you at last. (We use this in informal English) It isn't surprising that she left you it + be + adjective + that clause It is remarkable that so few of the patients suffered side effects it + be + adjective + infinit ve clause It's wonderful to sit out here under the stars It was possible to recognise regularities in the patterns of soil distribution.

it + verb or modal verb phrase (usually passive) + that clause (We use this in formal written English) It has been shown that most of the patients improved noticeably It should be noted that the majority of the responses were positive.

It + a passive reporting verb describes inpersonal or general feelings. It also a lows us to report someone's words without mentioning the speaker/s. We use a verb clause after the verb, not a noun phrase (compare ▶ 33.1D).

It was said (that) he was innocent

It is believed (that) the rebels are about to attack the capital.

33.2D Uses of it in discourse

If the subject of a sentence is a long clause we can use it as an 'empty' subject so that we can put the long subject at the end

It was hard to believe that he had behaved so appallingly. (- That he had behaved so appallingly was hard to believe.)

This device also nelps us put new information in the end focus position ( 36.1A, B)

It really hurts me to be going away To be going away really nurts me It can also be an 'empty object ( 33 2A) antic pating a later clause. This allows us to combine several pieces of information into one sentence, again putting new information at the end

We leave it to the reader to appreciate what this will mean (- The reader can appreciate what this will mean. We leave it to the reader to do this.)

She thought it a pity/sad that he hadn't joined in the festivities (= He hadn't joined in the festivities. She thought that was a pity.)

We don't usually use it as an 'empty object when the main verb is not followed by an adjective or by a noun or preposition phrase.

X She thought it that he hadn't joined in the festivities.

She thought that he hadn't joined in the festivities.

We also use it to introduce cleft sentences (▶ 34.1B).

It isn't just his outlandish sense of humour that I'm complaining about.

# Practice

### 33.1

#### Rewrite the following sentences using there.

- O Such a strong reaction was not ant c pated by the protestors.

  The protestors did not expect there to be such a strong reaction.
- 00 Getting a visa won't be difficult

  There won't be any difficulty getting a visa
  - 1 More than a million species of insects exist in the world
  - 2 A grandfather clock was ticking in the background
  - 3 At Hiroshima in 1945 an event happened which shook the whole world
  - 4. Two further suspects are thought to be under arrest
  - 5 They are bound to react bady to the news
  - 6 A statement by the Prime Min ster now follows
  - 7 Present in the compound were two forms of amino acid
  - 8 Does Osaka have an underground railway?
  - 9 A massive sel-off of high-tech shares is likely in the next few days
- 10 From the middle of the forest emerged a strange hooded figure
- 11 In this case, securing a conviction should be no trouble
- 12 Is nobody here able to help us?
- 13 Il ustrated in our brochure are ten new holiday destinations
- 14 Do you have a buffet car on the train?
- 15 In this bad weather a poor turnout for the election is certain
- 16 Hanging over the bed was a beautiful antique tapestry
- 17 People think at least two leading politicians are involved in the scandal
- 18 We don't envisage any adverse reaction from viewers.



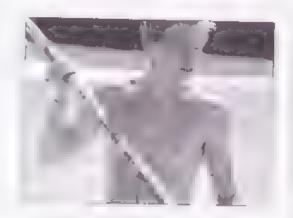
This text can be improved by rewriting one sentence from each paragraph with impersonal/introductory it. Underline the sentences that can be improved and rewrite them. The first one has been done as an example.

# The Beach

#### by Alex Garland

Now a movie starring Leonardo DiCaprio.

People say that somewhere in the tropical waters of Asia there is a perfect beach on an uninhabited island. Rich in animal and plant life, surrounded by virgin jungle and watered by sweet underground springs, the beach could be the setting for an idyllic and easy life.



The Beach is the story of a young man who yearns for, seeks out and eventually finds just such a place. But to discover that far from being the source of contentment and inner fulfilment that he expects, the beach turns out to be a place of savage violence, terror and death, comes as a shock.

Alex Garland takes the reader on an exotic journey from the steaming tourist-packed dives of the Khao San Road in Bangkok to the drug intested islands of the remote seas around Thailand. Not to be impressed by the author's skill in describing the unfamiliar oriental locations and his ability to empathise with the obsessions of today's young backpacking 'new-age' travellers is difficult.

Taking in illegal drug plantations, inemories of the Vietnam war, sexual jealousy, shark infested waters, the psychological dynamics of communal aving and the clash of cultures, Garland spins a tale which both seduces and shocks the reader. What gives the novel its haunting sense of unease and horror is the author's unique blend of these disparate elements.

It is a thriller with all the traditional ingredients, an exotic location, a central mystery, good versus evil, and dangers around every corner. There is a strong sense of good and evil in the book, but to decide who is right and who is wrong Garland leaves to the reader. There are few moral certainties in this exotic corner of the world.

Events unfold at great speed, and be warned, to put this book down once you have started it is impossible. With an international cast of well-observed characters Garland creates a nail-biting narrative that keeps the reader hooked until the final bloody climax.

It is said that somewhere in the tropical waters of Asia there is a perfect beach on an uninhabited island

# 33 3 ALL

For each of the sentences below, write a new sentence as similar as possible in meaning to the original sentence, but using a form of it or there and the word given. This word must not be altered in any way. The exercise begins with an example (0).

- 0 I think Steve might win the race
  though It looks as though steve might win the race
- 1 Such an overwhelming demand for tickets wasn't antic pated by the organisers being
- 2 She may well marry him. seems
- 3 People think many other politic ans are involved in the scanda thought
- 4 I would like you to send me your up-to-date retail price list, appreciate
- 5 Fifty students applied for the scholarship. applicants
- 6 They say he hates publicity. said
- 7 We're not surprised that their children are so badly behaved. surprising
- 8 In this paper we will demonstrate that DNA strands can be replicated demonstrated
- 9 We are selling twelve detached houses with double garages on this estate sale
- 10 To be nominated for this award makes me feel greatly honoured honour

### ALL

Eight of these short extracts from conversations at a museum would be improved with the use of it or there. Two of the extracts do not need to be changed. Tick () these two extracts, then rewrite the others.

- 1 DAVE How far's the café from here?
  - GUIDE. The distance isn't far, you'll find it at the other end of the Egyptian Gallery.
- 2 GLIDE Ladies and gentlemen this is the Gutenburg Bible People believe this is the first book to be printed in Europe.
- 3 JACK Isn't this the head of Queen Nefertiti?
  - MARY Yes. She was the aunt of Tutankhamun.
- 4 KARL Do you have many Impressionist paintings here?
  - GUIDE Yes, more than thirty examples hang in the East wing.
- 5 JACK What an amazing statue.
  - MARY That Rodin produced such a superb piece of work all by nimself is hard to believe
- 6 DAVE This fifteenth-century portrait looks brand new!
  - SUE Yes, the impression is that the painting has been rather over-enthus astically restored

- 7 GUIDE On your left you will see a fine example of late Renaissance sculpture.
- 8 JACK You know Van Gogh never sold a single painting.
  - MARY I m really surprised that people didn't appreciate his genius during his lifetime
- 9 DAVE. We've been here two hours and we're not even halfway round the museum
  - SLE I know; but to see everything in one trip is impossible
- 10 KARL Which one's the Titian, Jane?
  - JANE The Titian is in that place, next to the sculpture.

# 5 ALL

The words it or there are missing from eleven of these sentences. Tick ( $\checkmark$ ) the sentences which are correct and rewrite the others with it or there in the correct place.

- 1 She found strange that he'd never heard of such a famous historical character
- 2 Was really such a long wait between trains?
- 3. We always have lots of visitors but tend to be more in the sammer months.
- 4 Rarely were such extreme methods required
- 5. The director leaves to the viewer to decide who is guilty and who is innocent
- 6 They assured us that would be no trouble getting a refund if the goods were faulty
- 7 It wasn't their behaviour that annoyed me but their attitude
- 8 You know really gets on my herves when she talks like that
- 9 Commonly believed myths are not necessarily true
- 10 What's incredible is that might have been so many more fatalities
- 11 I find impossible to conceive that someone with his track record would be so careless
- 12 In 1666 was a fire which destroyed a large part of London
- 13 We would appreciate if you submitted your estimate to our head office
- 14 Getting to the airport on time is the least of our worries
- 15 Grandpa loves when the children ask for his advice

# Emphatic structures and inversion

We often emphasise a particular part of a sentence perhaps to contradict what someone else has said or for dramatic effect. In speech we can do this with stress and intonation alone, but we can also do this by changing the position of elements in a sentence in speech and in writing. In this and we look at the ways we can manipulate grammar to emphas se something, by splitting one sentence into two parts (cleft sentences) or by bringing the element we want to emphasise to the beginning (fronting)



#### **CLEFT SENTENCES**

Form and

'Cleft' means divided. In a cleft sentence information which could be given in one clause is divided into two parts, each with its own verb:

Vanessa has made the greatest impact (normal sentence single clause, one verb) It is Vanessa who has made the greatest impact (c eft sentence two clauses two

This gives extra emphasis to part of the sentence. We often use this pattern to emphasise some piece of new information to give explanations or to make a contrast with a previous statement (the emphasised information is in bold).

All of the Redgrave family are gifted actors. But it is Vanessa who made the greatest impact in the world of feature films.

I remember your uncle taking us to the fair. No it was my father that took us there

34.1B It cleft sentences have this structure:

sentences

it + a form of be (+ not and or adverb) + emphasised word/phrase + that/which/who claus-It "sn't just his outlandish sense of humour that I'm complaining about

We can use this pattern to emphasise the subject or the object of a simple sentence or an adverbial phrase, or a prepositional phrase:

sentence emphasising the subject emphasising the object emphasising the adverbial emphasising the prepositional

phrase

Mike took Sally to the party on Saturday.

It was Mike who took Sally to the party on Saturday

It was Sally (that) Mike took to the party on Saturday

It was on Saturday (that) Mike took Sally to the party

It was to the party (that, Mike took Sally on Saturday

In informal English we can use when and where clauses, but we do not use how or which It was in January when I got the test results

It's in Green Street market where we'll find the best bargains.

X It was greed why he did it.

✓ It was because of greed that he did it.

**X** It is using a calculator how he does it  $\vee$  It is by using a calculator that he doe We cannot use it clefts to highlight the action or a verb complement in a sentence. We use wh- clefts (▶ 34.1C) to do this:

x It was taking Saily to the party that Mike did

✓ What Mike did was take Sa...

**X** It is totally unscrupulous that they are

✓ What they are is unscrupulo...

wh- cleft sentences

34.10 We can use this pattern to highlight the action in a sentence. For example, if we want to highlight Mike's action of taking Sally to the party:

wh- clause + a form of be + emphasised word or phrase

What Mike did was take Sally to the party

In these sentences what means the thing(s) that The wh- clause must contain a verb. To highlight the action we use a form of do in the while clause. The highlighted phrase usually contains a bare infinitive (example above) or to + infinitive.

What Mike did was to take Sally to the party.

If the highlighted verb is in the continuous or perfect, the form of do matches it The boys aren't leaving Sandy at home. They are taking him to the match.

What the boys are doing is taking Sandy to the match.

Old members are absent but the new members have taken their seats in the assembly

· What the new members have done is taken their seats in the assembly

We can also use while cefts to highlight a verb complement. For example, if we want to n gn ight the complement stingy in the sentence Jean and Bob are stingy, we can say

wh-clause + is + emphasised complement

What Jean and Bob are is stingy!

We use this pattern most often when we want to express our opin on of something or somebody using an adjective-

'Do you think Jean and Bob are a bit cautious with their money?'

'Cautious? What they are is downright stingy!'

34.1D Other types of cleft sentence

sentences

We can use which chaises with when where why and who to high light a person, a place, a time and a reason, but we usually use an introductory noun phrase (underlined below) The wh- clause acts like an ordinary relative clause.

✗ Who we forgot to invite was lan ✓ The one (who) we forgot to invite was lan

The guy who told me about the new club was Zack. person

The house where I used to live is near here. place

time

The day (when) we left was the saddest day of my life. The reason (why) they never told me is they don't trust me. reason

We can emphasise an item (described by a noun phrase or a verb phrase) with the (only/last) thing or all:

The thing I most disliked about the movie was the scene in the graveyard

The only thing we want is a chance to air our grievances

The last thing we did was pack the kettle.

All we're asking for is to be given a chance.

We can also use the (only) thing with a negative verb: The thing we won't do is repair goods bought in other shops.

The only thing we didn't find was the key to the cellar.

**34.1E** We can reverse the order of the parts in wh- cleft sentences and put the emphasised Reversed part at the beginning

cleft Taking Sandy to the match is what the boys are doing.

Zack was the guy who told me about the new club.

There is a form in spoken English similar to a reversed cleft using this and that We have to get off here. • This is where we have to get off.

They told me the same thing. → That's what they told me.

• We only use reversed it clefts in a formal literary style. We put the emphasised part before it

And thus Cezanne it was that took the first steps on the road to Impressionism



#### FRONTING

Fronting objects and complements

34.2A In spoken English we somet mes want to make a strong contrast with something in a previous statement. We can do this with objects and complements by fronting' them (moving them to the front of the clause), which makes them more emphatic.

'She's such a lovely person; so friendly and reliable.'

['Sne may be friendly but she isn't reliable ] . Friendly she may be, but reliable she isn't!"

We can also front demonstrative pronouns for emphasis:

I disagree with that.  $\rightarrow$  That I disagree with.

We can use fronting to help the flow of spoken or written information by putting the known information at the beginning of the sentence (the information principle. Unit

The house was large and sprawling with two wings and a dark attic. Hilary spent most of her time in the drawing room or the garden. The attic she rarely visited

adjective phrases; also and such

34.2B When we want to start a sentence with known information or we want to make an Fronting emphatic comparison with information in a previous sentence, we can use a comparative or super ative phrase at the beginning. We use a form of the verb be followed by the subject (inversion ▶ 34.3A):

> The first band was dire. Much more exciting was Red Heat, the second group to play.

Many of the monuments are truly awesome. Best of all is the Colosseum The actors were a mixed bunch. Least inspiring of the lot was Pacino.

We can use a similar pattern with also and such:

Members of the royal family attended the funeral. Also at the service were several ambassadors.

They led a life of abject poverty. Such is the fate of most illegitimate children in this

We can emphasise an adjective by using so + adjective + a form of be + subject + a that

So intense was the heat (that) the firefighters were unable to enter the building for two hours.

Fronting adverbials and infinitives: as and though

34.20 We can put known information at the beginning of a sentence by putting adverbial phrases describing position or place (e.g. At the back of the house), verbs of position and movement (e.g. stand attach he) and to + infinitive forms in the front position with inversion of the subject and verb be (▶ 34.3A):

> At the back of the house was an untidy garden much of which was taken up by a large and unkempt lawn Standing in the corner of the garden was a massively overgrown silver birch tree which towered over the roof of the garage. Attached to the roof was an unsightly FM aerial

For years I have been writing to the President in the White House. To meet him is my most fervent wish.

We can also front an infinitive form when it 'echoes' an earlier verb:

He said he would arrive on time.

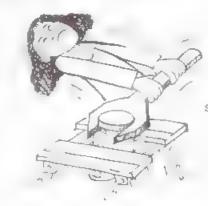
And he did (arrive on time).

And arrive on time he did.

We can front verbs and adjectives using as and though:

Battered though he was, he never lost his will to succeed.

Try as she might, she simply couldn't open the jam jar.



Try as she might, she simply couldn't open the jam jar

#### INVERSION

## Subject-verb inversion

**34.3A** We sometimes put a verb or verb phrase in front of the subject after adverbs of place. (e.g. on, in, here there outside opposite) and adverbs of time (e.g. next, then, first, now finally) We can use a form of be or verbs of place and movement (e.g. stand sit. lie come go climb, run, sail, fiy) before the subject. We often use this pattern to form a link with the information in the previous sentence, and it is common in formal English.

of place/movement

place adverbs + be or verbs Here lies the body of our late iamented sovereign On one wall there was a beautiful rambling rose **Opposite** stood an ancient oak tree over a charming wishing well.

time adverbs + be or verbs of place/movement

For the first hour the teams seemed evenly matched **Then** came the turning point in the game as Ed scored. That was the final instalment. Next is the news

• We don't use inversion if the subject of the clause is a pronoun: 

We can also use inversion in as and than clauses in formal English: Mr Slater is expecting a pay rise, **as are** several other salesmen in the team I'm afraid her proposais are no more feasible than are those James presented We also use inversion in certain fixed expressions often with subjunctives ( 11.1C)

So be it. Long live the king!

#### 34.3B Subjectauxiliary inversion

We sometimes put an auxiliary (do nave should, can, etc.) before the subject in statements, the rest of the verb phrase follows the subject. We use this pattern of inversion for emphasis in the following cases:

after adverbs with restrictive. negative meaning (e.g. hardly, scarcely, rarely, little, never)

only + time expression or prepositional phrase

(in) no way, at no time, under no circumstances, on no account

not + only time expression/ person or thing

no sooner ... than

clauses beginning with neither or nor

clauses beginning with may which describe a strong wish

after fronted comparisons. also, such and so (► 34.2B) Little did we realise the true extent of his involvement Never have I seen such a disturbing sight. Hardly had I arrived when Suzy collared me.

Only later did he manage to get permission. Only with a great deal of effort was he able to escape

No way am I going to wear that! (informal) Under no circumstances can refunds be given.

Not only is he late, he hasn't even brought a present Not since the sixties has a pop group won such acclaim. Not a single stone was left unturned in the search.

No sooner had we set out than the skies opened.

They have no intention of paying and neither have we. We couldn't face the customers and nor could the boss

May he live to regret this decision!

The captain is refusing to play under these conditions and so is the rest of the team.

- Expressions with no, not, etc. not listed above (e.g. no doubt) cannot be inverted.
  - X No doubt will he give us a key. ✓ No doubt he will give us a key
- We do not invert the subject and aux lary after only if there is no time expression or prepositional phrase immediately after it:
  - **✗ Only** can members park there. **✔ Only** members can park there.
  - ✓ Only on Sundays can members park there.

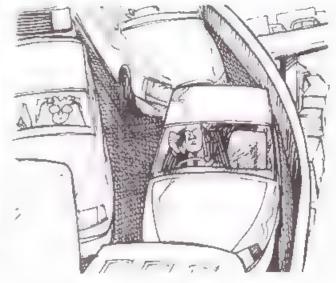
Note there are other uses of inversion Negation Unit 6, Questions Unit 7: Reported speech ▶ Unit 9; Conditionals ▶ Unit 10

# Practice

## 34.

Read the information in the box then complete the replies. Each reply must contain a cleft sentence. The exercise begins with an example (0).

Nick turned up late for work on Monday because he got stuck in a traffic jam on the ring road. Luckily Nick has a mobile phone so he was able to phone his boss and warn her that he would be late. She was furious but managed to reschedule an important meeting for the afternoon.



0	Dign't the boss turn up late on Monday?
	'No, it was Nick who turned up late on Monday.'
}	'Nick was late because he overslept, wasn't he?'
	'No, it that he was late.'
2	'How on earth did Nick let the boss know he'd be late?'
	'Well, what call her from his mobile phone.'
3	'Wasn't Nick late on Wednesday?
	'No, that he was late.'
4	'Nick's boss had to start the meeting without him, didn't she?'
	'No, what she the afternoon.'
5	'Didn't Nick get stuck in a traffic jam in the town centre?'
	'No, not the town centre; it got stuck.'
6	'Didn't the boss have to reschedule that meeting because the client didn't turn up?
	'No, it had to reschedule the meeting.'
7	'Nick rang the boss to give her the sales figures, didn't he?'
	'No, it that he rang her.'
8	I heard the boss was a little annoyed with Nick for being late.
	"No she wasn't "a little approved" What

### 34.1

For each of the sentences below, write a new sentence as similar as possible in meaning to the original sentence, but using the words given in bold.

- O Sebastian left the job because of the long working hours.

  why The reason why ebustian left the job arts the long working hours
- 1 We have to wait here this
- 2 We just need five minutes to fix it.
- 3 Jennifer started the strike. person

4	I'm not questioning his dedication	
5	These men are totally ruthless.	
	what	
6	I used to live around the corner.  the place	
7	It was your next door neighbour who complained.	
	the one	
8	We inherited everything except the house.  only thing	
9	You know the sales assistant told me exactly the same thing	
	that's	
0	I want you to copy this down in your notebooks	
	to do	
1	First of all we checked the insurance details	
	first thing	
2	The climbers reached the peak at six o'clock.	
z	We're taking the au-pair with us.	
ų.	doing the au-pair with us.	
4	Before leaving we switched off the power supply.	
ľ	last thing	
5	They moved to Andalucia because of the climate.	
	reason	
6	The company has imposed a ban on private e-mails	
	has done	
7	The only thing we want is our money back.	
	all	
8	Our boss told us the news	
	it	
9	I want you to appreciate that it's not my fault	
	what	
20	The introduction of stamp duties led to the loss of the American co	Dionies.
	that	
Ų	34.1	
		to not use any additional words
vra	ke these sentences more emphatic by 'fronting' part of them. D	
	I can't stand hypocrisy.	Hypocrisy I can't stand'
	Though he was exhausted, he managed to reach the finishing line.	
	My life's ambition is to make the pilgrimage to Mecca.	
	The ninth symphony is his most sublime work	
	I really can't accept that proposal.	
	An enormous gold Buddha was placed on the altar.	488485458688488485484854456546665466654
	The Cresta Run is much more challenging for the dedicated skier.  Several sharp criticisms of ministerial conduct were also included.	***************************************
1	Several sharp criticisms of ministerial conduct were also included in the report.	
8	An old man was lying in the shop doorway.	
	It proved impossible to get to the bottom of the mystery.	*******************************
	The pilot couldn't regain control because the damage was so	
	severe.	

## 34 4 34.3

In twelve of the following sentences there are mistakes with word order and missing auxiliaries. Tick ( $\nu$ ) the correct sentences and then find the mistakes and correct them.

1	They're going to complain about this and so are we.
2	Little we knew the full extent of his involvement in the fraud
3	The sales director is resigning and so most of the marketing team are.
4	I tried to get there by nine, only was there a traffic jam on the motorway.
5	Over there stood the three-metre tall statue of Lenin.
6	The embassy refuses to intervene. Well, so it be.
7	Tomorrow the first day is of the rest of your life.
8	Long live the glorious republic!
9	No way is the boss treating me like that and getting away with it!
10	Under no circumstances latecomers will be admitted to the auditorium.
1.1	Armando and Josepha are quite destitute and such the condition is of many of the refugees
12	Now the time is for wise investors to think seriously about buying Treasury Bonds
13	Rarely had we encountered such friendly and positive attitudes
	Oh look – here comes the procession at last.
15	Not since Kubrick's 2001 a director has made such an intellectually challenging sci-fi movie.
16	The government's proposa's are unrealistic as those are of the opposition
	Opposite this house ran the old city walls.
18	Only with the greatest of luck ne managed to escape from the rising flood waters
19	May John and Carol have a long and happy life together.
20	No doubt didn't he realise the consequences of his actions.

## 5 ALL

Rewrite the replies in these mini-dialogues to make them more emphatic by using suitable structures (cleft sentences, fronting or inversion) to emphasise the underlined items. The exercise begins with two examples (0) and (00).

O 'That dress looks expensive.'

'No, the shoes were expensive, not the dress.'

55.

12: tile ave.s

A. Rupaperthi

No it the incestinat were expensive,

he the only thing he aid was the

00 'Did Darren help you with the decorating?'

'No, he did the wallpapering, nothing else.'

1 'Jerry says Liz is going to quit her job at the bank.'
'I find that really hard to believe.'

'I find that really hard to believe.'

2 'You look as though you're destroying that rose bush.

'No, I'm just cutting off the dead flower heads.'

3 'Are you sure you brought everything with you?'
'We left the <u>personal stereo</u> behind, <u>that's all</u>.'

4 'Didn't you own a Volkswagen Golf once?'
No my brother owned one

5 'He said the speech would shake them up a bit.'

'And it certainly did shake them up '

6 'I thought the car chase and the scene in the airport were brilliant.'

'But the explosion on the jumbo jet was best of all.'

7 'I think we should try to give them first aid.'

'No, we should wait for the ambulance to arrive.'

8 'So what was so awful about the view from your hotel room?' 'Well, a huge electricity pylon was <u>standing right</u> outside the bedroom window.'

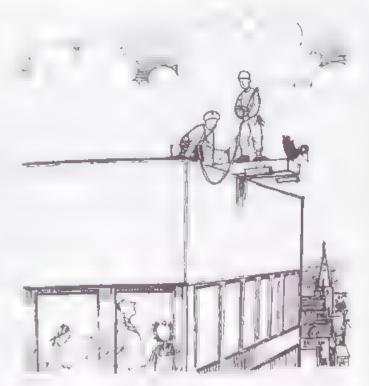
- 9 'You've always wanted to buy a cottage in the country, haven't you?' 'Yes, my greatest ambition has always been to own a cottage
- 10 'You're all leaving on Saturday, aren't you?'
  No, we're going on Friday



In the following magazine article ten emphatic sentences have been changed and underlined Rewrite the sentences in their original emphatic form using the clues in brackets. The first one has been done as an example (0).

## RAP JUMPING? NO WAY, JOSÉ!

I'm quite sporty and I love a new challenge, especially if it's a little bit risky. I often try out new things with my friends Tony and Bruce. (0) In fact Bruce told me about his new hobby — rap jumping. (1) I've done bungee jumping before — that's the sport where you jump off a crane or bridge with your feet attached to a long length of elastic — so I had some idea what he was talking about. Bruce promised me that (2) rap jumping was more exciting and a lot more dangerous than bungee jumping, and (3) he didn't tell me too much about it to keep me in suspense. So of course I was



- (4) <u>But Tony actually took me for my first rap jump</u> (5) <u>He's the real daredevil</u> We went to the top of this tall building which had a sort of gantry overhanging the edge (6) I <u>could see a rope</u> and a <u>harness hanging from the gantry</u>.
- 'Oh, I understand,' I said to Tony. I get into the harness and then lean back over the edge and lower myself down it's like abseiling.'
  - 'No, no,' said Tony, '(7) You lean forward and walk down.'

I began to feel a little sick I don't normally suffer from a fear of heights because I avoid it by looking up or sideways (8) I can't cope with seeing the ground. The idea of going over the edge facing downwards was just too much for me '(9) I'm not doing that,' I announced Well, would you have done it?

#### 0 (it)

1 (fronting)

dying it give it a go.

- 2 (not only)
- 3 (fronting)
- 4 (It)
- 5 (the one)
- 6 (all)
- 7 (What)
- 8 (lt's)
- 9 (No way)

## In fact it was Bruce who told me about his new hobby

# Aspects of cohesion

Both spoken and written English use certain devices to keep the meaning clear and to express it more economically. These devices include ways of avoiding repetition, either by choosing alternative (and usually shorter) words and phrases or by missing out words, phrases or clauses. In such tooks at what can be omitted and which words and phrases can be used to substitute for others. In the examples in this unit, **bold** shows substitute words, and shading indicates words which have been replaced by substitution. We use < > to show omitted words.

#### TYPES OF TEXT REFERENCE

35.1A Substitution and ellipsis Substitution and ellps slare both devices for avoiding the unnecessary repetition of words or phrases in speech or writing. Substitution consists of replacing one word or phrase with another. This is a sentence without substitution:

Labour voted for the proposals and the Liberais , oted for the proposals too Here is the same sentence with substitution:

Labour voted for the proposals and the Liberals did too.

In ellipsis, we leave out words or phrases altogether:

Mike left at about the same time as Jane < left >.

We can leave out or replace nouns liverbs and entire clauses. The following example uses a pronoun to substitute for resorts, and leaves out the verb phrase it is found. [The best skiing is found not at big resorts but it is found at small resorts.]

The best skiing is found not at big resorts but at small ones.

Verbs and verb phrases are often replaced by a form of the auxiliary do:

'Hadn't we better look into the interest rates first? It's OK I've already done it

35.1B Using substitution and ellipsis We usually replace or omit words or phrases which have previously been ment oned. The managers in our company have often adopted production processes which give rise to unsatisfying jobs because it is cheaper for them to do so.

It is clear that them refers to the managers and do so refers to the phrase have often adopted production processes which give rise to unsatisfying jobs. Referring back in a text to a previously mentioned item is known as 'anaphoric reference';

The Museum's lifelike new dinosaur will sure y enhance its status amongst children. We can use substitution to refer to items mentioned further back than in the same sentence, as long as there is no ambiguity:

She had a vast collection of antique clocks which she kept in a small room devoted to her hobby. While most of them dated from the Victorian era, she had a few smaller ones which dated back to the early 19th century.

It is clear that them and ones relate to clocks as there is no other plural noun in the context to which they could refer. We avoid substitution and ellipsis if there is a possible ambiguity, as below where there are two plural nouns in the first sentence.

She had a vast collection of antique clocks and an equally large collection of Victorian dolls. [She had quite a few from the victorian era but also some smaller ones from the early 19th century.]

Here, we don't know whether a few and ones refer to clocks or dolls or to both. It is also possible to use a substitute word to refer to something later in the sentence. This has the effect of creating an atmosphere of suspense and is often used in dramat or literary language. This is known as 'cataphoric reference':

Its eyes glinting like steel and its mouth salivating the predator prepared to strike

35.2A Substitution of a noun or noun phrase

35.2A The most common substitutes for nouns or noun phrases are pronouns ( Unit 27) such as personal pronouns (subject, object, possessive or reflexive ▶ 27.1A).

John came into the room. He was wearing a light blue silk suit.

Ben and Alice were refreshingly independent of each other. While Ben's politics were far to the left, Alice made it known that hers were centre right.

We can use the pronouns *onelones* (to refer to singular plural countable nouns) after adjectives or demonstratives (▶ 27.1G).

I'd like a sweet sherry please and John would like a dry one.

Davis appeared in numerous major films but practically no great ones.

Which colour would you prefer for the bathroom suite this one or that one?

We don't use one for uncountable nouns; instead, we omit the noun

X I really like sweet sherry but my husband prefers dry one.

✓ I really like sweet sherry but my husband prefers dry <sherry>.

We can also use the demonstrative pronouns (► 28.2B) without one/ones:

Which colour would you prefer for the bathroom suite, this one or that?

It is possible to respect both your own opinions and those of other people.

It is also possible to replace a nown or nown phrase with a quantifier, e.g. some, all each, none, either, neither, both, other, a few, enough (> 28.3B).

The boys went out night after night and some did not return.

The doctor suggested I should try aspirin or ibuprofen, but neither worked

35.2B Substitution of a verb or verb phrase

with do

We can use a form of do to avoid repeating a present or past simple verb:

At the time, they lived very near to where I did

Using a form of do is particularly common in comparison clauses:

She doesn't know any more than I do

He doesn't help as much as she does

We also use do to avoid repeating the main verb in coordinate clauses.

Mary sent him a text message and I did too

Dad never learnt a foreign language and Mum didn't either.

With coordinate clauses where the act on is the same in both, as above, we can also use the inverted pattern solneither + doldoes/did + subject (► 34.3B):

She really enjoyed the thrill of the open road, and so did her husband.

Dad never learnt to speak any other languages, and neither did Mum

We use the same pattern with so not either and neither/nor to agree with the speaker in short answers:

'I saw Jane yesterday.' 'Oh, yes, so did I.'

'I didn't have enough money'. 'Neither/Nor did I.'/'I didn't either.'

We can omit do and use the object pronoun usually with too neither, nor in informal speech:

'I saw Jane yesterday.' 'Me, too!'

'Julian was at the meeting about the new road scheme yesterday 'Him too?

'I didn't want to go.' 'Me neither.' /' Nor me.'

35 2C Substitution of a verb or verb phrase

do so/it/that

35 2C We can often use do solit/that to replace a verb phrase which describes a single Substitution specific action. In this use, do so tends to be more formal than do it/that:

Margaret had been trying to pluck up the courage to confront her son about the money, and she was just about to do solit when the doorbell rang.

We usually use do it/that (and not do so) when the subject of the verb changes

I was unable to contact the barrister about the court appearance.

We use that (and not it) to emphasise an action. In this use, we stress that:
'Why don't you just lie to him?' 'Oh, I couldn't do that!'

We prefer to use do so (and not do it/that) when we are referring to an activity rather than a single, specific action:

Anyone wishing to interrupt with questions should feel free to do so.

When you want to get fit, you should only do so within a planned exercise programme We do not usually use do solit/that to replace verbs which refer to events outside our control, e.g. believe, lose, forget. We use do only:

Michael still believes fiercely that no one is evil just as he did when he was younger I always said you'd lose that mobile phone and now you have done! She told me not to forget the cake in the oven, but I did

of a clause

35.2D We use verbs like expectithink/imagine/believe with so to express an opinion, belief or Substitution intention without repeating the preceding statement or question. We usually try to avoid using the same verb in the answer:

'Do you think WAP phones will ever catch on?' ['I think so.'] 'I expect so ' I wonder if privatising the post office will make the postal service more efficient." 'I hope so!'/'l don't believe so, myself.'

• We do not use a that clause after so:

'Do you know if John is coming this evening?'

★ 'I think so (that) he is.' 
✓ 'I think so.' /'I think (that) he is '

To express a negative response, we tend to make the verb negative and use so

'Are you coming to the party tomorrow?' \* 'I think not.' V'I don't think so.'

It is possible though archaic to use these verbs with not to respond in the negative. It is still sometimes used in a formal context:

'Was the document countersigned by two witnesses?' 'I believe not.'

An exception to this is hope. We do not use the not is so pattern but use hope not 'It's going to rain!' x 'Oh, I don't hope so!' ✓ 'I hope not.'

• We do not use so or not after expressions of certainty or do int. We prefer to use it. 'Do you think it'll rain?' X 'I'm certain of so.' V 'I'm certain of it.' Do you think interest rates will go down to similating will doubt so ✓ 'I doubt it

We use the pronouns it, this or that to refer back to a previous clause:

I forgot his birthday again and he was really apset about it ( forgetting his birtha). Many of the latest models have been recalled because of a fault in the steering. This has caused embarrassment to the manufacturers.

'He really doesn't know what he's talking about! On why do you say that?' We substitute if and whether clauses with if so affirmative) and if not (negative) Can you check whether that contract has arrived and if so send it out to Mr Andres He asked the guests if they wanted an evening meal, and if not, whether he could bring them sandwiches in their rooms

We can use so at the beginning of a short answer when we agree to a statement with certain amount of surprise:

'They've put a new statue in front of the palace.' 'So they have!'

■ Be careful not to confuse this use with So did I or I did so (► 35.2B, C).

#### ELLIPSIS

Omitting a noun/

pronoun

We often omit nouns or pronouns in the second of two coordinate clauses ( 30.3A) Lucy went up to the bar and <she> asked for a coffee.

We were totally exhausted but <we> felt satisfied with our day's work.

In casual spoken English we can also omit and when the subject is the same: Sandy was feeling really bored < and ne > didn't know what to do with all the extra time he'd now got.

• We do not leave out pronouns in subordinate clauses (► 30.3B). At night she was so tired that she fell asleep as soon as she got into bed We can omit subject pronouns at the beginning of short sentences in casua. English <1> Must go now. It's getting late.

'Is your brother coming with us?' '<1> Hope not!'

35.3B We can often omit a verb to avoid repeating it.

Omitting a verb

Sne attracts the attention of the local yobbos and he <attracts > the suspicions of the villagers.

Generally we do not omit the auxiliary or modal. Look at this table:

form	change	example
present/past simple verb	omit main verb in and clauses	I like John and he <li>kes&gt; me.</li>
auxiliary + main verb	omit main verb	He was looking for a job, or at least, he said he was <looking for="" one="">. 'Have you seen my glasses?' 'Yes, I have <seen them="">. They're here.'</seen></looking>
modal + main verb	omit main verb	I can speak Spanish and Mary can <speak Spanish &gt; too.</speak 
compound verb forms	omit second/third auxiliary or only the main verb	'Couldn't anybody have been warned about the problem?' 'Yes, the captain could <have been="" warned="">/ could have <been warned="">/could have been <warned>.'</warned></been></have>

In coordinate clauses where the second clause is very similar in pattern to the first, we leave out the auxiliary as well:

Since the divorce I've lived in London and my musband <nas lived > in Cambridge

• We can introduce a new modal in order to add interpretation (in this case deduction) but still not repeat the main verb.

'Has Mary arrived yet?' 'She must have <arrived>. There's her coat.'

We also omit verbs in comparison clauses as in the table above, but it is possible in comparison clauses to omit aux harviand medal verbs as well in the subordinate clause. You look older than my mother <does>

I ve been working here longer to an you < have been doing > have < been doing > have been < doing >.

(If the comparison clause begins with a pronoun and we omit the verb phrase completely we use an object pronoun rather than a subject pronoun ( 27 1D). You look older than she does. • You look older than her.

35.3C We can omit an infinitive phrase when the meaning is clear:

Omitting infinitives or wh- clauses

Geri had intended to complete the degree after the birth of her child but she soon realised she wouldn't be able to <complete it >.

He didn't win the competition even though he had expected to <win it >.

After most verbs which are followed by to + infinitive such as ask forget promise and want and would like in if or wh- clauses, we can omit to.

'You don't have to take the children to the cinema, you know.' 'But I promised <to>.'

'Shall we go to the cinema tonight?' 'Yes, if you want <to>.'

In questions and embedded questions, we often use the question word only and omit the clause.

'Dr Angelo said he was going on a call this afternoon.'

'Did he say where <he was going >?' 'No, he didn't say where.'

## Practice

## 35.1, 35.2

There are several substitute words in this text, in *italics*. Find the word or phrase that each one refers to and write it below. The exercise begins with an example (0).

The clock on the platform was showing midnight as the train drew in Mirlam checked (0) her ticket against the sign on the window, opened the door to Coach Hill climbed in and shut (1) it gently behind her

The train was already reaching (2) its highest speed, thundering across country towards Warsaw, when Miriam dropped (3) her bags in the correct compartment. She thought briefly of the few kilometres a ready benind her and (4) the many ahead, then she bent to her bags. She lifted the two small (5) ones onto the overhead rack, but the large one was a different matter, so she pulled (6) it close to her seat and sat down.

Alone in the carriage, she contemplated her future. She hadn't expected (7) this so soon, but the job opportunity in Warsaw had come up unexpectedly. She dia ways wanted to return to the city of her birth and (8) that of her parents, but hadn't thought she would (9) do it within two weeks of leaving college. At first she had discounted the job, so far away from home, and her parents had (10) done so too, but they had all spoken to her prospective employers at length on the phone, after (11) which all (12) their concerns were laid to rest. Miniam closed her eyes and allowed the rhythm of the speeding train to full her to sleep.

0	her =	Miriam	5	ones =		9	do it =
1	ıt =	4111111111	6	it =		10	done so =
2	its =	**********	7	this =	***************	1.1	which =
3	her =	44010001000000000	8	that =		12	their =
4	the many =						

## 2 35.2

Complete this dialogue with the correct substitute words. (There may be more than one possibility.)

```
Have you seen the new clothes shop in the High Street?
JENNA
SOPHIE
        The [1] ...... opposite the station, you mean?
ENNA
        Yes that's right I went in (2) yesterday. It's fantastic! It's full of designer seconds and
        (3) ..... of them are from really famous fashion designers
        Which (4) .....?
SOPHIE
        Oh, people like Nicole Farhi.
JENNA.
        Wow'l love (5) But you said seconds is there anything wrong with the clothes?
SOPHIE
        I couldn't find anything wrong with them I don't know why these clothes are called seconds
ENNA
        sometimes.
        No, (6) ....... Did you buy anything?
SOPHIE
        No, not yesterday. I tried on a really nice dress but it was a bit tight, so I'm going to lose a bit
ENNA
        of weight first
        You're always saying (7) ..
SOPHIE
ENNA
        I know but this time I'm really going to (8)

    Anyway, I said I d give up smoking last year

        and I (9) ....... Oh, I nearly forgot. Are you going to the conference next week?
        I expect (10) ............ I don't think I can get out of it.
SOPHIE
ENNA
        Didn't you say you wanted to get a new suit before the next conference?
```

- SOPHIE Oh, (11) I did! Perhaps I I pop in to the shop at the weekend and see what they've got.
- SOPHE (14) 's really nice of you OK I il call you Saturday morning if I decide to go there and, if (15) ............ I'll see you at the conference

## 3 35.3

#### Cross out the words in these sentences that can be omitted. Cross out as many words as you can.

- 1 I told the students they could either take the exam in June or they could take it in December
- 2 We can go to the theatre tonight if you want to go to the theatre.
- 3 The children were delighted with the Christmas I ghts and they wanted to see them turned on again.
- 4 Even though it is possible to go ski ng in Scotland the British have always been worse skiers than most Europeans have been.
- 5 'Why hasn't the new shopping centre been opened yet? But it has been opened
- 6 Wil Julie be going to the club's New Year's party this year? I think she gets back from holiday on 30th December, so she could be going."
- 7 Is the new restaurant in the High Street open on Sunday evenings?' 'I don't know. It might be open on Sunday evenings. The old one was open on Sunday evenings.'
- 8 We haven't earned any money this summer. I really expected us to earn some
- 9 The young woman plays the violin and her brother plays the cello.
- 10. He told me that he was going to leave his wife and I asked him why he was going to leave her
- 11 Baxter's sick ton gnt, which is unfortunate as ne can play better than all the others can
- 12 We thought that the old woman had been looking after the house, but she can't have been looking after it as she was in hospital at the time.

## 4 35.2, 35.4

### Read the following text about the Inuit system of adoption, then complete these two tasks:

- A Mark three more omissions with  $\lambda$  and write the omitted words. The first omission is given as an example (0).
- B. Underline eleven more substitute words, then write the words they replace. The first substitution is given as an example (00).
- O The Inuit system of child adoption, although Larchaic appears much more humane
- it is
- 00 than our own in the so-called civilised world. where childless couples must apply
- 1 through faceless agencies for the opportunity to adopt. They must undergo a series of
- 2 intrusive interviews and examinations and, if successful, wall then be put on a waiting
- 3 list for an unspecified period of time. An Inuit couple wanting to adopt simply makes
- 4 it known and soon enough they will receive a call from a woman who is prepared to
- 5 give up herich id. This may be because she already has too many children and does
- 6 not want another one or the cail may come from a relative or friend who wishes to
- 7 help someone less fortunate than themselves. Fragit onally, the couple would be
- 8 asked if they would like the child and if so a simple handover would take place
- 9 Today, however, this has been replaced by bureaucracy in the form of civil
- 10 registration, although the tradition itself has not it survives even at the end of the
- 11 twentieth century.

## 35 5 ALL

In each of these pairs or groups of sentences, at least one of the choices is correct, and two or three may be. Tick the correct ones.

1	A B	He just came in and he sat down without even saying hello.  He just came in and sat down without even saying hello.	
2	A B	W about packing up now and hitting the beach for an hour?  Uh no, I don't really want.  Uh no, don't really want to.  Uh no, I don't really want to.	
3	A B	d you know that your son hasn't been to school for over a week, Mr Greene?  But that's impossible! He must!  But that's impossible! He must have!  But that's impossible! He must have been!	
4	В	You play the piano much better than the usual pianist You play the piano much better than the usual pianist plays. You play the piano much better than the usual pianist does.	
5	A B	e decided to resign from the drama group Why? Why have you decided? Why have you decided to do that?	
6		She considers dogs far too obsequious.	
7	A B	the ones that attract the jet set. the that attract the jet set. those that attract the jet set	
8	Ad A B C	lults often like hot, spicy food, whereas children usually prefer mild children usually prefer mild children usually prefer mild one.	
9	A B	my American friends expected their team to win most of the track medals and we did too. and we did it too. and we did so too.	
10	A	ok! Jason can walk on his own!  Oh, so he can!  Oh, so can he!	_



Read the text below and think of the word which best fits each space (1–18). Use only one word in each space. In some cases you do not need to add a word at all (write '–' in these spaces). There are two examples at the beginning (0) and (00).

Regulations governing this area vary from country to country: at present the law in the USA allows companies to monitor staff

e-mails and while (9) ....... in the UK is currently not so strict, it looks as though it will follow the US model. In Germany, however, the law does not allow 'spying' on employees' personal e-mail, but at least one multinational (10) ...... based there is taking advantage of the UK regulations by sending all e-mails to the UK to be monitored.

Civil rights organisations are concerned that monitoring e-mails infringes personal liberty and that it also undermines trust in the working environment. (11) .......... want management to intercept and monitor e-mails only when (12) ......... necessary, and to be able to prove that (13) ........ was indeed necessary to do (14)

And what of Rupert and David? Well.

(15) ......... claim for unfair dismissal was rejected: the tribunal found that the company was within (16) ........ rights to sack employees for sending joke e-mails, and also, more worryingly, (17) ........ for the time wasted in (18) ....... it. Watch out, Big Brother really is watching you now!

## 7 ALL

Read this text which has repetition. Correct to improve the style, using substitution and ellipsis.

Most people enjoy I stening to music but few people realise the important effects and largely positive effects listening to music can have on as. We know that certain types of music are used to influence our emotions and influence our beauty, or For example, airlines use soothing music before a flight to relax passengers, especially passengers who may feel nervous about flying. You may have noticed how shops often play fast, roasing music. It you haven't noticed, you probably shop at the more old-fashioned type of store) – playing fast and rousing music tends to make us feel happier and more likely to spend money!

Music is also being used now as a psychiatric therapy. It seems to be particularly useful for eating disorders and addictions, but it is also ascial for sufferers of post traumatic stress syndrome. People attending group therapy sessions are invited to bring along their favourite tracks. Not everyone does, but the people who bring them along play them for the group. Playing them for the group creates a sense of belonging, as well as creating a more relaxed atmosphere for the therapy session.

## Features of discourse

There are several principles and conventions which we follow in discourse (texts or conversations). This unit looks at how we organise information when we speak or write and the implications of this for word order grammar and vocabulary. The unit goes on to describe other discourse features such as the use of linking words between sentences, styl stic devices and the choice of words appropriate to their context of use



#### ORDERING INFORMATION

36.1A The nformation principle

When speaking in English we usually sequence words so that we move from something known (already mentioned or obvious from the context) at the beginning of the sentence to something new at the end:

(in these examples, known information is underlined, new information is in bold)

information obvious from the context

new information

'Do you know where John is?'

'He's in the garden.'

information already mentioned

new information

Notice now the pronoun He refers back to John, this kind of economic use of language is called 'cohesion' (> Unit 35).

When writing in English we usually organise the life mation in the same way that we do in speaking. Starting sentences with information which relates back to something aiready ment oned helps the text to 'flow more smoothly and makes it easier for the reader to understand it:

Another striking feature of the capital's squares and parks are the plane trees. The plane tree can reach 35 metres in height and has leaves similar to those of the maple It has a vigorous and robust habit and is highly resistant to cold and air pollution These features make it an ideal choice for city parks in northern Europe

We do not usually put new information at the beginning (but 36 1C D below).

end-weight principle

36.1B In English we prefer to put long and complex phrases at the end of a sentence. English The prefers sentences to be 'ight at the beginning (before the main verb) and neavy' at the end. Long complex clauses also often contain new information, so this principle and the information principle reinforce each other:

A striking feature of the central areas of the capital are the elegant classical squares which were originally laid out by aristocratic developers in the eighteenth century Sentences with a heavy clause at the beginning can seem clumsy and be difficult to understand-

[The elegant classical squares which were originally laid out by aristocratic developers in the eighteenth century are a striking feature of the central areas of the capital.

But the information principle is more important in text than the end weight principle. so we can put a heavy clause at the beginning of a sentence if it contains familiar information linking it to the preceding text:

London has many public parks and squares which date from previous centuries. The elegant classical squares which were originally laid out by aristocratic developers in the eighteenth century are a striking feature of the central areas of the capital

Focus

**36.10** In English we can show which part of a sentence of clause contains the most important point or focus by moving the important point to the beginning or end of the sentence - these are the two positions which appear most important to a reader or listener. In this example Irm and manterab are the focus - they seem the most important issues

Jim invited Lucy to the nightclub

If we want to put the focus on an item that doesn't naturally come at the beginning or end of the sentence (e.g. Lucy) we have to man purate the grammar to bring the item to the front focus position. We call this fronting 34.2. For example, we can use cleft sentences (► **34.1**):

It was Lucy that Jim invited to the nightclub

**Lucy** was the girl that Jim invited to the nightclub

Similarly, we can give focus to something by moving it into the end focus position The girl that Jim invited to the nightclub was Lucy

Contrast and emphasis

**36.1D** We sometimes need to break the principles of word order to create effects of emphasis and contrast. Because word older in English is is sually fixed, we can emphasise something by moving it to an unfamiliar position. We often do this with adverbial expressions ( 34.2C) objects and complements ( 34.2A) and that and to infinitive phrases (> 34.1E, 13.3, 13.4, 13.5).

> The facade of the house was plank and a intere. But it was ornate and luxurious. inside.] → But inside it was ornate and luxurious.

[I may be old], but I'm not stupid, → Old I may be, but I'm not stupid.

Priscilla invariably rejected imposer spea sultors. Her only ambition was to marry for money.] -> To marry for money was her only ambition.

(For more information on word order with verbs - Unit 30 with adverbs - Unit 24)

Manipulating grammar and vocabulary In order to follow the ordering principles 36.1A, Blabove) when we are writing we have to choose suitable vocabiliars and grammar. As the subject usually comes at the beginning of a sentence in English the simplest way to organise a sentence is to choose a subject which links with the previous information:

Whenever possible we pack a our furniture in flat packages. [Transport becomes cheaper because less space is taken up by a flat pack than a bulky one ] . A flat pack takes up less space than a birs joile, which means that transport becomes cheaper.

We somet mes use a noun which simmar ses the previous information (for more information on 'nominalisation' ▶ 25.5B)

The rioters threw petroi bombs at the embassy. The situation was getting out of

We can choose a ternative verbs or use the passive ( 8 4A) so that the appropriate subject comes at the beginning

Our neighbours got a good price for their car [The local garage bought it from them ]

They sold it to a local garage./It was bought by a local garage.

'Guernica' is a wonderful example of cubist art. [In 1937 Picusso painted it] • It was painted by Picasso in 1937.

We can also use introductory it Unit 33) and participle and infinitive phrases ( Unit 13) to put the familiar information at the beginning and new information at the end Freming's behaviour was inexplicable. It was hard to believe that he had become this savage with a bare knife.

Steve went name Walking towards his door he noticed a piece of paper left on the doorstep.

#### **DISCOURSE DEVICES**

Linking expressions

36.2A We use various words and phrases at the beginning of a sentence to express a relationship between what we are about to say and what we have just said. (We also use words to link clauses within a scite ici- for more information about these 30 3A. B) The table below contains some common examples of sentence inkers

types	examples	discourse examples
additive linkers (giving extra information)	Furthermore, 1 Similarly, 1 (= in the same way), In addition, On top of this, What's more,	You can save yourself a full five per cent of interest with our new credit plan.  Furthermore, we are offering no repayments for a year to customers who sign up before the end of the month.
adversative linkers (introducing information which contrasts with what has been mentioned previously) 2	However,¹ Nevertheless,¹ (= despite this) On the other hand,	Your counsel has made a convincing case in mitigation, Mr Belgrave. Nevertheless, we feel that in a case of this gravity the only appropriate option is a custodial sentence.
causal linkers (introducing the result of previous information)	Consequently,1 It follows from this,1 For this reason, As a result, So,	Your repayments are now three months in arrears. Consequently, we have no option but to withdraw credit facilities immediately
temporal linkers (expressing a relationship of time or sequence with the previous information)	Then, After that, An hour later, Finally, At last	The troops trudged for weeks through the snowy wastes. <b>Finally, as</b> they were nearing the point of exhaustion, they saw the faint lights of the city on the horizon

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> We usually use these linkers in more formal English.

36.2B Reference

A key feature of continuous text and of conversation is the use of reference words. (> Unit 35) which tie different sentences together by making cross references backwards and forwards in the text. We generally do not repeat the same words. Professor John Doherty gave the lecture this morning (Professor John Doherty's theme was endorphin production in mammals.]

We tend to avoid doing this because repet tion is boring for the reader or listener as it is not considered stylish. A better alternative is partial repetition:

✓ ... Doherty's theme was endorphin production in mammals.

We can often use a pronoun or replacement word which refers back to the earlier to His/The lecturer's theme was endorphin production in mammals.

We can also use pronouns or other substitute words ( 35.2) and in some cases we can omit the repeated information (► 35.3)

These are often adverbs of contrast. (\* 32.3B)

**36.2C** Although we try to avoid repeating words when we are writing a text ( **36.2B** above), Parallelism a useful way of making a text cohesive is to use similar grammar in different sentences, for example the same tense or aspect, similar word order or repeating a particular grammatical form:

> **She is probably going to** fail the exam. And **she is probably going to** blame ner teacher

Your world To live and sleep in To cook and eat in To take a shower, watch TV or maybe do some work in

We avoid sudden changes in grammar as this often looks clumsy and it can make a written text difficult to understand-

[I can't wait to lie on the sand. Swimming in the sea is great. To sunbathe is something I would love to do as well.]

✓ I can't wait to be lying on the sand, sunbathing and swimming in the sea. If we want to create a dramatic effect or make a strong contrast, we can repeat an unusual grammatical pattern. But we usually only use this device in narrative and fiction. because in less literary contexts it can seem inappropriate:

Rarely had I seen such a ramshackie boot. And never had I actually been expected. to get on board one.

Appropriate language

A key feature of the use of language which is appropriate to its context is the choice of vocabulary. Most English words are neutral and we can use them in any situation. But some words are only appropriate for example in a formal situation and others only in an informal context. Compare these examples which say the same thing in different registers:

The **show starts** at nine o'clock. (neutral)

The performance commences at nine o'clock. (formal)

The show kicks off at nine. (informal)

Certain forms and grammatical patterns are more suitable for formal situations leigpassives ( 8 4D), subjunctives 11 1B) infinitive phrase subjects ( 13 38) and non-defining relative clauses ( 31 1D. There are other patterns which we usually use for more informal situations, e.g. p. ssiles with get ( 8 1E), sentences ending with prepositions ( 14.3B) using verbs as nouns ( 25.5A) and it cleft sentences with when and where (► 34.1B)

Here is another set of examples will challter not only in choice of vocabulary but also in the choice of grammatical patterns.

I'm afraid I can't come because I'm busy tonight. (neutral)

I regret that I am unable to attend due to a prior engagement. (forma!)

Sorry I can't make it but I'm a bit tied up tonight. (informal)

In written English we usually do not mix formal and informal language in the same. text unless we want to create a comic or ironic effect:

[The Minister was unable to attend the reception because he was a bit tied up ]

✓ The Minister was linable to attend the reception due to a prior engagement.

# Practice

## 36.4

In the following passages the underlined phrases or sentences (0–7) do not conform with text writing principles. The main problem is the order of information. Rewrite these sentences appropriately, changing the grammar as necessary. The exercise begins with an example (0).

#### The Hubble Space Telescope

The Hubble Space Telescope was put into orbit by the American space shuttle *Discovery* in April 1990. (0) The earth is orbited by it at an altitude of 610 kilometres. (1) The light from space is not attented by interference from the earth's atmosphere at this height. As a result the Hubble telescope is at least ten times more accurate than telescopes on the ground and has a much greater range. (2) In our search for distant stars and planets this makes it the most useful tool.

The telescope is named after the most influential astronomer of the (wentieth century, Edwin Hubble Working at the Mount Wilson Observatory in Pasadena (3) his close observation of the Andromeda Galaxy was used by the American astronomer to develop the theory that the universe is expanding (4) Directly based on his ideas is the Big Bang theory, now accepted as the most akely explanation of the creation of the universe

The Hubble Space Telescope has not had a smooth history of Scientists at NASA discovered that the main mirror had become distorted and could not be used with any accuracy only two months after it went into orbit. Rither than abandon the project, NASA decided to find a way to resolve this problem. (6) COSTAR (corrective optics space telescope axial replacement) was the name of the solution. This was a device which contained ten smaller mirrors designed to compensate for the distortion in the telescope's main mirror. It cost \$360 million to develop the technology and more than 30 hours of spacewarks by astronauts to fix the device. (7) The Hubble Space Telescope is now working correctly and sending its astronishing data back to earth, the repairs were completed in January 1994.

It r	itit.	the	Petr tot	16 R	"Atti	ade l	1 2 1	10416	aceti

## 2 36.1

### Choose the best alternative, A or B, according to text ordering principles

- 1 The witness gave the police details of her assalant's appearance of coulated throughout the metropolitan district.
  - A The description was
  - B The details of her assailant's appearance were
- 2 Della Jones one of our best-loved singers is well known for her opera repertoire
  - A Her greatest operatic roles have included Rosina in II Barbiere di Siviglia and the title role in Cenerentola
  - B Ros na in Il Barbiere di Siviglia and the title role in La Cenerentola are included among her greatest operatic roles.

- 3 One of the great comic stars of the 1960s was Walter Matthau.
  - A Particularly noteworthy was Jack Lemmon's film work with him.
  - B His film work with Jack Lemmon being particularly noteworthy.
- 4 If you're looking for a quiet holiday, forget about Ibiza.
  - A It may be sun-drenched and beautiful but it isn't peaceful!
  - B Sun-drenched and beautiful it may be, peaceful it isn't!
- 5 Elizabeth inherited a kingdom torn by religious strife.
  - A Her first action was to try and pacify the rival fanatics.
  - B Pacifying the rival fanatics was her first action.
- 6 Potential residents will find everything they need in the Dinglewood rest home in Harwich
  - A Among its features are twenty-four nour nursing care and lux irious private rooms
  - B Luxur ous private rooms and twenty four hour nursing care are among its features
- 7 But I had nothing to do with it, Your Honour
  - A My twin brother was the one the police saw outside the warehouse.
  - B The police saw my twin brother outside the warehouse.
- 8 Built in 1078 by Bishop Gundulf for William the Conqueror the Tower of London is one of the oldest landmarks in the city.
  - A Today its mainic aim to fame is the recent you to level House containing the fabulous crown jewels of Great Britain.
  - B. The recently built Jewel House containing the factions crown jewels of Great Britain is its main claim to fame today.
- 9 Birch trees can reach 30 metres in height and hale a very vigorous growth pattern
  - A Damage can be caused to drairs and house with a fitney are too close to the particularity fast-growing roots.
  - B. The roots are particularly fast growing and call cause dan age if they are close to drains and house walls.
- 10 My ratner unconventional sister turned up in the middle of the night without any warning soon sent our peaceful little household into total turmoil
  - A My sister arriving unexpectedly in the night
  - B Her sudden arrival

## 3 36.2

There is one mistake in each extract, 1-10. Some mistakes are incorrect linking words, some are incorrect use of vocabulary or grammar, and some are due to unnecessary repetition. Find each mistake and correct it.

- Dave I'm off to Mum's for the weekend Don't forget to astroath the burg, and arm if you so out lee you Monday Love Jane
- 2 London is a vast sprawling metropolis containing millions of people over an area of several thousand square kilometres, much of which consists of endlessly monotonous subtabs. Consequently, many of the individual districts seem to have retained their own distinct and almost village-like identities.

- Swimming in the morning and skiing in the afternoon. Dining on seafood in the evening and to fall asleep to the sound of lapping waves at night. There's nowhere like Andalucia. Call now for our brochure.
- Ralph felt the icy wind on his back and wrapped his scarf more tightly around his neck. It was surprising how chilly the icy wind could be once one got a few miles out to sea.
- Local residents are ready to take the matter to the police and the authorities.

  Nevertheless, they are going to write to their member of parliament to insist on a public inquiry into the affair.
- To make a recording first insert a blank tape into the machine. Then select the channel you wish to record and set the counter to zero. You ought to press the red 'record' button and at the same time press the 'play' button.
- 8.00 Tonight's episode of Changing Rooms features a brave married couple from Darlington. The brave married couple allow their rather hamfisted neighbours to redecorate their recently rebuilt conservatory in what the programme makers describe as 'tropical' style!
- Policyholders wishing to make a claim under Section 3 should be prepared to provide receipts of purchase for all items. Items for which receipts cannot be provided will not be eligible for reinstatement except in really special circumstances and at the absolute discretion of the insurers.
- To have made one great album is easy. To have made two is not so hard. But having made three is a rare feat indeed in today's easy-come, easy-go music business. Yes, Radiohead have pulled off the hat trick!
- We moved into the new house today.

  Everything went pretty smoothly. The furniture van arrived bang on the dot of 10 and we spent an exhausting three hours unloading. At first, at one o'clock we were able to sit down on our own sofa in our own new living room!

## 4 ALL

Read the text about Paul Robeson and match the underlined phrases and sentences (1–8) with the features (A–H). (Note that underlined items 1–4 match text features A–D, and underlined items 5–8 match features E–H.) Write the numbers in the boxes.

#### **Features**

- A Putting familiar information at the beginning by using a noun
- B Giving extra focus to information by putting it at the front of the sentence.
- C Repeating a grammatical structure to give extra emphasis (parallelism).
- D. Using a linking word to make a contrast with information in the previous sentence
- E Familiar information at the beginning new information at the end (the information principle)
- F Using a substitute word to avoid repetition.
- G Putting familiar information at the beginning by using the passive.
- H Long and complex phrases at the end (the end-weight principle).



Paul Robeson was the first African American to gain international success in the 'white' world of Hollywood movies. He was born in 1898, the son of a Methodist minister and a runaway stave. (1) Highly intelligent, he won a scholarship to Columbia University where he qualified as a lawyer. (2) But there were few opportunities for brack lawyers in the New York of the nineteen twenties and Robeson decided to pursue a career on the stage. He soon became one of the biggest stars on Broadway, taking the leading role in Eugene O'Neill's play The Emperor Jones in 1924. (3) Applicated for his acting ability and acclaimed for his remarkable physical presence on stage. Robeson went on to show the world his greatest talent, his superb deep bass singing voice, by taking the role of Joe in Jerome Kern's hit

musical Show Boat in 1927. After a successful run in this musical he changed direction again by tackling. Shakespeare, achieving rave reviews for his portrayal of Othello.

(4) <u>Success on Broadway inevitably led to Hollywood</u> and Robeson made his screen debut in the film version of *The Emperor Jones* in 1933. Word of his abilities soon spread outside the United States and (5) in 1935 the actor moved to Figland, where he started in *Sanders of the River* and *King Solomon's Mines*.

Back in America Robeson started in *Show Boat* singing his famous seng *Ol. Man River*. (b) <u>A recording and singing career tollowed with Robeson popularising traditional acgro-spirituals, a form of religious fork song developed by black slaves in the American South. Robeson became increasingly involved in politics and in the nineteen filties made a visit to the Soviet Union. It was an era of strong anti-communist feelings in America and when Robeson (eturned home his passport was cance ied and he was forced to stay in the United States for the next six years. (7) He was black isted by Hollywood and was anable to find work (8) Robeson left the States in 1988 and began a new career as a goncert performer in Europe. But he became seriously ill in the sixties and returned to New York. He died in Harlem in 1976.</u>

## 5 ALL

Use the following notes to prepare a short article for a reference book about the samurai. Write one sentence only for each numbered set of notes, using connecting words and phrases as appropriate. You may add words and change the form of the words given in the notes but do not add any extra information. The first point has been expanded for you as an example (0)

### The samurai - Warriors of Japan

- 0 s. = warrior class founded by first 'shogun' (military ruler) Yoritomo 1180
- " WITH ATT STRAIN WATER BY TO THE TOTAL TO THE TOTAL OF THE
- 2 many rights & privileges. right to carry swords/ride horse
- suicide when d. died)
- 4 th that the safe of the safe of the state of the safe of the state o
- ruthless, feared & brutal warriors in Asia
- HI CHAST TENDE WIELLES COLLEGE TO THE TOTAL TO THE TOTAL WILLIAM
- administrators (not soldiers)
- 8 1867 ACT OF THE TRANSPORT OF THE CONSCRIPTION & Western army structure (introduced 1872)
- For onger ver to a agree a location of the start of actant recognizing to government
- 10 Satsuma rebellion = disaster for s. finally defeated by Imperial Army 1877

# Key to diagnostic tests

Office your answers to the exercises in the diagraph rests. On either reference humbers at the end of the line (e.g., 5.1C) for any mistakes you made. Then turn to the relevant unit and study the sections where you made the mistakes

#### TEST 1

- 1 enjoys, watches > 1.1A, B, C
- 2 doesn't use ► 1.1A, B
- 3 Does, usually change 1 1A, C
- 4 smokes 1.1C, 1.2C
- 5 is staying 1.1C, 1.2B
- 6 take ▶ 1.1C
- 7 am feeding > 1.1C, 1.2C
- 8 does not usually send ▶ 1.1C
- 9 mix, put ▶ 1.1D
- 10 are turning ▶ 1.2D
- II get, says ► 1.1E
- 12 isn't playing ▶ 1.2B
- 13 comes ⇒ 1.2B
- 14 are always losing 1.2C
- 15 consists of > 1.3A
- 16 Do you think ▶ 1.3B
- 17 are you thinking ▶ 1.3B
- 18 is being ▶ 1.3B
- 19 are tasting ► 1.3C
- 20 guarantee ► 1.3D
- Unit 1, pages 46 to 53

#### TEST 2

- 1 swim > 2.1A
- 2 stopped ► 2.1A
- 3 jumped ▶ 2.1B
- 4 ruled > 2.1B
- 5 were growing, was ▶ 2.2B
- 6 were experiencing ► 2.2B
- 7 was leaving > 2.2D
- 8 were working > 2.2C
- 9 had been running > 2.2C
- 10 was taking ➤ 2.2D

- 11 had taken > 2.3B
- 12 had been ► 2.3B
- 13 had already started 2.3C
- 14 climbed > 2.3C
- 15 had expected 2.3D
- 16 had been declining > 2.4B
- 17 had only used > 2.4C
- 18 use to have > 2.5A
- 19 used > 2.5B
- 20 used to be ≥ 2.5C
- Unit 2, pages 54 to 61

#### TEST 3

- 1 has stood 3.1B, 3 2A
- 2 wrote > 3.1B, 3.2B
- 3 didn't see ▶ 3.1D, 3.2B
- 4 has increased > 3.1D
- 5 has spent > 3.1D, 3.2D
- 6 has surrounded . 3.1E
- 7 thought > 3.2E
- 8 have been eating 3.3B
- 9 has welcomed > 3.3B, 3.4A
- 10 has risen > 3.4C
- 11 have been waited → have waited/have been waiting 3.1A, 3.3A
- 12 since two years → for two years ► 3.1B
- 13 were → have been ► 3.1B, 3.2B
- 14 already announced → has already announced ► 3.1C
- 15 has imposed → imposed ▶ 3.1D, 3.2D
- 16 <del>have been →</del> were ➤ **3.1D**, **3.2A**
- 17 is growing → has been growing/has grown ▶ 3.3B, 3.1B

- 18 has been playing → has played 3.3B, 3.4B
- 19 <del>I've travelled</del> → I've been travelling ► 3.3C, 3.4C
- 20 has been recording → has recorded > 3.3C, 3.4D
- Unit 3, pages 62 to 69

- 1 will find > 4.1A
- 2 'll probably sell > 4.1A, 4.4C
- 3 are going to win ► 4.1B
- 4 's going to rain ► 4.1B
- 5 'll be skiing > 4.1C
- 6 'll have been married 4.1D
- 7 'll have been living/'ll have lived ~ 4.1D
- 8 'Il just finish/'m just going to finish ▶ 4.2A, B
- 9 shall we have > 4.2A
- 10 will come/am going to come 4.2A, B
- 11 'm going to spend ▶ 4.2B
- 12 're going to build ► 4.2B
- 13 is coming > 4.3A
- 14 'm staying > 4.3A
- 15 'll be making/'re going to make ► 4.3B, 4.2B
- 16 will you be staying/are you going to stay ▶ 4.3B, 4.2B
- 17 takes off > 4.4A
- 18 will be/is ▶ 4.4B, A
- 19 will be playing ► 4.4B
- 20 pay ► 4.4D
- ▶ Unit 4, pages 72 to 79

- 1 b ▶ 5.1A
- 2 a > 5.1A
- 3 a ▶ 5.1B
- 4 c № 5.1C
- 5 b > 5.1C
- 6 a > 5.1D
- 7 b ≥ 5.2A
- 8 a > 5.3A
- 9 c > 5.3B
- 10 b > 5.3A
- 11 b, c ≥ 5.1A, B
- 12 a, b > 5.1A, D
- 13 b, c ≥ 5.1C
- 14 a, c ▶ 5.1C
- 15 a, b ≥ 5.1C
- 16 a, b ▶ 5.1D
- 17 b. c ≥ 5.2A
- 18 a, b ≥ 5.2A, B
- 19 a, b > 5.3A, B
- 20 a, c ≥ 5.3A, B
  - Unit 5, pages 80 to 85

#### TEST 6

- 1 a, b ▶ 6.1A, C
- 2 b, c > 6.1A, E
- 3 a, c > 6.1B, 6.3C
- 4 a, c ≥ 6.1C
- 5 b, c № 6.1C, 6.3A
- 6 a, b ≥ 6.1D
- 7 a. c ▶ 6.1E
- 8 a, b > 6.1E
- 9 a, c ≥ 6.2B
- 10 b, c > 6.2B
- 11 b, c № 6.3A
- 12 a, c ▶ 6.3A
- 13 not to leave ► 6.1A
- 14 Not having seen > 6.1A
- 15 Not many/Few ▶ 6.1B

- 16 neither to go on a cruise nor to visit the Pyramids. ► 6.1D
- 17 don't believe that there is/believe that there isn't6.1E
- 18 Haven't you seen ▶ 6.2A
- 19 didn't deny/admitted > 6.3B
- 20 dishonest > 6.3C
- Unit 6, pages 88 to 95

#### TEST 7

- 1 What means 'heliotrope'? → What does 'heliotrope' mean? 7.1A
- 2 <del>you had been</del> → had you been ► 7.1A
- 3 V ▶ 7.1B
- 4 What did happen? → What happened? ► 7.1C
- 5 V ► 7.10
- 6 V > 7.1D
- 7 Yes. → No. > 7.2A
- 8 don't we? → shall we? > 7.2B
- 9 V > 7.2C
- 10 what time does the train from Croydon arrive? → what time the train from Croydon arrives? ► 7.3A
- 11 if or not the tree roots will affect → if the tree roots will affect the foundations (or not)/whether or not the tree roots will affect ➤ 7.3A
- 12 V № 7.3A
- 13 Could you tell me where (too formal/tentative for situation)
  → Where did ➤ 7.3B
- 14 Did they? → Didn't they?
  ► 7.4A
- 15 V ▶ 7.4B
- 16 won't they? ► 7.2A
- 17 oughtn't we?/shouldn't we?

  ▶ 7.2B
- 18 need she?/does she? ► 7.2B
- 19 is he? ▶ 7.2C
- 20 will you? ▶ 7.2D
- ▶ Unit 7, pages 96 to 103

- 1 A pay rise has been offered to the workers. ▶ 8.1A
- 2 The entire fleet is being overhauled. ▶ 8.1B
- 3 The contestants were made to dress in ridiculous outfits.
  8.1B
- 4 We should have been warned in advance. ▶ 8.18
- 5 Advice having been taken, it was decided not to proceed. 8.2A
- 6 To be buried at sea was my father's final wish. ▶ 8.2B
- 7 We regret not having been/being informed of the landlord's decision. ▶ 8.2A
- 8 I have/get my car serviced every six months./I have the garage service my car every six months. > 8.3A
- 9 We will have the carriers return the goods to your clients by Friday./We will have the goods returned to your clients by the carriers by Friday. > 8.3A
- 10 Susy's getting her car repaired free of charge!

   8 3B
- 11 Get that computer repaired as soon as you possibly can.
  8.3C
- 12 The bathroom hasn't been cleaned for weeks! ▶ 8.4C
- 13 a > 8.1E
- 14 b ▶ 8.1C, 8.4C, D
- 15 b ▶ 8.1D
- 16 a ▶ 8.1D
- 17 a ▶ 8.4A
- 18 b > 8.4B, D
- 19 a ▶ 8.1A
- 20 a ▶ 8.4B
- ▶ Unit 8, pages 104 to 111

- 1 said she: → she said. > 9.1A
- 2 He told that → He said that/He told us/me that ► 9.2A
- 3 I felt → she felt she > 9.2B
- 4 tomorrow morning → the next/following morning > 9.28
- 5 

  9.2C (also possible: when he gets home ▶ 9.2D)
- 6 she had still been young. → she was/were still young ▶ 9.2D
- 7 V ▶ 9.2D
- 8 said if → asked if/wanted to know if ... ▶ 9.3A
- 9 had started the pain. → the pain had started. ▶ 9.3B
- 10 if or not there was a swimming pool at the villar → whether or not there was a swimming pool at the villa/if there was a swimming pool at the villa or not. ▶ 9 3B
- 11 don't abdicate. → not to abdicate. ► 9.4B
- 12 to have taken part → taking part/having taken part ▶ 9.5B
- 13 (that) he would remember 1st March 2000 as a great day for the nation. ▶ 9.2B, C
- 14 (that) publication might be delayed by one week. ▶ 9.2E (also possible: may be delayed ▶ 9.2D)
- 15 (that) I must/had to lose at least 20 kilos./to lose at least 20 kilos. ► 9.2E
- 16 (that) intelligent life does not exist in our universe. ► 9 2D
- 17 (that) the Ming Dynasty lasted/had lasted for almost 300 years. ▶ 9.2D
- 18 when she/we wanted the sofa to be delivered. ▶ 9.3B
- 19 that it was stupid behaviour for a cyclist. ▶ 9.3B
- 20 to do at least four hours' training a day. ▶ 9.4B, 9.5B
- ▶ Unit 9, pages 112 to 119

#### **TEST 10**

- 1 ≥ ► 10.1A
- 2 If the bill is passed by both parliamentary houses, then it becomes law. (insert comma) > 10.1A
- 3 had → have ► 10.1B, 10.3, 10.4
- 4 V ➤ 10.2A
- 5 V > 10.28
- 6 will charge → charges 10.3A
- 7 Are you unhappy → If you are unhappy/Should you be unhappy ➤ 10.3C, 10.4C
- 8 V ► 10.3A
- 9 

  ▶ 10.3A (or: the transfer takes ▶ 10.2A)
- 10 are → were > 10.4A (or: would → will > 10.3A, B)
- 11 V ► 10.4A, C
- 12 was (often considered incorrect) → were > 10.4A
- 13 would have waited → had waited ► 10.5A, B (but ✓ in US English)
- 14 hadn't-been → had been 10.5B
- 15 wouldn't-renew → wouldn't have renewed > 10.6A
- 16 V 10 6B
- 17 <del>unless you made</del> → if you didn't make ► 10.7A
- 18 V ► 10.7C
- 19 Even they → Even if they
  ► 10.7D
- 20 whether we take remedial steps now. → whether or not we take remedial steps now./whether we take remedial steps now or not. ▶ 10.7E
- ▶ Unit 10, pages 120 to 129

#### TEST 11

- 2 would have → had ► 11.3C
- 3 V ▶ 11.1A.B
- 4 V > 11.3E
- 5 didn\*t act → stopped acting ► 11.2C
- 6 would have been → had been/could have been > 11.3C
- 7 lives → live > 11.1C
- 8 If only I had known. (omit that) > 11.3E
- 9 b > 11.2A, 11.3B
- 10 a > 11.2C
- 11 a > 11.2D
- 12 b ▶ 11.2F
- 13 b ▶ 11.3A
- 14 a > 11.3D
- 15 started doing/did your homework. ▶ 11.2C
- 16 had been invited, would you have gone? ► 11.2D
- 17 didn't bring that smelly dog into this house, ► 11.2E
- 18 wear natural fabrics. ▶ 11.2E
- 19 he knows what he is talking about ▶ 11.2F
- 20 would stop talking with your mouth full. ➤ 11.3C
- → Unit 11, pages 130 to 137

- 1 no parking > 12.1A
- 2 to succeed ► 12.2A
- 3 to make > 12.2B
- 4 helping ▶ 12.1A
- 5 his leaving (him leaving is acceptable in informal Engree ► 12.1B
- 6 to boost ► 12.2B
- 7 to find ► 12.2B
- 8 to help ▶ 12.2C
- 9 meeting ▶ 12.3A
- 10 the children seeing ► 12.34

- 11 to write № 12.2C
- 12 seeing/to see ▶ 12.3C
- 13 to set > 12.3D
- 14 to hurt ► 12.3D
- 15 making ► 12.3D
- 16 dancing ▶ 12.3D
- 17 to announce ▶ 12.3D
- 18 building > 12.3E
- 19 The dispensing medical → The dispensing of medical → 12.1B
- 20 V > 12.1B
- 21 is sure to looking → is sure to look/be looking ► 12.2C
- 22 found making → found him making ► 12.3A
- 23 taking → to take > 12.3A
- 24 the judge ordered to pay the judge ordered us/you/ him/her/them to pay > 12.3B
- 25 ✔ ▶ 12.30
- ► Unit 12, pages 140 to 147

- 1 Not owning > 13.1A, 13.2B
- 2 author > 13.1B
- 3 bought ▶ 13.2A
- 4 to walk > 13.2A, 13.4A
- 5 opening > 13.2C
- 6 for the company 13.3B
- 7 to find > 13.4B
- 8 speaking > 13.5A
- 9 having been refused13.1A, C, 13.2B
- 10 Not being ► 13.1A, 13.2B
- 11 Serviced > 13.1A, 13.2B
- 12 completed ► 13.1C
- 13 left > 13.2A
- 14 Not having kept ▶ 13.2B, C
- 15 Living ▶ 13.2C
- 16 Having passed ► 13.2C
- 17 not to have applied ► 13.3A, 13.4A
- 18 to sell ► 13.4A

- 19 to access ▶ 13.4B
- 20 to be ▶ 13.5A
- ▶ Unit 13, pages 148 to 155

#### **TEST 14**

- 1 was made up by him. ▶ 14.1A
- 2 Keep it up. ▶ 14.2B
- 3 stick strictly to ➤ 14.3A, 14.5C
- 4 go with it. ▶ 14.3A, 14.5C
- 5 ran into him ▶ 14.3A, 14.5C
- 6 which our movement stands for./for which our movement stands. ► 14.3B
- 7 put up with it. > 14.4A
- 8 let her in on it. ▶ 14.4A
- 9 by head office over → over by head office ≈ 14.1A
- 11 left by his ex girlfriend out → left out by his ex-girlfriend 14.1A
- 12 not give away → not reveal (give away is an inappropriate verb in a formal context)

  14.1B
- 13 activate → turn on/switch on (activate is an inappropriate verb in an informal context)
  14.18
- 14 down the floor and → down (on the floor) and ► 14.2A
- 15 V > 14.2A
- 16 took off the ground at incredible speed. → took off (from the ground) at incredible speed. ▶ 14.2A, B, 14.5A
- 17 brought recently in → recently brought in ► 14.2B, 14.5B
- 18 **✔** ▶ 14.38, 14.5C
- 19 V ► 14.4A
- 20 V > 14.4A, 14.5D
- ▶ Unit 14, pages 156 to 163

- I apologise to → apologise to her/him ▶ 15.1A
- 2 <del>sit</del> → sitting > 15.1B
- 3 V ▶ 15.1B, 15.5D
- 4 to → with > 15.1C
- 5 astemshed at that her boyfriend had behaved → astonished that her boyfriend had behaved/astonished at her boyfriend having behaved ▶ 15.10
- 6 if → whether > 15.1E
- 7 quarrelled his wife → quarrelled with his wife ► 15.2A
- 8 on you their party costumes

  → on you for their party
  costumes. ▶ 15.2A, 15.5A
- 9 ✔ ► 15.2B
- 10 V ▶ 15.2C
- 11 provide Sam for a room →
  provide Sam with a
  room/provide a room for Sam
  ▶ 15.2C, 15.5B
- 12 me all the details. → all the details to me. ▶ 15.2C
- 13 V 15 3A
- 14 <del>demanded for</del> → demanded ▶ 15.3B
- 15 g<del>rowing.</del> → growth, 15.3C, 15.5C
- 16 V ► 15.4A, 15.5D
- 17 furnous by → furnous at/about ▶ 15.4B, 15.5D
- 18 scared by → scared of ▶ 15.48
- 19 V ▶ 15.4B
- 20 V ▶ 15.4B, 15.5D
- ▶ Unit 15, pages 164 to 173

- 1 can → will be able to ▶ 16.1A
- 2 can't have been able → haven't been able ▶ 16.1A
- 3 is able to be → can be 16.1A
- 4 ₩ > 16.1B
- 5 could → was able to > 16.1B
- 6 could warn → could have warned > 16.1B
- 7 V ► 16.1B
- 8 can't → couldn't > 16.1B
- 9 <del>can</del> → may/might/could 16.2A
- 10 <del>could be</del> → could have been ► 16.2B
- 12 ean → could/may/might 16.2A
- 13 V ≥ 16.2A
- 14 May you get → Could/Might you get/Is it possible you will get ► 16.2A
- 15 ₩ № 16.2A
- 16 V ▶ 16.2C
- 17 <del>couldn't steal</del> → couldn't have stolen ► 16.2B
- 18 can → could/might > 16.2A
- 19 V ► 16.3A
- 20 V ► 16.3A
- 21 Am I able to use → Can/Could/ May/Might I use ▶ 16.3B, 16.4A
- 22 V > 16.3B
- 23 could → was able to > 16.4B
- 24 V > 16 3B
- 25 might-not → may not/can't ► 16.4A
- ▶ Unit 16, pages 174 to 181

#### **TEST 17**

- 1 Having to ▶ 17.1A
- 2 ought to ► 17.1A, B
- 3 have to ▶ 17.1B

- 4 have to > 17.1B
- 5 shouldn't have ▶ 17.1B
- 6 need > 17.1C
- 7 are supposed to > 17.1D
- 8 couldn't go > 17.2A, B
- 9 are not allowed to > 17.2B
- 10 must not have # 17.2B
- 11 needn't > 17.3A
- 12 don't have to > 17.3B
- 13 didn't need to show 17.3B
- 14 better > 17.4A
- 15 should > 17.4B
- 16 had better not > 17.4B
- 17 be raining > 17.5A
- 18 shouldn't > 17.5B
- 19 must have > 17.5B
- 20 had to have > 17.5B
- ▶ Unit 17, pages 182 to 189

#### **TEST 18**

- 1 would be > 18.1B
- 2 'Il be driving . 18.1C
- 3 won't have started > 18.1D
- 4 will eat/eat > 18.2A
- 5 will act > 18 3A
- 6 won't book ► 18.3A
- 7 would always help 18.3B, 18.2B
- 8 would not reveal > 18 3B
- 9 Shall I make > 18.4A
- 10 shall we do > 18.4B
- 11 Would you be 18.4C
- 12 would like ▶ 18.5A
- 13 b > 18.1A
- 14 a ▶ 18.1C
- 15 a ≥ 18.2A
- 16 b ► 18 2B
- 17 b ▶ 18.4D
- 18 b ≥ 18 4E
- 19 a ≥ 18.5A
- 20 b ► 18 5B
- ▶ Unit 18, pages 190 to 197

#### **TEST 19**

- 1 were painting the staircase and were tiling the bathroom.
  → painting the staircase and tiling the bathroom.
  ▶ 19.1A
- 2 its → it's > 19.1B
- 3 ✓ > 19.2B
- 4 <del>to have got</del> → to have 19.4B
- 5 V > 19.3B
- 6 He's watching → He was watching. ➤ 19.1B
- 7 V> 19.1B
- 8 have got → have/get ▶ 19.4B
- 9 really do some → really do with some > 19.3C
- 10 V > 19.2B
- 11 A shower was had by John → John had a shower ▶ 19.3B
- 12 V № 19.3A
- 13 <del>can have got</del> → can have 19.4B
- 14 gotten → got (in British English) ✓ (in US English) 19.4B
- 15 have got → have ► 19.4B
  Unit 19, pages 200 to 207

- 1 makes > 20.1A
- 2 has made/makes > 20.1A
- 3 have done > 20.1A
- 4 had made ► 20.1A
- 5 do ▶ 20.1A
- 6 doing > 20.1B
- 7 do № 20.1B
- 8 make > 20.1B
- 9 taken > 20.1C
- 10 took ► 20.1C
- 11 been ► 20.1D
- 12 lie ► 20.1E
- 13 laid ► 20.1E
- 14 lay ▶ 20.1E
- 15 speaks ► 20.1F

- 16 spoke № 20.1F
- 17 talking > 20.1F
- 18 raise ▶ 20.1G
- 19 arisen > 20.1G
- 20 rising ▶ 20.1G
- 21 stole > 20.1H
- 22 lend > 20.2A
- 23 bringing > 20.2B
- 24 took ▶ 20.2B
- 25 fetching > 20.28

Unit 20, pages 208 to 215

#### TEST 21

- 1 histories → historic > 21.1A
- 2 young's → young > 21.1A
- 3 V → 21.1A
- 4 What amazing! → How amazing!/What amazing news! 21.1A
- 5 A plant being built outside the town is chemical. → A chemical plant is being built outside the town./The plant being built outside the town is a chemical one. ▶ 21.1B
- 6 the asleep children → the sleeping children/the children who are asleep > 21.1C
- 7 alive animals → live/living animals/animals who/which/ that are alive > 21.1C
- 8 negative anything → anything negative ▶ 21.1D
- 9 ✓ ▶ 21.10
- 10 V > 21.1D
- 11 involved people → people involved ▶ 21.1D
- 12 V ≥ 21.2A
- 13 provided security boxes → security boxes provided ► 21.2A
- 14 <del>worned</del> → worrying **>** 21.2B
- 15 <del>lost</del> → losing > 21.2B
- 16 speaking Spanish → Spanishspeaking ► 21.2C
- 17 duning mahogany table → mahogany duning table ► 21.3A

- 18 <del>Victorian wonderful</del> → wonderful Victorian ◆ 21 3A
- 19 V № 21.3B
- 20 well informed and honest, capable. → well-informed, honest and capable ▶ 21.3C
- ▶ Unit 21, pages 216 to 223

#### **TEST 22**

- 1 slimer → slimmer > 22.1A
- 2 than 1 → than me/than 1 am 22.1A
- 3 ✓ (but also much more mely much livelier) 22.1B
- 4 realer → more real = 22.1B
- 5 V > 22.1B
- 6 most proudest → proudest/ the most proud ➤ 22.1B, D
- 7 ✓ (but also the most unhappy → the unhappiest) ► 22.1B
- 8 V > 22.1F
- 9 eldest → oldest > 22.1C
- 10 V № 22.1C
- 11 lets → a lot/considerably/ much/a great deal/even/far more > 22.1D
- 12 of → in > 22.1A
- 13 worse → bad > 22.2A
- 14 V > 22 3A
- 15 angrier → more angry 22.3C
- 16 Of all the modems (in our catalogue), the *Hyperlink* is by far the fastest/the fastest by far. ▶ 22.1D
- 17 Jan is no better/Jan is no worse than Lucy at tennis. 22.1E
- 18 Getting a made-to-measure suit was not nearly as expensive as I expected.

  ▶ 22.2B
- 19 It was so cold that I couldn't open the lock. ▶ 22.2C
- 20 The more frustrated he becomes, the angrier he gets. ▶ 22.3B
- Unit 22, pages 224 to 231

#### **TEST 23**

- 1 🗸 🛮 23.1A
- 2 very enormous > 23.2A
- 3 V > 23.1B
- 4 more boiling > 23.2A
- 5 slightly huge ➤ 23.2C
- 6 ₩ Þ 23.2D
- 7 ✔ 23.2C
- 8 V > 23.3A
- 9 V 23 3A
- 10 absolutely ugly 23.1B
- 11 V ▶ 23.3B
- 12 slightly free ▶ 23.2C
- 13 c ▶ 23.1B
- 14 c ▶ 23.1B
- 15 a ▶ 23.1B
- 16 b > 23.1C
- 17 a ➤ 23.2B
- 18 a 23.2B
- 19 b → 23.2C 20 c ► 23.1D
- ▶ Unit 23, pages 232 to 239

- 1 highly > 24.1A, B
- 2 deep ▶ 24.1B
- 3 roughly fifty ► 24.2A
- 4 faster > 24.2B
- 5 Yesterday I only slept 24.3A, B
- 6 I get paid weekly, ▶ 24.3B
- 7 Here lies the tomb ► 24.3B
- 8 usually arrives ▶ 24.3C
- 9 is often ▶ 24.3C
- 10 still don't ► 24.3C
- 11 trading any longer ► 24.3D
- 12 hardly ever go out. ▶ 24.3D
- 13 behaved badly ► 24.3D
- 14 I thought his performance was pretty good. ▶ 24.2A
- 15 The patient's body is now almost entirely free of symptoms. ▶ 24.2A

- These days I probably take my health more seriously.
   24.3A
- 17 She's my worst enemy and I really don't like her./She's really my worst enemy and I don't like her. > 24 3C
- 18 Emotionally rejected, Harriet turned to food for comfort./ Rejected emotionally, Harriet turned to food for comfort 24.4A
- 19 Incidentally, I bumped into your brother at the supermarket. ► 24.4B
- 20 I understood everything because the teacher answered the question clearly. ▶ 24.4B
- ▶ Unit 24, pages 240 to 247

- 1 V ≥ 25.1B
- 2 pianos ► 25.2A
- 3 phenomena ▶ 25.2B
- 4 MPs ▶ 25.2B
- 5 kitchen scales ▶ 25.2C
- 6 advice **▶ 25.3A**
- 7 fewer (less is possible only in informal English) ► 25.3A
- 8 a stone ▶ 25.3B
- 9. ✓ ▶ 25.30
- 10 V ► 25.4A
- 11 has > 25.4A
- 12 is ▶ 25.4B
- 13 was ▶ 25.4B
- 14 it's ▶ 25.4C
- 15 is ▶ 25.4C
- 16 V ▶ 25.4D
- 17 V ▶ 25.4D
- 18 a shout ▶ 25 5A
- 19 The attack on the Minister was ▶ 25.58
- 20 outbreak > 25.5A
- Unit 25, pages 248 to 255

#### TEST 26

- 1 en a side → on the side ▶ 26.1A
- 2 V ▶ 26.1B
- 3 their's + their ► 26 1A
- 4 V ▶ 26.1C
- 5 V 26.1C
- 6 sister's in law's → sister-inlaw's ▶ 26.1C
- 7 Lennon's and → Lennon and ▶ 26.1C
- 8 ✓ (but also of Professor Grigson's) > 26.1D
- 9 a friend of me → a friend of mine > 26.1D
- 10 the new car of Hilary → Hilary's new car ➤ 26.2A
- 11 the youngest daughter of Mr Granger → Mr Granger's youngest daughter ➤ 26.2A
- 12 the local paper of today → today's local paper ▶ 26.2A
- 13 V ▶ 26.2A
- 14 V ▶ 26.2A
- 15 V > 26.2A
- 16 the house of my brother → my brother's (house)
  ▶ 26.2A
- 17 V ▶ 26.2A
- 18 for the sake of heaven → for heaven's sake ► 26.2A
- 19 anthropology's history → the history of anthropology
  ▶ 26 2B
- 20 crowd's cheers → cheers of the crowd ➤ 26.2B
- 21 April the thirteenth's morning

  → the morning of April the
  thirteenth ► 26.2B
- 22 the famous serial killer's arrest → the arrest of the famous serial killer ➤ 26.2B
- 23 V ▶ 26.2C
- 24 V > 26 2C

- 25 the short-stories' collection of Graham Greene → the/a collection of short stories by Graham Greene/Graham Greene's collection of short stories ▶ 26.2D
- 26 my expensive wife's ear → my wife's expensive car ► 26.3A
- 27 V > 26.3A
- 28 estate's agent's → estate agent's ▶ 26.3B
- 29 maker of dresses → dressmaker ▶ 26.3C
- 30 ✓ (but also one year's sabbatical) ► 26.3C
  - Unit 26, pages 256 to 263

- 1 Æs → the dog's (dishes) 27.1A
- 2 <del>our!</del> → ours! 27.1A, B
- 3 E-mails they have become → E-mails have become 27.1C
- 4 to cat them → to eat 27.1C
- 5 V > 27.1D
- 6 <del>you and 1</del> → you and me 27.1D
- 7 V > 27.1E
- 8 a-one → one ► 27.1G
- 9 l've enjoyed very much → l've enjoyed it/myself very much. 27.2A
- 10 in remembering themselves what → in remembering what 27.2B
- 11 V ▶ 27.2C
- 12 themselves → each other

  > 27.2D
- 13 V ▶ 27.3A
- 14 <del>seem</del> → seems | 27.4A
- 15 a v b x c v ▶ 27.1C
- 16 a ✓ b × (too formal) c ✓ (but only if the household is mainly female) ► 27.1F
- 17 a ✔ (but unlikely if the speaker is the pet owner)
  b ✔ c ¥ ▶ 27.1F
- 18 a V b X c V ▶ 27.2A

19 a ✓ b ✓ c × ▷ 27.2D 20 a ✓ b ✓ c ✓ ▷ 27.3A ▷ Unit 27, pages 264 to 271

### **TEST 28**

1 the ▶ 28.1B

2 The > 28.1C

3 the ▶ 28.1C

4 the ▶ 28.1C

5 - > 28.1D

6 the > 28.1D

7 - ▶ 28.1D

8 a ▶ 28.1E

9 the ≥ 28.1E

10 - ▶ 28.1E

11 an ▶ 28.1A

12 a ≥ 28.1C

13 A/- ► 28.1E

14 those ▶ 28.2A

15 This/A > 28.2A (28.1C)

16 this > 28.2B

17 any/some ► 28.3A

18 All > 28.3A

19 both/both of > 28.3A

20 Much/A lot > 28.3B

▶ Unit 28, pages 272 to 279

### **TEST 29**

1 b ▶ 29.2A

2 c ► 29.2A

3 h ≥ 29.2A

4 b ≥ 29.2A

5 b > 29.2B

6 c ≥ 29.2C

7 b ▶ 29.2C

8 a > 29.2C

9 c ▶ 29.2D

10 a ▶ 29.2D

11 c ≥ 29.2D

12 c ≥ 29.3A

13 V № 29.1A, 29.2B

14 by means of **▶ 29.2D** 

15 just behind ▶ 29.1B

16 up to ▶ 29.2B

17 because of the solicitors' involvement/because (of the fact that) solicitors became involved ➤ 29.3A

18 V ► 29.3A

19 Apart from dismantling the lighting, ► 29.3A

20 that I applied for/for which I applied ► 29.3B

Unit 29, pages 280 to 289

#### **TEST 30**

1 a V C V > 30.1B, 30.2C, F

2 a V b V ► 30.2A

3 h / c / > 30.2B

4 a V c V ▶ 30.2B, D

5 bv cv > 30.2B

6 av bv > 30.2C

7 a ✔ c ✔ ▶ 30.2E, B

8 b V c V ▶ 30.2E

9 the Duke really loves the Princess ▶ 30.1A, 30.2C

10 Could you provide a formal quote? ► 30.1B, 30.2C

11 Katharine kept her marriage to Duncan a secret ► 30.2B

12 John named the yacht Bettina

> 30 2B

13 brought the company a certain amount of class > 30.2C

14 Will you show them the way to the motorway? ► 30.2C

15 the magician pulled a rabbit from his hat ▶ 30.2D

16 the visitors that the prisoner didn't want to see them30.2F

17 Can you show me how to use this machine? ▶ 30.2F

18 she was well-qualified and had enough experience/she had enough experience and was well-qualified ▶ 30.3A

19 is much brighter than the previous one ▶ 30.3B

20 We left as soon as the first act was over. ▶ 30.3B

Unit 30, pages 290 to 297

#### **TEST 31**

1 that ▶ 31.1C, 31.2A

2 which > 31.1D, 31.2A

3 which ▶ 31.1F

4 which ▶ 31.2A

5 whom ▶ 31.2A

6 which ▶ 31.1D

7 whose ▶ 31.2A

8 what > 31.2A

9 when ▶ 31.2A

10 wherever ▶ 31.2C

11 which this shop makes them

→ which this shop makes

▶ 31.1A

12 Jack has prepared his
favourite dish from Deha
Smith's recipe book, which he
is about to eat. → Jack has
prepared his favourite dish,
which he is about to eat, from
Delia Smith's recipe book.
▶ 31.1A

13 bars have got toffee in the middle? → bars which/that have got toffee in the middle?/ bars with toffee in the middle? ▶ 31.1A, B, 31.2A

14 St Andrew's Hospice which opened last year: → St Andrew's Hospice, which opened last year. ▶ 31.1D, E

15 the city where I grew up in: →
the city where I grew up./the
city which/that I grew up in.

▶ 31.1F

16 the residents who living here

→ the residents who are living here/the residents living here

▶ 31.1G

17 a genuine Ming vase, that was worth → a genuine Ming vase, which was worth ▶ 31.2A

18 The bank robbery what I told you about → The bank robbery that/which I told you about ▶ 31.2A, 31.1B

- 19 the main reason which governments fall. → the main reason why governments fall. 31.2A
- 20 most of them proved → most of which proved ► 31.2B
- ▶ Unit 31, pages 298 to 305

- 1 even though → but ▶ 32.1A
- 2 V ≥ 32.1A
- 3 But they'd travelled round the world, they had → They'd travelled round the world but they had/Although they'd travelled around the world, they had ▶ 32.1B
- 4 V ▶ 32.1B
- 5 she had served although → although she had served ► 32.1B
- 6 Even although → Even though ▶ 32.1B
- 7 even they have had → even though they have had ► 32.1B
- 8 They are a haven of peace and tranquility yet: → Yet, they are a haven of peace and tranquillity. ▶ 32.1B
- 9 V ≥ 32.1C
- 10 Ideal the nouse may appear

  → Ideal though the house
  may appear ▶ 32.1C
- 11 In spite of he had → In spite of the fact that he had/In spite of having/Although he had ▶ 32.2
- 12 Despite she was a woman →
  Despite the fact that she was
  a woman/Despite being a
  woman/Although she was a
  woman ▶ 32.2
- 13 V > 32.2
- 14 Although the fact that the machine → Although the machine/Despite/In spite of the fact that the machine ▶ 32.2
- 15 Nonetheless → Mind you/Still/ All the same ► 32.3A

- 16 However a dog may be a good companion for the elderly, the need to take it for walks → A dog may be a good companion for the elderly. However, the need to take it for walks ▶ 32.3B
- 17 Australian, by contrast champagne → Australian champagne, by contrast/By contrast, Australian champagne ► 32.3B
- 18 **✔** ▶ 32.3B
- 19 They will certainly be popular as they are realistically priced, still. → Still, they will certainly be popular as they are realistically priced.

  32.3B
- 20 ✔ ► 32.3B

Unit 32, pages 306 to 311

#### **TEST 33**

- 1 there was > 33.1B, 33.1A
- 2 there will be ▶ 33.1B
- 3 there was ▶ 33.1D
- 4 It's > 33.2A
- 5 It's > 33.2A
- 6 There ▶ 33.1D
- 7 its 33 2A
- 8 There's ▶ 33.1D
- 9 there being 33.1C
- 10 It > 33.2B
- 11 There are ▶ 33.1D
- 12 it is > 33.2C
- 13 there ▶ 33.1D
- 14 there is ▶ 33.1D
- 15 it ▶ 33.2D
- 16 it is > 33.2C
- 17 it ▶ 33.2B
- 18 there's > 33.1D
- 19 it's ▶ 33.2A
- 20 there to be ▶ 33.1C
- ▶ Unit 33, pages 312 to 319

- 1 It was the shellfish that made Jasmine sick. ▶ 34.1B
- 2 It was the office keys (that)
  Greg lost /It was Greg that
  lost the office keys. ▶ 34.18
- What he's doing is approaching the problem from an entirely new angle.
   34.10
- 4 What they've done is unforgivable! ► 34.1C
- 5 The reason (why) I came by bus is (that) my car has broken down. ▶ 34.1D
- 6 All I want is a second chance 34.1D
- 7 Zack was the guy who told me about the new club.34.1E
- 8 This is where we have to leave our bags and coats.
  34.1E
- 9 That's what they told me. 34.1E
- 10 Lucky in love he isn't! 34.2A
- 11 Much more interesting were the interactive displays. 34.2B
- 12 Also at the ceremony was the Lord Chancellor. ▶ 34.2B
- 13 So intense was the heat (that) the firefighters were unable to enter the building. ▶ 34.2B
- 14 Stuck to my windscreen was a parking ticket. ► 34.2C
- 15 Defeated though they were, they managed to keep smiling. ► 34.2C
- 16 Beside the river bank stands a gnarled old oak tree. ► 34.3A
- 17 Next is/it's the midnight movie ► 34.3A
- 18 Seldom has the government suffered such an overwhelming defeat.
  34.3B
- 19 No sooner had we arrived than they announced that the show was cancelled. ▶ 34.3B

- 20 Under no circumstances can refunds be given. ➤ 34.3B
- ▶ Unit 34, pages 320 to 327

- 1 She > 35.1A, 35.2A
- 2 those/the ones ▶ 35.2A
- 3 ones ▶ 35.2A
- 4 They/All of them/They were all ▶ 35.2A
- 5 did > 35.2B
- 6 neither do I/nor do I/I don't either/me neither ▶ 35.2B
- 7 do so/do it/do that ▶ 35.2C
- 8 it/that **▶ 35.2C**, **D**
- 9 not ▶ 35.2D
- 10 if not/if they're not ► 35.2D
- 11 but they are to be found in small, backstreet restaurants

  → but in small, backstreet ones ▶ 35.1A
- 12 They were → The girls were ▶ 35.1B
- 13 <del>| prefer red one:</del> → I prefer red. ► 35.2A
- 14 <del>so-we-did</del> → so did we ▶ **35.28**
- 15 <del>'So did l.'</del> → 'So I did.' ► 35.2C
- 16 V > 35.3A
- 17 because tore a muscle → because he tore a muscle ▶ 35.3A
- 18 Well, they must → Well, they must be ▶ 35.3B
- 19 **№** ▶ 35.3B
- 20 that he had wanted to put through → that he had wanted to ▶ 35.3C
- ▶ Unit 35, pages 328 to 335

- 1 b > 36.1A
- 2 a ▶ 36.1B
- 3 a 36.1D
- 4 b ▶ 36.1B
- 5 b ≥ 36.1E
- 6 a ▶ 36,1C
- 7 b ▶ 36.1E
- 8 b ≥ 36.2A
- 9 c ► 36.2A
- 10 f ▶ 36.2A
- 11 e ► 36.2A
- 12 g ▶ 36.2B
- 13 j ▶ 36.2C
- 14 k > 36.2C
- 15 n ▶ 36.2D
- ▶ Unit 36, pages 336 to 343

# Key to practice exercises

## 1

- 1 1 am standing 2 are dying 3 believe 4 aren't doing 5 are clearing 6 do 7 aren't planting 8 understand 9 say 10 are always using/always use 11 don't have 12 aren't asking
- 2 1 houses 2 are trying out 3 don't eat 4 display 5 are currently showing 6 come 7 brings 8 come, don't take 9 are always complaining (always complain is possible, but less likely because of the suggestion of annoyance) 10 is the orchestra playing 11 provides 12 do you consider
- 3 1 Judge blocks ban on tobacco adverts/blocks tobacco adverts ban 2 Police chief admits errors during President's visit 3 Radio 1 outshines rivals 4 Fox-hunting bill does not achieve support needed/necessary support 5 India snubs Pope on eve of visit 6 DiCaprio film-makers face protest over beach
- 4 1 is minding 2 is knocked down 3 survives 4 becomes 5 buys 6 hides 7 intends 8 is recovering 9 is suffering from 10 puts 11 demands 12 do not know
- 5 1 A 2 A 3 B 4 B 5 A 6 B 7 A 8 A 9 A 10 B
- 6 1 ✓ 2 Appeals the idea →
  Does the idea appeal 3 ✓
  4 ✓ 5 are hearing → hear/can
  hear 6 ✓ 7 there is lying →
  there lies 8 We're inviting →
  We invite 9 ✓ 10 currently
  develop → are currently
  developing 11 ✓ 12 ✓
  13 ✓ 14 are rising → rise
  15 shelter → shelters 16 ✓
  17 build → are building 18 ✓
  19 now show → are now
  showing 20 ✓ 21 ✓ 22 ✓

## 2

- 1 1 D 2 E 3 C 4 B 5 A 6 E 7 C 8 A 9 D 10 B
- 2 1 was standing, saw 2 was blowing, set off 3 felt/was feeling, collapsed, pressed, settled down 4 spent, were cooking 5 were living, hit 6 soared, announced 7 was getting up, decided 8 left, was having/had 9 took, managed 10 ran into, mentioned
- 3 1 A 2 B 3 A 4 A 5 B 6 B 7 B 8 A
- 4 1 turned 2 had just left
  3 had taken 4 had expelled
  5 had eaten 6 had been
  practising 7 had already
  booked 8 had been working
  9 had hoped 10 had been
  suffering
- 5 1 ✓ 2 did hear → heard
  3 ✓ 4 build → built 5 ✓
  6 use-to → used to
  7 would have → had 8 ✓
  9 was telling → told 10 ✓
  11 were becoming → became
  12 had helped → helped
  13 watched → watching 14 ✓
  15 were sending → sent
  16 ✓ 17 ✓ 18 had
  published → published
- 6 1 was 2 used to think/ thought 3 was 4 had lived/ lived/had been living 5 were/was 6 had met 7 would get up/used to get up 8 had been enjoying/had enjoyed 9 became/was becoming 10 got out 11 had been painting 12 returned 13 had drawn 14 had recently been asked 15 began 16 was beating down/beat down 17 sat down 18 had been publishing/had published 19 had been amputated 20 had always wanted

## 3

- 1 1 B 2 B (A is acceptable in US English) 3 A 4 B 5 A 6 A 7 B 8 A 9 A 10 B
- 2 1 Most of the workers have been/worked here since 1996/since the factory opened. 2 The guest performers have all arrived. 3 We have visited the new theme park three times (so far). 4 Everyone in my family has learnt the basics of First Aid. 5 The latest novel by the young Indian writer Arundhati Roy is the best she has ever written. 6 The panel has not yet decided about the technical irregularities.
- 3 1 1A, 2B 2 1B, 2A 3 1A, 2B 4 1A, 2B 5 1B, 2A
- 4 1 have unearthed 2 have been digging 3 found 4 contained 5 has been trying 6 perished 7 existed 8 walked 9 have been found 10 has discovered 11 has been 12 were discovered 13 has produced 14 has allowed
- 5 1 has been 2 has become
  3 has now started 4 was born
  5 moved 6 completed
  7 began 8 appeared 9 got
  10 has since made 11 went
  on 12 moved 13 has made
  14 have been 15 has never
  been 16 marked 17 has
  been directing 18 has
  directed 19 has lived/has
  been living 20 married
- 6 Suggested answers 1 He has become one of the most highly paid Hollywood actors, and he has written filmscripts.
  2 Willis was born in Germany in 1955, to a father who was in the US army and a German mother. 3 The family moved back to the United States, to New Jersey, in 1957. 4 He

went to Montclair State College in New Jersey, where he got a role in a play called Heaven and Earth, then he left school and started acting. 5 His first main role was David Addison in the hit TV show Moonlighting, for which he won Emmys and Golden Globe awards. 6 His first hit film was Die Hard, which was made in 1988, and he has made two sequels since then. 7 Willis has been starring/has starred mainly in violent action films since Die Hard, although he has also made different types of film, such as Twelve Monkeys in 1995 and The Sixth Sense in 1999. 8 He has made more than forty films, many of which have been commercial successes. 9 He has had a severe stutter since childhood, but acting has helped him to overcome it as it is not a problem in front of an audience. 10 He was married to Demi Moore for ten years, until their separation in 1998, and they had three children together.

4

- 1 1 will meet/are going to meet 2 's going to jump 3 if be sailing 4 'll answer 5 's going to shoot 6 'll have died/'ll be dying
- 2 1 B, C 2 A 3 B 4 A, C 5 A, B 6 A 7 A, C 8 A, B
- 3 1 ... our opponents are going to win! 2 Our plane leaves at 6.30 in the morning. 3 My great-grandmother will be one/a hundred years old next year. 4 I don't think that humans will ever be able to live on the moon. 5 My parents will have been married for twenty-five years next Saturday. 6 ... the band will be recording (then). 7 Our proposal will certainly be/is

- certainly going to be (one hundred per cent) successful. 8 (The government expects that) another six thousand will have found work by the end of the summer. 9 When/What time will you be arriving/are you arriving on Friday? 10 Our daughter is appearing in the school production of Miss Saigon next month.
- 4 1 does their plane arrive
  2 'm meeting 3 won't be/'m
  not going to be 4 finishes
  5 'll be working/'m going to
  work 6 Will they be 7 'll
  have finished 8 'll be 9 'm
  having/'ll be having 10 'm
  picking up/'ll be picking up
  11 'll have to 12 're
  meeting/'ll meet
- 5 1 J 'll be staying 2 A is going to be 3 E 'll be watching' in going to watch/'m watching 4 l 're filming/'ll be filming 5 C 'm going to complain/'ll complain 6 G 'll give 7 F 'll be looking at 8 B start 9 H 'll be waterskiing
- 6 1 C 2 A 3 B 4 B 5 A 6 C 7 A 8 B 9 A (B is possible) 10 C (B is possible)

contract is likely to be withdrawn from Dustbugs 6 Everyone in the village lived in fear of the impending volcanic eruption. 7 The designer envisages finishing/being able to finish the specifications by tomorrow afternoon. 8 (I really think) the examiner is unlikely to accept a handwritten script these days. 9 The store is about to close. 10 If medical research is to provide cures for all known diseases, it must be

4 1 ... (just) about to/going to call you. 2 ... going to help me. 3 ... to start/to have started 4 ... (just) about to/going to 5 ... going to come/coming

adequately funded

5 1 ✓ 2 due → imminent/
forthcoming/impending 3 will

\* would 4 ge → going 5 ✓
6 sign \* signing 7 allowed \*
allow/have allowed 8 likely \*
going/due 9 ✓ 10 sure →
unlikely 11 ✓ 12 reopen →
reopening 13 about → sure/
bound/certain 14 ✓
15 hoped → hope 16 ✓

5

- 1 1 is about to 2 on the verge/point of 3 is due to 4 unlikely to 5 sure to/certain to 6 are to 7 imminent 8 is due to 9 unlikely to 10 bound to/certain to
- 2 1 is about to 2 expect
  3 hopes to 4 should 5 is
  sure to 6 plans to 7 are on
  the point of 8 anticipate
  9 is likely to 10 guarantee to
- 3 1 The chimpanzees are not to be/should not be disturbed during feeding time. 2 It's bound to wake all the neighbours. 3 ... they are on the point/verge of discovering the secret of life. 4 Will you promise not to get drunk again tonight? 5 The road-sweeping

6

1 1 We hope that the soldiers don't experience 2 not to turn their TVs off 3 the subjunctive is usually no different/not usually different 4 didn't try to repair the TV himself 5 Not a great number of/Not many songbirds 6 you get no/don't get any impression of life 7 I was not willing/unwilling to help the children 8 neither commonplace nor accepted 9 The estimated fee for the project was not unreasonable 10 I don't think that our company will be offering aid 11 she's not a good guitarist 12 is not especially powerful

- 2 1 Doesn't she (already) belong to it? 2 Aren't you taking your holiday in that week? 3 Haven't you done it yet? 4 Why don't you join us?/Won't you join us? 5 Why didn't you tell me? 6 Oh, didn't you buy any, then? 7 Don't you think those hair extensions look awful on older women? 8 Isn't she/Is she not giving
- 3 1 Phil denied that he had any involvement ... 2 ... we will be obliged to disconnect your/the electricity supply 3 Few (people) from the housing . . 4 ... are not dissimilar. 5 It is hardly possible to capture 6 ... deliberately misinformed the investigators. 7 It's best to avoid (talking about) topics

8 The deforestation of the Brazilian rainforests has had 9 Pop stars rarely/Rarely do pop stars make it as actors, but ... 10 Illegible applications will be automatically rejected.

- 4 1 incredible 2 uncovered
  3 illegal 4 unusual
  5 discourteous 6 impossible
  7 inconvenience/disadvantage
  8 disadvantage/inconvenience
  9 unintelligent 10 unavailable
- 5 1 no 2 not recognising 3 Few 4 Not only 5 misleading 6 not unlike 7 not for 8 no intention 9 unwilling 10 noncommittal 11 not wishing 12 may not
- 6 Line 5 nothing → anything
  Line 7 none → any Line 9
  haven't → have Line 10 Not
  for → Not only Line 10/11 he
  wouldn't give me none other →
  he wouldn't give me any
  other/he would give me no
  other Line 13 unhonest →
  dishonest Line 16 don't → do
  Line 17 didn t tell me → told
  me not Line 20 can't → can
  Line 22 don't hope it is →
  hope not Line 25 Have →

Haven't Line 27 <del>no smoker</del> → non-smoker Line 29 <del>don't</del> <del>appreciate</del> → appreciate Line 32 <del>don't hope it lasts</del> → hope it doesn't last

## 7

- 1 | Which applicant/Which of the applicants do you think is (most) suitable? 2 How long had you been giving the pigs that (type of) feed for? 3 Who told you about my/our divorce? 4 What else did you do on the/your holiday? 5 Could/Couldn't you have persuaded David to stay in the team (any longer)? 6 What's the point in/Is there any point in complaining about faulty goods? 7 Which watch will work (better) while I'm scubadiving?/Will both watches work while ... 8 For whom did the accused steal the getaway car?/Why did the accused steal the getaway car?/Who did the accused steal the getaway car
- 2 1 won't you? 2 were there? 3 hadn't he/she? 4 need we? 5 will you?/could you?/would you? 6 have you? 7 were they? 8 will you?/can't you? 9 hasn't it? 10 can you? 11 didn't she? 12 was he?
- 3 1 I'd like to know why it took you so long to deliver this parcel. 2 Can you tell me if Harriet has finished the minutes of the meeting yet or not? 3 Could I possibly ask you why you keep so many old cars outside your house? 4 Please let me know when the new curtains for the hotel suites will be ready. 5 I'd like to know whether Jonathan will be staying for dinner tomorrow evening. 6 Does the brochure say how often the bedlinen in the villas is changed?/how often the bedlinen is changed in the villas? 7 Do you know

- which metro station we should go to for the Eiffel Tower? 8 I wonder whether or not Schumacher won yesterday's race./whether Schumacher won yesterday's race or not.
- 4 1 Oh, who told you that?
  2 Do I like what? 3 Has he (really)? 4 Which one are you going to take? 5 Oh, who did you see? 6 But why can't you?/But why not? 7 What else ... 8 What on earth/the hell/in heaven
- 5 1 aren't you? 2 Isn't it?
  3 didn't you? 4 is there?
  5 Have you?/Are they? 6 isn't it? 7 haven't they? 8 could you? 9 Did you really?
  10 shall we? 11 didn't you?
  12 won't you/will you
- 6 1 Sir Alec was 86 years old, wasn't he? 2 It's unusual for famous actors to have lasting marriages, isn't it? 3 How long exactly had they been married? 4 Can you tell us what his childhood was like? 5 Did he ever find out his true identity? 6 did he ever find out who his father was? 7 He entered his chosen career quite late, didn't he? 8 What interrupted it? 9 When did he pick up his career again? 10 Do you know when he started acting in films? 11 Which film is considered (his) best, do you think? 12 He won an Oscar for that, didn't he? 13 Did he win anything else? 14 I'm sure that younger people remember him in a very different role, don't they?/will remember him in a very different role, won't they?
- 7 1 who/what 2 whether
  3 However/How/How on
  earth/the hell/in heaven
  4 makes 5 released/published
  6 Which 7 the use
  8 hardly/scarcely 9 By which
  10 Who on earth/in heaven/
  the hell/Who/Whoever

- 1 1 Refreshments will be provided during the interval. 2 The form should be completed in black ink. 3 This product has not been tested on animals. 4 This appliance is supplied with a plug. 5 This car has been fitted with an alarm. 6 Our displays are arranged in chronological sequence, 7 Hard hats must be worn while construction work is being carried out. 8 All shoplifters will be prosecuted. 9 This area is being monitored by closed circuit cameras. 10 Toilet facilities may be found at the rear of block B. 11 All the formalities will be taken care of. 12 I was made to open my suitcases. 13 The government is said to be out of touch with public opinion./It is said the government is out of touch with public opinion. 14 He ought to have been sent to prison for life. 15 Stephen was given an upgrade to first class./An upgrade to first class was given to Stephen. 16 We were allowed/permitted/given permission to park the caravan in a farmer's field overnight. 17 He was seen to enter/ entering the building carrying a shotgun. 18 The proposed legislation is thought to be unworkable./It is thought that the proposed legislation is unworkable, 19 A pane of glass was/got broken while the boys were playing in the street. 20 The twins have been given a puppy for their birthday./A puppy has been given to the twins for their birthday.
- 2 1 B 2 D 3 A 4 C 5 A 6 D 7 A 8 B 9 D 10 A 11 C 12 B 13 D 14 B
- 3 1 D 2 J 3 A 4 C 5 H
- 4 Set a. 1 B 2 C 3 A Set b: 1 C 2 A 3 B

- 5 1 D She was entranced by the stunning vista of long white beaches backed by verdant hills. 2 ✓ 3 B The prisoner was executed at dawn. 4 D The estate was inherited by a man who had never known that he had rich relations. 5 ✓ 6 ✓ 7 C Information is collected from ... and entered into the database. 8 A The lift in our block has been vandalised. 9 ✓ 10 A/B Foxes are hardly ever seen in daylight. 11 C This form must be completed in black ink and signed. 12 D The terrorists were interviewed by several members of the international press corps. 13 🗸 14 B The man was convicted and sentenced to fifteen years in jail, 15 C Milk is heated to 110°C and then rapidly cooled to produce the final pasteurised product.
- 6 1 Daphne is/will be having her new car delivered this afternoon. 2 A series of rigorous drug tests will have to be passed. 3 We were allowed to use the village hall ... 4 The project having been completed, we were able to leave early. 5 We resented not having been consulted over the expansion plans. 6 I'll have the caretaker open the gates early for you. 7 The suspect is believed to be in hiding ... 8 She got sacked/got the sack for being late so often.
- 7 Any seven of the following
  Line 4 a strange stone was
  discovered Line 6 the stone
  was captured Line 7 and
  moved to the British Museum
  Line 9 was asked to look
  Lines 12/13 hieroglyphs, in
  which sounds and meanings
  are represented by a type of
  writing. Line 14 the puzzle of
  their written language had
  been solved Lines 14/15

possible for the inscriptions on all the great monuments to be deciphered. Lines 15/16 thus the mysteries of Egypt's fabulous history and culture were finally unlocked.

### G

- 1 1 said me → said to me 2 ✓
  3 ✓ 4 shouted he wanted →
  shouted that he wanted
  5 said that's a he, Minister
   said That's a he Minister
  6 'The new Honda Civic,' the
  salesman added, 'is one of the
  most popular small family
  saloons now.'
- 2 Most likely answers I that she hadn't got to Spanish the night before because she had been out all day and had got home late. She said she'd ring again to find out what the homework was. 2 that she was phoning to find out the results of her blood test. She said that she's /she was going on holiday in the morning, so she'd be grateful if you could ring her back later. 3 he thinks/ thought we need/needed a chat about some problems Joe seems/seemed to be having He said he'll/he'd be at the school until 6.30 if we'd like to call him back. 4 (that) they couldn't fulfil your/our order, as you/we hadn't included/ didn't include credit card details on your/our order form. He said they have/had to have these details or payment in advance to fulfil an order. He said he'd await your/our instructions.
- 3 Most likely answers
  1 he's decided to stay another week as the research is going so well there. 2 they had got tickets for the opera in New York at the weekend. 3 the smaller islands of the archipelago were mostly

- uninhabited and very peaceful. 4 her mum was/is really ill. She said that she wishes they didn't live so far away from her. 5 the house was in a very pleasant cul-de-sac, and there weren't many children or animals here. 6 the accused had first met the Wilsons when he decorated/had decorated their living room. 7 we should switch to an online banking system for the household accounts. 8 had been living together secretly for years before they revealed their relationship 9 that we mustn't/weren't to leave our car in those parking bays for more than twenty minutes at a time. 10 there is no such thing as reincarnation.
- 4 1 could he → he could
  2 possibly could she → she
  could possibly 3 to draft →
  to be drafted 4 told us let →
  told us to let 5 if or not → if
  6 where buy → where to buy
  7 all night2 → all night. 8 is
  the problem → the problem
  was 9 begged to her landword
  → begged her landlord
  10 can → could
- 5 1 Geraldine refused to take part in the new play, 2 My best friend warned me never to discuss her problems behind her back again. 3 Pete recommended (going to) the new Thai restaurant. 4 The departmental manager blamed me for losing the Siemens contract. 5 The disc jockey considers Oasis to have been the best band of the nineties. 6 The fan apologised for confusing him with George Michael. 7 The police officer accused him of making obscene phone calls to the office. 8 My friends encouraged me to do the Swimathon with them. 9 Mike's brother volunteered to organise the collection for

- Mike and Sarah's wedding.

  10 The team manager regrets contradicting Julie in front of her whole team. 11 The director suggested trying the scene a different way. 12 My mother reminded me that I had had my tonsils taken out when I was about nine.
- 6 1 C 2 A 3 A 4 C 5 C 6 B 7 C 8 A 9 C 10 A
- 7 Possible answers (and actual quotations) 1 Al Capone: 'I've been accused of every death except the casualty list of the World War,' 2 President Woodrow Wilson: 'I would never read a book if it were possible for me to talk half an hour with the person who wrote it.' 3 Pablo Picasso: 'Age only matters when one is ageing. Now that I have arrived at a great age, I might just as well be twenty." 4 Jean-Paul Sartre: 'The world could get along very well without literature; it could get along even better without man,' 5 A spokesperson from UNESCO: 'Since wars began in the minds of men, it is in the minds of men that the defence of peace must be constructed." 6 Groucho Marx: 'Please accept my resignation. I don't want to belong to any club that will accept me as a member.' 7 President John F Kennedy: 'Ask not what your country can do for you; ask what you can do for your country.' 8 Albert Einstein: 'I know why there are so many people who love chopping wood. In this activity one immediately sees the results."

## 10

1 1 hadn't eaten 2 stand 3 won't function/might not function/may not function 4 wouldn't have 5 walked 6 want 7 is 8 would/might

- experience 9 must stop 10 wouldn't/couldn't have happened 11 don't want 12 stay
- 2 1 If it doesn't rain, the crisis will not be averted/we will not be able to avert the crisis. 2 The tourist industry might have suffered if the government had not stopped releasing pollution levels in June/had continued to release poliution levels. 3 'You should wear a face mask if you have/suffer from respiratory problems.' 4 If the governments involved had taken positive action after the 1997 crisis, the current crisis might/would not have happened. 5 There might be more serious environmental protection if more of the countries affected had a Ministry of the Environment
- 3 1 F 2 H 3 G 4 E 5 A 6 I 7 B 8 D 9 J 10 C
- 4 I G wouldn't be/might not be, L wouldn't have broken/might not have broken 2 H would/might never have been formed, J would/might be 3 C would not have been destroyed, K would/might be 4 A might/would not be, I would not be 5 D would not have been, F would be
- 5 IAVBVCX 2AXBV CX 3AXBVCX 4AV BVCX 5AVBXCV 6AX BVCV
- 6 1 Even if Sophie doesn't like her parents-in-law, she keeps it to herself. 2 After her husband's death, Mrs Jenkins sold the house to her son on the condition that he lived in it himself. 3 Unless you request next-day delivery, we will send the goods by normal first-class post. 4 Use a power breaker when you mow the lawn in case you cut the electric lead. 5 The library computer can tell you whether you have any books out on loan or not/

whether or not you have any books out on loan. 6 What if the police found out? 7 We will not achieve the deadline unless you provide all the resources we have requested. 8 You will be awarded marks for trying to answer all the questions, whether the answers are correct or not. 9 You're welcome to bring Lucinda as long as she doesn't moan about her work all day. 10 But for your stupidity in the TV studio, our team would have won the quiz!

7 1B 2C 3A 4C 5C 6B 7C 8B 9A 10C 11B 12C



- 1 1 are submitted → be submitted 2 ✓ 3 receives → receive 4 May the President have a long-life! → Long live the President! 5 ✓ 6 are worn → be worn
- 2 1 You look as though you've been unwell. 2 I'd rather you didn't wipe your feet on the carpets. 3 What if they don't accept your explanation? 4 It's time we paid the bill. 5 Suppose I complained to the police? 6 They'd rather we went with them. 7 She acts as if she was/were a member of the club. 8 It's about time you called your parents.
- 3 1 A 2 M 3 M 4 T 5 T 6 A 7 A 8 T 9 M 10 T 11 M 12 M 13 T 14 A 15 A
- 4 1 I wish you'd told us that you were leaving. 2 Suppose they hadn't got a receipt? 3 It's (about) time we went. 4 If only I was/were as agile as I used to be. 5 I wish/If only I could play the piano. 6 I wish she would stop criticising me. 7 Treat my home as though it was/were your own. 8 If only/I wish I had gone to

- university. 9 She wishes she had more friends. 10 I'd rather/sooner you didn't let the dog sit in the front of the car
- 5 1 had → would 2 listens →
  listened 3 did + would
  4 ✓ 5 would be → could be/
  were 6 he is → he was/he
  were 7 ✓ 8 you'll see →
  you see/you saw 9 I didn't
  stay at home → I left home
- 6 1 was finally resolved
  2 be kept clear 3 were
  4 was/were blocked 5 hadn't
  agreed 6 kept 7 was/were
  able to 8 haven't told
  9 demand 10 not have to
  refer/we didn't have to refer
- 7 A I'd rather/sooner do something slightly less dangerous! B Long live freedom! C It's (high) time you changed your phone! D I wish/lf only you would tidy up this room! E I wish/lf only I was/were taller! F He treats that dog as if/as though it was human!

- 1 1 my → me 2 opening the → opening of the 3 she → her 4 not → no 5 wait → waiting 6 making a → making of a 7 not → no 8 we → us/our 9 to make → making 10 capable lifting → capable of lifting
- 2 1 to be handed in tomorrow.
  2 enough to join the army.
  3 to arrive late. 4 able to/allowed to/permitted to/free to give you an answer right now. 5 to catch the criminals the government closed the borders. 6 a decision to close the office this morning.
  7 surprised to learn that Amanda was going to marry.
  Ronald. 8 as not to frighten the public. 9 to the bank this morning to check the balance.

- on my current account.

  10 to find/discover they had already closed the store for stocktaking!
- 3 1 to pass 2 to call
  3 avoiding 4 to exceed 5 to
  notice 6 keeping 7 to arrive
  8 to apply 9 lying 10 calling
  11 to go 12 to avoid 13 to
  join 14 feeling 15 to carry
  16 to swim 17 to like
  18 meeting 19 passing
  20 to settle
- 4 1 to pack 2 leaving
  3 pressing 4 to enter
  5 washing 6 conduct
  7 eating 8 to get 9 to
  record 10 hovering 11 to
  achieve 12 to announce
  13 seeing 14 looking 15 to
  get
- 5 1 A 2 C 3 B 4 B 5 C 6 A 7 B 8 A 9 A 10 A 11 C 12 A 13 A 14 B 15 B 16 B 17 B 18 A 19 B 20 C
- 6 1 to say 2 to ask 3 to find
  4 bringing 5 cooking 6 living
  7 to make 8 filling in 9 to
  see 10 to take 11 to open
  12 to cash 13 buying
  14 to be 15 to know
  16 wondering 17 to join
  18 learning 19 to attend
  20 to write

## 13

- 1 1 D 2 G 3 A 4 F 5 E 6 B (Extra unnecessary phrase is C.)
- 2 I sitting in the armchair
  2 Being able to speak Finnish
  3 having split up with his wife
  4 discovered under the
  floorboards 5 Having moved
  out 6 Left for too long
  7 making me feel sick 8 Not
  being very good with figures
  9 built to last forever
  10 Washed at a cool
  temperature 11 People
  playing loud music late at night
  12 Having been unemployed
  for so long 13 Given enough

- time 14 The people living closest to the river bank 15 Not having registered
- 3 1 Study → To study 2 be
  honest → to be honest 3 ✓
  4 ✓ 5 to be being rich → to
  be rich 6 to have been gone
  → to have gone 7 to mugged
  → to be mugged 8 ✓ 9 not
  have seen → not to have seen
  10 to have designed → to have
  been designed
- 4 1E 2C 3A 4F 5B
- 5 1 Carlos joined a dating agency to find a girlfriend. 2 Having left my keys at the office, I couldn't get into my flat last night. 3 Not having a visa, Manuela can't travel to the USA. 4 My nephew emigrated to Australia to start a new life. 5 A new dam was built across the river, flooding thousands of hectares of farmland./A new dam having been built across the river. thousands of hectares of farmland were flooded 6 Having been restored by experts, the old house regained its former glory./The old house had been restored by experts, regaining its former glory. 7 Not being very fit, I was unable to finish the marathon. 8 Their children having left home. Dave and Maria felt they should move to a smaller house. 9 They got home early to find the place had been burgled. 10 The only person to stay behind was the caretaker.
- 6 (Participle and infinitive clauses underlined)

  Dating from 1971 and directed by Francis Ford Coppola, The Godfather won three Oscars.

  Lasting almost three hours, the film is Shakespearean in its scope and ambition. It is the story of a New York mafia family headed by Marlon

  Brando as 'the Godfather'.

- Although Brando has the title role it is Al Pacino, playing his troubled son and heir Michael, who steals the show in a masterly performance. Struggling to reconcile his distaste for crime and brutality with his sense of family honour and duty, Pacino's character embodies the moral dilemma at the heart of the movie. To achieve his aim of taking the audience on an emotional rollercoaster ride the director intersperses long scenes of family life with shorter sequences of extreme violence (or: The director intersperses long scenes of family life with shorter sequences of extreme violence to achieve his aim of taking the audience on an emotional rollercoaster ride.) Shot in explicit detail, this violence may shock some viewers. But anyone prepared to put up with this will enjoy a unique dramatic experience. In fact, for many people The Godfather is the greatest American film (to have been) made in the 1970s
- 7 1 Being so charming, Martin is 2 Having graduated (from college) I took 3 Not to have made more of 4 said Mary, throwing open 5 launched an advertising campaign to increase 6 a great shock to find the old house 7 to those prices, to be frank. 8 Planted in a sunny spot, the shrubs 9 to be the first (flat) to be sold/to be sold first. 10 Not having had the benefit of 11 Being such a perfectionist, Sophie 12 buildings not to have been destroyed/buildings that had not been destroyed

1 1 Go on 2 arranged 3 released 4 maintain 5 looking at 6 cut down on

- 7 abolish 8 face up to 9 arrive 10 made up
- 2 1 Would you mind seeing to it/sorting it out yourself? 2 I ran into them at the supermarket this morning. 3 I've fixed it up for ten o'clock tomorrow. 4 You're always running them down 5 I'm sure the police will look into it. 6 The builders carried it out very professionally. 7 Could you pick them up from school tonight? 8 Has Perry got over it yet? 9 She really looks like them/takes after them, doesn't she? 10 Would you point them out for me?
- 3 (Suggested answers) 1 He takes after you. 2 Put it down! 3 Please take it off 4 It doesn't go with it. 5 Pick it up! 6 Drink it up. 7 Look at them!
- 4 1 I'm looking forward to it
  2 turned the handsome prince
  into a frog/turned the frog into
  a handsome prince 3 I've
  given it up 4 they've done
  away with it 5 for whom the
  team manager paid a million
  dollars 6 it was set up by my
  grandfather
- 5 1 let out 2 look up to
  3 come across as 4 set up
  5 deal with 6 aimed at
  7 points out 8 look into
  9 face up to 10 fill in/fill out
  11 find out 12 act out
  13 cover up 14 keep away
  from 15 running down
  16 let down 17 cut down
  18 comes down to
- 6 1 I'll just turn the radio down 2 We've finished off the kitcher 3 we're doing up the dining room 4 We're turning it into a second bedroom 5 I've just put the wallpaper up 6 stay up 7 sorted out 8 putting her up 9 get on with each other 10 put up with her 11 looks down on me 12 takes her coat off 13 sits down 14 I think I might take

up gardening 15 looking forward to it

### 15

- 1 1E 2H 3C 4J 5B 6G 7I 8D 9F 10A
- 2 1 convince, of 2 supply, with 3 prevent/stop, from 4 cure, of 5 present, with 6 blame, on 7 explain, to 8 stop/ prevent, from 9 accuse, of 10 disagree/agree with, over/about 11 apologise to, for 12 depend/rely on, for 13 agree with, about/over 14 rely/depend on, for 15 quarrel with, about/over
- 3 1 The firing squad aimed their rifles at the condemned man 2 3 The brilliant architect presented her imaginative proposals to us/presented us with her imaginative proposals. 4 My uncle blames his hearing problems on old age. 5 🗸 6 Do you agree with her about the corporate sponsorship deal? 7 The crippled patient was cured of arthritis by the doctor's radical new treatment. 8 Why won't you even discuss it with her? 9 / 10 Gerald was accused by the court of lying under oath/of lying under oath by the court
- 4 1 for 2 in 3 of 4 to 5 of 6 on 7 of 8 for 9 of 10 of 11 to 12 with 13 of 14 for 15 against 16 of 17 with 18 in 19 of 20 in
- 5 I Isaac was getting more and more fed up with his lack of progress. 2 They say the terrorists are responsible for the atrocities. 3 My students are interested in our film and photography course. 4 The public rarely feels sorry for politicians caught behaving badly. 5 We were was astonished at/by the quality of her singing voice. 6 I don't think he's (very) fond of spicy food. 7 Excessive

- consumption of fried food can be harmful to the arteries 8 I'm afraid I'm short of change at the moment. 9 Our neighbour's remarkably good to her cats. 10 He is famous for his performance in Othello at the National Theatre. 11 I'm (completely/very) sure of his abilities. 12 I am grateful for your swift response to my enquiry. 13 My two brothers are (very) different from me. (US: different than) 14 The new legislation is concerned with deregulation of the airline industry. 15 I'm curious about/to know how the magician did his tricks. 16 My colleague is keen on all these new electronic gadgets. 17 The daily swim seems to be good for him/his health. 18 The research team is engaged in a brand new project. 19 We aren't hopeful of them/their reaching the final round. 20 Inspector Morse believes the blind man is guilty of the murder.
- 6 Across: 1 answers 3 with
  4 depended 11 about
  12 convince 13 delay
  15 praised 16 make
  17 from 18 worthy
  Down: 2 supplying
  3 whether 5 demand 6 that
  7 provide 8 crowded
  9 meeting 10 to 14 eager
  17 for

- 1 1 managed to 2 couldn't/
  wasn't able to 3 can't 4 is
  able to/can 5 will be able to
  6 were able to/managed to
  7 can't 8 being able to
  9 be able to 10 has
  succeeded in 11 can
  12 being able to 13 haven't
  been able to 14 were unable
  to/weren't able to/didn't
  manage to 15 can
- 2 A 3 B 1 C 4 D 2

- 3 1 C 2 D 3 A 4 B
- 4 1 You could/might have helped me (with the car)! 2 Twenty years ago I could/might have bought that apartment for \$30,000. 3 We could issue the tickets today if you gave us your credit card number. 4 The service in British restaurants can be quite surly. 5 is it possible that the disparity in the figures is due to a computer error? 6 They could/might/may (well) be on the next train. 7 He can't/couldn't be responsible for the error; he looks too experienced. 8 The shuttle bus might/may not be working at the moment ... 9 You could/might have given me their phone number! 10 Unfortunately, you can't grow bananas in the British climate. 11 With any luck our team could/might win the championship next year. 12 Jim might/could have taken it ... 13 The results may/might have arrived by tomorrow lunchtime. 14 Who can/could be making all that noise next door? 15 There may/could/might be other intelligent life-forms in the universe. 16 We can now/are now able to predict hurricanes quite accurately thanks to satellite technology. 17 He may/might not be at home; the lights are off. 18 My sister could/might be a huge star with a little bit of luck. 19 Carrie could/might have worked in New York 20 I couldn't/could never live in a house without a garden.
- 5 1 couldn't 2 could 3 could have/might have 4 couldn't have/wouldn't have 5 could have/might have/may have 6 was able to/managed to 7 was able to/managed to 8 can 9 succeeded in 10 managed to/was able to

- 6 1 B 2 B 3 B 4 A 5 A 6 A 7 A 8 B 9 B 10 A
- 7 1 could get/were able to get/managed to get 2 might be/may be/could be 3 can accommodate 4 can't invite 5 can't organise 6 might/may not make 7 could always get 8 might/may have told 9 could have spoken 10 might even have got 11 Could/Can we borrow 12 can/could have 13 hasn't been able to find 14 can't have 15 can have 16 could always ask 17 could have spoken 18 might/could have given it up 19 will be able to ask/can ask/could ask 20 was able to fix/managed to fix

- 1 1 do I have to 2 have to 3 must 4 will have to 5 obliged to 6 has to 7 supposed to 8 should 9 having to 10 needs 11 need to 12 had to
- 2 1 A 2 B 3 C 4 B 5 C 6 A 7 C 8 C 9 A 10 B 11 A 12 B
- 3 1 required 2 should 3 need not/do not have to 4 must 5 should 6 need not/do not have to 7 required/obliged 8 required/necessary 9 should
- 4 1 She can't have been on the train. 2 She must have missed it. 3 She must be the child's mother. 4 She can't have phoned her parents 5 It must have been raining. 6 The man must have slipped on the banana skin. 7 She can't be his wife. 8 Someone must have phoned for an ambulance.
- 5 1 You must try this sundried tomato bread. 2 You don't have to get an ... 3 The government should not have tried to ... 4 You had better

- not chat up ... 5 We didn't need to book the table as 6 My hair's much too long. It needs cutting soon. 7 The gas supply must be disconnected before you remove the boiler/before the boiler is removed 8 Latecomers will not be allowed to enter the theatre 9 Why are we required to state ... 10 The solicitor must have received 11 It should not be difficult 12 Patients must not have eaten or drunk anything
- 6 Line 3 supposed →
  obliged/required Line 6
  should have got in → must
  have got in Line 7 there must
  be → there must have been
  Line 8 You'd better report it →
  You should/ought to report it
  Line 12 needn't have invited →
  didn't need to invite Line 14
  need → need to

## 15

- 1 1 won't work 2 would always say 3 will easily hold 4 will be having 5 will have prepared 6 would always argue 7 will stop 8 won't have started 9 wouldn't come 10 will watch
- 2 I they will do 2 they won't do 3 She'll do light cleaning 4 she'll get the shopping 5 she won't do anything heavy 6 she would prepare supper 7 She will say (exactly) what she thinks. 8 She wouldn't eat it. 9 will pop in 10 he won't ask them for help 11 the car wouldn't start 12 Would he wait for me? 13 he will try to cope by himself 14 if you'll wait for a few minutes
- 3 Suggested answers: 1 Will you/Won't you have another piece/some more cake? 2 You will all write the/this essay for homework.

- 3 Shall I take the minutes?
  4 Will/Would you come with us, please (Sir)? 5 I would like you to respect me.
- 4 1 C 2 B 3 A 4 A 5 C 6 C 7 B 8 A 9 B 10 C
- 5 1 Pedro would prefer to live in a real house. 2 Esther would like the government to provide free medicine. 3 Sun-Li would rather not go begging in the streets. 4 Hana thinks it would be nice to have some beautiful clothes. 5 Sunil wishes that rich people from the city wouldn't dump their rubbish in the village. 6 Maria thinks it would have been good to go to school
- 6 Line 6 He'd be visiting → He'll be visiting Line 8 she won't → she wouldn't Line 9 would have hastened → would hasten Line 11 will insist → would insist Line 12 Won't it be → Wouldn't it be Line 14 I shan't say → I wouldn't say Line 16 Will I make → Shall I make Line 17 would be frozen → will be frozen Line 18 he's walked → he'll have walked

## 19

1 1 I've been waiting 2 They were trying 3 She won't have/won't've returned 4 this policy does not include (no contraction - formal English) 5 He mightn't have known/He mightn't've known (in spoken English) 6 Doesn't their boss realise 7 he hadn't been taking 8 Didn't/Doesn't she appreciate 9 the bank is unwilling (no contraction formal English) 10 Hilary's not expecting/Hilary isn't expecting/Hilary wasn't expecting 11 They really should've told 12 have not been received (no contraction formal English)

- 2 1 Do help yourself to a drink.
  C 2 He did promise to behave himself in future. A
  3 Do pay attention, young man. B 4 The dog does enjoy a good run around the park. A
  5 Do take your feet off the table. B 6 Do keep quiet. B
  7 Do come and join us. C
  8 Do make yourself at home. C
  9 Jane did manage to lose quite a lot of weight. A
  10 The children really do love the Disney channel. A
- 3 1 I haven't (got) a clue what the answer is./I don't have a clue ... 2 Don't forget (that) you have (got) an appointment with the sales manager at ten o'clock. 3 Has Your Honour any further instructions on this matter? 4 What does Clare do (for a living)? 5 She won't have (anybody using) bad language at the dinner table. 6 He's been having you on. 7 Will this piece of fabric do for the new curtains? 8 This floor could do with a good wash. 9 You've been had! 10 It hasn't been/isn't quite done yet. 11 What did you have for your staff lunch last week? 12 I think he's having an asthma attack
- 4 Line 4 she owns + she's got Line 11 Your hair contains extensions, doesn't it? -You've got extensions, haven't you? Line 13 to possess → to have Line 16 can receive → can have Line 19 There is an appointment for you -- You've got an appointment Line 22 possess + have Line 24 indulging in + having Line 25 can obtain → can have Line 26 includes + has Line 27 your family contains → If you have/you've got Line 28 employ → have Line 30 has acquired → has/has got Line 31 is teeming with → has

5 1 A 2 A 3 B 4 A 5 A 6 A 7 B 8 A 9 B 10 B 11 B 12 A 13 B 14 B 15 B

#### 20

- 1 1 Heavy rains have made parts of the road impassable. 2 We're going to have the roof done next spring. 3 It's all part of the research I'm doing for my dissertation. 4 I'm rather busy/I'm doing something this evening so I won't be able to make the cinema/make it. 5 The old pond has made a wonderful paddling pool for the kids 6 How can you talk to me like that after all I've done for you! 7 Are you going to do any more aerobics classes? 8 In many countries women still make less (money) than men for the same work. 9 They made the hostages walk for three days without food or water, 10 They've been making Rolls Royce cars in the same factory for forty years.
- 2 1 take 2 to take 3 have 4 takes/will take 5 have 6 have 7 have 8 had 9 has taken 10 take 11 to take 12 having 13 will have 14 take 15 take
- 3 I make a decision 2 made a journey 3 done (some) research 4 made a mistake 5 made a start 6 laundry to be done 7 make a charge 8 make a fuss 9 made a promise 10 do me good 11 made it up 12 do some shopping 13 make trouble 14 made a bad job
- 4 1 ✓ 2 gone → been 3 laying
  + lying 4 ✓ 5 been → gone
  6 arose → arisen 7 ✓ 8 ✓
  9 ✓ 10 talked + spoke
  11 robbed → stolen 12 ✓
  13 stolen → robbed
  14 raising → rising 15 ✓
  16 laid → lain 17 ✓

- 5 1 take 2 lent 3 bring 4 fetching 5 lending 6 brought 7 borrow 8 took 9 fetch 10 borrow
- 6 1 A 2 B 3 B 4 A 5 A 6 B

- 1 I dependent 2 disabled
  3 meteoric 4 faceless
  5 hysterical 6 destructive
  7 disagreeable 8 British
  9 pointless 10 fertile
  11 argumentative
  12 unfashionable 13 plentiful
  14 unbelievable 15 hopeless
  16 horizontal 17 investigative
  18 effective 19 laughable
  20 Dutch
- 2 1 A V B X 2 A V B X 3 A X B V 4 A V B V 5 A V B X 6 A V B X 7 A X B V 8 A X B V 9 A V B X 10 A X B V 11 A V B V 12 A V B X 13 A X B V 14 A V B X 15 A X B V
- 3 1 Many of the portraits painted by El Greco are 2 There was something inexplicable 3 They gave an involved explanation 4 the only appointment available /the only available appointment 5 The present state of affairs 6 the person responsible for recruitment is on holiday 7 in the apartment opposite. 8 Anyone sensitive would be 9 the amounts concerned are very small. 10 Flower buds damaged by frost often
- 4 1 alarming 2 comfort and service provided 3 staggering 4 those interviewed 5 relaxed/relaxing 6 satisfied 7 service provided 8 continuing 9 passengers questioned 10 enhanced 11 key factor discussed 12 bored 13 Delayed 14 Affected passengers/ Passengers affected 15 amused

- 5 1 Northumberland is a rarelyvisited part of England 2 They were soon engulfed by the fast-moving water. 3 In recent times technology-driven changes have had a profound impact on working practices. 4 The oak is a slow-growing tree. 5 Australian parrots have brilliantly-coloured plumage. 6 The Midlands is Britain's main carmanufacturing region. 7 The Hubble space telescope has produced digitally-enhanced pictures that have amazed the public. 8 There is a segment of the film-going public that will always want to see corny adventure movies. 9 The new wing will be opened by a wellknown TV personality. 10 The home-made desserts are the main feature of our restaurant.
- 6 1 It's a priceless ancient Greek ceramic wine jar. 2 Our school has a fantastic new state-of-the-art computer centre. 3 She found ten metres of superb dark blue textured velvet in the sales. 4 It features luxurious Italian leather upholstery. 5 We've chosen a lovely inexpensive orange and green/green and brange wallpaper for the study.
- 7 1 but → and 2 a little Persian beautiful-cat → a beautiful little Persian cat 3 horrified → horrifying/horrific 4 the taken route → the route taken 5 wealthies → wealthy 6 to fascinated by come readers + to readers fascinated by crime 7 afraid → frightened 8 opinions opposite - opposite opinions 9 blue yellow → blue and yellow 10 breaking → broken 11 aluminium and glass-fibre-unique hull unique aluminium and glassfibre hull 12 though → and 13 the proposed by parliament solution + the solution proposed by parliament

14 responsible person →
person responsible
15 parents who are lone →
lone parents 16 two alike
alternatives → two similar
alternatives/two alternatives
which were alike 17 Tall
anyone → Anyone tall
18 Living in Scotland viewers
→ Viewers living in Scotland
19 challenged → challenging
20 moving fast → fast-moving

#### 10

- 1 I the best 2 the wettest
  3 more real than 4 the
  furthest/farthest 5 fatter/
  bigger than 6 tidier than
  7 looser 8 the worst 9 drier
  10 the biggest 11 (the) most
  keen/keenest 12 the prettier/
  prettiest 13 more wrong
  14 The most scared 15 more
  bored
- 2 1 D 2 G 3 A 4 E 5 B 6 F 7 C
- 3 IB 2A 3A 4B 5B 6B 7A 8A 9B 10B
- 4 | The lecture was so boring that I fell asleep. 2 It was such a well-publicised concert that the tickets sold out within days. 3 The wording of the document is so complicated as to be incomprehensible. 4 It was too dark to find my contact lens. 5 It wasn't as interesting an exhibition as my friends had claimed. 6 She's more disappointed than angry. 7 Approaching the church, we noticed the sound of the bells becoming louder and louder and louder. 8 The older dogs get, the less aggressive they become. 9 My son isn't old enough to get a place at kindergarten. 10 Their remarks were not so much insulting as inaccurate.
- 5 1 G She smokes like a chimney. 2 D He's like a bull in a china shop. 3 F I slept like a log last night.

- 4 L. It's as cold as ice in here 5 C She's like a lamb to the slaughter. 6 J She's as fit as a fiddle. 7 N You're as white as a sheet. 8 A He's like a cat on a hot tin roof. 9 E She's like a bear with a sore head this morning. 10 H Our car goes like a rocket. 11 B My new flatmate swears like a trooper. 12 M Once the lights went out it was as quiet as the grave. 13 K She doesn't need to diet, she's as light as a feather. 14 O The old man is as stubborn as a mule. 15 I These new mobile phones are selling like hot cakes.
- 6 1 best/top 2 most 3 no
  4 than 5 more 6 enough
  7 cheapest 8 as 9 as
  10 just/almost/about 11 to
  12 too 13 best 14 like
  15 so 16 by 17 such
  18 the 19 more 20 as

- 1 Ungradable: amazing correct dead enormous extinct fascinating freezing huge minute paralysed Gradable: attractive cold exciting expensive good interesting large shy sick ugly
- 2 1 fairly inexpensive 2 a bit stiff 3 virtually indecipherable 4 somewhat bloodthirsty 5 absolutely freezing 6 very interesting 7 fabulously rich 8 highly unlikely
- 3 1 D 2 A, C 3 C 4 B 5 B 6 C
- 4 1 C 2 A 3 A 4 B 5 C 6 B 7 B 8 A 9 C 10 B
- 5 1 ✓ 2 very empty →
  completely empty
  3 completely full → very full
  4 ✓ 5 very recommended ◆
  highly recommended 6 ✓
  7 ✓ 8 very built → heavily
  built 9 absolutely moving →
  deeply moving 10 really
  delighted → highly delighted

- 6 1 gradable: boring, tedious, uninteresting ungradable. stultifying 2 gradable: diminutive, little, tiny ungradable: minute 3 gradable: diverting, engaging, interesting ungradable: fascinating 4 gradable: scarce, uncommon, unusual ungradable, unique 5 gradable: annoyed, irate, irritated ungradable: furious 7 gradable: happy ungradable: delighted, ecstatic, exhilarated 8 gradable: hungry ungradable: famished, ravenous, starving
- 7 Line 4 <del>very minute</del> → very small/tiny Line 6 absolutely hungry → absolutely famished/starving Lines 7/8 fairly furious - fairly annoyed/angry Line 9 absolutely pleased -absolutely delighted. Lines 10/11 totally rare → totally unique Line 11 very ecstatic very pleased/happy Line 12 utterly interesting → utterly fascinating Line 13 absolutely anneved → absolutely furious Line 14 a bit famished → a bit hungry Line 16 stultifying → boring/uninteresting/tedious Line 18 very fascinating \* very amusing/diverting Line 20 very fabulous → very nice/lovely Lines 22/23 very exhilarated + very happy/pleased

- 1 1 in a friendly way 2 direct 3 rightly 4 lately 5 easily 6 straight 7 Healthwise 8 freely 9 high 10 deep 11 Afterwards 12 close 13 hardly 14 real 15 fast
- 2 1 started to go faster (and faster)2 as quite a3 happens more slowly4 there soon enough

- 5 roughly three-quarters of 6 almost entirely unheard of/unknown 7 so movingly that 8 (the) most deeply involved 9 were politically biased 10 as honestly as
- 3 1 A V B X C V 2 A X B V C X 3 A V B V C X 4 A V B X C V 6 A V B V C X 7 A X B X C V 8 A V B X C V 9 A X B X C X 10 A V B V C X 11 A V B X C X 12 A X B V C V 13 A V B V C X 14 A V B X C V 15 A V B V C V
- 4 (Note: These answers follow the guidelines for sequence in the Reference section) 1 Taking advantage of a gap between the players, Owen kicked the ball skilfully into the net just before half time 2 Foxes can often be seen scavenging on the streets of London at night. 3 David behaves quite well when he is at home but he often causes trouble at school. 4 The post sometimes doesn't arrive on time in this part of the city 5 Jennifer didn't immediately recognise the man waving frantically from the balcony at the end of the show. 6 We are usually unable to offer refunds on the spot, but we will examine your claim thoroughly before the end of the week. 7 These children have probably never been given the opportunities we all take for granted. 8 Access to the Internet is no longer available free of charge at our libraries on weekday mornings. 9 Such losses would normally have been avoided by the use of back-up devices. 10 Many of the old masters had assistants who would prepare the oil pigments by hand in their studios each morning
- 5 1 'I'm sorry. I really don't know what you are talking

- about!' 2 'But that place always is full on Saturday evenings!' 3 'Yes, I often have wondered about that.' 4 'I'm not surprised. He never does listen to my ideas.' 5 'That's not unusual, the customs officers usually are quite thorough.' 6 'I'm sorry but we honestly don't know where he is.' 7 'Come off it. You really can't expect me to just cave in like that.' 8 'You absolutely don't have a clue what I'm talking about, do you?' 9 'I'm afraid these programs sometimes do take a long time to download." 10 'Well, she rarely is in the office before noon these days."
- 6 1 Really? 2 Apparently
  3 Frankly 4 Obviously
  5 Seriously? 6 Admittedly
  7 By the way 8 Naturally
  9 Exactly 10 Fortunately
  11 Clearly 12 understandably
- 7 1 Financially ruined, the owner of the business rather reluctantly agreed to sell the premises within the month. 2 There is probably nothing better than collapsing lazily onto a sofa at the end of the day/At the end of the day there is ... 3 Carefully controlled, this amazingly effective new drug can dramatically reduce blood pressure within hours/can reduce blood pressure dramatically within hours/this dramatically effective new drug can amazingly reduce 4 Under the circumstances we deeply regret having to announce the suspension of all staff currently working in our subsidiary in San Diego. 5 We rarely seem to get the chance to talk seriously about these things these days 6 Unfortunately, many of my colleagues thoroughly disapprove of my scheme to update the accounting

procedures in the sales department over the next quarter.

### 25

- 1 Across: 1 quays 5 chair 6 medium 7 wharf 10 formulae 12 hero 15 monarchs 16 mosquitoes Down: 2 sheriffs 3 manager 4 quizzes 8 addresses 9 flamingos 11 geese 13 crises 14 oasis
- 2 1 information 2 chocolate 3 advice is 4 wine 5 an equivalent quality 6 a better 7 less sugar 8 content 9 less than 10 ingredients 11 strong, fresh coffee 12 a cake 13 flour 14 scales 15 a slice
- 3 1 an outbreak 2 the town's population/the townspeople/ the town's residents
  3 A spokesperson's statement
  4 a full investigation 5 the conclusion 6 the outcome
  7 The suggestion/A suggestion
  8 The call
- 4 Line 3 a leaded glass → leaded glass Line 4 communitys -+ communities Line 4 are unfolding → is unfolding Line 5 fisher wifes + fisher wives Line 8 believes → beliefs Line 9 politic → politics Line 9 1950's → 1950s Line 9 has passed • have passed Line 11 was eager -- were eager Line 13 prejudicies - prejudices Line 15 mysterys → mysteries Line 16 which affects → which affect Line 16 a great optimism + great optimism Line 18 literatures -+ literature Line 18 a spellbinding art → a spellbinding work of art
- 5 1 2 are/is 3 is/was 4 a 5 are 6 were 7 is 8 a 9 is 10 is 11 has 12 has/have 13 have 14 a 15 is

6 1 item/piece of news on the radio this morning. 2 were used to restrain the aggressive young man. 3 of roads in the Brighton area were affected by the recent floods. 4 the bank a call tomorrow and check our balance. 5 eat fewer sweet and fatty things. 6 less than ten minutes to get here from the station. 7 uptake of our new offer. 8 items/pieces of unwanted furniture since we moved to the smaller house 9 are expected to attend the meeting tomorrow afternoon. 10 they should now address are/is the questions of VAT and fuel tax. 11 is played by a lot of the older men in cafes. 12 launch of the new women's magazine in April was a great success. 13 elect the government. 14 agreement to help fund the new playground.

### 26

1 1 I'm sure this is somebody's bag. 2 Let's go to the girls' shop. 3 That is Mr Hollis's/ Mr Hollis' hotel. 4 I love Gilbert and Sullivan's operettas. 5 lt's nobody's fault. 6 They had respect for each other's opinions. 7 My next-door neighbour's dog never stops barking. 8 I'm fed up with the hopeless inefficiency of my boss's secretary/my boss's secretary's hopeless inefficiency. 9 My mother's and (my) father's personalities are very alike. 10 These aren't my keys, they are my flatmate's (keys). 11 The new Act of Parliament will protect everyone's right to privacy. 12 The men's toilet is over there on the right. 13 I've just inherited my grandmother's brother's house/the house belonging to my grandmother's brother. 14 Residents of sink estates'

- opinions/Sink estates' residents' opinions are rarely taken into consideration.

  15 Fred Astaire and Ginger Rogers' dance routines are legendary.
- 2 1 him → his 2 wive's → wife's 3 ones' home is ones' castle → one's home is one's castle 4 √/managing director's 5 mine → my 6 childrens' → children's 7 √ 8 brother's in law's → brother-in-law's 9 us → ours 10 buses' → bus's
- 3 1 B 2 A 3 A, B 4 A 5 A, B 6 B 7 A 8 A, B 9 A 10 A 11 B 12 B 13 A 14 B 15 A, B 16 A 17 B 18 B 19 A 20 A
- 4 1 brand names 2 mail-order 3 credit card 4 high street 5 shop assistant 6 checklist 7 software 8 hard disk 9 word processing 10 keyboard 11 world-wide web 12 output 13 shortlist 14 instruction manuals 15 after-sales
- 5 1 A 2 B 3 B 4 B 5 A 6 A 7 A 8 A 9 B 10 A
- 6 1 Could you pop down to the newsagent and pick up Charles'/Charles's evening paper. 2 That silver-topped walking stick belongs to a friend of mine. 3 The hotel's private beach is only a fiveminute walk from here. 4 The government's privatisation of the railways is going ahead next year. 5 The landlord wouldn't allow his tenant's girlfriend to move in. 6 My father's pension fund has been badly affected by the downturn in the value of blue-chip stocks. 7 Clare bought a beautiful new outfit for her brother-in law's sister's wedding/the wedding of her brother-in-law's sister. 8 The windsurfer managed to ignore the screams of the crowd lining the beach. 9 Whenever we

are over at Dad's (house) we seem to spend the entire time watching horse racing on the television. 10 The bank robber refused to accept the legal system's jurisdiction/the jurisdiction of the legal system over him. 11 My wife's firm specialises in setting up databases for insurance companies. 12 The traffic jam was caused by the volume of cars setting out for the south coast at the start of the bank holiday.

## 27

- 1 1 he 2 it 3 him 4 it 5 its 6 lt/His 7 it 8 lt 9 They 10 one 11 one 12 lt 13 he/they 14 its 15 he 16 him/he/he did 17 one 18 they/he
- 2 1 Justin and 1 2 teachers can't desert their class/a teacher can't desert their class 3 You can't carry on working if you aren't feeling well 4 it's us teachers 5 we/you can't take too much time off 6 one 7 Jenny and I 8 you and Jenny 9 with Justin and me 10 better than us/we do 11 we/you do get 12 lf anvone new comes in they're always made welcome 13 we want to be with him in the evening 14 poor old him 15 You can't be too careful with animals
- 3 1 a v b v A 2 a v b x 3 a v b v B 4 a v b x 5 a x b v 6 a v b v B 7 a v b x 8 a v b v A 9 a v b v C 10 a v b v B
- 4 1 somewhere 2 anyone 3 Is
  4 anybody 5 something
  constructive 6 anywhere
  7 someone/somebody
  8 somehow 9 anything
  10 No one 11 Anyhow/
  Anyway 12 anywhere
- 5 1 it 2 its 3 each other/one another/everyone/body else

- 4 one 5 No one/Nobody 6 me/myself 7 one/you 8 I 9 it 10 my 11 myself 12 one 13 lt 14 its 15 me 16 me 17 you/one 18 it
- 6 1 them → him 2 ✓ 3 which
  it fuels → which fuels 4 their

   them 5 ✓ 6 them → their
  7 everyhow → somehow
  8 which it can → which can
  9 Anyone No one 10 them
   they 11 one → someone/
  they 12 ✓ 13 theirselves →
  themselves 14 Anybody •
  Everybody 15 herself →
  themselves 16 ✓
  17 chaigren they suffered •
  children suffered 18 it →
  them 19 themselves → them
  20 ✓

#### 28

- 1 1 a 2 the 3 a 4 5 6 The 7 a 8 9 a 10 The 11 the 12 the 13 the 14 the 15 The 16 17 18 the/a 19 my 20 -
- 2 1 2 3 a 4 the 5 -6 the 7 the 8 the 9 a 10 - 11 - 12 the 13 the 14 - 15 -/the 16 - 17 a 18 - 19 the 20 -
- 3 1 This 2 that 3 these 4 That 5 This 6 Those 7 That 8 this 9 those 10 that
- 4 1 a+F 2 b+i 3 b+A 4 a+C 5 b+E 6 b+H 7 a+D 8 b+B
- 5 1 A, C 2 B 3 B, C 4 A, C 5 A 6 B 7 A, B 8 A, B 9 A, B 10 A, C
- 6 1 your 2 this 3 the 4 5 the 6 a 7 the 8 all 9 The 10 11 each 12 the 13 half 14 these 15 16 This 17 18 the 19 most 20 these
- 7 1 All-them → All of them
  2 Japanese → the Japanese
  3 the Burma → Burma 4 ✓
  5 of founders → of the
  founders 6 Photographic
  work → The photographic work
  7 finest pictures → the finest

pictures 8 

9 an → the
10 this → these 11 this →
that 12 step by the step →
step by step 13 

14 that
way → a way 15 most the
people → most of the people
16 the half → half 17 agency
• the agency 18 

19 some goal → the goal
20 

21 in Balkans → in the
Balkans 22 

23 best →
the best

- 1 I get away from the area
  2 for schools and hospitals/
  hospitals and schools
  throughout the crisis 3 but as
  for the plot 4 the passers-by
  are soaked through 5 on
  behalf of the winner 6 from
  the well by means of a rope
  7 right on top of the cupboard
  8 to just under three hours
  9 mine was the one just after
  10 almost opposite the man
  with the beard
- 2 1 on 2 3 in 4 on
   5 since 6 through 7 by
   8 with 9 of 10 as
   11 among 12 for the sake of
   13 Except 14 from 15 in
- 3 1 over 2 through/in 3 out of 4 in 5 across 6 along 7 by/next to 8 into/to 9 in 10 on/around 11 on top of/above 12 under(neath)/ beneath/below 13 up to 14 on 15 up/down/in 16 at 17 between/opposite 18 opposite 19 on 20 ln/At 21 in 22 under 23 to 24 through/along 25 at
- 4 1 main aim which → main aim of which 2 people out their → people out of their 3 about is → about what is 4 comedians work with/on are 5 ✓ 6 the that → the fact that 7 except try → except to try 8 ✓ 9 ✓ 10 about being → about them being 11 ✓ 12 it is aimed → it is aimed at 13 it is

- mtended → it is intended for 14
- S I from/out of 2 of 3 in 4 over 5 as 6 across/all over 7 from 8 of/in 9 than 10 for 11 which 12 between 13 offering 14 to/for 15 including 16 through/in 17 without 18 of 19 Unlike 20 for/during 21 For 22 behind 23 what 24 From/In 25 under
- 6 1 from 2 across 3 between 4 in 5 According to 6 on 7 By 8 to 9 In 10 like 11 at 12 into 13 behind 14 under 15 instead of 16 with 17 in 18 about 19 during 20 of 21 on 22 at 23 against 24 off 25 between 26 on 27 with 28 in 29 on 30 along 31 into 32 on

- 1 1 B 2 A, B 3 A, B 4 B 5 A
- 2 1 refused to leave his estranged son anything. 2 Susan originally believed Geoff 3 Please leave your shoes by the door 4 that you keep your valuables safe 5 doesn't tell us what we should wear at the reception. 6 George W Bush has been elected the new President 7 that studying philosophy really improves our thinking power. 8 She carefully placed onto her finger the 24-carat gold, diamond-encrusted engagement ring that her francé had just bought her. 9 The course director insists on first-year students attending at least 80 per cent 10 by sending us the form and proof of purchase
- 3 1 B 2 M 3 K 4 A 5 E 6 N 7 H 8 O 9 D 10 J 11 F 12 I
- 4 1 The couple named their first daughter Samantha. 2 His

- Excellency expects visitors to stand when he arrives 3 I wouldn't like to stay a legal assistant for long. 4 Amanda brought all her expertise to the team. 5 Amanda brought the team all her expertise. 6 A very inexperienced salesman has become the Sales Manager. 7 He placed into the box the carefully wrapped, sparkling, diamond encrusted 18-carat gold ring 8 Please put all rubbish in the bins provided. 9 Do your parents let you go to all-night parties? 10 The paratrooper carefully removed the pin from the grenade./removed the pin from the grenade carefully 11 Susan liked the bracelet so her daughter bought it for her. 12 They made the prisoners stand all day long to reduce their resistance. 13 The scenes of destruction in the film made us all sick. 14 The trainer recommended trying an easy programme first./ recommended first trying an easy programme.
- 5 1 that f (S) 2 so a (S) 3 - if - i (S) 4 - after - e (S) 5 - or - b (C) 6 - and - d (C) 7 - even though - c (S) 8 - than - g (S)
- 6 1 broke thousands → broke into thousands 2 V 3 remain to be tenants → remain tenants 4 appears some mistake → appears to be some mistake 5 🗸 6 recommended book recommended booking/ recommended that you book 7 showed to their gathered fans their trophy → showed their trophy to their gathered fans 8 explained us the problem → explained the problem to us 9 tell-me to go? → tell me where to go? 10 placed back in its correct position the gold watch placed the gold watch back in

- its correct position 11 

  12 drives absolutely wild my cats! → drives my cats absolutely wild!
- 7 1 it (to be) 2 for them/for someone 3 which didn't 4 to be 5 angry/annoyed/ furious 6 (that) they 7 letting 8 After/When 9 it/the clamp 10 how

- 1 1 H The body of a man who jumped off the Severn Bridge has been found in the River Severn. 2 J The fashion icon Mary Quant, who is famous for inventing the mini-skirt, has left her business. 3 D The global warming conference, which was held in The Hague, has ended without agreement. 4 C Formula 1 driver Eddie Irvine. whose contract with Ferrari finishes at the end of the season, has narrowly missed gaining the Formula 1 World Champion title (today), 5 B The hand count of votes which/that were spoiled in the recent US presidential election has continued. 6 F London Zoo, which was in danger of closing through lack of funds, has remained open. 7 A The politician who was disgraced in a financial scandal has handed in his resignation. 8 G The size 16 model who refused to diet to a size 12 has won the new Estée Lauder contract. 9 E Madonna's house in the UK, which she shares with her British partner, Guy Ritchie. has been burgled.
- 2 1 B 2 A 3 B 4 A
- 3 1 which 2 where 3 who/ whom/that 4 whose 5 which 6 whom 7 who 8 when 9 which 10 which/that
- 4 1 with staff vacancies 2 Sir Patrick McDonald, from Inverness 3 all from the holistic school of education.

- 4 of different ages 5 currently living 6 to be informed of the government's decision 7 (held) last week 8 dedicated to 9 participating over the years
- 5 1 where F 2 (that/which) I 3 where H 4 whom A 5 who G 6 whose D 7 why E 8 which B
- 6 1 tourism which → tourism. which 2 ✓ 3 which it is → which is wholly seasonal 4 people-work → people who work 5 wherever work → work wherever 6 government is already receiving + government which/that is already receiving/government already receiving 7 🗸 8 🗸 9 to see them. → to see. 10 reef which → reef, which 11 
  ✓ 12 tourist what wants → tourist who/that wants 13 / 14 where they are drinking in. → where they are drinking./that/which they are drinking in. 15 that → which 16 ✓ 17 what → which 18 places tourism → places where/in which tourism 19 that whose -+ whose 20 V 21 V 22 which → what

1 1 e Many people believe that capital punishment is a deterrent to serious crime. On the contrary, it actually makes little difference to the crime rate. 2 b We usually consider it healthy to eat lots of fruit but too much can produce an excess of acid in the stomach 3 g I enjoy having people to stay, though I always appreciate the peace when they have gone./I always appreciate the peace when they have gone, though, 4 a The main medium of communication on the Internet is English, although many web

- sites now operate in other languages. 5 h lain Banks's early novels were considered quite strange, while his later books are more mainstream and accessible. 6 f l tend to drink more white wine, whereas my husband prefers red. 7 d Global warming is often considered the main factor in current climate fluctuations. Yet climate change has long been a feature of the Earth's development.
- 2 1 Very little of the remaining stock sold, even though the prices in the sale were very low. 2 Although the ailing magazine tried introducing several new features. circulation continued to drop 3 Difficult though this may seem now, you'll soon wonder why it caused so many problems. 4 In spite of the fact that she insisted (that) all was well. I knew that something was wrong. 5 The Scots won the battle, despite their smaller force./despite having a far smaller force. 6 Despite being hated by the critics. Archer's latest book was well received by the public.
- 3 1 than though I expected → than I expected, though 2 v 3 mind you → however/on the other hand 4 It didn't last long, still. → Still, it didn't last long. 5 ✓ 6 We'd rather all the same not. → We'd rather not, all the same /All the same, we'd rather not. 7 Nevertheless → Still/All the same/Mind you 8 You may be penaised for failing to follow on the other hand the rules. . On the other hand, you may .../You may, on the other hand .../... be penalised, on the other hand, for .../... for failing to follow the rules, on the other hand.
- 4 I same 2 same 3 different

- 4 different 5 same 6 same 7 different 8 different 9 same 10 same 11 different 12 same
- 5 1 but 2 However
  3 Nevertheless 4 even though
  5 Despite 6 however
  7 While 8 though 9 whereas
  10 despite 11 On the
  contrary 12 Yet

## 33

1 There are more than a million species of insect in the world. 2 There was a grandfather clock ticking in the background. 3 At Hiroshima in 1945 there was an event which shook the whole world. 4 There are thought to be two further suspects under arrest. 5 There is bound to be a bad reaction to the news (from them). 6 There now follows/There will now be a statement by the Prime Minister. 7 There were two forms of amino acid present in the compound /Present in the compound there were two forms of amino acid. 8 Is there an underground railway in Osaka? 9 There is likely to be a massive sell off of hightech shares in the next few days. 10 From the middle of the forest there emerged a strange hooded figure./There emerged a strange hooded figure from the middle of the forest. 11 In this case, there should be no trouble securing a conviction. 12 Is there nobody here able to help us?/Is there nobody here who can help us? 13 There are ten new holiday destinations illustrated in our brochure. 14 Is there a buffet car on the train? 15 In this bad weather there is certain to be a poor turnout for the election /There is certain to be a poor turnout for the election in this bad

- weather. 16 There was a beautiful antique tapestry hanging over the bed. 17 There are thought to be at least two leading politicians involved in the scandal. 18 We don't envisage there being any adverse reaction from viewers
- 2 (Suggested rewriting in italics)
  The Beach is the story of a
  young man who yearns for,
  seeks out and eventually finds
  just such a place. But it comes
  as a shock to discover that, far
  from being the source of
  contentment and inner fulfilment
  that he expects, the beach turns
  out to be a place of savage
  violence, terror and death.

Alex Garland takes the reader on an exotic journey from the steaming tourist-packed dives of the Khao San Road in Bangkok to the drug-infested islands of the remote seas around Thailand It is difficult not to be impressed by the author's skill in describing the unfamiliar oriental locations and his ability to empathise with the obsessions of today's young backpacking 'new-age' traveliers.

Taking in illegal drug plantations, memories of the Vietnam war, sexual jealousy, shark-infested waters, the psychological dynamics of communal living and the clash of cultures, Garland spins a tale which both seduces and shocks the reader. It is the author's unique blend of these disparate elements which gives the novel its haunting sense of unease and horror.

It is a thriller with all the traditional ingredients, an exotic location, a central mystery, good versus evil, and dangers around every corner. There is a strong sense of good and evil in the book, but Garland leaves it to the reader!

but it is left to the reader to decide who is right and who is wrong. There are few moral certainties in this exotic corner of the world.

Events unfold at great speed, and be warned, it is impossible to put this book down once you have started it With an international cast of well-observed characters Garland creates a nail-biting narrative that keeps the reader hooked until the final bloody climax.

- 3 1 The organisers didn't anticipate there being such an overwhelming demand for tickets. 2 It seems (as if/as though) she's going to marry him./It seems she may marry him. 3 There are thought to be many other politicians involved in the scandal /It is thought that there are many other politicians involved in the scandal. 4 I would appreciate it if you would/could send me/if you sent me your up-to-date retail price list. 5 There were fifty applicants for the scholarship. 6 It is said he hates publicity. 7 lt isn't surprising that their children are so badly behaved. 8 in this paper it will be demonstrated that DNA strands can be replicated. 9 There are twelve detached houses with double garages for sale on this estate. 10 lt is a great honour to be nominated for this award
- 4 1 The distance isn't far → It isn't far 2 People believe this is → It is believed to be 3 ✓ 4 more than thirty examples hang → there are more than thirty examples 5 That Rodin produced such a superb piece of work all by himself is hard to believe + It is hard to believe that Rodin produced such a superb piece of work all

- by himself. 6 the impression is that the painting → it looks/ seems as if/as though the painting 7 ✓ 8 I'm really surprised → It's (really) surprising 9 to see everything in one trip is impossible → it's impossible to see everything in one trip. 10 in that place → there
- 5 1 She found it strange that he'd never heard of such a famous historical character. 2 Was there really such a long wait between trains? 3 We always have lots of visitors but there tend to be more in the summer months. 4 / 5 The director leaves it to the viewer to decide who is guilty and who is innocent. 6 They assured us that there would be no trouble getting a refund if the goods were faulty. 7 8 You know it really gets on my nerves when she talks like that. 9 / 10 What's incredible is that there might have been so many more fatalities. 11 I find it impossible to conceive that someone with his track record would be so careless. 12 In 1666 there was a fire which destroyed a large part of London. 13 We would appreciate it if you submitted your estimate to our head office. 14 V 15 Grandpa loves it when the children ask for his advice.

#### 34

1 No, it was because of the traffic jam that he was late.
2 Well, what he did was (to) call her from his mobile phone
3 No, it was on Monday that he was late 4 No, what she did was (to) reschedule the meeting for the afternoon.
5 No, not the town centre; it was on the ring road that Nick got stuck. 6 No, it was

- because Nick was late that she had to reschedule the meeting 7 No, it was to warn her that he would be late that he rang her. 8 What she was was furious!
- 2 1 This is where we have to wait. 2 All we need is five. minutes (to fix it). 3 The person who started the strike was Jennifer./Jennifer was the person who started the strike 4 It isn't his dedication (that) I'm questioning. 5 What these men are is totally ruthless. 6 The place where I used to live is around the corner. 7 The one who complained was your next door neighbour./Your next door neighbour was the one who complained. 8 The only thing we didn't inherit was the house./The house was the only thing we didn't inherit. 9 That's exactly what the sales assistant told me. 10 What I want you to do is (to) copy this down in your notebooks. 11 The first thing we did was (to) check the insurance details. 12 It was at six o'clock (that) the climbers reached the peak./It was six o'clock when ... 13 What we're doing is taking the au-pair with us. 14 The last thing we did (before leaving) was (to) switch off the power supply. 15 The reason (why) they moved to Andalucia was the climate./The climate was the reason (why) they moved to Andalucia. 16 What the company has done is imposed a ban on private e-mails. 17 All we want is our money back. 18 It was our boss who told us the news. 19 What I want you to appreciate is that it's not my fault. 20 lt was the introduction of stamp duties that led to the loss of the American colonies
- 3 1 Exhausted though he was, he

- managed to reach the finishing line. 2 To make the pilgrimage to Mecca is my life's ambition. 3 His most sublime work is the ninth symphony. 4 That proposal I really can't accept. 5 Placed on the altar was an enormous gold Buddha. 6 Much more challenging for the dedicated skier is the Cresta Run. 7 Also included in the report were several sharp criticisms of ministerial conduct 8 Lying in the shop doorway was an old man. 9 To get to the bottom of the mystery proved impossible. 10 So severe was the damage that the pilot couldn't regain control.
- 4 1 

  ✓ 2 we knew → did we know 3 and so most of the marketing team are - so are most of the marketing team 4 was there → there was 5 ✓ б <del>so it be</del> → so be it 7 Tomorrow the first day is → Tomorrow is the first day 8 9 ✓ 10 latecomers will → will latecomers 11 such the condition is - such is the condition 12 the time is → is the time 13 V 14 V 15 a director has made → has a director made 16 as those are + as are those 17 V 18 he managed to escape \* did he manage to escape 19 **✓** 20 <del>didn't he</del> → he didn't
- 5 1 That I find really hard to believe. 2 No, what I'm doing is cutting off the dead flower heads. 3 All we left behind was the personal stereo./The only thing ... 4 No, it was my brother (who owned one). 5 And shake them up it certainly did. 6 (But) best of all was the explosion on the jumbo jet. 7 No, what we should do is wait for the ambulance to arrive. 8 Well, (standing) right outside the

- bedroom window was a huge electricity pylon. 9 Yes, to own a cottage has always been my greatest ambition. 10 No, it's (on) Friday that we're going
- 6 1 Bungee jumping I've done before. 2 not only was rap jumping more exciting than bungee jumping, it was also a lot more dangerous./ rap jumping was not only more exciting but also a lot more dangerous than bungee jumping. 3 to keep me in suspense he didn't tell me too much about it 4 But it was Tony who actually took me for my first rap jump. 5 He's the one who's the real daredevil 6 All I could see was a rope and a harness hanging from the gantry. 7 What you do is lean forward and walk down. 8 It's seeing the ground that I can't cope with. 9 No way am I doing that!

- 1 1 it = the train door 2 its =
  the train's 3 her = Miriam's
  4 the many = kilometres
  5 ones = bags 6 it = the large
  bag 7 this = the job
  opportunity/her move to
  Warsaw 8 that = birth 9 do
  it = return to Warsaw
  10 done so = discounted
  11 which = speaking to her
  prospective employers
  12 their = Miriam's and her
  parents'
- 2 1 one 2 it/there 3 some/all/ most/many 4 ones 5 her 6 neither/nor do 1 7 that 8 do it 9 did 10 so 11 so 12 do 13 one/some/them 14 That 15 not/l don't
- 3 1 I told the students they could either take the exam in June or they could take it in December. 2 We can go to the theatre tonight if you want to go to the theatre. 3 The

children were delighted with the Christmas lights and they wanted to see them turned on again. 4 Even though it is possible to go skiing in Scotland, the British have always been worse skiers than most Europeans have been. 5 'Why hasn't the new shopping centre been opened yet?' 'But it has been opened.' 6 'Will Julie be going to the club's New Year's party this year?' 'I think she gets back from holiday on 30th December, so she could be going.' 7 'Is the new restaurant in the High Street open on Sunday evenings?" 'I don't know. It might be open on Sunday evenings. The old one was open on Sunday evenings.' 8 We haven't earned any money this summer. I really expected us to earn some. 9 The young woman plays the violin and her brother plays the cello. 10 He told me that he was going to leave his wife and I asked him why he was going to leave her. 11 Baxter's sick tonight, which is unfortunate as he can play better than all the others can. 12 We -thought that the old woman had been looking after the house, but she can't have been looking after it as she was in hospital at the time.

4 A

line 4 – if they are successful; they will then ... line 7 – she does not ... line 12 – has not been replaced

80

line 1 – They = childless
couples line 4 – it = that
they want a child line 4 –
they = the couple line 5 – her
= the woman's; This = that she
is prepared to give up her child
line 5 – she = the woman

line 6 – one = child line 7 – themselves = the person/people willing to give up a child line 8 – they = the couple line 8 – if so = if they would like the child line 9 – this = a simple handover line 10 – lt = the tradition

- 5 1 A V B V 2 A X B V C V 3 A X B V C V 4 A V B X C V 5 A V B X C V 6 A X B V 7 A V B X C V 8 A V B V C X 9 A V B X C X 10 A V B X
- 6 1 did 2 3 that 4 this 5 ones 6 their 7 - 8 it 9 that 10 - 11 They 12 -13 it 14 so/it 15 their 16 its 17 - 18 doing
- 7 Sample answer Most people enjoy listening to music but few realise the important and largely positive effects it can have on us. We know that certain types of music are used to influence our emotions and behaviour. For example, airlines use soothing music before a flight to relax passengers, especially those who may feel nervous about flying. You may have noticed how shops often play fast, rousing music (if you haven't, you probably shop at the more old-fashioned type of store) - this tends to make us feel happier and more likely to spend money!

Music is also being used now as a psychiatric therapy. It seems to be particularly useful for eating disorders and addictions, but also for sufferers of post-traumatic stress syndrome. People attending group therapy sessions are invited to bring along their favourite tracks. Not everyone does, but those who do (so) play them for the group. This/Doing so creates a sense of belonging, as well as

a more relaxed atmosphere for the therapy session.

- 1 1 At this height, the light from space is not affected by interference from the earth's atmosphere. 2 This makes it the most useful tool in our search for distant stars and planets. 3 the American astronomer used his close observation of the Andromeda Galaxy to develop the theory that the universe is expanding 4 The Big Bang theory, now accepted as the most likely explanation of the creation of the universe, is directly based on his ideas. 5 Only two months after it went into orbit scientists at NASA discovered that the main mirror had become distorted and could not be used with any accuracy 6 The solution was named COSTAR (corrective optics space telescope axial replacement). 7 The repairs were completed in January 1994 and the Hubble Space Telescope is now working correctly and sending its astonishing data back to earth
- 2 1 A 2 A 3 B 4 B 5 A 6 A 7 A 8 A 9 B 10 B
- 3 1 activate → turn on
  2 Consequently →
  Nevertheless/However/
  Nonetheless, etc. 3 to fall
  asleep → falling asleep 4 the
  icy wind → the wind/it
  5 Nevertheless + Furthermore
  In addition, etc. 6 You-ought
  to-press → Press 7 The brave
  married couple → The
  couple/They 8 really special
  → exceptional 9 having made
  three + to have made three
  10 At first → Finally/At last,
  etc.

#### 4 A 4 B 1 C 3 D 2 E 8 F 5 G 7 H 6

5 1 Although they worked for the shogun in wartime, they were employed by the large landowners, the daimyo, in times of peace. 2 They had many rights and privileges including the right to carry swords and ride horses. 3 In exchange for these rights they owed absolute loyalty to their daimyo, even to the extent that they were expected to commit suicide when their daimyo died. 4 This tradition was part of 'bushido' or 'The Way of the Warrior': a strict code of honour which stressed the importance of selfdiscipline and bravery. 5 Despite the fact that bushido was based on the peaceful beliefs of Zen Buddhism, it helped the samural to become the most ruthless, feared and brutal warriors in Asia. 6 The samural reached their peak of importance and influence in the civil wars of the sixteenth century, when they fought for rival warlords. 7 In the peaceful years after 1603, the samurai gradually lost their military importance, and many became administrators rather than soldiers. 8 in 1867, the last shogun Tokugawa Keiki resigned and Japan began to modernise its military forces with the introduction of conscription and a western army structure in 1872. 9 As a result the samural were no longer needed or wanted and the remaining samural in Satsuma decided to mount a rebellion against the government. 10 The Satsuma rebellion was a disaster for the samurai, who were finally defeated by the Imperial Army in 1877.

## Index

The Index references below refer to section and sub-section headings in the explanation sections. For example 16-1A is unit 16 explanation, sub-section 1A.

alan (see articles) ability	use in comparisons 24.2B use modifying, and adding information 13.5A 24.2A
future 16.1A, 16.2C, 16.3A past 16.1B	use: with present perfect simple 3.1C-D
present 16.1A	viewpoint adverbs 24.4A advice 17.4A-B
about to 5.1C	
absolutely 23.1B, 23.2B	agent 2.46
according to 29.2D	not mentioning 8.4C
adjective phrases 34.2B	of passive verb 8.1A
adjectives	'unimportant' 8.4B
adverb + adjective collocations 23 4	all 28 3A, 28 3B, 34.1D
after nouns, pronouns, etc. 21.1D	all the same 32 3A-B
attributive position 21.1B, 21.1C	allowed to 16.4B, 17.2A-B
commas and and 21.3C	almost 23 2C
comparative (see comparison)	already 3.1C
demonstratives used as 28 2A	also 34.2B, 34 3B
form 21.1A	although 32 1B, 32.1C, 32.2
gradable (see gradable adjectives; ungradable	always 1.2C
adjectives)	anaphoric reference 35 1B
'in the near future' 5 1C	any 28 3A, 28.3B
negative prefixes 6 3C	anyhow 27.4
not before 6.1B	anyone/body 27.4
order in groups 21.3A	anything 27.4
paired adjectives 21.3B	anywhere 27.4
participle (-ing or -ed) adjectives 21.2	appropriate language 36,2D
patterns 21.1	arise or raise/rise 20.1G
possessive adjectives 27.1A	arrangements
predicative position 21.1C	future 4.3
superlative (see superlative adjectives)	in the past 2.2D
+ to + Infinitive 12.2C, 15 1C	possibility 16.3A
use 21.1A	present continuous 43A
see also adjective phrases	will/won't be + verb -ing 4.3B
adverbials (see adverbs) adverbs	articles (a/an, the)
	basic rules 28 1A
adverb + adjective collocations 23.4 attitude adverbs 24.4B	general/specific 28.1D
	known/unknown topics 28 1C
of certainty 24.3C	naming, describing, classifying 28.1B no article 28.1D-E
confusing forms 24.1B of contrast 32.3	other uses 28 1E
of degree 6.3A, 24.3C	as 34 2C
form 24.1A	
of frequency 1 1C, 6 3A, 24.3C	as as 22 2A-B, 22.2D, 22.3D as if 11.2F
indefinite 27 4	as and like 22.3D
in indirect statements 9.2B	as long as 10.7B
and inversion 34 3A	as though 11.2F
negative 6.3A, 34.3B	auxiliary verbs see be; do; have
of place 34.3A	auxiliary verbs see be, ub, have
position in sentences 24.3A–D	backshift (in reported speech) 9,2C-D
and prepositions 29 1B	be
qualifying future forms 4 4C	auxiliary verb uses 19.1A
relative 31.2A-C	contracted forms 19 1B
restrictive 6 3A, 34 3B	emphasis 19.2A
sentence adverbs 24 4A_B	uses 1 3A=R

of time 24.3C, 34.3A

ability 16 1A possibility 16 2C possible arrangements 16.3A be about to 5 1C be allowed to 16 4B, 17.2A-B be bound to 5 1D be certain to 5.1D be due to 5.1B be going to 4 1B, 4.2B be likely to 5.1D be obliged to 17.1D be required to 17.1D be supposed to 17 1D be sure to 5.1D be to 5.1A, 17.1D be unlikely to 5.1D been or gone 20.1D on behalf of 29 2D had better 17.4 better, best 22.1A borrow or lend 20 2A both 28 3A, 28 3B bound to 5.1D bring or take (and fetch) 20.2B but 32.1A, 32.1B	cohesion ellipsis 35.1A, 35.3 substitution 35.1A, 35.2 types of text reference 35.1 collective nouns 25.4D commands imperatives 8.3C indirect 9.4A-B comment phrases 13.5A comparison as + adjective + a + noun + as 22.2D as + adjective + as 22.5D adverb use 24.2B combined comparison 22.3B combined comparison 22.3C emphasis and strength 22.1D equality 22.1E, 22.2A exceptions 22.1B form 22.1A irregular adjectives 22.1C less 22.1F like + noun/verb phrase 22.3D metaphors 22.3D negative comparison 22.2B (not) adjective + enough + (for/to) 22.2C propressive comparison 22.3A similes 22.3D so + adjective + (for/to) 22.2C ungradable adjectives 23.2D use 22.1A see also superlative adjectives complement 30.2B compound nouns 26.3C concession (see contrast) condition on (the) condition (that) 10.7B participle phrases 13.2B conditionals alternative conditions 10.7E first conditional 10.3A-C general conditional 10.2 imaginary conditions 10.7C impossible conditional 10.5 improbable conditional 10.5 improbable conditional 10.5 improbable conditional 10.5 improbable conditional 10.7A past conditional 10.5 possible conditional 10.7A past conditional 10.7A past conditional 10.5 possible conditional 10.7A past conditi
can/cannot/can't ability 16.1A asking for/giving/refusing permission 16.4A offers 16.3B possibility 16.2A possible arrangements 16.3A prohibition 17.2A=B requests 16.3B suggestions 16.3B cataphoric reference 35.1B causatives 8.3 certain to 5.1D certainty about the future 5.1D about the past 18.1D about the present 18.1C adverbs of 24.3C	
characteristics, habits and routines future 4.4B past 18.2B present 18.2A classifying possessives 26.3A classifying relative clause 31.1C clauses, linking coordination 30.3B subordination 30.3B see also relative clauses cleft sentences all 34.1D form 34.1A it cleft sentences 34.1B the (only/last) thing 34.1D reversed cleft sentences 34.1E use 34.1A wh- cleft sentences 34.1C-D	

continuous (aspect)	discourse devices
verbs rarely used in 1.3	appropriate language 36.2D
see also past continuous, past perfect	linking expressions 36 2A
continuous, present continuous, present	parallelism 36.2C
perfect continuous	reference 36 2B
on the contrary 32 3A–B	distance 33.2A
contrast	do
adverbs 32 3	auxiliary verb uses 191A
conjunctions 32 1	do solit/that 35 2C
linking expressions 36.2A	emphasis 19 2A B
prepositions 32.2	expressions 20.1B
word order 36 1D	as main verb 19 3A
coordination 30 3A	meanings 19.3C
could/couldn't	or make 20 1A
ability 16.1B	in substitution 35 1A, 35.2B
The state of the s	
asking for/giving/refusing permission 16.4	due to 5 1B
in conditionals 10 4A-C, 10.5A	
deduction 16 2A	each 28 3A, 28 3B
+ have done 16 2B	echo questions
	·
offers 16.3B	form 7 4A
possibility 16.2A–C	use 7.4B
possible arrangements 16.3A	either 28 3A, 28 3B
requests 16.3B	elder, eldest 22.1C
·	
suggestions 16 3B	ellipsis 35 1A-B
countable (and uncountable) nouns 25.3A-B	omitting a noun 35 3A
criticism	omitting a pronoun 35 3A
forms 17 2A	omitting a verb 35.3B
use 17.2B	T
use 17.2b	omitting infinitives 35.3C
	omitting wh- clauses 35 3C
dates 33.2A	use 35 1B
dead (intensifier) 23.3A	emotion, expressing 7.1D
decisions	_
	emphasis
qualifying 4.4C	cleft sentences 34 1
reporting 8.1C	fronting 34.2
will/won't + infinitive 4 2A	inserting do 19 2B
deduction	inversion 34 3
future 17.5A	stressing the auxiliary 19.2A
logical deduction 17.5	word order 36 1D
past 16 2B, 17.5A	end-weight principle 36.1B
present 16 2A, 17.5A	- ,
	enough 22 2C
defining phrases	even if 10 7D
infinitive phrases 13 4A	even so 32 3A-B
participle phrases 13 2A	even though 32 IC
defining (and non-defining) relative	every (one of) 28 3A
clauses 31 1C-E	everyone/body 27.4
demonstratives (this/that, these/those)	everything 27.4
used as adjectives 28 2A	everywhere 27.4
used as intensifiers 28 2B	~
	exception (prepositions) 29 2D
used as pronouns 28 2B	exclusion (prepositions) 29.2D
dependent prepositions (see prepositions,	
dependent)	fetch 20 2B
desires	
	(a) few, (a) little 6.3A, 28 3A, 28 3B
expressing 18.4F	finite and non-finite clauses (see participle
hypothetical 18 5	phrases, infinitive phrases)
despite 29 2D, 32.2, 36 2A	first conditional
determiners (see articles; demonstratives.	
	patterns 10 3A
possessives: possessive adjectives:	uses 10 3B–C
quantifiers)	focus 36.1C
direct speech 9.1A	for 3.1B, 29.2D
disagreeing 18 4E	for all 29 2D
disagreeing 10 40	
	for the sake of 29 2D
	forever 1 2C

formal and informal language 36 2D	nave
fronting	auxiliary verb uses 19.1A
as 34 2C	contracted forms 19.1B
adjective phrases 34.2B	emphasis 19.2A
adverbials 34 2C	have got = have 19 4A
also 34 2B	as main verb 19 3A
complements 34,2A	meanings 19 3B
infinitives 34 2C	or take + noun 20 1C
objects 34.2A	have + object + past participle
such 34.2B	causative use 8 3A
though 34,2C	commands 8 3C
furthermore 36 2A	passive use 8.3B
future	promises 8 3C
arrangements 4.3	have got
be going to + infinitive 4.1B, 4.2B	= have 19 4A
certainty 5.1D	≠ have 19 4B
decisions 4.2A, 4.4C	have (got) to/not have to
expressions 5.1	absence of obligation/necessity 17/3
future continuous 4.1C, 4 3B, 4 4B (see aiso	logical deduction 17.5
will/won't + be + verb -ing)	necessity 17.1A, 17.1C, 17.3
future perfect 4.1D (see also will/won't have +	obligation 17.1A-B, 17.3
past participle)	probability 17.5
future simple 4.1A, 4.2A, 4.4B-C (see also	he, she and it 27 1A, 27 1F
will/won't + infinitive)	he was said 8.10
intentions 4 2B, 4.4C	it's high time 11 2C
modal verbs 5 28	however 7 1D, 32 3A-B 36 2A
near future 5 1C	
in the past 5 3	identifying relative clause 31-10
prediction 41, 44C, 181A	if
probability 5.1D	alternatives to 10.7
qualify ng future forms 4 4C	even if 107D
routine events 4.4B	as if 11 2F
time clauses 4.4D	if or not 7 3A, 9 3B
timetables 4.4A	what if 11 2D
verbs with future meaning 5.2	see also conditionals
	if only
genitive (see possessives)	+ could (have) 11 3D
gerunds 12.1A	differences from wish 11 3E
get	+ past perfect   11 3B
are getting 1 2B	+ past simple 11 3A
passives 8.1E	unreal past 11 2A
present perfect 19 4B	+ woud 11 3C
get + object + past participle	imperatives 8 3C
causative use 8 3A	'impersonal' pronouns
commands 8 3C	one 27 3B
passive use 8.3B	you, we they 27.3A
promises 8 3C	inclusion (prepositions) 29 2D
going to 4.1B, 4.2B	indefinite adverbs 27.4
gone or been 20 1D	indefinite pronouns 27.4
gradable adjectives 23 1A	indirect commands
quite 23 1D	common reporting verbs 9.4A
really, real etc. 23 3A	patterns 9 4B
strengthening the adjective 23.1B	indirect questions
and ungradable meanings 23.38	form 7.3A
weakening the adjective 23.1C	use 7.3B
	indirect reported questions
habits 4.4B, 18 2A-B	common reporting verbs 9.3A
had better 17.4	patterns 9.3B
half 28.3A, 28.3B	indirect requests
on the other <b>hand</b> 32 3A-B, 36 2A	common reporting verbs 9.4A
hardly 63A	patterns 9 4B
hardly + inversion 34 3B	indirect speech 9.1A
marang i directoral of an	transmer alamans access

indirect statements	lately 3.1D, 3.3B
changes of adverb 9.2B	lay or lie 20.1E
changes of pronoun 9 2B	least 22 1F
changes of tense 9 2C–D	lend or borrow 20.2A
common reporting verbs 9.2A	less 22,1F
modal verbs 9 2E	like and as 22.3D
infinitive phrases	like + noun/verb phrase 22.3D
active infinitives 13 3A	likely to 5.1D
comment phrases 13.5A	linking expressions 36.2A
as complement 13.3B	(a) little and (a) few 6 3A, 28 3A
defining phrases 13.4A	little + inversion 34 3B
form 13 3	a lot of 28 3A, 28 3B
passive infinitives 13 3A	
of purpose 13.4B	made from/of/out of/with 29 2D
of result 13.4B	make
style 13 5B	expressions 20.1B
as subject 13.3B	or do 20 1A
types 13.4	manage to 16.1A
use 13 3	many 28 3A, 28 3B
infinitives	may/may not
active 13.3A	asking for/giving/refusing permission 16 4A
after adjectives 12.2C	deduction 16 2A
after nouns 12 2C	inversion 34 3B
form 12 2A	offers 16 3B
fronting 34.2C	possibility 16 2A-C
passive 8.2B, 13.3A	prohibition 17 2A-B
perfect infinitive 13.3A	requests 16 3B
of purpose 12 2B	speculation 16 2A
of result 12 2B	suggestions 16 3B
split infinitives 12.2A	means (prepositions) 29 2D
verb + infinitive 12.3B-D	metaphors 22 3D
see also infinitive phrases	might
information order (see ordering information)	asking for/giving/refusing permission 16.4A
information principle 36.1A	+ have done 16 2B
-ing forms	offers 16 3B
as adjectives 21.2A	possibility 16 2A–C
as objects 12.1A	requests 16 3B
passive 8 2A	speculation 16 2A
patterns 12.1B	suggestions 16 3B
as subjects 12.1A	mind you 32 3A-B
verb + -ing form 12.3A, 12.3C-E	mixed conditionals 10 6
instructions 18 4D	modal verbs
intentions	ability 16.1
be going to + infinitive 4.2B	advice 17.4
qualifying 4.4C	arrangements 16 3A
inversion	certainty 18 1C-D
subject-auxiliary inversion 34.3B	character stics 18 2
subject-verb inversion 34.3A	criticism 17.2
it	in conditionals 10 2A, 10.3A, 10.4A, 10 5A
in cleft sentences 34 1B	deduction 16 2, 17 5
impersonal 33 2C	disagreeing 18.4E
introductory: as 'empty' subject 33 2A, 33.2D	expressing desires 18.4F
introductory: common expressions 33.2B	expressing preferences 18 4F
introductory: use 33.2A, 36.1E	future meaning 5 2B
pronoun 27.1A	habits 18 2
uses 27.1F, 34 1E, 35.2D	hypothetical would 185
it looks as though 35.2B	in indirect statements 9 2E
it seems as if 33 2B	instructions 18.4D
it was said 8 1C	logical deduction 17.5
	necessity 17.1, 17.3
just 3.1D, 5.1C	obligation 17.1, 17.3
7 01.0, 0.10	offers 16 3B, 18 4A
	Service the sense of the III.

orders 18.4D	no/not expressions 6.1D
passive forms 8 1B	not before adjectives 6 1B
perfect 8 1B, 17.1A	not before quantifiers 6 1B
permission, asking for/giving/receiving 16.4	not with verbs 6 1A
possibility 16.2	negative words
	prefixes 6 3C
prediction 18 IA-B	The state of the s
probability 17.5	restrictive adverbs 6 3A, 34.3B
prohibition 17.2	restrictive quantifiers 6.3A
promises 18 4A	verbs 6 3B
recommendation 17.4	neither 28.3A, 28.3B, 34.3B
refusal 18 3	neither nor 6.1D
requests 16 3B, 18.4C	neutral words (register) 36 2D
routines 18 2	nevertheless 32.3A-B, 36.2A
speculation 16 2	no 6.1C, 28 3A, 34.3B
suggestions 16 3B, 18 4B	no one/body 27.4
	no sooner than 6 1D, 34 3B
willingness 18 3	
see also be able to, can/cannot/can't.	nominal pronoun 31.2A
could/couldn't; have (got) to/not have to:	nominalisation
may/may not, might, must/must not/mustn't.	use in discourse 36 1E
need to/need not ought/ought not/oughtn't	verb • noun 25.5A
to; shall/shan't; should/should not/shouldn't.	verb phrase → noun phrase 25.5B
will/won't; would/wouldn't	non-defining (and defining) relative
more 22.1A-B, 22.1D-E, 22.3B	clauses 31.1C-E
what's more 36 2A	none of the 6.1D, 28 3A, 28 3B
most 22.1A, 22 1D, 28 3A	nonetheless 32 3B
	nor 34 3B
much 28 3A, 28.3B	neither nor 61D
multi-word verbs	
form 14.1	not
formal and informal use 14 1B	before adjectives 6 1B, 22 2C
meaning 14 1C	not for 6 1D
passive forms 8 1B	not only 6 1D, 34 38
phrasal verbs 14.2, 14.5A-B	before quantifiers 6.18
phrasal-prepositional verbs 14.4, 14.5D	with verbs 6 1A
prepositional verbs 14.3A-B, 14.5C, 15.2A,	nothing 27 4
15 5A	nouns
use 14.1	agreement collective roun + verb 25.4D
	agreement noun ending ni-s + verb 25.40
word list 14.5	b + object/complement
must/must not/mustn't	TO T Object comprehensive
advice 17.4	
+ have done 17.5	t two subjects/plural subject + verb
logical deduction 17.5	
necessity 17.1A, 17.1C	
obligation 17.1A-B	ouns meanings 25.38
probability 17.5	nouns, use 25.3A
pronibition 17.2	a sing 25 1A
recommendation 17 4	. · 1B
recommendation 17 4	· profixes 6.30
	p urals irregular 25.2B
nearly 23.2C	plurals, no singular form 25.2C
necessity	
absence of 17.3	plurals: regular 25 2A
forms 17.1A, 17.3A	+ to + infinitive 12.2C
use 17.1C, 17 3B	uncountable nouns: meanings 25.3B
need to/need not	uncountable nouns, quantifying 25 3C
absence of obligation nec	uncountable nouns: use 25 3A
+ have done 17 3	see also possessives
necessity 17 1A	nowhere 27 4
	***************************************
obligation 17 TA-B	obligation
negative questions	absence of 17.3
form 6.2A	
use 6.23	forms 17.1A, 17.3A
negative statements	use 17.1A-B, 17.1D, 17.3B
× ^ ^	obliged to 17.1D
	of (see possessives)

offers 16 3B, 18 4A on behalf of 29 2D on (the) condition (that) 10.7B on the contrary 32 3A-B on the other hand 32 3A-B, 36 2A on the point of 5.1C on the verge of 5 1C one/ones to avoid repeating countable nouns 27 1G, 35.1A, 35.2A 'impersonal' pronoun 27.3B only 34 3B ordering information contrast and emphasis 36.1D end weight principle 36.1B focus 36 1C information principle 36.1A manipulating grammar and vocabulary 36.1E use of passive 8.4A, 36.1E orders 18 4D ought/ought not/oughtn't to advice 17.4 criticism 17.2A-B obligation 17.1A-B	have/get + object + past participle 8.3B Hellt was said 8 1C infinitives 8 2B, 13 3A -ing forms 8.2A reporting speech 8.1C uses 8 4, 36.1E verb forms 8.1B verbs not used in 8.1D past continuous 2 2A-D past participle 2.3A, 3.1A past perfect 2 3A-D past perfect continuous 2 4A-B contrast with other forms 2 4C past simple 2.1A-B, 3 2 and present perfect simple 3.2 perfect (aspect) (see future perfect, past perfect, present perfect) perfect infinitive 12 2A, 13.3A permission, asking for/giving/refusing future 16 4A past 16 4B present 16 4A personal pronouns form 27 1A
prohibition 17.2A-B	he, she and it 27.1A, 27.1F
recommendation 17.4	modifying 27.1E object pronouns 27.1A, 27.1D
parallelism 36 2C	omission/inclusion 27.1C
participle (-ing or -ed) adjectives compounds 21.2C position 21 2A use 21 2B  participle phrases active participles 13.1A comment phrases 13.5A defining phrases 13.2A different subjects 13.1C form 13.1 participle subjects 13.1B-C passive participles 13.1A, 13.2C phrases of condition 13.2B phrases of reason 13.2B phrases of result 13.2B style 13.5B time phrases 13.2C types 13.2 use 13.1	one 27 1G possessive pronouns 27.1A reflexive (see reflexive pronouns) subject pronouns 27.1A. 27.1D use 27.1B phrasal verbs intransitive verbs 14 2A, 14.5A transitive verbs 14.2B, 14.5B word list 14.5A-B phrasal-prepositional verbs form 14.4 use 14.4 word list 14.5D phrases (see adjective phrases, adverbial phrases infinitive phrases; participle phrases, prepositional phrases; verb phrases) on the point of 5.1C possessives classifying relationships 26.3B
participles active 13.1A continuous 13.1A passive 13.1A past 2.3A, 3.1A perfect 13.1A perfect 13.1A present 1.2A, 2.2A, 2.4A, 3.3A simple 13.1A see also participle (-ing or -ed) adjectives. participle phrases particles (adverbial and prepositional) 14.1A	double possessive (of structure + genitive) 26 1D forms 26 1A genitive + of structure 26.2D genitive ('s) - basic rules 26 1B genitive ('s) - special rules 26.1C genitive ('s) - use 26 2A, 26 2C new information + of structure 26 2E possessive adjectives 27.1A possessive pronouns 27 1A specifying or classifying 26.3A of structure, use 26 2B-C
passives	possibility
basic patterns 8.1A causatives 8.3	arrangements 16.3A future 16.2C
get 8 iE	past 16.2B

possible conditional 10 3A–C	present simple 1.1A E
present 16.2A	probability
practically 23 2C	forms 5.1D, 17 5A
predictions	use 5.1D, 17.5B
about the future 4 1A, 4.1C-D, 4.4C, 18.1A	prohibition
be going to + infinitive 4.1B	forms 17.2A
certainty about the past 18.1D	use 17.2B
certainty about the present 18.1C	promises 8.3C, 18 4A
past predictions about the future 18.1B	pronouns
qualifying 4.4C	demonstratives as 28.2B
will/won't + infinitive 4.1A	'impersonal' 27.3
will/won't be + verb -ing 4.1C	indefinite 27.4
will/won't have + been + verb -ing 4.1D	in indirect statements 9.28
will/won't have + past participle 4.1D	nominal 31.2A
	personal (see personal pronouns)
preferences, expressing 18 4F	reciprocal 27.2D
prefixes, negative 6 3C	reflexive 27 2A-C
prepositional phrases 29.3A	relative 31.2A-C
prepositional verbs	in substitution 35 2B
form 14.3A, 15.2A	****
special uses 14.3B	provided/providing (that) 10.7B
use 14 3A	purpose
word list 14.5C, 15.5A	infinitive phrases 13.4B
prepositions	infinitives 12.2B
and adverbs 29 1B	prepositions 29.2D
basics 29 1A	0.0.7
of contrast 32.2	quantifiers 28 3
meaning and use 29 2A-D	negative 6.3A
movement and direction 29 2B	not before 6.1B
position 29 2A	restrictive 6.3A
with relative clauses 31.1F	as subjects 28.3B
stranded prepositions 29 3B	uses 28 3A
time 29 2C	questions
see also prepositional phrases, prepositional	closed 7 IA B
verbs, prepositions, dependent	echo 7 4A-B
prepositions, dependent	expressing emotion 7.1D
adjective + preposition 15 48, 15 5D	form 7.1A
adjective/noun + preposition 15.4A	indirect 7.3A-B
noun + preposition + noun 15.3C, 15.5C	indirect reported 9 3A-B
noun only + preposition 15.3B	negative 6.2A-B
noun/verb + preposition 15.3A	object words 7.1C
preposition + infinitive 15.1C	open 7.1A-D
preposition + -ing form 15.1B	subject words 7.1C
preposition + object 15.1A	tag questions 7 2A-D, 18.4B, 18.4C
preposition + whether 15.1E	use 7.1B
preposition choice after participles 15 AC	wh- questions 7.1A, 7.1C
preposition choice after participles 15 4C	quite 23.1D
preposition or that clause 15.1D	April of the second
prepositional verbs 15.2A, 15.5A	raise or riselarise 20.1G
verb + direct object + preposition + indirect	rarely + inversion 34.3B
object 15 2C, 15.5B	real 23 3A
verb + object + preposition + -ing form 15.28	
verb + preposition patterns 15.2	really 23.3A
word list 15.5	reason
present continuous 1.2A E	linking expressions 36.2A
arrangements in the future 4 3A	participle phrases 13 2B
verbs rarely used in 1.3	prepositions 29.2D
present participle 1,2A, 2,2A, 2,4A, 3,3A	recently 3.1D, 3.3B
present perfect continuous 3.3A-C	reciprocal pronouns 27.2D
and present perfect simple 3.4	recommendation
present perfect simple 3.1A-E, 3.2	forms 17.4A
adverbs often used with 3.10	use 17 4B
and past simple 3.2	reference words 36 2B
and present perfect continuous 3.4	

reflexive pronouns	second conditional
emphatic use 27.2C	patterns 10.4A
form 27.1A, 27.2A	uses 10.4B-C
idiomatic use 27.2B	seldom + inversion 34.3B
and reciprocal pronouns 27.2D	sentence adverbs
use 27,2A-C	attitude/sentence adverbs 24.4B
refusal to do something	viewpoint adverbs 24.4A
future 18.3A	sentences
past 18.3B	fronting 34.2
present 18.3A	linking clauses 30.3
refusing permission	linking expressions 36.2A
future 16.4A	word order 30.1
past 16.4B	see also cleft sentences; ordering information
present 16.4A	several 28,3A, 28,3B
register 36.2D	shall/shan't
	instructions 18.4D
relative adverbs	
form 31.2A	offers 18.4A
modifying 31.2B-C	orders 18.4D
use 31.2A	refusal 18.3A
relative clauses	suggestions 18.4B
classifying relative clauses 31.1C	she 27.1A, 27.1F
defining relative clauses 31.1C, 31.1E	should/should not/shouldn't
form 31.1A	advice 17.4
identifying relative clauses 31.1C	in conditionals 10.4C
non-defining relative clauses 31.1D, 31.1E	criticism 17.2A-B
objects 31.1B	+ have done 17.2B
	inversion in conditionals 10.4C
prepositions with 31.1F	logical deduction 17.5
punctuation 31.1E	
reduced relative clauses 31.1G	obligation 17.1A-B
subjects 31.1B	probability 17.5
use 31.1A	prohibition 17.2A-B
relative pronouns	recommendation 17.4
form 31.2A	suggestions 18.4B
modifying 31.2B-C	similarly 36,2A
use 31.2A	similes 22.3D
reported speech	since 3.1B, 3.3B
Hellt was said 8.1C	SO
indirect commands 9.4	do so 35.2C
	even so 32.3A-B
indirect reported questions 9.3	expect so 35.2D
indirect requests 9.4	
indirect statements 9.2	hope so 35.2D
reporting speech orally 9.1B	inversion 34.3B
reporting verbs 9.5	so + adjective + (that) 22.2C, 34.2B
in writing 9.1A	so long as 10.7B
requests 16.3B, 18.4C	some 28.3A, 28.3B
indirect 9.4A-B	somehow 27.4
required to 17.1D	someone/body 27.4
result	something 27.4
infinitive phrases 13.4B	somewhere 27.4
infinitives 12.2B	speak or talk 20.1F
	specifying possessives 26.3A
linking expressions 36.2A	speculation
participle phrases 13.2B	
rise or raiselarise 20.1G	future 16.2C
rob or steal 20.1H	past 16.2B
routines	present 16.2A
future 4.4B	in spite of 29.2D, 32.2
past 18.2B	split infinitives 12.2A
present 18.2A	statements
Proceedings of the second	indirect 9.2
for the sake of 29.2D	negative 6.1
	steal or rob 20.1H
scarcely + inversion 34.3B	still 32.3A-B
	style (in discourse) 13.5B. 36.2B
	SETTE THE MISCOMISE I DISTU SUIZE

subjunctive	Liffle 33.2A
fixed expressions 11.1C	adverbs 24.3C, 34.3A
form 11.1A	clauses of time 4.4D
informal alternatives 11.1B	linking expressions 36.2A
use 11.1A	participle phrases 13.2C
	prepositions of time 29.2C
subordinate clauses 30.3B	
see also relative clauses	it's (high/about) time (that) 11.2C
substitution 35.1A	timetables 4.4A
of clause 35.2D	too 22,2C
of noun/noun phrase 35.2A	
use 35.1B	uncountable (and countable) nouns 25.3A-0
	ungradable adjectives 23.1A, 23.2A
of verb/verb phrase with do 35.2B	
of verb/verb phrase with do solit/that 35.2C	almost, nearly, etc. 23.2C
such 22.2D, 34.2B, 34.3B	comparatives 23.2D
suffix 25.5A	and gradable meanings 23.3B
suggestions 16.3B, 18.4B	intensifying the adjective 23.2B
superlative adjectives	really, real, etc. 23.3A
emphasis and strength 22.1D	superlatives 23.2D
	unless 10.7A
equality 22.1E	
exceptions 22.1B	unlikely to 5.1D
form 22.1A	'unreal' past
irregular adjectives 22.1C	form 11.2A
least 22.1F	as if 11.2F
ungradable adjectives 23.2D	it's (high/about) time (that) 11.2C
use 22.1A	suppose/supposing (that) 11.2D
	as though 11.2F
supposed to 17.1D	use 11.2A
suppose/supposing (that) 10.7C, 11.2D	
sure to 5.1D	was or were? 11.2B
synonyms, false 20.1	what if 11,2D
	would rather/would sooner 11.2E
tag questions	used to
basic patterns 7.2A	form and meaning 2.5A
	use 2.5B-C
exceptions and variations 7.2B	030 2,50 0
other functions 7.2D	
requests 7.2C, 18.4C	verb patterns
suggestions 18.4B	verb + clause 30.2F
use 7.2C	verb + complement 30.2B
take	verb + object(s) (transitive verbs) 30.2C
or bring (and fetch) 20.2B	verb + preposition 15.2, 15.3A
or have + noun 20.1C	verb + prepositional phrase 30.2D
	verb + verb 30.2E
talk or speak 20.1F	
tenses	verb only (intransitive verbs) 30.2A
in indirect statements 9.2C-D	verb phrases 25.5B
that 28.2A-B, 31.2A, 34.1E, 35.2D	verbs
that clauses 15.1D	auxiliary verbs (see be; do; have)
the (see articles)	false synonyms 20.1
	future meaning 5.2
there (introductory)	have/take + noun 20.1C
form 33,1B	
special patterns 33.1B	in indirect commands and requests 9.4A
there (+ be) expressions 33.1D	in indirect reported questions 9.3A
use 33.1A	in indirect statements 9.2A
these 28.2A-B	+ infinitive 12.3B-D
they 27.1A, 27.3A	+ -ing form 12,3A, 12.3C-E
	intransitive verbs 30.2A
the (only/last) thing 34.1D	modal (see modal verbs)
third conditional	
patterns 10.5A	multi-word (see multi-word verbs)
uses 10.5B-C	negative prefixes 6.3C
this 28.2A-B, 34.1E, 35.2D	negative verbs 6.3B
those 28,2A-B	nominalisation 25.5A
though 32.1B, 32.1C, 32.2, 32.3B, 34.2C	not used in passive 8.1D
even though 32.1C	not with verbs 6.1A
	opposite pairs 20.2
as though 11.2F	opposite pairs 2012

passive forms 8.1B performative verbs 1.3D phrasal verbs 14.2A-B, 14.5A-B phrasal-prepositional verbs 14.4, 14.5D prepositional verbs 14.3, 15.2A, 15.5A	offers 18.4A orders 18.4D predictions about the future 4.1A, 4.1C–D 4.4C, 18.1A promises 18.4A
rarely used in the continuous 1.3	refusal 18,3A
reporting 9.2A, 9.3A, 9.4A, 9.5	requests 18.4C
sense verbs 1.3C, 12.1B, 12.3E	routines 18.2A
transitive verbs 30,2C	willingness 18.3A
verbs of appearance 1.3A-B	will/won't have
verbs of being 1.3A-B	+ been + verb -ing 4.1D
verbs of believing 1.3A, 3.2E, 6.1A, 6.1E, 35.2D	certainty about the past 18.1D
verbs of existing 1.3A-B	+ past participle 4.1D, 18.1D
verbs of feeling 1.3A-B	predictions about the future 4.1D
verbs of possessing 1.3A-B	wish
verbs of thinking 1.3A-B, 6.1A, 6.1E, 35.2D	+ could (have) 11.3D
verbs of wanting 1.3A, 2.3D, 35.2D	differences from if only 11.3E
see also verb patterns	+ past perfect 11.3B
on the verge of 5.10	+ past simple 11.3A
virtually 23.2C	+ would 11.3C
ocabulary, appropriate 36.2D	won't (see will/won't; will/won't have)
, -ppp	word order
vas/were	adjective groups 21.3A
in 'unreal' past 11.2B	adverbs 24.3A-D
was/were going to + infinitive 5.3A	emphasis 36.1D
ve 27.1A, 27.3A	fronting 34.2A-C
weather 33.2A	inversion 34.3A-B
veigh/weighing 1.3B	linking clauses 30.3A-B
vere (see was/were)	ordering information 36.1A-E
vh-	sentence word order 30.1A-B
cleft sentences 34.1C	worse, worst 22.1A
questions 7.1A, 7.1C	would/wouldn't
vhat 7.1C, 31.2A	disagreeing 18.4E
what If 10.7C, 11.2D	expressing desires 18.4F, 18.5
vhatever 7.1D	expressing preferences 18.4F
when 31.2A, 34.1D, 34.1E	habits in the past 2.5B, 18.2B
whenever 31.2C	hypothetical desires 18.5
where 31.2A, 34.1D, 34.1E	offers 18.4A
whereas 32.1A	past predictions about the future 18.18
wherever 31.2C	refusal 18.3B
whether ( or not) 7.3A, 9.3B, 10.7E, 15.1E	requests 18.4C
which 7.1C, 31,2A	routines in the past 18.2B
vhichever 31.2C	suggestions 18.4B
vhile 32.1A	willingness 18.38
vho 7.1C, 31.2A, 34.1D, 34.1E	would rather 11.2E, 18.4F
vhoever 31.2C	would sooner 11.2E
vhom 31.2A	Would Sooner 11.2L
whose 31.2A	yet 3.1C, 32.1B
vhy 31.2A, 34.1D, 34.1E	you 27.1A, 27.3A
villingness	gou 21.11, 21.5h
future 18.3A	zero conditional
past 18.3B	patterns 10.2A
present 18.3A	use 10,2B-C
vill/won't	use 10,25-c
arrangements 4.3B	
+ be + verb -ing 4.1C, 4.3B, 18.1C	
certainty about the present 18.1C	
characteristics 18.2A	
decisions 4.2A, 4.4C	
habits 18.2A	
+ infinitive 4.1A, 4.2A	
instructions 18.4D	
mad delivita 10.90	

# Advanced Learners' Grammar

The comprehensive grammar reference and practice book that targets the language Advanced students need to refine their English.

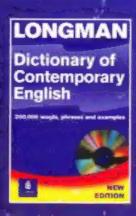
- Diagnostic tests identify students' weaknesses to enable more focused learning
- Comprehensive explanations with lots of natural examples help students acquire authentic language
- A variety of real contexts and exercises motivate students
- CAE/CPE task types familiarise students with the format of the exams

## A self-study reference and practice book with answers





www.longman.com





We recommend the Longman
Dictionary of Contemporary English
and the Longman Language
Activator® as the Perfect Partners for
this grammar book

